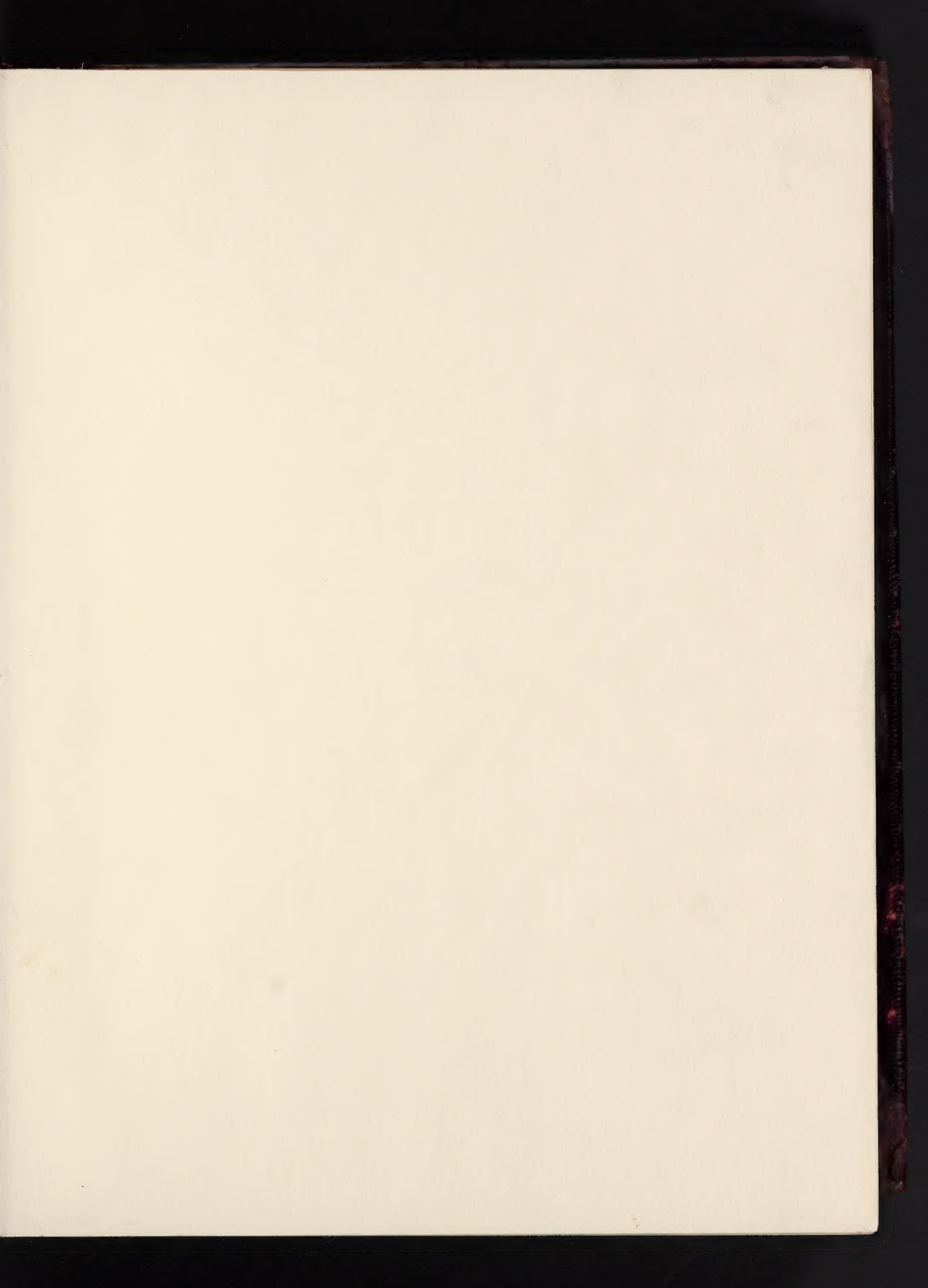
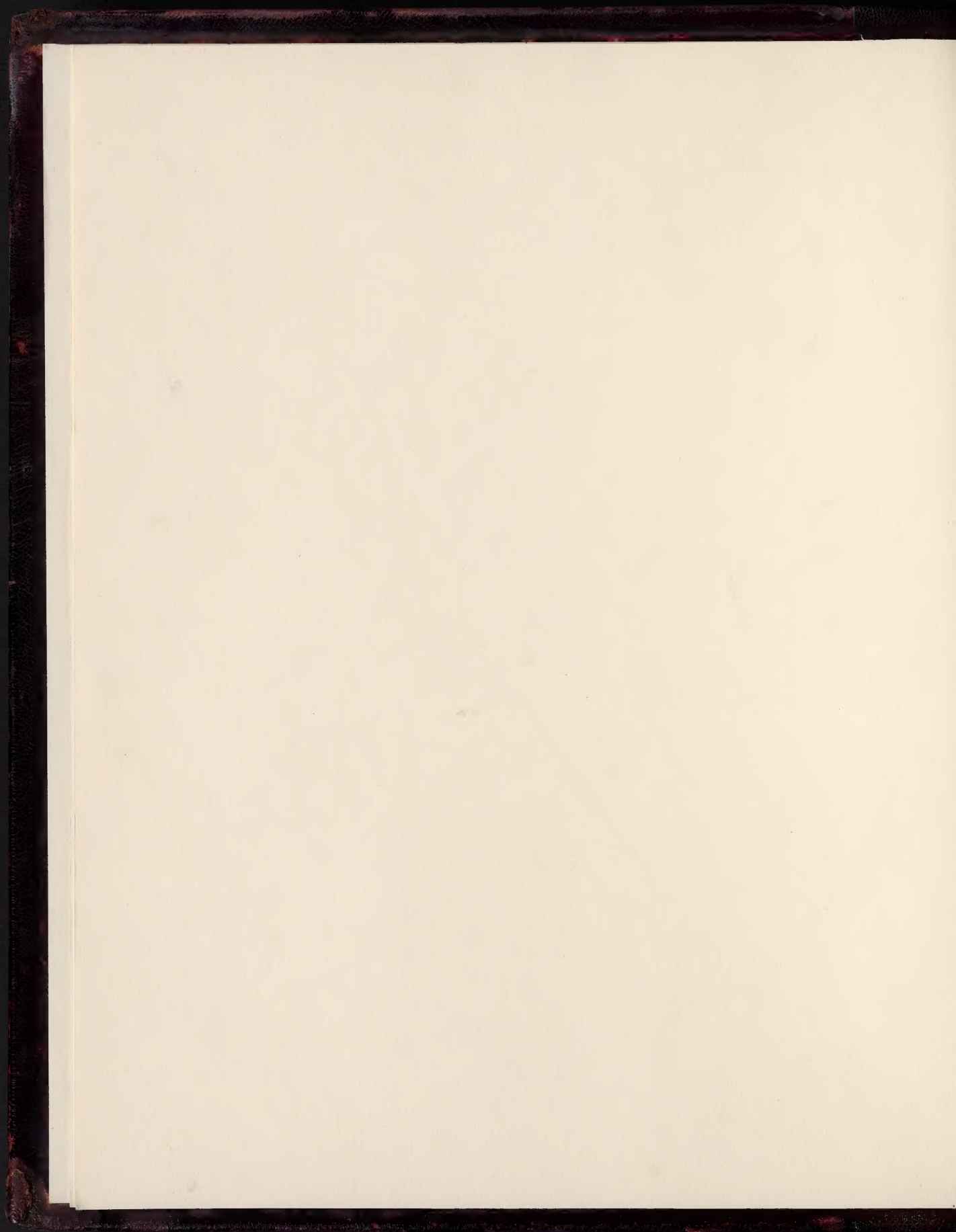




Victor Alexander Williamson.





THE LIVES
OF
MABÂ' SĚYÔN
AND
GABRA KRĚSTÔS.

*Three hundred copies only, printed for
private circulation, of which this is*

No. 160.....

LADY MEUX MANUSCRIPT No. 1.

THE LIVES
OF
MABÂ' SĒYŌN AND GABRA KRĚSTÔS.

THE ETHIOPIC TEXTS EDITED WITH AN ENGLISH TRANSLATION
AND A CHAPTER ON THE ILLUSTRATIONS OF ETHIOPIC MSS.

BY

E. A. WALLIS BUDGE, M.A., LITT.D., D. LIT., F.S.A.

SOMETIME SCHOLAR OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, AND TYERWHITT HEBREW SCHOLAR,
KEEPER OF THE EGYPTIAN AND ASSYRIAN ANTIQUITIES IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM.

WITH NINETY-TWO COLOURED PLATES AND THIRTY-THREE ILLUSTRATIONS.

W. GRIGGS,
CHROMO-LITHOGRAPHER TO HER MAJESTY THE QUEEN.

LONDON :

1898.

[All rights reserved].

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

1. Portrait of Saint Mark ... XVth century (Orient. 507, fol. 46*b*)
2. Ornamental border of early MS. ... XVth „ („ 480, fol. 120*a*)
3. The Nativity... ... XVIIth „ („ 510, fol. 8*b*)
4. The Massacre of the Innocents ... XVIIth „ („ 510, fol. 10*b*)
5. The Temptation of Christ ... XVIIth „ („ 510, fol. 12*b*)
6. Christ riding into Jerusalem on Palm
Sunday ... XVIIth „ („ 510, fol. 52*a*)
- 7 & 8. The Last Judgment ... XVIIth „ („ 510, fol. 62*b*, 63*a*)
9. The Crucifixion ... XVIIth „ („ 510, fol. 72*a*)
10. Border and ornaments ... XVIIth „ („ 481, fol. 21*a*)
11. The Baptism of Christ ... XVIIth „ („ 481, fol. 101*b*)
12. God Almighty, the Ancient of Days. XVIIth „ („ 481, fol. 110*a*)
13. The torturing of St. George ... XVIIIth „ („ 713, fol. 48*a*)
14. Outline illustrations ... XVIIIth „ („ 647, fol. 140*b*)
15. Takla Hâymânôt scaring away fiends. XVIIIth „ („ 728, fol. 56*a*)
16.) Scenes in the life of Takla XVIIIth „ („ 728, fol. 149*b*)
17.) Hâymânôt ... XVIIIth „ („ 728, fol. 181*a*)
18. St. George slaying the dragon ... XVIIIth „ („ 646, fol. 1*b*)
19. The Virgin and Child ... XVIIIth „ („ 646, fol. 2*a*)
20. The Virgin and the painter ... XVIIIth „ („ 646, fol. 17*b*)
21. The Virgin and the sick man ... XVIIIth „ („ 646, fol. 19*a*)
22. Zacharias and the Virgin ... XVIIIth „ („ 646, fol. 22*a*)
23. The Shipwreck ... XVIIIth „ („ 646, fol. 25*b*)
24. The Virgin and the sinking monastery. XVIIIth „ („ 646, fol. 27*a*)
25. The Virgin and the wounded man ... XVIIIth „ („ 646, fol. 29*b*)
26. The Virgin and the scribe's soul ... XVIIIth „ („ 646, fol. 36*a*)
27. The Virgin and the prisoner ... XVIIIth „ („ 646, fol. 38*a*)
28. The Virgin and the nun ... XVIIIth „ („ 646, fol. 51*b*)
29. The Virgin and the cannibal ... XVIIIth „ („ 646, fol. 63*b*)
30. The Virgin and the dog ... XVIIIth „ („ 646, fol. 71)
31. The Annunciation ... XVIIIth „ („ 646, fol. 84*a*)
32. St. Simeon receiving our Lord ... XVIIIth „ („ 620, fol. 1*a*)
33. The Funeral of King John ... XIXth „ (from a painted
wooden panel)

PREFACE.

IN the possession of Lady Meux of Theobald's Park, Herts, are two valuable Ethiopic vellum manuscripts. The larger and older manuscript consists of about 140 folios, which are inscribed with a selection of the Miracles of the Blessed Virgin Mary, illustrated by numerous coloured pictures; this MS. is a work of the XVth century. On one of the early pages we find, written in Ethiopic, the words, "Belonging to the Holy Redeemer of the World," which shew that the volume came from Maḳdalâ (Magdala), and that it once belonged to Theodore, the late king of Abyssinia. It is well known that for several years before his death he had collected, both by persuasion and force, a large number of manuscripts from the various churches, monasteries, and private houses scattered throughout his country, with the intention of endowing the church which he was about to build at Maḳdalâ in honour of the Holy Redeemer of the World, with a fine library of sacred and profane literature. The manuscript is a small folio, and the large size of the very handsome writing of its pages shews that it was intended to be read from in a church; the archæological value of the pictures is great by reason of their antiquity. More will be said of this volume elsewhere.

The smaller manuscript contains the life of Takla Mâryâm (also named Mabá' Sëyôn), and the life of 'Abdu'l-Masîh (surnamed Gabra Krëstôs). Takla Mâryâm was a Christian ascetic who lived in the province of Shoa, in Ethiopia, and Gabra Krëstôs is said to have been a son of Theodosius, the Emperor of Constantinople. In the life of the former saint we have, I believe, a new Ethiopic text; at all events, I can find no other copy of it. It seems to be a translation made in the XVIth century, or early in the XVIIth, from Coptic or Arabic, most probably from the latter language; it is interesting from many points of view, and shows how the Ethiopian ascetic applied Christian dogmas and beliefs to the events of his daily life. Both compositions are profusely illustrated with coloured pictures which are remarkable for their fine state of preservation, and for the variety of the subjects which they help to explain; they were, I believe, painted early in the XVIIth century. We owe this handsome volume to the munificence of Takla Hâyamânôt, who had the works in it copied by the scribe Mekh Gîyôrgîs, and illustrated by "the sinner Ignatius," all of whom beg for God's mercy in the colophon.

Apart from the importance of the texts which they contain, both manuscripts are very valuable on account of the coloured pictures with which they are illustrated. It has been the fashion to consider the pictures in Ethiopic MSS. as monstrosities, and hardly any attention has been paid to them; indeed, the present work is the first in which an attempt has been made to reproduce a complete series of them. Many of the pictures which are to be seen in

modern MSS., and in the churches in Abyssinia, are well known to be nothing but copies made from cheap lithographs and coloured prints which have been taken into the country during the last fifty or a hundred years. In ancient MSS., however, we find for every-day manners and objects the Ethiopian artists copied the familiar things which he saw round about him, and that the birds, the beasts, the reptiles, the dress of the people of his country, &c., represent objects which he knew at first hand. But in illustrating scenes in ancient history he had recourse to the manuscripts written by European scribes and illustrated by European artists, whose works made their way into his country from Spain and Italy by way of North Africa, Egypt, and Nubia. I have examined all the illustrated Ethiopic MSS. in the British Museum,* and I am convinced that anyone who would give the necessary time and trouble to the work could find the prototypes of every object in every picture painted to illustrate some scene in ancient history in the pictures, mosaics, and illuminated and illustrated manuscripts of early Spanish, Italian and Byzantine artists.

When the above facts were submitted to Lady Meux she forthwith decided to publish both manuscripts, with facsimiles of the coloured illustrations, English translations, etc., and the present volume is the first instalment of the work; the second will appear as soon as possible.

* Their numbers are :—481, 488, 492, 503, 507, 508, 509, 510, 515, 516, 520, 533, 536, 537, 538, 574, 584, 590, 594, 595, 602, 605, 609, 611, 614, 615, 616, 620, 622, 626, 629, 631, 633, 634, 635, 637, 639, 640, 642, 644, 645, 646, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 654, 655, 657, 679, 680, 681, 695, 701, 714, 715, 718, 721, 722, 723, 728, 750, 790, 791, 805; and Add. 24,184, 24,186, 24,188.

The plan of the volume is as follows:—The Ethiopic texts, printed in the beautiful type of Herr Drugulin of Leipzig, as being of little interest to the general reader, are placed at the end of the book. To the text of the Life of Gabra Krëstôs I have added all the variants from Brit. Mus. MS. No. 16,198. The translation has been made as literal as possible, but I am not sure that I have always made out what the writer intended to say, for the text is, in places, very obscure; it seems as if the Ethiopian translator was, himself, not always certain of the meaning of the words before him. Interleaved with the translation are the coloured plates, so that the reader may follow the narrative both by word and by picture. The binding of the volume is a careful copy of that of the original manuscript.

In the introductory chapter will be found a series of illustrations of Ethiopian art taken from Ethiopic MSS., in the British Museum, of the XVth, XVIIth, and XVIIIth centuries, together with brief descriptions of the same.

I have to acknowledge, with thanks, the information concerning Greek, Latin, Spanish, and other illuminated MSS., and mosaics which I have received from Sir E. Maunde Thompson, K.C.B., Director and Principal Librarian of the British Museum; and from Mr. G. F. Warner, M.A., Assistant-Keeper in the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum; and from Mr. A. S. Murray, LL.D., Keeper of the Greek and Roman Antiquities in the British Museum. My thanks are also due to Colonel F. R. Wingate, C.B., D.S.O., R.A., for permission to reproduce by photography the wooden panel in his possession, on which is painted the scene of the funeral of

King John of Abyssinia; and to Mr. Griggs for the care and pains which he has devoted to the production of this volume.

To Lady Meux I offer my sincere gratitude for the opportunity she has given me of helping her to publish the valuable manuscripts which she has acquired, and of placing new material in the hands of students of Gē'ēz literature and of the history of Christian asceticism in Ethiopia and Abyssinia.

E. A. WALLIS BUDGE.

London: August 30, 1898.

ON THE ILLUSTRATIONS OF ETHIOPIC MANUSCRIPTS.

THE art of Ethiopia, like the greater part of its literature, is Christian, and is borrowed from various Christian sources, chiefly European. There is no evidence that the Ethiopians during any period of their history produced either statues or pictures as other nations have done, and it is tolerably certain that they would never have illustrated their manuscripts of religious works with coloured pictures if they had not believed them to be in some way necessary for their advance in the spiritual life in this world, and for their benefit in the world to come.

According to a tradition among the Ethiopians, Christianity was introduced into their country by "a man of Ethiopia, an eunuch of "great authority under Candace,¹ queen of the Ethiopians, who had "the charge of all her treasure, and had come to Jerusalem for to "worship."² This man, it will be remembered, was sitting in his chariot reading the book of Isaiah the prophet, when Philip the deacon met him, and when the passage (Isaiah liii. 7, 8) had been explained to him by Philip as referring to Christ, he received baptism at his hands, and "went on his way rejoicing." The tradition also

¹ Candace was a title borne by many Ethiopian queens, just as Pharaoh was a title of most of the kings of Egypt.

² See *The Acts of the Apostles*, viii. 27

goes on to affirm that when the eunuch returned to Ethiopia he converted his mistress and her whole empire to the Christian faith. If this was true, it would be necessary to assume that Christianity was introduced into Ethiopia during the lifetime of the immediate successors of the Twelve Apostles;¹ that is, however, incredible. "The man of Ethiopia" must, in any case, have been able to read either Hebrew, Greek, or Syriac, for the book of Isaiah was not in existence in the Ethiopic language.² We may mention, in passing, the tradition that the Jewish faith and ceremonies were introduced into Ethiopia by Měnyělēk, the son of Solomon (the son of David, King of Israel) and of the Queen of Sheba, but as there is no evidence that those who wrote and painted Ethiopic MSS. borrowed anything from Hebrew MSS. or from other Jewish sources, it does not concern us. Christianity may have existed in Ethiopia during the first three centuries of our era, but no trace of it, up to the present, has been found.

In the Ecclesiastical History of Rufinus (i. 9) is a story, which has been repeated by several writers worthy of belief,³ and which states that the introduction of Christianity into Ethiopia was due to two noble youths called Frumentius and Aedesius.⁴ These young

¹ St. Andrew, St. Matthew, and St. Thomas have all been credited with the conversion of Ethiopia.

² The presumption is that the "man of Ethiopia" was a Jew, and that Hebrew was his native tongue.

³ Socrates, *Hist. Eccles.*, i. 15; Theodoret, *Hist. Eccles.*, i. 22; Sozomen, *Hist. Eccles.*, ii. 23; and see Ludolf, *Hist. Aethiopica*, lib. iii. cap. 2, § 12 ff.

⁴ See René Basset, *Etudes sur l'Histoire d'Ethiopie*, p. 220, note 30.

men, who were probably natives of Syria, were taken by their relative Meropius, a merchant of Tyre, on a voyage. Falling short of provisions, the captain of the vessel put into a port on the African coast; whilst here the natives of the country savagely attacked and slew the whole of the ship's crew and the merchant Meropius, but they spared the lives of his two young relatives. When Frumentius and Aedesius were brought into the presence of the king of the country, he treated them with great kindness and gave each of them a position in his household; the former he made his secretary, and the latter his cupbearer. On the death of the king they were set at liberty, but the queen besought them to stay with her to help her to rule the country and to educate her son. Having consented to this, they wrote to all the Christian foreigners in Ethiopia, exhorting them to worship God, and thus the knowledge of the faith of Christ was spread abroad throughout the land. When the prince was old enough to undertake to rule the country, Frumentius and Aedesius left Ethiopia, intending to return to their own land and to their relatives. This Aedesius actually did, but Frumentius went to Alexandria in order to report to Saint Athanasius the progress which Christianity had made in Ethiopia. Athanasius, with the approval of his councillors, straightway decided to annex the infant Church, and having consecrated Frumentius a bishop, he sent him back to Ethiopia; thus it came to pass that for centuries the Abûna, or head of the Ethiopian church, was always appointed by the patriarch of the Coptic Church. The story adds that when Frumentius returned to Ethiopia he was successful in converting

the king and the people of the country to the Christian faith.

Though some of the details of this narrative may be doubtful, there is no reason whatever for refusing to accept the general fact that about the middle of the IVth century Christianity had taken root in Ethiopia, and that the Ethiopian Church was in touch with the Coptic Church.¹ It is important to remember this fact, because it helps to explain the rapid growth of monasticism and of the ascetic life in Ethiopia, and the existence of translations of Greek, Syriac, and Coptic works in Ethiopia, as well as the growth of Monophysite doctrines in Ethiopia in the Vth and VIth centuries. It does not, however, help us to arrive at the beginnings of Ethiopic art; for the Copts had very few, if any, illustrated MSS. at this early period, and all the evidence derived from their pictures tends to shew that they borrowed the elements of their art from early Byzantine sources at a much later period.

Towards the end of the Vth century of our era a large number of monks² made their way into Ethiopia, and Christianity spread from

¹ In the Ethiopic Chronicle edited by René Basset (*Etudes sur l'Histoire d'Ethiopie*, p. 97) the conversion of the Ethiopians by Abbâ-Salâmâ is said to have taken place A.D. 333; but Guidi (*Le Traduzioni degli Evangelii in Arabo e in Etiopico*, p. 33) gives the date at about 350.

² The names of nine of the most famous of these monks are given by Ludolf, op. cit., iii. 5, § 4; by René Basset, op. cit., p. 97; and by Guidi, op. cit., p. 34. Each of the nine built a church in the province in which he preached. Thus Abbâ Aléf was specially revered in the Monastery of Behzâ, Za-Mikâêl Aragâwî founded the Monastery of Dâmo, Abbâ Şehmâ resided at Sedenyâ, Abbâ Afsê built the Monastery of Yahâ to the N.E. of Adowa, Abbâ Garimâ founded the Monastery of Madara, Abbâ Pantaleon resided at Aksum, Abbâ Gûbâ resided near Madara, Abbâ Likânôs dwelt in the Monastery of Quanâsêl, and Abbâ Yem'atâ founded the Monastery of Gar'altâ. Guidi has shewn that the names of the nine have a remarkable likeness to those of famous Syrian monasteries and church provinces.

one end of the kingdom to the other. According to the writer Al-Makîn (died A.D. 1273-74) the monks came from Ar-Rûm, that is to say, from the country of the Byzantine Greeks, whose capital was Constantinople; Geddes, the author of the *Church History of Ethiopia* (London, 1696) thought that Ar-Rûm was Rome, but as Constantinople was Nova Roma or 'Ρώμη νέα, the monks were Byzantine Greeks and not Romans. It is tolerably certain that these monks travelled into Ethiopia through Egypt and Nubia, and that in their train there were large numbers of native Egyptian Christian ascetics, who carried with them histories of the martyrs and saints, and MSS. of the Old and New Testaments,¹ and doctrinal books, and works of a religious character. To accommodate these settlers, monasteries and churches were built throughout Ethiopia, and the multiplying of copies of the Ethiopic translations of the foreign works which were being brought into the country went on diligently. It is idle to speculate if such copies were illustrated with coloured pictures, but the strong probability is that they were not; it is, however, right to assume that the copies of works translated into Ethiopic resembled in form the original documents. Of the Ethiopic manuscripts written at this period none has come down to us.

Of detailed history of the Christian Church in Ethiopia for the

¹ Guidi thinks the Bible was translated into Ethiopic at the end of the Vth or at the beginning of the VIth century of our era; the various opinions on the subject are collected by Hackspill in *Zeitschrift für Assyriologie*, Bd. XI. p. 122 ff. See also Conti Rossini, *Sulla versione e sulla revisione delle sacre scritture in Etiopico*, in *Zeitschrift für Assyriologie*, Bd. X. p. 236 f.

next nine hundred years, *i.e.*, from about 500 to 1400, but little can be given. After the Muhammadans had become masters of Egypt, the power of the Christians gradually waned; and as the religion of Muhammad made its way south, following the course of the Nile, through Nubia, and so on into the Sudân, it became little by little the dominant religious power in that portion of Africa. The bishops of Ethiopia, who were always appointed by the Patriarch of Alexandria, had comparatively little communication with their religious superior in Egypt,¹ although they and their congregations clung tenaciously to the faith and doctrines of the Jacobite Church, observing its rules and ceremonies with almost fanatical zeal; and they failed to develop or to govern their Church on progressive lines. An occasional mission from an Ethiopian king to Alexandria or Jerusalem, and the visit of some foreign envoy to Ethiopia, were the chief links which bound Ethiopia to the rest of the world. Notwithstanding its isolation, the Ethiopian Church, through its inherent conservatism, resisted the growing influence of Islam, and kept its hold on the Christian faith in a remarkable manner; its people obeyed their spiritual rulers blindly, and at times the affairs of the State were directed almost entirely by the bishops and priests. One good effect of this was the growth of a wide-spread interest in Christian literature, and a renewed activity in the production of Ethiopic versions of foreign religious and profane works. It is

¹ See Guidi, *Le Traduzioni degli Evangelii in Arabo e in Etiopico*, p. 34, where the dates of the various communications between the two Churches in the Xth, XIth, and XIIth centuries are summarized.

probable that about this time, *i.e.*, in the XIth century, an attempt was made to make a translation of the Old and New Testaments which should be more accurate than the one then in use. Of the works of the period, however, none has come down to us, but we may perhaps assume that illustrated manuscripts of the Bible had found their way into Ethiopia. As the Ethiopians always considered Jerusalem to be the home and source of their religion, it is probable that such manuscripts would come to them from Syria as well as from Egypt; the influence of the Byzantine painters and architects upon their churches, and buildings, and pictures in manuscripts, will thus be explained. As we shall see later on, certain pictures in Ethiopic MSS. are derived almost entirely from manuscripts written in Spain or Portugal, which, I believe, could only have come into Ethiopia, by means of the Portuguese, early in the XVIth century.

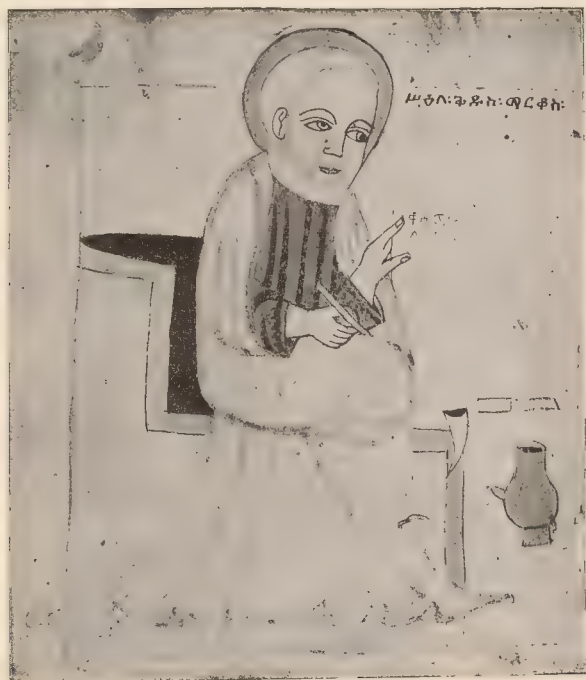
It is impossible to say when the Ethiopian scribes began to illustrate their manuscripts with coloured pictures, but, judging by the series which have come down to us, it can hardly have been before the end of the XIVth, or beginning of the XVth century. The manuscripts known to us which have any claim to be considered the work of the XIVth century are extremely few, and those which were copied during the XVth century do not probably exceed twenty in number; as Wright has said (*Catalogue of the Ethiopic MSS.*, p. vi), "the great bulk of our Ethiopic manuscripts are of the XVIIth, XVIIIth, and XIXth centuries."

The Ethiopian artist devoted his artistic skill to the illustration of the narrative of the Old and New Testaments, and he never tired

of painting scenes in the life of our Lord, and in the histories of the martyrs and saints. His palaces are the palaces of Southern Europe; his churches are the churches of Constantinople, Italy, and Spain; the dress of the Virgin Mary is the garb of the European nun; Christ is made to wear crown and robes similar to those of the emperors of the East; the angels are the angels of the mosaics and frescoes of Italy and Spain; in short, everything which the artist could copy from foreign sources he copied. In the earliest period of Ethiopian art the artist made the figures of our Lord and the Virgin Mary to resemble those of his archetypes as closely as possible, but, little by little, both Son and Mother were depicted as Ethiopians—with all the attributes and personal characteristics of the race. The scenery of the pictures is, however, always Ethiopian, and the animals, birds, reptiles, etc., are faithful copies of the creatures with which he was familiar in his daily life. The pictures which illustrate the lives of saints are, moreover, of considerable interest, because they include objects of the shape and form of which we should, otherwise, be ignorant.

The following set of half-tone illustrations, taken from Ethiopic MSS. in the British Museum, will give a general idea of the skill and style of the Ethiopian artist, and enable the reader to compare his work with that of his Byzantine teacher.¹ Two of the MSS. from which these are copied belong to the XVth century; two to the XVIIth century, one being dated in a year=A.D. 1664-5; and five to the XVIIIth century.

¹ A list of the principal works dealing with the history of Byzantine art, and of those which give illustrations of mosaics, paintings, buildings, enamels, manuscripts, etc., will be found in Krumbacher, *Geschichte der Byzantinischen Litteratur*, Munich, 1890, p. 30.



1. "Portrait of St. Mark."


This portrait is taken from Orient. 507, fol. 46*b*; the MS. measures about 13 in. by 10, and was written in the XVth century. It contains the four Gospels, and at the beginning of each Gospel is a portrait of the author. The face of the saint is painted red, the halo about his head is yellow, his under garment is red, and his upper garment is blue. In his right hand he holds the reed or pen (called *běřě*), and in his left a piece of parchment upon which are written

the first two words of the first verse of the first chapter of his Gospel. In the framework of the chair hangs his ink-horn, and close by are the pen box and a water jar. This portrait is, beyond doubt, faithfully copied from some foreign Evangelium; with it compare the Burney MS. of the Greek Gospels of the XVth century (British Museum) No. 19, fol. 63*b*. The chair in which the Evangelist sits is, manifestly, of a class quite unknown in Ethiopia. It will also be noticed that the artist has made no attempt to fill up the background and put a border round the picture, as was the custom in later days; the perspective is, as usual in Ethiopic pictures, bad.



2. Ornamental Border.

This border is taken from Orient. 480, fol. 120a, col. 2; the MS. measures about 18 $\frac{1}{4}$ in. by 14 $\frac{1}{8}$ in., and was written in the XVth century. It contains the Octateuch, i.e., Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus,

Numbers, Deuteronomy, Joshua, Judges, and Ruth, and the beginning of each book, except one, is ornamented with a border in red and black. The interlaced border, of which the above is an excellent example, is found in every country where baskets are made, or where plaited work of any description is done. Here we see that the artist was able to make definite symmetrical patterns out of the interlacings. The cross  in the lower part of the narrow border on the left suggests Coptic influence. Similar red and black borders are found in Orient. 678, a XVth century MS. containing the "Contendings of the Apostles."¹

¹ I have published the full text of the MS. under this title

Nos. 3—9 are from Orient. 510; this MS. measures about $17\frac{3}{4}$ in. by 16 in., and was written in the thirty-fourth year of the reign of Fâsiladas, A.D. 1667. It contains the four Gospels, each of which begins with a portrait of the Evangelist with his emblem; scattered throughout the volume are several pictures.



3. The Nativity (Orient. 510, fol. 8b).

The background of this picture is white; the whole scene is enclosed within roughly drawn double lines. The Christ-Child lies in an oval crib or basket lined with straw; above, in Ethiopic, are the words "Jesus lying in the stable." On the left, dressed in blue and red garments, is the Virgin Mary, and on the right is Joseph; by the side are an ass and an ox, and above, seated on the clouds, are three angels. It will be noticed that the building behind Mary is European in style, and that the faces of Mary and Joseph are not those of Ethiopians.



4. The Slaughter of the Innocents (*Orient.* 510, fol. 106).

Here the slaughter of the Innocents is being carried out in a courtyard, along one side of which runs a portico supported on arches. The murderers are armed with short, straight swords with cross-bars, and with the long, curved swords which are found all over Southern Europe and Syria in the Middle Ages; they wear close-fitting caps with small shawls bound round them, short-sleeved long tunics fastened round the waist, and shoes. The beheading of the dead seems to suggest Ethiopian, or at least Eastern influence; but the whole scene is full of movement, and unlike the stiff productions of the Ethiopian artist when he draws upon his own imagination.



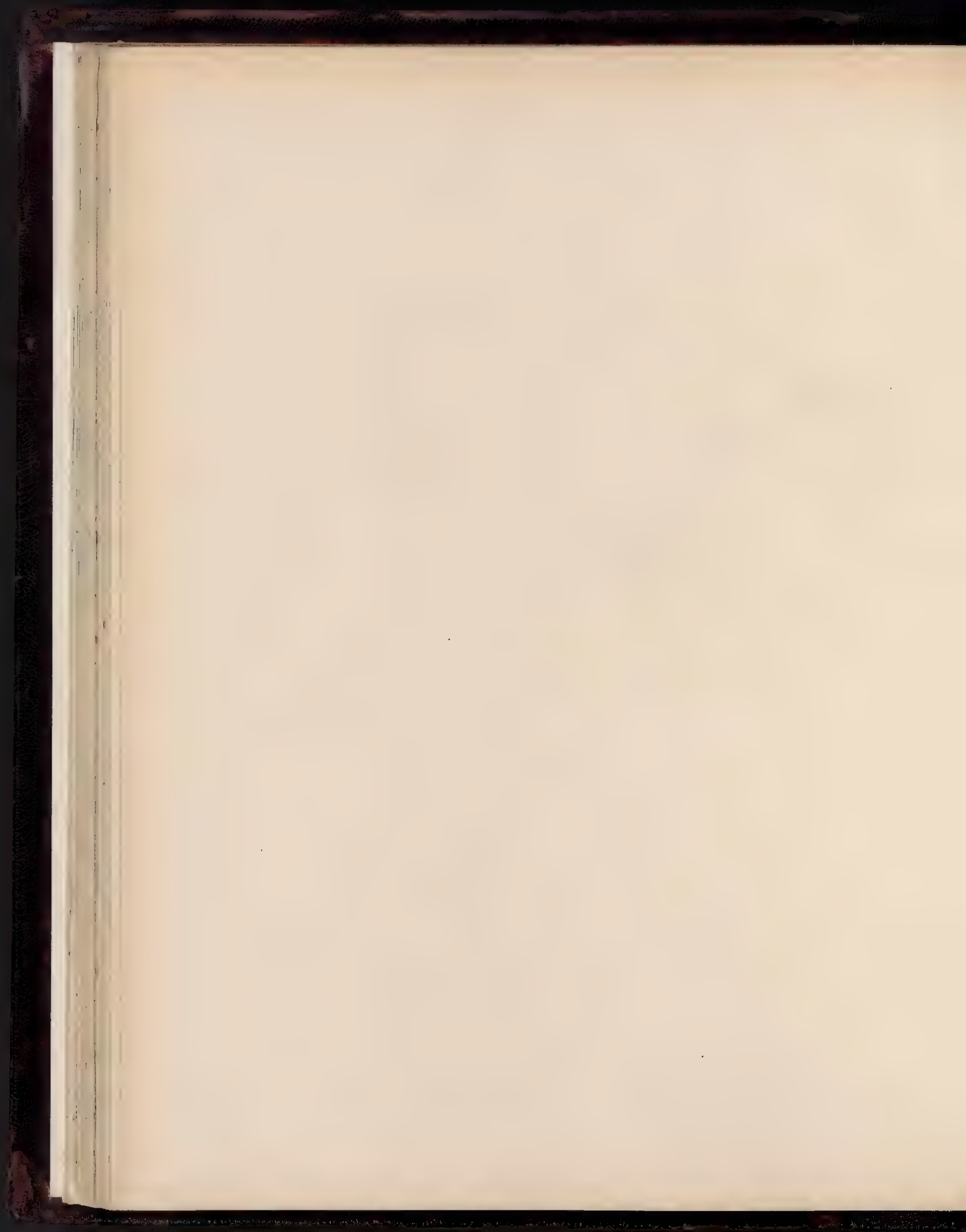
5. The Temptation of Christ in the Desert (Orient. 510, fol. 126).

Our Lord is seated by the side of a tree with bright green leaves and red fruit, and Satan, in the form of an elderly man with closely-cut hair and pointed beard, is offering a stone to Him. Satan wears a cassock and cloak, painted red and yellow respectively, and has claws to his feet instead of nails. Behind him, with hands raised, is an attendant fiend with horns, wings, tail, and claws; Satan is usually depicted in the form of such a fiend, and his appearance as an elderly man is most unusual. The above scene illustrates the verse, "And when the tempter came to Him he said, If thou be the Son of God, command that these stones be made bread" (St. Matthew, IV. 3). The Ethiopic title is "How Satan tempted our Lord in the desert."



6. Christ's entry into Jerusalem on an ass (Orient. 510, fol. 52a).

This scene illustrates the verses, "On the next day much people . . . took branches of palm trees, and went forth to meet him, and cried Hosanna: . . . And Jesus, when He had found a young ass, sat thereon" (St. John, XII. 12-14); "And a very great multitude spread their garments in the way" (St. Matthew, XXI. 8). In the Ethiopic title the Sunday on which this took place is called "The day of Hosanna," i.e., the day when the multitude cried out ከሆረኛዎች "Save, I pray."





7. The Last Judgment (Orient. 510, fol. 62b).

Nos. 7 and 8 are intended to form one scene, though they occupy two pages in the manuscript. The central figure in No. 7 is God Almighty seated on a throne with His angels round about Him on the right hand and on the left; in His right hand is a staff with flags attached to it. The Ethiopic text on His right refers to the group of saints below it and reads, "How our Lord will say unto the righteous, 'Come ye to Me, ye blessed of My Father'"; and that on His left refers to the naked and black sinners below it and reads,

"How He will say to the sinners, 'Depart ye from Me, cursed ones'." At His feet, lying upon his back, is the "Devil, the lover of wickedness," with wings, horns, and claws, and a hairy, forked tongue, and a tail, the end of which is in the form of a serpent's head; close by him are two fiends lying prostrate.



8. "Sheol, the dwelling-place of devils" (Orient. 510, fol. 63a).

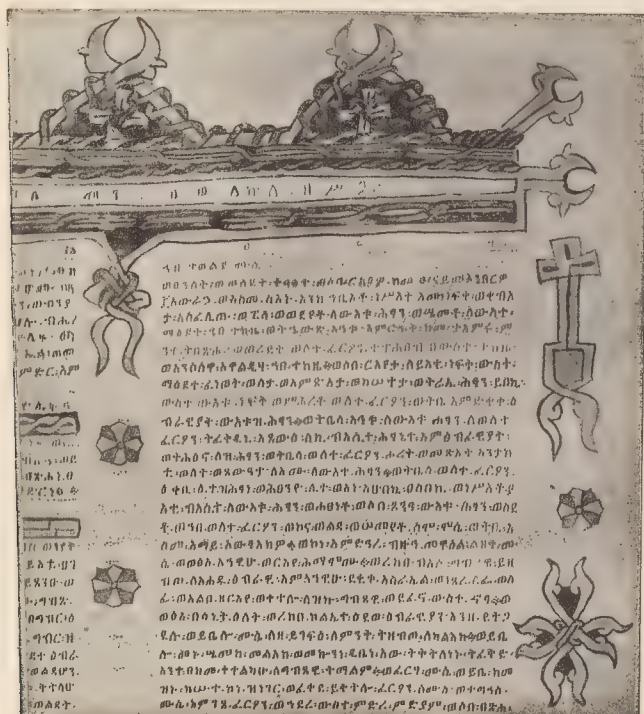
In No. 8 we see how three "fiends draw the souls of sinners with chains of fire to cast them into Gehenna." It is noteworthy that the right leg of each fiend terminates in a claw, and the left in a hoof. The tongues of fire which shoot up from the pit of fire, or Sheol, are coloured light and dark red alternately; Sheol is not the dwelling-place of the Devil, but of the fiends who are intended by God to carry out his behests. The souls of the wicked, as well as those of the righteous, preserve the forms of the bodies in which they lived when upon the earth.



9. The Crucifixion (Orient. 510, fol. 72a).

The scene of the Crucifixion is a favourite one with all Ethiopian artists, and usually one copied from the other as far as his ability would allow him to do so. Above the cross, fastened to a peg, is a label intended to represent the legend in Hebrew, Greek, and Latin, which was affixed to it. The two thieves are fastened to their crosses in unusual attitudes. On the right hand of our Lord is the Virgin Mary, and on His left is Saint John. Between the Virgin and the cross stands the soldier Longinus, who pierced our Lord's side as

He hung upon the cross, and spat in His face, and smote Him on His cheek. Tradition asserts that it was he who had lain for eight and thirty years on a bed of sickness, and that Christ, Who saw him waiting to be put into the water of the pool of Bethesda, told him to take up his bed and walk, and so cured him. Afterwards, seeing him in the temple, Christ said unto him, "Behold, thou art made whole; sin no more, lest a worse thing come unto thee" (St. John, V. 1-14). The Crusaders are said to have found the body of Longinus in the church of St. Peter at Antioch at the end of the XIth century.



10. Ornamental borders and marginal decorations.
(Orient. 481, fol. 21a).

Nos. 10-12 are from Orient. 481; this MS. measures 14 $\frac{3}{4}$ in. by 14 in., and was written in the latter half of the XVIIth century. It contains the Octateuch, the four Gospels, the Canons of various Councils, and several other documents. The above is a specimen of the border and ornaments, painted in blue, red, green, and yellow,

which adorn the first page of each section, and shews that some foreign influence was at work on the scribes and artists, which caused them to abandon the old plaited-work border which is found in the MSS. of the XVth century. The Ethiopic letters are beautifully formed and very carefully copied.



11. The Baptism of Christ by St. John (Orient. 481, fol. 101b).

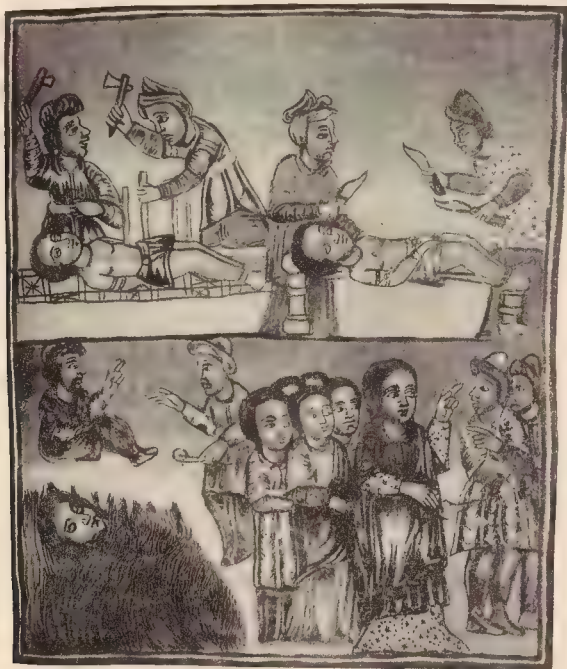
Here it will be noticed that the background of the picture is filled up, and that it is enclosed within an ornamental border. A space behind our Lord is left blank to show the outline of His halo and Person. The tree is painted a yellowish-brown colour upon a blue background, and the three angels have a background of green; the fish are gray and have yellow eyes, and swim in very blue water. St. John wears short pantaloons as well as the traditional camel's-hair garment.



12. God Almighty, the Ancient of Days (Orient. 481, fol. 110a).

The centre figure in this picture is God Almighty, the Ancient of days, and is intended to illustrate the verse in Daniel (VII. 9), "I beheld till the thrones were cast down, and the Ancient of days did sit, whose garment *was* white as snow, and the hair of his head like the pure wool: his throne *was like* the fiery flame, *and* his wheels *as* burning fire." The beings round about Him are intended to be

the "living creatures" seen by Ezekiel, who thus describes them :—
"As for the likeness of their faces, they four had the face of a man, and the face of a lion on the right side; and they four had the face of an ox on the left side; they four also had the face of an eagle." (Ezekiel, i. 10). The pictures in this MS. are unlike any others known to me, and a careful examination of the Spanish MS. No. 11,695, fol. 86*b*, etc., shews that they were undoubtedly taken from Spanish originals. The Spanish MS. referred to is dated A.D. 1109, and is of the greatest importance for the study of the origin of pictures in Ethiopic MSS.



13. The torturing of St. George.

This picture is taken from Orient. 713, fol. 48*a*; the MS. measures 13 $\frac{3}{4}$ in. by 12 $\frac{1}{2}$ in., and was written early in the XVIIIth century. It contains the discourse of Theodotus of Ancyra upon St. George of Cappadocia, the history and martyrdom of the saint, and the seventy-nine miracles which he wrought. The background of the picture is painted green and yellow, and the border is red. In the upper register we see stakes being driven into the body of the saint,

and gashes with knives being inflicted upon him; in the lower register he is being burnt in the fire, and yet through Christ he comes to life again, safe and sound. The scenes are characteristic of the pictures which illustrate the histories of martyrdoms.



14. Outline illustrations.

This group of outline illustrations is from Orient. 647, fol. 140b; the MS. measures 14 $\frac{7}{8}$ in. by 12 in., and was written in the first half of the XVIIIth century. It contains the fifty-nine Miracles of the Blessed Virgin Mary; the spaces for the pictures throughout the volume are blank. The scenes illustrate a miracle which the Virgin works by means of a bird, and the drawing is superior to that usually found in MSS. of the period.



15. The devils flee before Takla Hâymânôt.

Nos. 15-17 are taken from Orient. 728, foll. 56*a*, 149*b* and 181*a*; the MS. measures 13½ in. by 11½ in. The first part of it was written in the reign of King Iyâsû II., who reigned from A.D. 1730 to 1755; the second part was written somewhat later. The volume contains the Life and Acts of Takla Hâymânôt, and twenty of his miracles, and the Acts of Philip of the city of Zemâ. It is remarkable for being bound in covers made of copper-gilt, each



16. The devils which attacked the saint in the fire flee at his rebuke.

cover having three crosses engraved upon it in outline. The illustrations are numerous, but the backgrounds are painted in such a dark red colour that the reproduction of any of them by photography has been a matter of difficulty. The MS. has been much read, and has suffered somewhat by use, but this is hardly to be wondered at when the importance of the saint Takla Hâymânôt is considered. He is said to have introduced the monastic life into Ethiopia early in the VIIth century, and he endeavoured to make it in every respect a copy of the monastic life led by the ascetic Antony



17. (a) A red-hot iron being applied to the eye of the saint.
 (b) The saint visited by two lions.

and his successors in Egypt. He was the first Abbot of the famous Monastery of Libânos. His life is extant in two versions, the one which was current in his own monastery, and the other that of Wâldebba. The latter, which is the older, has been edited and translated by Conti Rossini in *Memorie della Classe di scienze morali, storiche, e filologiche*, Vol. II. Parte 1a of the Reale

Accademia dei Lincei under the title *Il Gadla Takla Hâymânôt*. For notices of the saint see Basset, *Études sur l'Histoire d'Éthiopie*, Paris, 1882, p. 99; Ludolf, *Hist. Aethiop.*, iii. cap. 5. § 15; Conti Rossini, *Appunti ed Osservazioni sui re Zâguê e Takla Hâymânôt*, Rome, 1895, p. 33ff; Guidi, *Le Traduzioni degli Evangelii in Arabo e in Etiopico*, Rome, 1888, p. 34; etc.

In No. 15 we see a number of devils mounted on wolves coming to do evil to Takla Hâymânôt, but when the saint exhibits the cross to them they at once take to flight. In No. 16 the saint admonishes the devils from the midst of the fire, and they also take to flight. In No. 17 a red-hot iron is being applied to the eye of a saint in the presence of the king or governor, and below we see him visited by two lions, which, however, do homage to him. It is noteworthy that the same kind of bellows as here represented is in use to the present day in the Sûdân.

The following fourteen illustrations, Nos. 18-31, are taken from Orient. 646, which measures $11\frac{5}{8}$ in. by $9\frac{3}{8}$ in., and was written in the



18. St. George spearing the Dragon (fol. 1*b*).

year of the world 7231=A.D. 1739. It contains fifty-five miracles of the Blessed Virgin Mary. The volume is illustrated by a large number of carefully coloured pictures, and as they represent scenes which are not found in MSS. of the Old and New Testaments and other works, a liberal selection is here given.

The MS. begins with No. 18, a fairly typical representation of the slaying of the Dragon by Saint George; this picture occurs in the MS. because the Ethiopians believed that St. George was often sent on errands of mercy by the Virgin Mary. He is here mounted on a white horse and armed with a spear, the handle of which terminates in a cross. The Dragon, which is painted green, red, and blue, is depicted in the usual way, with a forked tongue, scaly body, feet and wings and a curly tail; the saint's victory is watched by an angel in a tree.



19. The Virgin and Child (fol. 2a).

No. 19 is one of the handsomest pictures in the volume. The Virgin is enthroned with the Child, and two angels, or archangels, hold up behind her drapery made of some costly stuff. Mother and Child are arrayed in flowered silk, the design of which suggests a Persian original. At her feet lies Joseph (?).



20. The Virgin saving the artist (fol. 17*b*).

A painter was once painting pictures in a church, and he drew so terrible a picture of the Devil and Hell that Satan appeared and remonstrated with him; the painter paid no heed to his words. Satan next threatened to throw down the scaffold upon which the painter was seated unless he stopped work, and when no attention was paid to the threat he did so. The painter fell, and would have been dashed to pieces on the ground had not a statue of the Virgin put out its hand and caught him as he was falling. Satan is seen sitting in the top left hand corner of the picture, and near him are three angels.



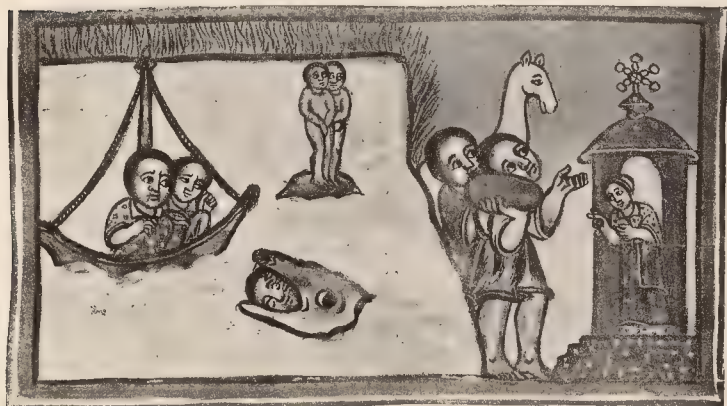
21. The Virgin and the sick man (fol. 19a).

A certain man lay sick in a hospital where, on the east wall, there was a picture of the Virgin Mary. Having wished one day that he could be baptized in the Jordan, the figure of the Virgin stepped out of the picture and carried the sick man to the Jordan, and having been thus baptized he recovered from his sickness, and came back to his own land safe and sound.



22. Zacharias and the Virgin (fol. 22*a*).

A certain man called Zacharias made a journey into the desert, and was followed by thieves who intended to rob and perhaps to kill him. At a certain place the Virgin appears unto him, and he appeals unto her in such terms that each time he speaks a rose falls from his mouth. These flowers the Virgin lays in her bosom.

23. The Shipwreck (fol. 25*b*).

Three men set out in a ship to cross the sea, but, being overtaken by a violent storm, they are in great peril. One of the three makes a vow that if the Virgin Mary delivers them out of their danger he will give to her shrine a camel-load of dates. One of his companions rebukes him for calling upon the Virgin, and as a result the boat is capsized by the wind, and all three are thrown into the sea; the man who made the objection to the appeal to Mary is at once swallowed by a sea-monster, but the other two men escape to a rock and are saved. When they reach the land they fulfil their vow and bring the camel-load of dates to Solomon, the Abbot of the Monastery of Ḳalmân.

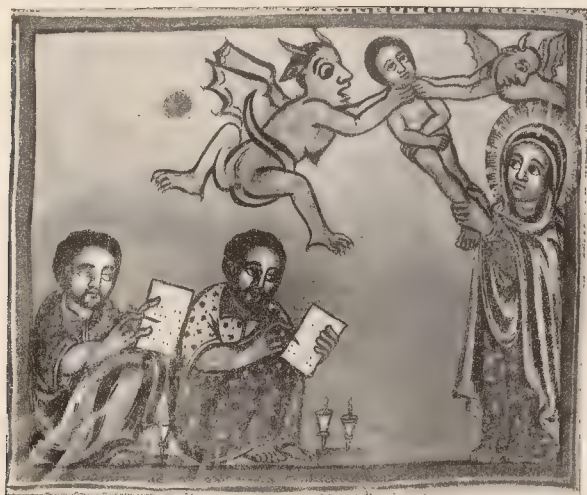


24. The Virgin and the sinking monastery (fol. 27*a*).

A certain monk was lying asleep one night, when the Virgin appeared to him and told him to build a house in her name, and in due course he did so. Unfortunately, he built it so near the edge of a river that a portion of it began to subside slowly into the water, and the whole building would have soon disappeared. One night the Virgin appeared while the monks were asleep, and lifted up the house, and strengthened the foundations of it in such a way that it remained firm ever after.

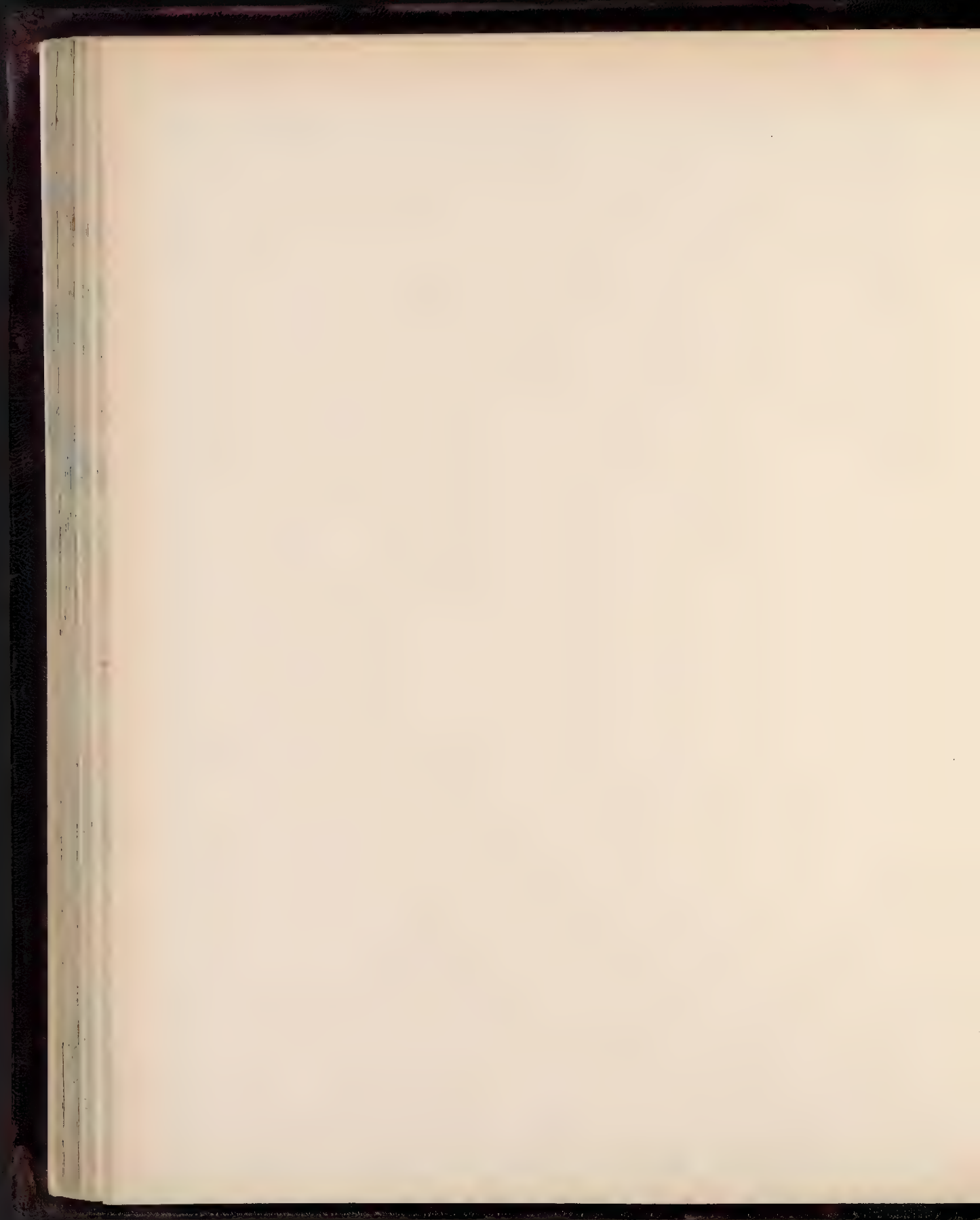
25. The Virgin and the wounded merchant (fol. 29*b*).

A wealthy merchant, whose ships were plundered frequently by sea-robbers, set out in a ship to do battle with them; he engaged with the pirates, and received a number of wounds from the arrows of his enemies, and a dart pierced one of his eyes and remained fixed therein. The wound in his eye was so serious that he ordered his ship to return to shore, intending to be taken to the Church of the Virgin, which was situated at some distance from the sea; when he reached the shore, however, he was so ill that he could not be carried thither. In these straits they made a waxen figure of the merchant with a dart in his eye, and took it and set it before the picture of the Virgin which was in the inland church dedicated to her name. When prayers had been duly said to her, the figure of the Virgin in the picture put forth her hand and pulled the dart out of the eye of the waxen figure, and at that moment the dart came out of the eye of the merchant who was lying on the sea-shore sick unto death.



26. The Virgin and the scribe's soul (fol. 36a).

Two brothers were engaged in writing the life and miracles of the Virgin, but during the course of the work one of them committed a fault which brought him under the power of Satan. Then straightway Satan sent two fiends to carry off the soul of the scribe who had sinned, and as they were in the act of doing so, the Virgin appeared and laid hold upon it and delivered it out of their hands.





27. The Virgin and the prisoner (fol. 38a).

A certain man lay bound in fetters in prison for the sake of Christ, and when he appealed to the Virgin she appeared to him in the form of a bird, unbound him, made him lay hold upon her, flew out of the prison with him, and gave him his liberty.



28. The Virgin and the nun (fol. 51*b*).

A certain nun became with child, and the matter was reported to the bishop, who ordered faithful men to enquire into the affair. The nun took refuge at the altar in the Virgin's Chapel, and prayed for hours that she would deliver her out of her trouble. At length from exhaustion the nun fell asleep and dreamed that the Virgin appeared with the archangels Michael and Gabriel, and took the child from her; when she awoke she found that this had been actually done. The child was given to a farmer who reared him, and eventually he became a bishop.



29. The Virgin and the cannibal (fol. 63*b*).

A certain man of Hemer was a cannibal, and he ate up his wife and two children, and seventy-five other people. One day he gave a drink of water to a pilgrim who was half-dead through thirst, because the man asked for it in the name of Mary the Virgin. Shortly after this he died, and was condemned to punishment in hell, but the Virgin appealed to Christ on his behalf, and obtained permission to weigh in a pair of scales the drink of water which he had given to the beggar against the seventy-eight people whom he had devoured. When this was done, the cup of water outweighed the seventy-eight people, and the Virgin thus rescued the soul of the cannibal from the devil and from the flames of Hell.



30. The Virgin and the dog (fol. 71).

One day, when the Virgin Mary and two women were seated talking together in the desert, a thirsty dog came up to them and tried to drink out of the water pot, but the two women drove him away with big sticks. Then the Virgin took the dog away with her to a distance, and having prayed, obtained water from heaven which she gave to the dog to drink in one of her shoes.



31. The Annunciation (fol. 84a).

The archangel Gabriel appearing to the Virgin Mary, who has just risen from her knees on the praying-stool, and presenting to her the lily.



32. Saint Simeon receiving our Lord.

This picture is from Orient. 620, fol. 1*a*; the MS. measures $16\frac{7}{8}$ in. by $14\frac{1}{4}$ in., and was written during the reign of Iyâsû II. and his mother Walatta Gîyörgis, A.D. 1730-55. It contains the forty-two

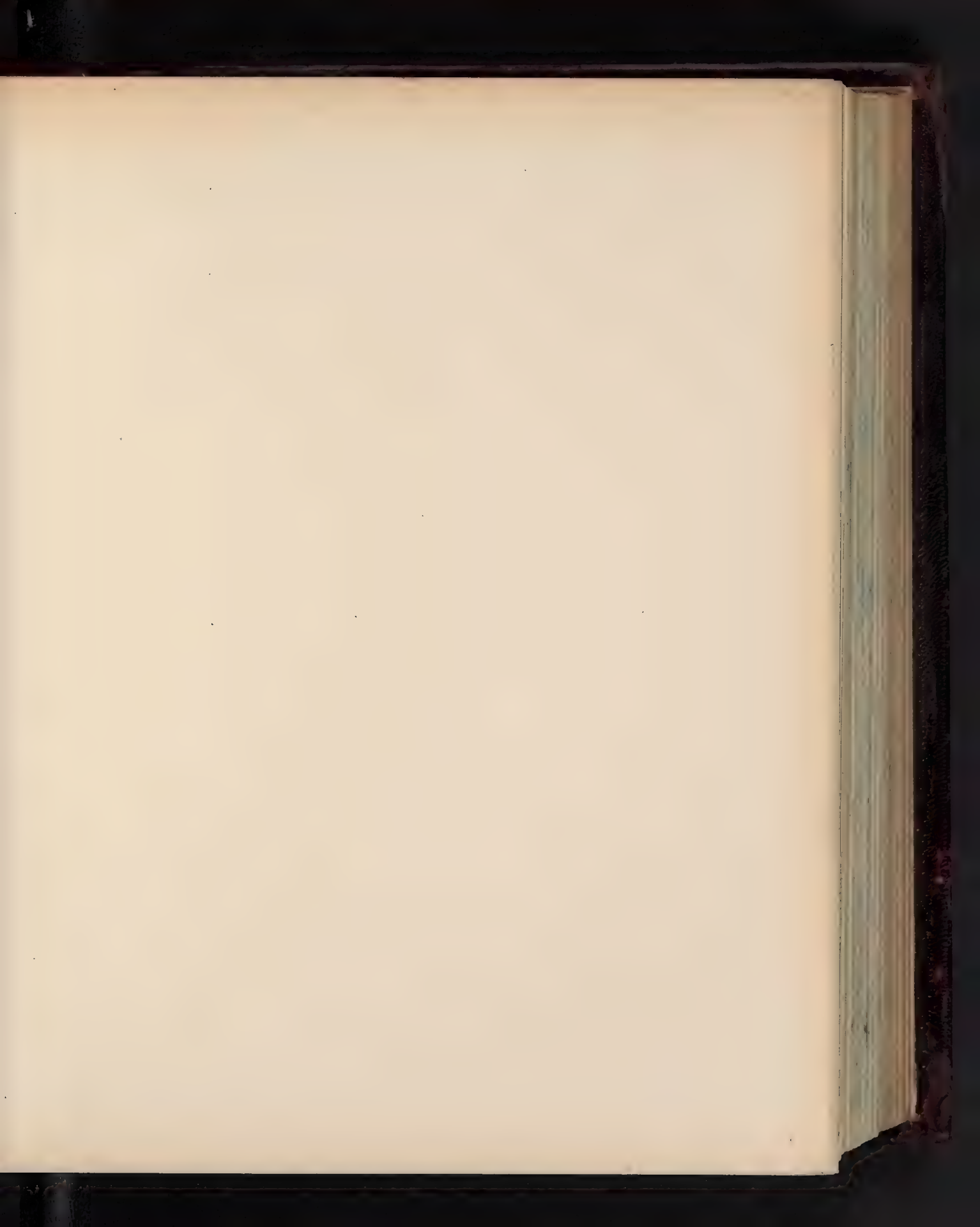
miracles of our Lord. The picture here given illustrates St. Luke, ii. 28:—"Then took he him up in his arms, and blessed God, and said, Lord, now lettest thou thy servant depart in peace, according to thy word:" etc. The style of the artist's work is different from anything which we have hitherto seen, and is probably unique. At the end of the XVIIIth and at the beginning of the XIXth century, cheap pictures are said to have been introduced into Ethiopia from Europe, with disastrous effect upon native art.

This series of pictures from Ethiopic MSS. of various periods may be fittingly closed by an excellent reproduction from a painted wooden panel upon which is depicted the funeral of King John.¹ In the upper register are a score of footmen, armed with guns, shields, and swords; and Râs Alula's body-servant, armed like the footmen, and carrying his master's umbrella; these are followed by Râs Alula, King John's commander-in-chief. Next comes King John on horseback, followed by a servant bearing a fly-flapper. After the king rides Bishop Athanasius, and the rear is brought up by a number of horsemen armed after the manner of the footmen. In the middle register are (1) King John's groom, armed like a soldier, leading a spare horse richly caparisoned; (2) King John's servant, also armed; and (3) a company of footmen. In the lower register, mounted on richly caparisoned horses, ride Dastar Tasamma*, Râs Burru, Râs Mikâêl,* Dastar Tadla, Râs Gabra Rîdan,* and Râs Hagôs.* In the little tablet to the right are thirteen lines of Ethiopic

¹ It was painted by an Abyssinian artist living in Cairo in 1894. King John began to reign in 1868, and was killed in a battle with the Dervishes in 1889.

* Wearing a lion's mane on his head.

which read, "All is vanity. All is vanity. All is vanity. The abiding in this world is fleeting and passeth quickly away." Then follow the words, "Picture of the soldiers of the King of Kings, John of Ethiopia, the King of Zion, the son of Abbâ Cyril, the Archbishop, who sitteth on the throne of Mark, the orthodox one, our chief, and our father, and our teacher, and our shepherd, and our grace; may the Redeemer of the world receive him, that is to say John the King, and may the angel of mercy cleave unto him. Amen. Picture of his soldiers and governors. The world is a fleeting thing, and the desire [thereof] is fleeting."





THE FUNERAL OF JOHN

From a painted wooden panel in the palace of Râs Alula.

Upper Register: A company of footmen, servant of Râs Alula, Râs Alula, Bishop Athanasius, and a company of horsemen.

Middle Register: King John's groom leading a spare horse, armed guard.

Lower Register: King John's generals—Dastar Tasamma, Râs Burrû, Râs

Ethiopic Text: Description of the picture.



, KING OF ABYSSINIA.
 of Col. F. R. Wingate, C.B., D.S.O., R.A.
 g John's Commander-in-Chief, King John and servant with fly-flapper,
 a company of footmen.
 àël, Dastar Tadla, Râs Gabra Rîdan, and Râs Hagôs, on horseback.

THE
HISTORY OF TAKLA MÂRYÂM

WHO WAS SURNAMED

MABÂ' ŞĖYÔN.

INTRODUCTION.

THE text of the history of Takla Mâryâm printed in this volume is edited from the Lady Meux Manuscript No. 1. The MS. is of vellum, about $12\frac{3}{4}$ in. by $10\frac{1}{4}$, and contains 154 leaves. Each page, when not occupied by a picture, contains two columns of fine bold writing. The title and the first few words of each section are written in red. The MS. is bound in stout wooden boards covered with leather stamped with a cross and a border formed of annules; the inside of the boards is not ornamented with brightly coloured silk as usual, but is plain. From the colophon (see fol. 87*a*) we learn that the manuscript was written at the expense of one Takla Hâymanôt, who hoped thereby to obtain the saint's blessing for himself and for his wife Walatta Şeyôn. We may note in passing that the wife's name has been carefully erased throughout, with the exception of one place. The scribe's name was Mekêh Gîyôrgîs ጸክሐ ጊዮርጊስ and one Ignatius is also mentioned in the colophon; it is probable that the latter was the artist who painted the pictures in the volume. We have no means of ascertaining the exact date when the MS. was written, but there is little doubt that it is the work of the XVIIth century. The words of the Ethiopic text are full of peculiarities of spelling, and in the printed copy of the text I have, with the exception of a few misprints, given them just as I found them. The construction of the sentence is, at times, perplexing,

and it seems as if the history of Takla Mâryâm must have been originally written in Arabic; the narrative is often involved, and I am doubtful if I have grasped the meaning of some passages in it. The life of Takla Mâryâm, surnamed Mabâ' ŠĒyôn, is illustrated by the following pictures:—

- Pl. I. Fol. 4a. A priest sitting in the church and reciting the life and miracles of Mabâ' ŠĒyôn to a congregation of men.
- Pl. II. Fol. 7b. Mabâ' ŠĒyôn being nursed by his mother ŠĒyôn Tekûn.
- Pl. III. Fol. 8a. 1. Mabâ' ŠĒyôn shewing the *eikôn* to his father.
2. Mabâ' ŠĒyôn with the *cikôn* on his breast.
3. Mabâ' ŠĒyôn learning to read the Book of Psalms.
- Pl. IV. Fol. 9b. 1. Mabâ' ŠĒyôn sucking the blood from the wounded toe of the young man who has received the Eucharist.
2. Mabâ' ŠĒyôn taking in a basin and swallowing what had been vomited by the young man who has just received the Eucharist.
- Pl. V. Fol. 13b. 1. Gabra Krĕstôs the anchorite and his servant receiving Mabâ' ŠĒyôn.
2. Gabra Krĕstôs embracing Mabâ' ŠĒyôn.
3. Gabra Krĕstôs teaching and exhorting Mabâ' ŠĒyôn.
- Pl. VI. Fol. 14b. 1. Abbâ Gabriel in his church.
2. Mabâ' ŠĒyôn receiving the mark of the priesthood from Abbâ Gabriel the Bishop in the presence of the brethren.
- Pl. VII. Fol. 16a. Mabâ' ŠĒyôn administering the Eucharist and admonishing the recipients not to bite the bread but to swallow it unbidden, for the Virgin Mary, who has appeared with tears running down her face, has told him that she is greatly moved when the body

of her Son is bitten by the teeth of those who receive the Eucharist.

Pl. VIII. Fol. 16*b*. Mabâ' Şeyôn being blessed by Saint Takla Hâymanôt at the Monastery of Libânôs (Dabra Libânôs).

Pl. IX. Fol. 18*b*. 1. Saint Takla Hâymanôt giving the bread to Mabâ' Şeyôn before the other members of the congregation.
2. Samuel the Prophet appearing to Mabâ' Şeyôn in a cloud of light.

Pl. X. Fol. 19*a*. Saint Takla Hâymanôt conversing with Mabâ' Şeyôn at the Monastery of Libânôs (Dabra Libânôs).

Pl. XI. Fol. 22*b*. Saint George riding at the command of Mary the Virgin to gather together the saints to the feast which Mabâ' Şeyôn has made in honour of her nativity.

Pl. XII. Fol. 23*a*. 1. Mabâ' Şeyôn feeding the poor and needy.
2. Mabâ' Şeyôn ministering unto the wants of his companions.
3. Mabâ' Şeyôn, accompanied by Christ and the Virgin Mary, ministering unto the saints whom Saint George has gathered together at the command of the Virgin.

Pl. XIII. Fol. 24*a*. 1. Mabâ' Şeyôn in the desert.
2. Mabâ' Şeyôn and his companion being led by night to the river by a bright star; out of the darkness the Devil appears, hissing like a snake, but he is put to flight by the Lamb of Life Who comes down from heaven in answer to the prayers of the saint.

Pl. XIV. Fol. 29*a*. 1. Mabâ' Şeyôn embracing the Christ-Child on the day of His Nativity.

2. Mabá' ŞĖyŏn offering to the Christ-Child a portion of his apparel.
 3. Mabá' ŞĖyŏn lending to another man the portion of the apparel in which the Christ-Child arrayed Himself when He came to the earth to visit him.
- Pl. XV. Fol. 30*a*. 1. Christ telling the monk in a dream that Mabá' ŞĖyŏn had lent a portion of His apparel to another man.
2. The monk rebuking Mabá' ŞĖyŏn.
 3. Mabá' ŞĖyŏn confessing to Abbá Tîmŏn what he had done.
- Pl. XVI. Fol. 30*b*. 1. Abbá Tîmŏn finds the Virgin and Child in the east end of the church.
2. The Christ-Child addressing Abbá Tîmŏn.
- Pl. XVII. Fol. 32*b*. 1. Christ, in the form of a young man, appearing to Mabá' ŞĖyŏn.
2. Christ anointing Mabá' ŞĖyŏn with the essence of His own body.
- Pl. XVIII. Fol. 36*a*. Mabá' ŞĖyŏn exhorting the priests to celebrate the death of our Lord on the twenty-seventh day of the month Magábî.
- Pl. XIX. Fol. 39*b*. 1. Christ, having taken Mabá' ŞĖyŏn to Golgotha shews him how He was crucified in the presence of the Virgin Mary and Saint John.
2. Christ conversing with Mabá' ŞĖyŏn.
 3. Mabá' ŞĖyŏn whilst watching the crucifixion falls prostrate on the ground.
- Pl. XX. Fol. 41*b*. 1. Mabá' ŞĖyŏn grinding corn and the flour falling into a jar.
2. Servant bringing ale or water for the feast.

3. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn mixing dough for the festival cakes.
4. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn carrying a bundle of wood for the fire which baked the bread.
5. Servant filling a bottle with ale or water.
6. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn ministering unto the hungry as they sit at meat.

Pl. XXI. Fol. 44a. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn exhorting the company of priests to keep diligently, and with all honour, the festival of the death of our Lord.

Pl. XXII. Fol. 45b. 1. A woman bringing her sick child to Mabâ' ŞĖyôn.
2. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn putting a piece of the holy cake into the child's mouth, whereupon he vomits a stone as black as soot and recovers at once.

Pl. XXIII. Fol. 47b. 1. A woman bringing her sick child to Mabâ' ŞĖyôn, who gives him a piece of the holy cake; the child recovers at once, and his mother vows to dedicate him to Christ's service.

2. The woman's house catching fire, one of her children is burnt to death and one of them escapes; but
3. the child who was vowed to Christ's service is found alive and well among the ruins of the burnt house.

Pl. XXIV. Fol. 49a. 1. The priests watching the fire in the bowl of flour and honey prepared for the holy cakes.
2. Christ mixing the honey and flour.
3. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn returning thanks to God.

Pl. XXV. Fol. 50b. 1. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn giving the holy cake to the barren woman.
2. The woman bringing to him two years later the two children whom she had got through his prayers.

- Pl. XXVI. Fol. 51*a*. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn giving the bread of commemoration to one of his sisters.
- Pl. XXVII. Fol. 52*a*. 1. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn with the paten of bread which he gave to his sister.
2. His sister giving the bread to the monk.
3. The monk finding the Virgin and Child in the paten.
4. The monk eating the bread afterwards.
- Pl. XXVIII. Fol. 54*a*. 1. A monk eats a second morsel of the holy cake.
2. He falls sick through eating it.
3. He dreams that two devils come and fetter him with chains.
4. He confesses his sin at the grave of the saint and recovers.
- Pl. XXIX. Fol. 57*b*. 1. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn giving one half of his offerings to the poor.
2. The Virgin Mary anointing his eyes.
3. Christ embracing Mabâ' ŞĖyôn after his self-inflicted scourging.
- Pl. XXX. Fol. 58*b*. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn is taken to the Virgin's bosom.
- Pl. XXXI. Fol. 60*b*. Christ addressing Mabâ' ŞĖyôn.
- Pl. XXXII. Fol. 61*b*. 1. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn sees the Baptism of Christ by Saint John in a vision.
2. Christ baptizing Mabâ' ŞĖyôn.
3. Christ exhorting Mabâ' ŞĖyôn.
4. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn baptizing the saints.
- P. XXXIII. Fol. 63*b*. 1. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn watching the Christ-Child exhorting the saints.
2. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn embracing the Christ-Child.

3. The Christ-Child placing the golden staff in the hands of Mabá' ŞĖyŌn.
- Pl. XXXIV. Fol. 64*a*. 1. Christ addressing Mabá' ŞĖyŌn and promising to give to him the souls which he shall bring up from hell.
2. Mabá' ŞĖyŌn rising from hell with the souls which have "swarmed upon him like bees".
- Pl. XXXV. Fol. 65*b*. 1. Christ conversing with Mabá' ŞĖyŌn.
2. Mabá' ŞĖyŌn watching Christ going up into heaven.
- Pl. XXXVI. Fol. 66*a*. 1. Mabá' ŞĖyŌn sitting in the market-place.
2. The cloth merchant.
3. The sheep dealer selling his sheep for a bar of salt.
4. The seller of ducks and chickens.
5. The sellers of butter, grain, raisins, &c.
6. Christ appearing to Mabá' ŞĖyŌn in his sleep and addressing him.
- Pl. XXXVII. Fol. 74*a*. 1. Mabá' ŞĖyŌn addressing the brethren.
2. Mabá' ŞĖyŌn and the monk conversing.
3. Mabá' ŞĖyŌn in the desert.
- Pl. XXXVIII. Fol. 75*a*. Christ, accompanied by the Virgin Mary and angels, appears to Mabá' ŞĖyŌn, and promises to shew mercy upon the country.
- Pl. XXXIX. Fol. 76*a*. 1. Mabá' ŞĖyŌn conversing with a company of men who are going to king Zara Yá'kôb.
2. King Zara Yá'kôb addressing the men who had come to him.
- Pl. XL. Fol. 77*a*. 1. Mabá' ŞĖyŌn blessing the company of men who had recently become Christians.

2. The Archangel Michael presenting Mabâ' ŞĒyŏn to Christ.
- Pl. XLI. Fol. 78*a*. 1. Angelic incense bearers at the celebration of the festival of Palm Sunday.
2. Christ conferring upon Mabâ' ŞĒyŏn the priesthood of the orders of Saint Stephen, Saint Michael the Archangel, and Saint John.
- Pl. XLII. Fol. 79*a*. 1. Mabâ' ŞĒyŏn is shewn two horses in heaven; one is intended for him, and the other for king Zar'a Yâ'qob.
2. Christ shewing to Mabâ' ŞĒyŏn the rope with which He was bound upon earth.
- Pl. XLIII. Fol. 80*a*. 1. Christ and Mabâ' ŞĒyŏn in the church.
2. The dying vision of Mabâ' ŞĒyŏn.
3. The death of Mabâ' ŞĒyŏn; Christ receiving his soul in the presence of the angels.
- Pl. XLIV. Fol. 88*a*. The angel shewing the priest the soul of Mabâ' ŞĒyŏn sitting in the middle mansion of heaven.
- Pl. XLV. Fol. 89*a*. 1. The first heaven with the saints thereof mounted on horses.
2. The angel shewing the monk the second heaven with the saints mounted on horses.
- Pl. XLVI. Fol. 90*a*. The angel shewing the monk the third heaven, and the man to whom the Lord had given much apparel prostrate before Him and the Virgin Mary.
- Pl. XLVII. Fol. 91*a*. 1. Black men leading a serpent.
2. Black and white bull.
3. Archers with bows and arrows.
4. Saint Michael commanding the Lamb to descend

and to visit angels and men; the Lamb is followed by the bull and by the men who lead the serpent.

Pl. XLVIII. Fol. 92a. 1. Christ embracing Mabâ' ŞĖyôn in the presence of the Virgin.

2. The foes of the saint attacking his dwelling.

3. Saint Michael driving away the foes of the saint.

Pl. XLIX. Fol. 93a. 1. Christ addressing the saints in heaven.

2. Christ crowning Mabâ' ŞĖyôn, and bestowing upon him ornaments of gold and precious stones, and arraying him in apparel of light.

From the introductory paragraph of the history of Takla Mâryâm, or Mabâ' ŞĖyôn, we learn that the work was called the Book of the Commemoration of the Redeemer, and that it was intended to be recited each month in the church to a congregation of men. Following this paragraph is an address to "all Christians", in which the writer exhorts them to celebrate the festival of the commemoration of the death of the Redeemer with all diligence and zeal. Those who celebrate the festival will benefit not only themselves, but also those who may be included among the number of the souls which Christ promised to give Mabâ' ŞĖyôn each month, and at each Eve of the festival. And moreover, every man who loveth to listen to the history of the saint, or who, wishing to be present in the church on the day of the presentation, accidentally is prevented, shall obtain a blessing from the Lord. The address concludes with a summary of the sufferings of Christ, and with a short prayer on behalf of Takla Hâymânôt and his wife Walatta ŞĖyôn.

Takla Mâryâm or Mabâ' ŞĖyôn was the son of wealthy and distinguished parents. His father Habta ŞĖyôn ሀብተ ጳጳስ¹ was

¹ *I. e.*, "the gift of Zion".

akin to the family of Rabban Samuel, and came from the province of Andagabtân, which was probably situated near the country of Shoa: his wife was a lady also of noble family and was called Šĕyôn Tĕkûnâ ጸዮን : ተክኑና : Having lived together in holy matrimony for several years, and being without a son, they entreated God to give them one, and promised if their prayers were answered, to call him Mabâ' Šĕyôn መባላ : ጸዮን :¹ Some little time after God heard their prayers and gave them a son. When the child was still young a priest came to his father's house, and passed the night there, and when he went on his way in the morning he left behind him by accident the picture of the Virgin and Child which he always carried about with him, and which he had hung up over his bed before he went to sleep the night before. Takla Mâryâm found the picture or *eikôn*, and pressing it to his breast, he hugged and kissed it by turns and refused to give it up to his father or to any one else; after a time his father met the stranger, who was, after some conversation on the subject, content to let the child keep it.

When the child was a few years older, and had arrived at the time when he should receive instruction, his father taught him the Psalms and the Pentateuch, and he was made a deacon.² Finding that the youth possessed a sweet voice and some natural talent for singing, his father next sent him to the Monastery of Saint John to chant³

¹ This name seems to mean "an offering of Zion".

² The qualifications required in the man who would be a deacon, and the duties which he was supposed to perform, are all set forth in the seventh section of the first part of the "Fetha Nagast" ፍተሐ : ስሥተ : which has recently been edited by my friend Ignazio Guidi of Rome (*Il "Fetha Nagast" o "Legislazione dei Re", codice ecclesiastico e civile di Abissinia*, Roma, 1897).

³ Ludolf has little good to say of Abyssinian music:—"Non multo jucundior est "Musica sacra: insuavi satis voce canunt illorum Canonici, quos ጸባጌ : vocant, inter-strepentibus, veterum Aegyptiorum ritu, crepitaculis, sistris, et crotalis, quae in festis

the Psalms¹ in the Mary Chapel. The Abbot was, at this time, called Mabâ' ŠĒyŏn, and when the youth had come under his care, the brethren decided that it was unseemly for him to be called by the same name as their master; they therefore gave him the name of Takla Mâryâm² in the monastery³. Under the direction of the monks Mabâ' ŠĒyŏn learned to write and to paint⁴, and to fast and to pray systematically.

Whilst living in the Monastery of Saint John Mabâ' ŠĒyŏn gave two proofs of his exceedingly great reverence for the bread and wine of the Eucharist, and of his zeal for the honour of Christ. A certain young man in returning from the church where he had partaken of the bread and wine, struck his toe on the way against a stone, and the blood flowed; Mabâ' ŠĒyŏn, seeing what had happened, followed him to his house, picking up the drops of blood which had fallen in the dust and swallowing them as he went, and when he arrived there he sucked the blood until it ceased to flow from the toe. Mabâ' ŠĒyŏn believed that the Body and Blood of Christ, which

"solennibus, pulsare ipsi magnates honori sibi ducunt. Accedunt tripudia et saltationes, "tanquam imitando Davidi ante arcam foederis salienti, ubi tanto strepitu terram pedibus "pulsant, ut choreas magis, quam Festum Christianum agere videantur" (Lib. iii. cap. 6. § 87—89, and see the Commentary, p. 381, No. LXI ff.).

¹ The Psalter was very highly esteemed among Abyssinians of all classes, and no book of the Bible was in greater use; it was the daily prayer-book of the monks, and girls as well as boys were taught to learn it by heart. See Ludolf, *op. cit.*, Lib. iii. cap. 5. § 35, and Commentary, p. 253.

² For examples of names compounded with Mâryâm, see Ludolf, *op. cit.*, IV. 3. 5.

³ As the boy was called Mabâ' ŠĒyŏn by his parents, according to their vow made before his birth, the monks must have given him the surname Takla Mâryâm; the text is somewhat involved here.

⁴ Ludolf thinks (Commentary, p. 562, No. IX. 3) that European children could hardly paint worse than the Abyssinian artists:—"Picturae imperitissimi Habessinî, imagines "B. M. Virginis et SS. Apostolorum, quos in libris eorum depictos vidi, tam informes "sunt, ut pueri nostri pejus vix facere possint."

the young man had just received in the church, were being dishonoured by being allowed to fall and be trodden under foot. On another occasion a young man who had just received the Eucharist felt extreme nausea and vomited; Mabâ' ŞĖyôn quickly caught in a basin what fell from him and straightway swallowed it, believing that the bread and wine had indeed become changed into Christ's own Body and Blood.

Soon after these things the parents of Mabâ' ŞĖyôn, seeing that their son had arrived at manhood's estate, sought out a maiden who should become his wife; but the young man refused to be betrothed to her, and declared that he had dedicated his manhood to the Christ and to His mother the Virgin Mary. About this time he began to fast, and to pray, and to keep vigils with great diligence, and he made strenuous endeavours to cultivate humility and patience, and the speaking of the truth, and the virtues which become the life of the ascetic. At this time also he embarked upon a life of hardship, for he gave up riding upon a horse or any other animal; he slept upon ashes instead of upon a bed; and whether awake or asleep, or sitting, standing or lying, he carried a huge stone upon him which weighed as much as a man could carry. It is true that on Sabbath days and Festivals he relieved himself of this burden, but then he spent the whole of these days in singing Psalms. Here we see that Mabâ' ŞĖyôn was imitating the ascetic labours of Coptic and Syrian monks with whose lives he was, no doubt, familiar. The Copt Shenûdi watched frequently all night in prayer, and he ate nothing but bread and salt once a day¹; Arsenius believed that one hour's sleep a day was sufficient for a healthy monk; Pachomius slept neither by day nor by night, and for fifteen years he rested in the middle of his cell

¹ Amélineau, *Monuments*, Paris, 1888, p. 8.

and leaned not against the wall; and one ascetic never drank once during the course of forty days¹.

One day a messenger came to Mabā' Šĕyŏn from the ascetic Gabra Krĕstōs, who lived in the province of Dāmāt in Ethiopia, and asked him to return with him to visit him; now Mabā' Šĕyŏn lived three days' journey from him, yet he was by Divine agency carried there in one day. When Gabra Krĕstōs had received Maba' Šĕyŏn he told him that he had already seen him in the spirit in the City of Jerusalem, whither he himself had been borne on the wings of the Spirit, and having shewn him the excellency of the life of an ascetic, he instructed him in all the works of the righteous. On his return to his native city Mabā' Šĕyŏn was consecrated a priest by Abbā Gabriel, and he henceforth ministered at the Eucharist.

When Mabā' Šĕyŏn was performing his priestly duties on one occasion, after the priest had gone to read the Gospel, he saw the covering of the paten move, and having gone to it and uncovered it he saw standing there in the place of the bread, a "veritable, white "lamb". Afterwards, when the time for giving the bread to the congregation had arrived, it was found that the lamb had disappeared, and that bread was once more in the paten. This remarkable incident happened on three successive days. On another occasion the Virgin Mary appeared in tears to Mabā' Šĕyŏn in the church at the time of the Eucharist, and asked him to beg the people not to bite and chew the bread, because the bread was her Son's living Body, and by crushing it with their teeth her "own bowels were consumed".

From the study of the lives of the ascetics we learn that the spiritual education of a monk was not complete until he had visited the shrines and places of abodes of the great leaders and teachers

¹ See my *Book of Governors*, Vol. I. p. CLIII ff.

of the ascetic life. The monks of Syria and Mesopotamia made pilgrimages to Mount Sinai, Mount Horeb, and other places sanctified by Moses, Elijah and others, and to the Scete desert, and in the IVth century, and later, Christians often made it a duty to visit all the places where Christ had lived, or where any event in His life had taken place. Imitating the ascetics of Egypt and Syria, Mabâ' Šġyôn left his own monastery and went to the ancient Dabra Libânôs, where the famous saint Takla Hâymânôt was buried. It will be remembered that Takla Hâymânôt ተክለ ሃይማኖት was one of the earliest founders of asceticism in Ethiopia, and that he flourished in the first half of the VIIth century of our era. He was the founder of the famous convent of Libânôs¹ or Dabra Libanos, and his life and miracles are extant in two recensions, the one of Dabra Libânôs², and the other of Wâldebba³. His family came from the country of Bâhr Kâgâ, and he was of the tribe of Harb Gâsê. His ancestor left his native land, and passing through Sêwâ, he came to Šêlâles and established himself in Zârârê; Takla Hâymânôt's father and mother were called Saġâ-Za'ab ጸጋ ሁለብ and Egzi'-Harayâ አግዚአ ሥላሴ. Passing over the details of the life⁴ of Takla Hâymânôt, and the influence of the monks who followed his rules and perpetuated his

¹ Dabra Libânôs was situated in the middle of the province of Shoa; see Conti Rossini, *Catalogo dei Nomi propri di Luogo dell' Etiopia*, Genova, 1894, p. 36. A list of his successors as Abbot is given by Perruchon, *Zeitschrift für Assyriologie*, Bd. XII, p. 408.

² At present unpublished; for the MSS. see Wright, *Catalogue*, p. 194ff.; Dillmann, *Catalogus*, p. 49; Zotenberg, *Catalogue*, p. 204—206.

³ The text of this recension, which is the older and more important, has been published by Conti Rossini, *Il Gadla Takla Hâymânôt secondo la Redazione Waldebbana*, Rome, 1896.

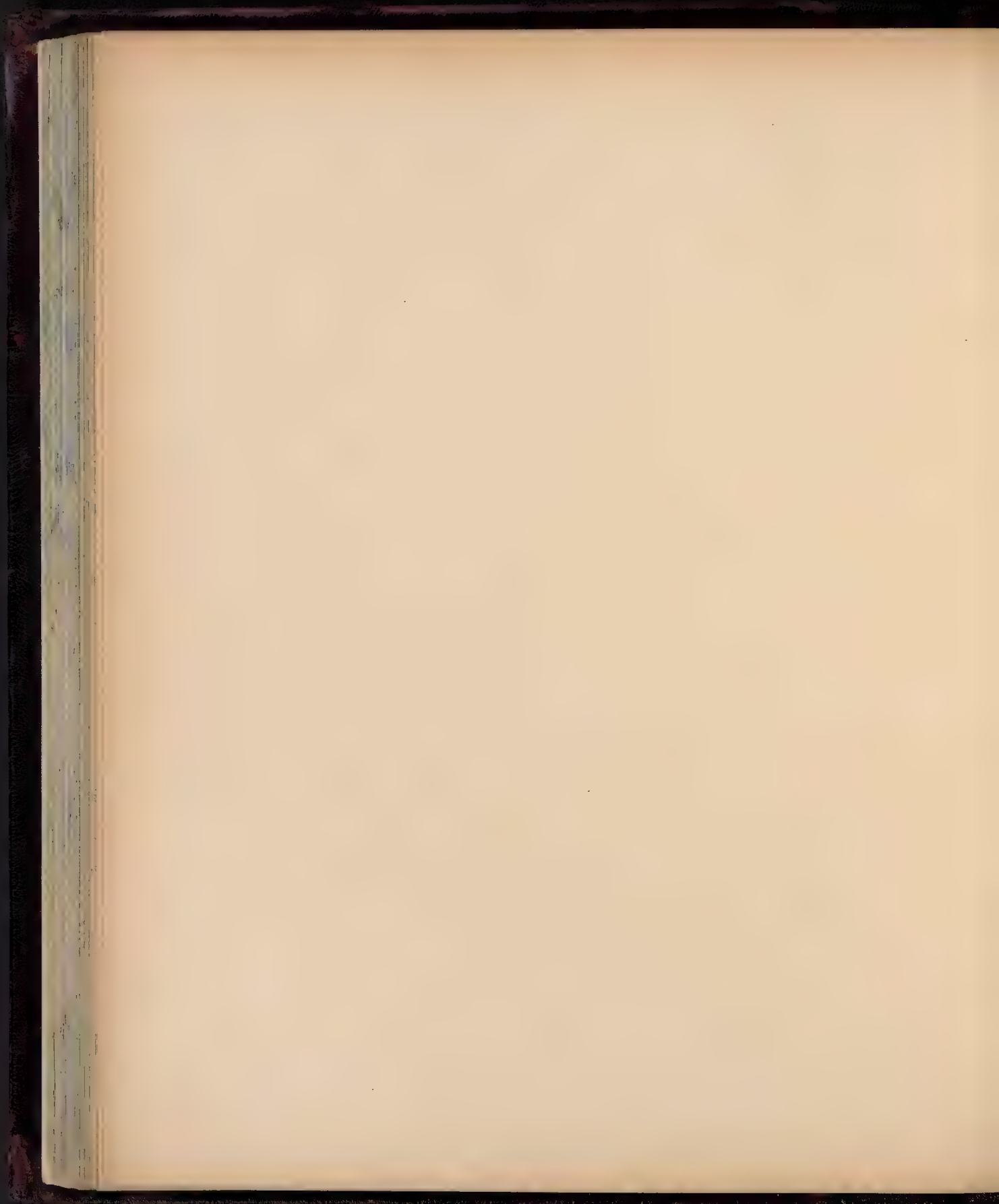
⁴ One of the most important incidents in it is described and discussed by Conti Rossini in *Appunti ed Osservazioni sui re Zâgnê e Takla Hâymânôt*, Rome, 1895.

teaching in his monastery¹, we are concerned only to note that Mabâ' ŞĒyôn visited the grave of the saint who appeared to him in the form of a man of "comely and venerable appearance", and administered unto him the bread of the Eucharist before all the priests and deacons who were there assembled. Subsequently on the twenty-ninth day of the month Tekemt², the prophet Samuel appeared unto him and encouraged him to persevere in the ascetic life. The following year, in the month of July, the Apostles appeared unto him at dawn and saluted him, and the chief of them, Peter, administered unto him the Eucharist; thus Mabâ' ŞĒyôn was blessed and comforted by saints of the Old and New Testaments, and by the chief of the saints of his own country.

Mabâ' ŞĒyôn next devoted himself to celebrating the festivals of Christ with great care and reverence; he invented festivals for the saints likewise, and made arrangements for priests to celebrate them in relays, and for the furtherance of this object he set aside one third of his substance. On one occasion, when he was celebrating the festival of the Nativity of the Virgin Mary with many priests and deacons, some of them saw Christ and His Mother present at the feast; and the Virgin sent Saint George through all heaven and earth to bring the saints together there to keep the feast with her. Another witness declared that Christ was so pleased at the honour

¹ For an account of some of the troubles which came upon this religious house, see Basset, *Études sur l'Histoire d'Éthiopie*, Paris, 1882, pp. 99, 234; and Ludolf, *Historia Aethiopica*, iii. 3. 27.

² The Ethiopic months are:—Maskarram መስከረም: September; Tekemt ጥቅምት: October; Hedâr ክር: November; Tâhshâsh ታሕሳሥ: December; Ter ጥር: January; Yakâtît ነሐሴ: February; Magâbît መጋቢት: March; Mîyâzyâ ሚያዝያ: April; Genbôt ግንቦት: May; Sanê ሰኔ: June; Hamlê ሐምሌ: July; Naḥassê ነሐሴ: August; Pâguemên ዳጉሜ: the intercalary month.



paid to His mother that He came down from heaven in a cloud of light and embraced and kissed Mabâ' ŞĖyôn. These marks of honour induced the saint to fast yet more and more, and to increase his self-inflicted tortures. He put bonds and fetters on his legs, he hung iron chains upon his sides, he girt himself about with links of iron, and on the days when he fasted he put on sackcloth. His food consisted of desert herbs, of which he partook once every three days; and the intensity of the pangs of hunger drove him into the river, where his body wasted away. One day Satan appeared unto him out of the darkness, hissing like a serpent, but when the saint had made the sign of the cross over himself a lamb, "red like unto a lion", appeared and drove the devil away.

Soon after these things, a light like that of the moon cleft the heavens, which opened wide, and like the lightning flash Christ came down from heaven in the form of a child and sat in the arms of Mabâ' ŞĖyôn, and embraced his neck and face. The saint wished to array the Child in some of his apparel, so that he might afterwards wear it and benefit by the virtue which would henceforth be transferred to it from the Child's body; and straightway the Child spat upon the garments and gave them to the saint, promising that He would never forsake him. Mabâ' ŞĖyôn did not partake of the Eucharist that day, but licked the spittle on his raiment instead.

Soon after these things Mabâ' ŞĖyôn inadvertently incurred the displeasure of the Christ-Child. A certain monk came to the saint and asked him to lend him some of his apparel, and he did so; but unfortunately among the garments which he lent him was the one in which the Christ-Child had seated Himself when He visited Mabâ' ŞĖyôn, and on which He had spit. When the Christ-Child saw what had been done, He appeared unto a monk, and ordered

him to go and rebuke Mabâ' ŠĒyôn for his careless and irreverent behaviour; and when the monk had done as he was bid, the saint went to Abbâ Šimôn, and having confessed his sin, performed the penance which was imposed upon him, and received forgiveness. By this portion of his narrative the writer of the life of Mabâ' ŠĒyôn intends to shew that Christ was willing to share apparel with him and him only. And as an instance of the closeness of the friendship which existed between the saint and the Mother of Christ he tells the story of how once, when Mabâ' ŠĒyôn was permitted to sympathize with her about her Son's sufferings when He was crucified, she asked him for the tears which he was shedding on her behalf, and put them in her apparel. But a greater honour was in store for him, for Christ appeared unto him one day, and having anointed him with the essence of His own body, imparted unto him the odour which belonged unto it.

Meanwhile, Mabâ' ŠĒyôn was pondering in his mind how he could shew love and gratitude to Christ in return for all His love to him; and after much meditation he decided to celebrate with special honour the day of the death of the Redeemer. He contended that the day of the death of each of the Apostles was carefully commemorated, but that the day of the death of Him Who was the Head of them all passed by with comparatively little notice by His followers; and that the day of Christ's death was as worthy of high honour as the day of His resurrection. He therefore directed that the people who followed him should neither buy nor sell, nor perform any work whatsoever on the day set apart for the commemoration of the death of Christ; and he persisted in the observance of the memorial day, which was kept with tears, and grief, and sorrow, notwithstanding the opposition of certain folk, who declared that Mabâ' ŠĒyôn had neither

the right nor the power to establish memorial days and laws for the keeping of the same at his good will and pleasure.

About four months after Mabâ' ŞĖyôn had established the memorial days he confided to a certain monk, in strict confidence, that in answer to his petition, Christ had re-enacted for him the scene of the crucifixion. In the twinkling of an eye Mabâ' ŞĖyôn was transported to Golgotha, where the wooden cross appeared straightway, and Christ ascended it and suffered upon it as in days of old; but the saint could not bear the agony of being a witness of the terrible scene, and sank down half dead upon the earth. Then did Christ come down from the cross and strengthen him, and He promised him to be present in the form of a "gentle child" whenever he kept the day of His death with tears and sorrow.

Soon after Mabâ' ŞĖyôn had seen these marvellous things the time for the festival of the death of the Redeemer drew nigh, and the saint began to make preparations for the same. He ground the wheat, and baked the bread, and made ale from grain, and filled the water jars, and hewed the wood for the fire and carried it to the place where the bread was to be baked; and on the twenty-seventh day of the month Magâbît (February), he kept the festival with great solemnity and ministered diligently unto the wants of the priests and deacons and those who were present thereat. In a short address he besought those present to commemorate the day of the death of the Redeemer with all honour, and to preserve themselves from the pollution of the world.

The system upon which the keeping of the festival depended is not quite clear, although Mabâ' ŞĖyôn introduced no abstruse calculations into his reckoning of it. The festival of the death of the Redeemer lasted three days, and the festival of the Resurrection lasted

seven days; from the last day of the latter festival Mabâ' ŞĖyôn reckoned the days by tens until Easter Eve came round again. On Easter Eve he used to pierce his side and fall down upon his knees in imitation of the sufferings of 'his Lord, and afterwards he was wont to make scented and ornamental bread-cakes and to break and distribute them among the sick folk who thronged to the place where he was; by these means he wrought many cures and healings.

We have seen above that Mabâ' ŞĖyôn imitated closely the life which was led by the earlier ascetics in Syria and Egypt, and how his fasts, and vigils, and self-inflicted tortures resembled those of the most earnest among those who sought God in the mountains and fastnesses of the desert. The saints of old discovered that the strenuous labours of the anchorite and recluse endowed them finally with the power of working miracles as well as the gift of healing the sick and of raising the dead at a word. The case of Mabâ' ŞĖyôn is no exception to the rule, for after he had toiled for some years in the ascetic life, he found that he had the power to work miracles, and his biographer records six which he deems sufficient to prove his spiritual excellence. In the first Mabâ' ŞĖyôn cures a sick child by means of the Eucharistic bread; in the second a sick child is healed and afterwards saved from a death by fire through the same means; in the third the flour and honey of which the bread-cakes of the Eucharist were made obtain a flavour of "hidden manna"; in the fourth a barren woman is made to give birth to two sons; in the fifth a piece of one of the Eucharistic bread-cakes is found to have turned itself into figures of Christ and the Virgin Mary; and in the sixth a priest, who, having taken through greediness a second piece of the Eucharistic bread-cake, falls seriously ill, is cured through a prayer addressed to God in the name of Mabâ' ŞĖyôn.

From the picture which illustrates the story of the last miracle we find that the sick man attributes his sickness to two devils who seize upon him, one at the head and one at the feet, and chain him, and make all his inward parts to burn like fire.

Meanwhile Mabâ' ŞĒyôn fasted and prayed strenuously, and of the scanty food which he allowed himself he gave always one half to the poor; and on the days in which he commemorated the death of the Redeemer he ate not at all, but only wept and prayed. Now by reason of his excessive weeping he began to suffer pains in his eyes, but when the disease became severe the Virgin Mary brought a vase of ointment and anointed his eyes with it, laying the unguent upon them with her finger, and healed him. And soon after these things the saint caused himself to be scourged severely, and it is said that during the Lenten fast he was beaten with whips one hundred times; once during Passion week ten thousand stripes were laid upon his back in one day, until the blood flowed from a multitude of wounds. As a reward for these sufferings Christ sustained his strength, and the Virgin Mary having healed his wounds, lifted him up into her bosom; the Christ-Child and the saint sat opposite to each other, Christ having the right breast to suck, and Mabâ' ŞĒyôn the left.

And on one occasion, during the feast of Epiphany, when the saint was baptizing the people according to his wont, suddenly our Lord appeared on the wings of the Spirit, with all His angels, and one part of the water at once turned into fire, wherein Christ first baptized Himself and then Mabâ' ŞĒyôn. Having partaken of Christ's baptism of fire, the saint was soon after visited by the Christ-Child Who carried a staff in His hands; in the conversation which followed between them the saint entreated Him to shew mercy upon the souls which were in Sheol. In answer to the petition Christ placed His

golden staff or sceptre in the hands of the saint and bade him descend into Sheol and bring up as many souls as he could carry. When Mabā' Šĕyōn arrived in Sheol, the place was rent from one end to the other, and he heard nothing but weeping, and wailing, and crying; but as soon as the souls saw him they clustered about him like bees, and he bore hosts of them up to the place where the Christ-Child stood.

When the people heard of the great spiritual powers which Mabā' Šĕyōn possessed, multitudes of them flocked to him and became his spiritual children, even as he became their spiritual father. His fame spread far and wide, and even monks journeyed distances of three days in order to consult him and to ask his advice. His spiritual success was so great that he made bold to entreat God Almighty to shew mercy upon the various cities of his country, and this act of grace was also shewn unto him.

About this time Mabā' Šĕyōn seems to have become anxious concerning a sect or body of people, whom he calls "Gāfāt" ገፋተ, and to have wondered whether they would become Christians during his lifetime or after his death. As, however, he was journeying towards Ethiopia, he met a number of them going to king Zara Yā'kōb to receive gifts from him, because they had professed their belief in the name of the Trinity and had been baptized. This statement is of special interest because it, incidentally, gives us an idea of the period in which Mabā' Šĕyōn lived. We know from the Ethiopic Chronicle published by M. René Basset¹ that king Zara' Yā'kōb was the fourth son of David, king of Ethiopia, and that he reigned thirty-four years and two months, i. e., from A. D. 1434 to A. D. 1468; Mabā' Šĕyōn, then, was born probably in the first quarter of

¹ *Études sur l'Histoire d'Éthiopie*, Paris, 1882, p. 102.

the XVth century. In the reign of Zara' Yâ'kôb several very bitter religious controversies were carried on between Abbâ George of Saglâ and the Venetian painter Francisco Branca-Leone, which resulted in the production by the former of the famous "Book of Mystery" *መጽሐፈ ጥምረት*,¹ wherein he sought to refute the opinions of Nestorius and others who held opinions unlike his own. What the particular tenets held by the "Gâfât" were I am unable to say, but it appears from our text that originally they believed neither in baptism nor in the Trinity.

Shortly after Mabâ' Şĕyôn's interview with the "Gâfât" the Lord took him up into heaven and shewed him his father ministering with the priests at the altar in the heavenly Jerusalem; in return for this act of grace he tortured himself again. He thought first of all that he would drive nails through the palms of his hands and the soles of his feet, but when he considered that these marks would easily be seen of men, he changed his plan and drove bradawls into his knees with a stone; Christ, however, appeared unto him in his sufferings, and having touched his wounds they were healed straightway. In a vision which appeared unto him at this time Mabâ' Şĕyôn also saw those who had said evil things of his king Zara' Yâ'kôb being cast into the darkness of the abyss, and two clouds, like unto white horses, whereon he was to ride side by side, and as an equal of his earthly king into the heavenly Jerusalem.

After these things Christ descended from heaven and, coming to Mabâ' Şĕyôn, shewed him the rope with which the Jews had bound and scourged Him when He was upon earth. Subsequently He promised to give the saint five thousand souls each month at the celebration of the festival of His commemoration, and three hundred

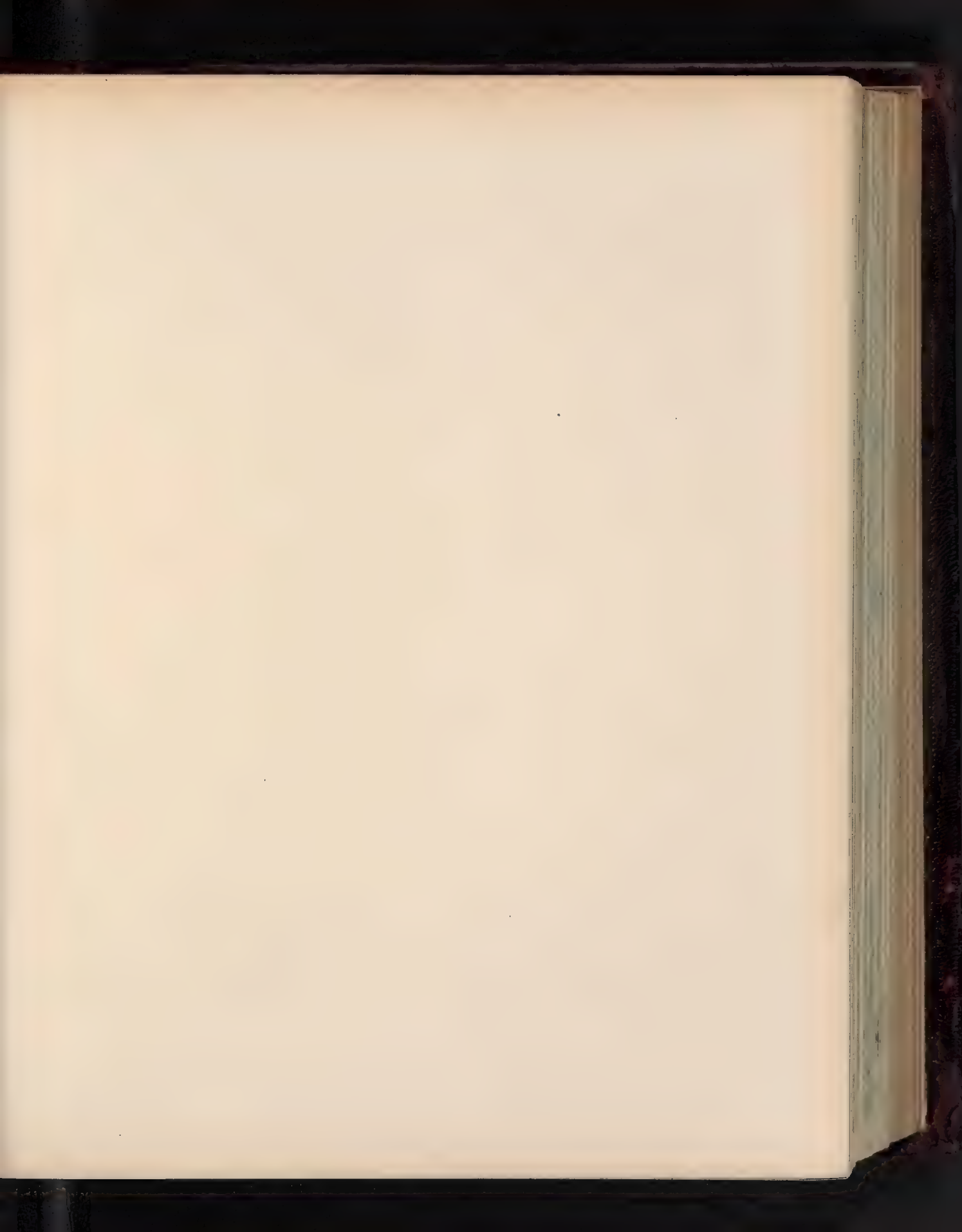
¹ See Basset, *op. cit.*, p. 12.

and forty souls each eve of the festival of His crucifixion; and afterwards He promised to shew mercy unto five thousand more souls for the sake of the Virgin Mary.

Meanwhile the day of the departure of Mabâ' ŞĒyŏn from this world was drawing nigh, and one day a monk came to him and told him that he had had warnings concerning his death for three months past; the saint received the news with resignation, saying that he had no other object upon earth except the celebration of the festival of the death of the Redeemer. He then gathered together his spiritual children and exhorted them to dwell together in the love of God and to keep His commandments; and having told them that he saw the saints urging him to come to them in the mansions above, his soul departed in peace, on the twenty-first day of the month Tēkemt (October). He was seventy-four years old when he died; he had served as a deacon for forty-seven years and as a priest for nine years, he led the life of a monk or ascetic for nine years, and for nine years he seems to have lived a life of peace.

Following the narrative of the life of Mabâ' ŞĒyŏn comes a description of his abode in heaven, which was built of gold and precious stones, and of certain events which have little apparent connexion with the saint. The visions which are described at the end of the work are inexplicable to me, but they are of considerable interest as revealing ancient, native Ethiopian opinion concerning the abode of the dead, and their state in the life beyond the grave. The central figure of all these is, of course, Mabâ' ŞĒyŏn, who is made to dwell with the saints and to enjoy the closest friendship with the Deity and His saints; his hardships and sufferings upon earth are supposed to have procured for him the highest honours in heaven, where his merits are declared to have been so great that Christ

promises to give him as a personal gift the souls of one half of those who are dead and of those who are alive. It is idle to attempt to judge such a work as the Life of Mabâ' ŞĖyón by Western standards, or to compare its excessive anthropomorphism with the spiritual views of Western nations. The composition reflects the religious ideas and thoughts of Christian Ethiopia, and is of the highest value as representing a phase of religious thought which for many centuries existed among a large section of one of the greatest southern branches of the Semitic race.





A priest sitting in the fore-part of a church and reciting to a congregation of men the story of the Life and Miracles of Mabâ Şeyôn.

TRANSLATION.
THE HISTORY OF TAKLA-MÂRYÂM WHO WAS SURNAMED
MABÂ' ŞĖYÔN.

[Fol. 2a]. IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND THE SON, AND THE HOLY GHOST, ONE GOD, WE WILL NOW WRITE THE BOOK FOR THE COMMEMORATION OF THE REDEEMER, WHICH SHALL BE RECITED EACH MONTH IN THE HOLY PART OF THE CHURCH. HE IT WAS WHO REVEALED TO MABÂ' ŞĖYĈN THE PLANS OF REDEMPTION WHICH WAS TO BE GIVEN UNTO THE BELIEVERS, AND WHICH WOULD BE A STONE OF STUMBLING TO THE HYPOCRITES. WHOSOEVER SHALL PAY HONOUR TO THIS FESTIVAL IN THE POWER OF HIS CROSS SHALL BE PRESERVED; BUT WHOSOEVER SHALL TREAT IT LIGHTLY, AND SHALL HOLD IT IN CONTEMPT, SHALL BE REMOTE FROM THE PORTION WHICH FALLETH TO THE LOT OF THE SAINTS. WHOSOEVER LOVETH OUR REDEEMER LET HIS HELP BE WITH THE SOUL OF THE SINNER HIS SERVANT TAKLA HÂYMÂNĈT, AND WITH HIS BELOVED [WIFE] WALATTA ŞĖYĈN, FOR EVER AND FOR EVER! AMEN.

Hearken now, O all ye who are of the company of Christians, with the ears of the heart, and celebrate the commemoration of the death of our Redeemer Jesus Christ Who died on our behalf, for He was crucified, and suffered, and died that He might redeem us from the service of Satan. [Fol. 2b] Have ye never heard how He shall celebrate the commemoration of all the saints, and how He shall reign as king with them in Mount Zion? And besides, he who shall celebrate the commemoration of our Redeemer shall obtain the kingdom

"I am well pleased at Him; this is My Son: whosoever loveth Him "let him hearken unto Him".² And He wrought many wonderful things, and performed miracles, as the Evangelists have written concerning Him. And the guards [Fol. 36] of Sapîrâ laid hold upon Him, and they brought Him before Pilate, and the wicked Jews crucified Him, and bound a crown made of thorns upon His head, and they smote His head with a reed staff, and they made Him drink vinegar [mingled] with gall; but He did not curse them, although they cursed Him. And He died on the Eve of the Sabbath to redeem us, and they buried Him in the field of the potter, and on the first day of the week He rose a living Being. And He will make to rise and will vivify those who believe in Him, and He will come again and will punish those who smote Him. So then, praise ye Him Who is thus God, and give thanks unto Him, and sanctify Him, and bless Him, for His Name is holy and blessed. May His help be with the soul of the sinner [His servant] Takla Hâymanôt, [and] with [that of] his beloved wife Walatta Šĕyôn, for ever and for ever! Amen.

² St. Matthew iii. 17. The Gospel reads, ܡܬܝܬܝܢ : ܡܠܟܝܢ : ܡܠܟܝܢ : ܡܠܟܝܢ : ܡܠܟܝܢ : ܡܠܟܝܢ : ܡܠܟܝܢ :

[Fol. 5a] GIVE EAR, O YE HOLY FATHERS AND BRETHREN, YE CHILDREN OF THE CHURCH, BOTH MEN AND WOMEN; AND I WILL RELATE UNTO YOU [THE STORY] OF THE CONFLICT OF THE BLESSED TAKLA MÂRYÂM, WHO WAS SURNAMED MABÂ' ŞĒYÔN. MAY HIS BLESSING BE WITH THE SOUL OF THE SINNER HIS SERVANT TAKLA HÂYMÂNÔT, AND WITH HIS BELOVED [WIFE] WALATTA ŞĒYÔN, FOR EVER AND FOR EVER! AMEN.

AND MOREOVER, WE WILL RELATE TO YOU SOME FEW OF THE MIRACLES WHICH MABÂ' ŞĒYÔN WROUGHT; AND HOW OUR LORD JESUS CHRIST APPEARED UNTO HIM; AND [WE WILL TELL OF] THE GRACE, AND THE GIFTS, AND THE HELP, AND THE AFFECTION, AND THE GRACIOUSNESS, AND THE GOODNESS, AND THE MERCY, WHICH HE BESTOWED UPON HIS SERVANT; AND OF HOW HE, BY DOING GOD'S WILL, OBTAINED POWER WITH THE ALMIGHTY; AND OF HOW THERE IS NO MARVELLOUS THING WHICH HE IS NOT ABLE TO SHEW FORTH BY MEANS OF HIS SAINTS.

Now there was a certain man whose name was Habta ŞĒyôn, who walked in the right way, and did not stand in the path of the sinful; he sprang from the tribe of Rabban Samuel, a man of high rank, the princely [Fol. 5b] star of light, and his country was Andagabtân, and he was of noble family and of high and distinguished birth. And he was a good man in all his ways, and he was gracious in his ministration, and he was at peace with all men by reason of his mildness of manner; and he loved to pray without ceasing. And his wife was a noble lady also, and her name was ŞĒyôn Têkûn; and she was pleasing unto God Almighty in all her ways. And Habta ŞĒyôn and his wife lived together in love and peace, and in undefiled intercourse according to the laws of olden time. And they



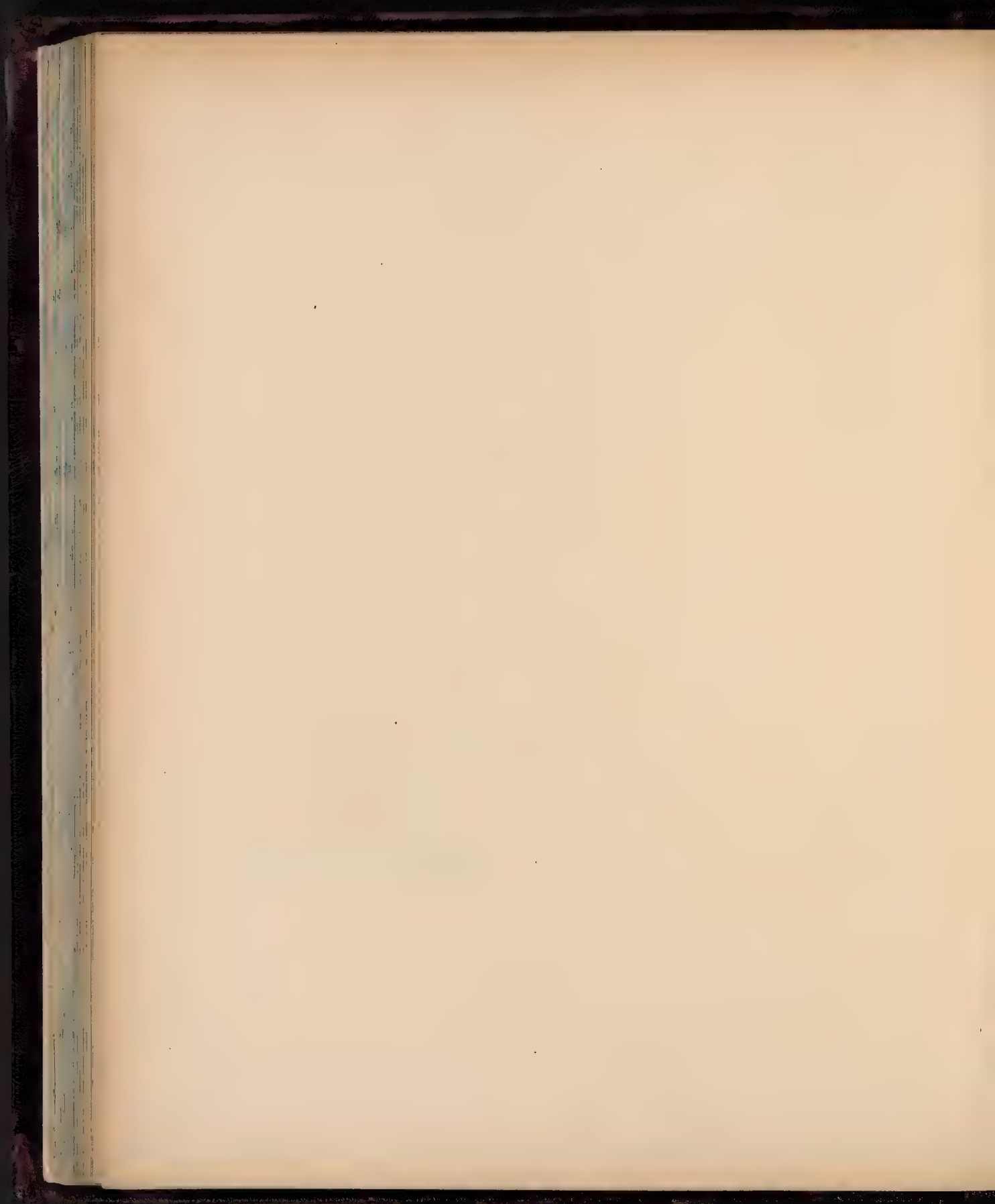


Şeyôn Tëkûn, wife of Habta Şeyôn, nursing her child Mabâ' Şeyôn.

made supplication unto God that He would give them a beautiful son, and they made vows unto Him, saying, "If we get a son we will certainly call him 'Mabâ' ŞĖyôn'."

And it came to pass after a few days that God heard their prayers, and He graciously bestowed upon them a son who was both beautiful in form, and fair as a flower in appearance, and altogether lovely; and his kinsfolk rejoiced [Fol. 6a] and they gave unto him the name ["Mabâ' ŞĖyôn"] which they had vowed to give him aforetime.

And it came to pass that when the child had grown a little, a certain priest who was on a journey came to that city, and the child's father received him into his house according as it is written, "[A man] shall make him (*i. e.*, a priest) to dwell in his house". Now the wandering pilgrim had with him a picture of our Lady Mary with her beloved Son, and when he lay down to sleep he placed it above his head; and in the morning he rose up and went away on his journey and forgot the picture. And the child found it, and he pressed it to his breast, and kissed it, and he rejoiced in it exceedingly; and he would not give it up to any person, but hung it about his neck. And when his father saw it he was grieved and said, "Whatever shall I do? If I keep the picture here with me it will become unto me [an occasion] of sin, inasmuch as it becometh not unto me. Where can I find the man that I may give it [back] to him?" And it came to pass that one day he met the man, and he said unto him, "Why didst thou leave thy picture in my house? I have been expecting thee to come back again to my house [for it]; wherefore didst thou tarry? [Fol. 6b] But now that I have found thee, take thy picture for God Almighty's sake." And the man said unto him, "Who found it?" And he replied,





I. Mabâ' Şeyôn showing the picture of the Virgin and Child which belongs to the sleeping stranger, to his father.

PLATE III.

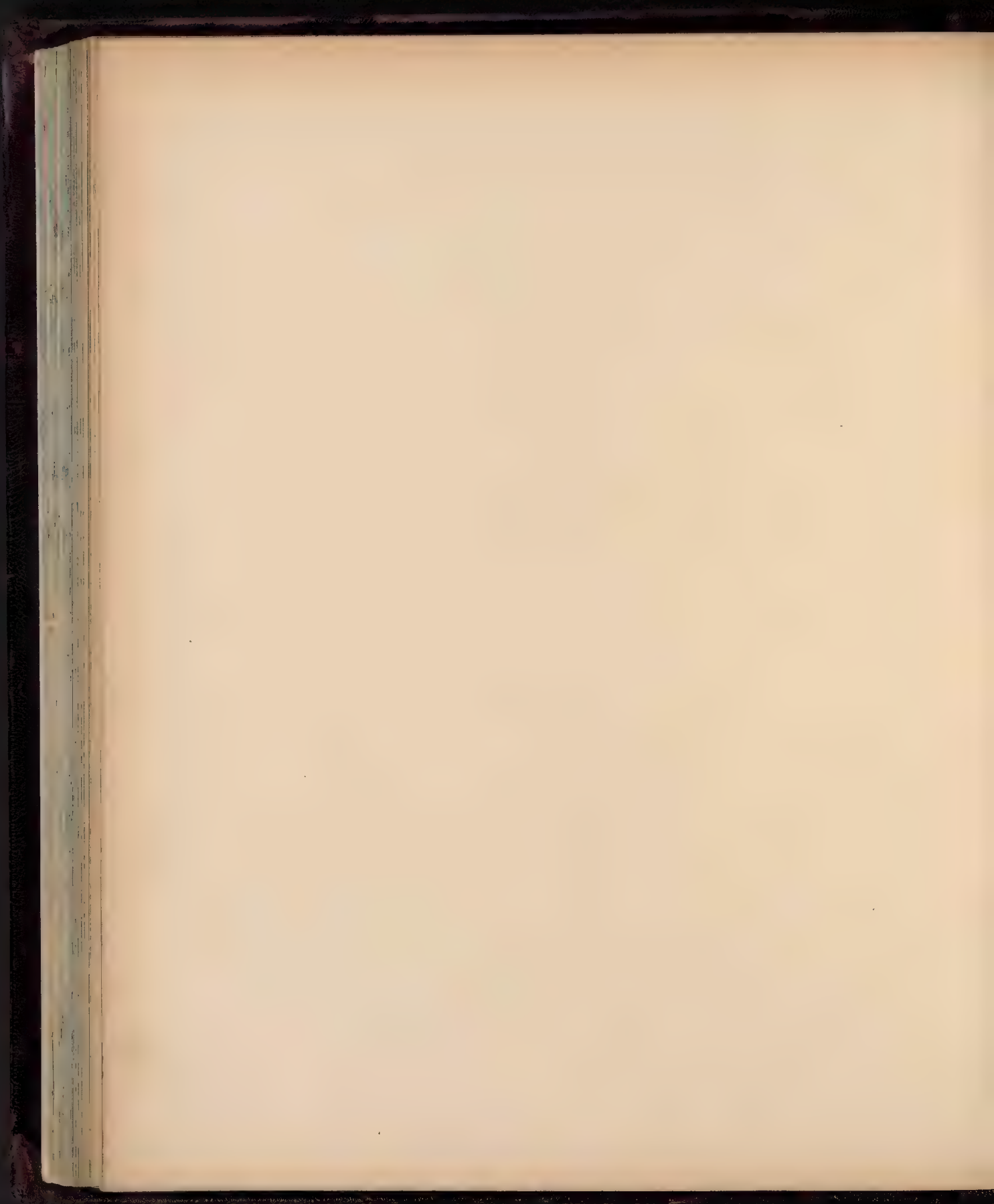


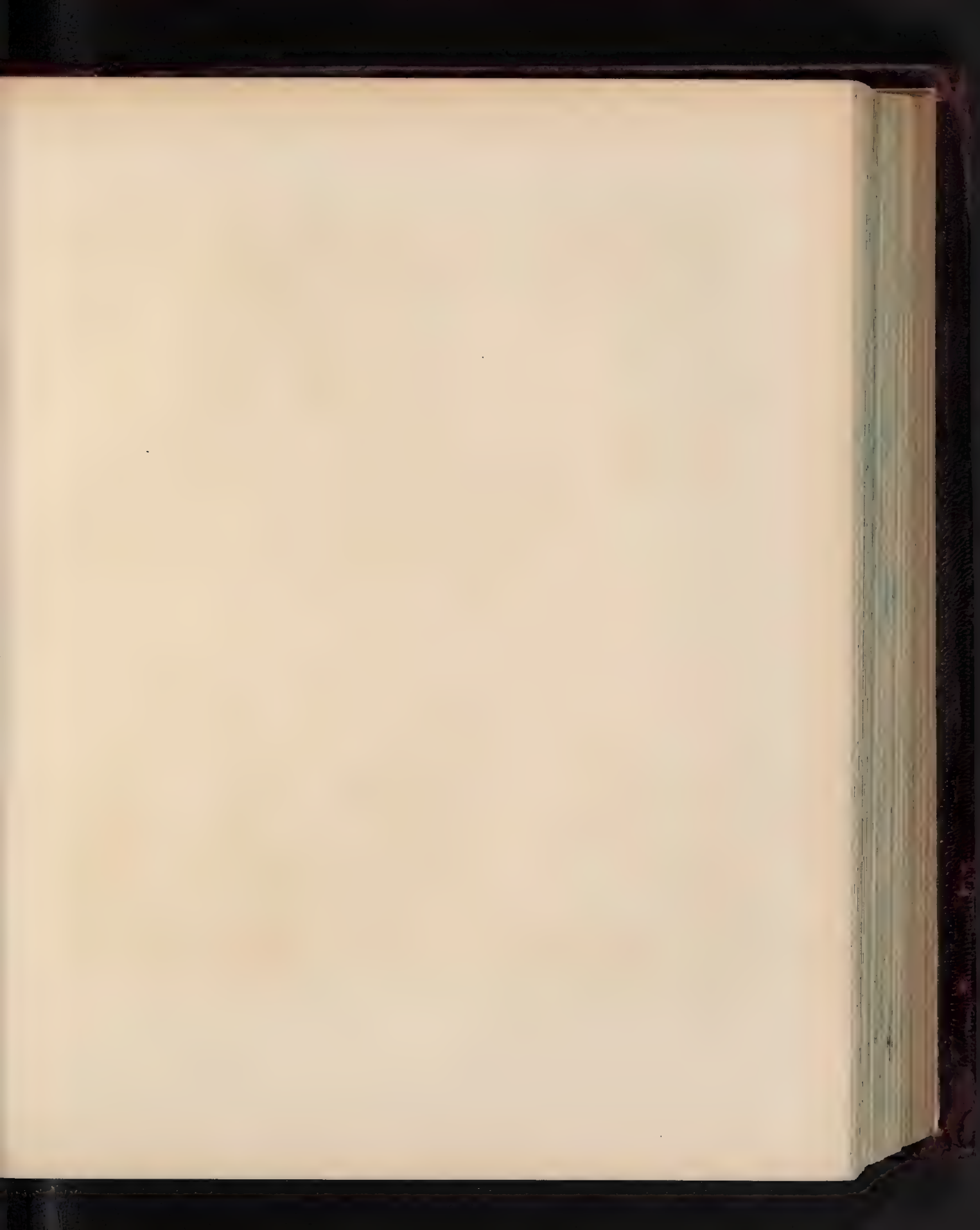
II. Mabâ' Şeyôn, with the picture hanging from his neck, sitting on his father's knees.

III. Mabâ' Şeyôn learning to read the Book of the Psalms which he holds in his hand; near him are his father, or teacher, and his companions at school.

"Now he who found it was [my] little son, who loveth it very dearly. For, from the time when he found it even until this present, he would not give it up to any other person; and I could only take it from him by force to give it unto thee." Then the owner of the picture said unto him, "Though it may be pleasing unto him, yet unto me would the picture [say] 'Let me not pass out of thy memory'; let the child whom it hath pleased have it, for through it he shall be safe in the judgment." So the two men made friendship each with the other, and each returned to his own country; and the father of the child marvelled at the grace which had come upon his son.

And it came to pass that when Mabâ' ŞĒyôn had come to the age when he ought to receive instruction in doctrine, [his father] taught him the Psalms of David and the Books of the Law; and he was appointed to be a deacon. And when [his father] saw that he was wise and understanding in all his conversation, and that his singing [Fol. 7a] was sweet, he stablished him in the Mary Chapel of the Monastery of Saint John that he might learn to chant the Psalms, and to sing [the hymns and service]. Now there dwelt there [an Abbot] who was the teacher and spiritual ruler of all the region of An[da]-gabtân, and to his care and to that of all the monks did Habta ŞĒyôn commit his son; and they all loved him. And Abûna Simon and Abûna Abûkîr said unto him, "What is thy name?" and he said unto them, "Mabâ' ŞĒyôn". And they said unto him, "It is not meet that thy name should be like that of the master of all [the monks], for thou art [only] a child, and thy name shall therefore be 'Takla Mâryâm'." By his pastors and masters then thus was Mabâ' ŞĒyôn called, and by his kinsfolk [he was also called] "Takla Mâryâm"; and he became as it were two persons [*literally*, twins]. And he learned to sing and to chant, and he studied books of learning of all kinds,





I. Mabá' Şeyôn sucking the blood from the wounded toe of the young man who had just received the Sacrament.



II. Mabá' Şeyôn catching in a vessel and swallowing what had been vomited by a young man who had just received the Sacrament.

and he taught himself discipline by means of fasting and prayer, and [he learned] to become a painter and a writer, and he was perfect [Fol. 7 δ] in all kinds of spiritual work. May his help be with the soul of the sinner [his servant] Takla Hâymânôt, and with his beloved [wife Walatta Şĕyôn] for ever and for ever! Amen.

[Fol. 9 α] And it came to pass one day, as the folk were going forth from the church, that a certain young man, who had partaken of the Eucharist and was returning from the church, struck his foot a violent blow [against a stone]; and the blood ran down from it on the ground. And the youth Mabâ' Şĕyôn, who was filled with understanding, saw him and felt his heart beat, and said, "Let my blood 'be shed for him"; and he followed after the young man until he arrived at his house. And as he went along he ate up the blood of the young man as it dropped from him, and [in the house] he brought his toe nigh [unto his mouth], and sucked the blood therefrom until it ceased to flow. Now this he did in honour of the Body and Blood of our Lord [which had entered into him]. And when his neighbours saw him swallowing the blood mingled with the dust, some of them laughed, and some of them marvelled at his understanding.

And again it came to pass on a day that a certain young man who had partaken of the Eucharist vomited everything which he had eaten and drunk; and the blessed man, having caught what he had vomited in a basin, ate and drank it up. And through his love for our Lord Jesus Christ [Fol. 9 δ] he left nothing of it whatsoever; and the vessel was [as clean] as if he had washed it with water.

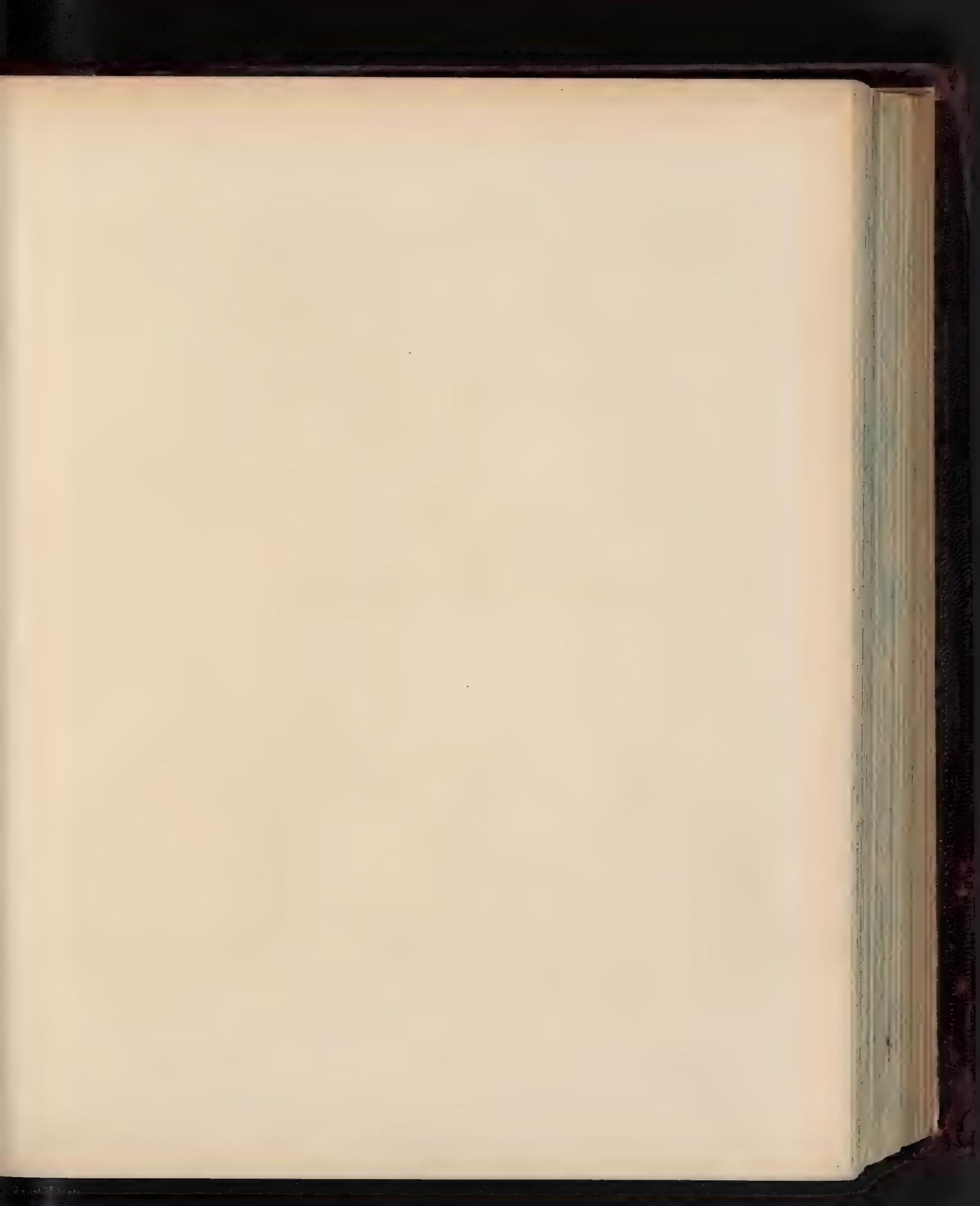
[Fol. 10 δ] Now when the kinsfolk of Mabâ' Şĕyôn saw that he had arrived at the estate of manhood, they would have betrothed

to him a maiden according to the custom; but he straightway refused to be betrothed to a maiden, and spake unto them saying, "I do not desire this thing, and I will not return to the world¹, for I have dedicated my virginity to my Lady the Virgin Mary and to my Lord Jesus Christ, so that I may become their servant. What can I gain in this world except sin? For, as Paul saith, 'He who hath married a wife meditateth how he may please her; but he who is not married to a wife meditateth how he may please God Almighty'.² And when they heard the words of the youth they let him alone, and those lovers of righteousness did not force him [to marry]; and they said unto him, "Be thou according to thy desire, and thou shalt become our guide unto the kingdom of heaven." And straightway they gave thanks unto the God of righteousness because He had given them a handsome son [Fol. 11a] who was a lover of Christ and was bold in the faith.

Then Mabâ' ŠĚyôn made a proclamation concerning himself, and he declared that he would become a dwelling-place of the Holy Spirit; and that righteous voice lied not, for he became even so. And he joined himself unto God Almighty by fasting, and by prayer, and by watching, and by love, and by innocency, and by lowliness, and by patience, and by keeping his lips from vain and evil words, and from calumny, and from lying, even as it saith in the [Book of] Prophecy, "The lips of the priests shall keep the Law and the precept";

¹ This indicates either that Mabâ' ŠĚyôn had not definitely become a monk for life, or that monks of the lower grades were allowed to marry.

² 1 Corinthians VII. 32, 33. The text usually reads: — እስመ : ዘኢየሱስ : ይሐል
ፍ : ለእግዚአብሔር : በዘየሰማር : ለእግዚአብሔር : ወዘኢየሱስ : ይሄል : ንብረተ : ዝንቸ : ገለም : በዘየሰማ
ራ : ለብእሲቸ :



I. Gabra Krëstôs the anchorite and his servant
receiving Mabâ' Şëyôn.



II. Gabra Krëstôs embracing
Mabâ' Şëyôn.

III. Gabra Krëstôs teaching and
exhorting Mabâ' Şëyôn.

and David [also] saith,¹ "Restrain thy tongue from evil, and thy "lips" that they speak not guile."

And it came to pass that from the time when Mabâ' ŠĒyôn took upon himself the yoke of the monks, he rode upon neither horse, nor ass, nor mule; and he slept neither in a bed nor upon a mattress, but upon ashes strewn upon the ground. And he used to set a stone upon his chest [Fol. 110]. By night he toiled with it [lying] upon his neck, and by day he put it upon his head; when he stood up he would bear it upon his head, and when he bowed himself to the ground in prayer he would set it upon his back. Now this stone was as much as a man could carry. And he used to do this continually except upon Sabbaths and Festival days, throughout which he was wont to sing psalms and spiritual hymns, so that his body might have no peace until the end of the day of the festival.

And it came to pass one day that a certain man was sent unto him from the blessed Saint Gabra Krĕstôs, the anchorite of the city of Dâmât³, whom God Almighty had visited and had made to know all things by the might of the Holy Spirit. And he whom Gabra Krĕstôs had sent unto Mabâ' ŠĒyôn said unto him, "Come, "let us foregather, for I have [to tell thee of] a matter of the Spirit "which I have seen concerning thee." And Mabâ' ŠĒyôn said unto the messenger, "How had Gabra Krĕstôs knowledge of me?" And

¹ Psalm XXXIV. 13.

² The ordinary version has *ܡܢ ܫܦܝܬܐ*: In every other respect this quotation is accurate.

³ A Province of Goyâm between Agawmidir and Abawi; see Conti Rossini, *Catalogo dei nomi propri*, p. 22; Ludolf, *Hist. Aeth.*, 1. 3. 16.

he replied, "I know not how he knew concerning thee." Then the blessed Mabâ' Šěyôn said, "Let the will of God Almighty be done, "and let Him [Fol. 12a] bring me unto Gabra Krěstôs." And straightway he rose up and set out on the journey, and he arrived at the place where Gabra Krěstôs was, having travelled in that day three days' journey. And it came to pass when Gabra Krěstôs the anchorite saw him that he rejoiced, and he embraced him with a spiritual embrace and said unto him, "How hast thou fared, O my son?" And he replied, "Through thy holy prayers, O my father, I have come safe "and sound"; and they discoursed together concerning the things of righteousness. Then Mabâ' Šěyôn said unto Gabra Krěstôs, "Why "hast thou called me, a sinful man whom thou knowest not, hither?" And he replied, "I both know and have seen thee." And Mabâ' Šěyôn said unto him, "How hast thou known me? Tell me, for "Christ's sake, where thou hast seen me?" And Gabra Krěstôs spake unto him, saying, "According to that which was usual for me, a bright "cloud came, and bore me along, and brought me into Jerusalem "unto the grave of our Lord. And I drew nigh to the altar to partake "of the Eucharist along with the saints; and when we had partaken "we came back so that each man of us might depart to his own "country; now, some of us were borne along upon the cloud and "some of us upon the wing of the spirit. And thee I saw in the place "where God had made us to assemble [Fol. 12b] so that He might "bestow good gifts upon us." And Mabâ' Šěyôn said unto him, "Father, since the matter was thus, why did not I also have knowledge "of thee when I was there?" Then Gabra Krěstôs made answer unto him saying, "O my son, He turneth back many without making them "known to each other when they come to partake of the Eucharist; "thou wast there at the time [appointed by] Him, and unless the time



I. Abbâ Gabriel in his church.



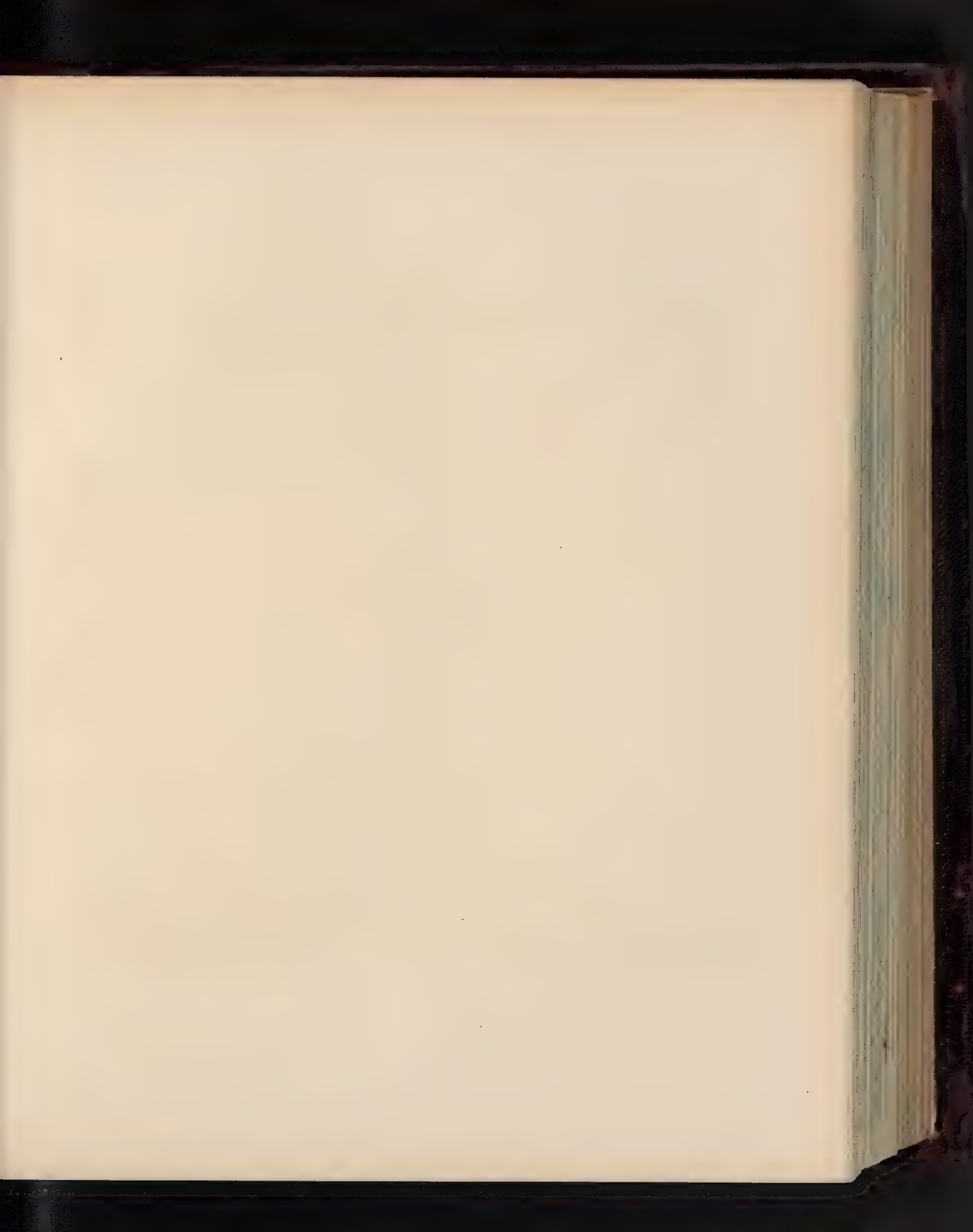
II. Mabâ' Šëyôn receiving the mark of the priesthood from Abbâ Gabriel the Bishop in the presence of the brethren.

"had been appointed by Him, it would have been impossible for thee "to be there. Listen, then, and I will tell thee. When it is right that "people who are in the world, both men and women, should, by reason "of their good works, partake of the Eucharist before those men who "are monks, He permitteth them to do so; but the saints grieve be- "cause those who are in the world precede them."¹

And it came to pass that when the blessed Mabâ' ŞĒyôn heard this he marvelled, and was struck with wonder. Then he asked Gabra Krĕstôs questions concerning the doctrines and the works of righteousness,² and concerning the rules of the monks, even as it is written, "Ask thy father and he shall tell thee." And Gabra Krĕstôs taught him and instructed him in all the [Fol. 13a] works of righteousness, and he prophesied saying, "Thou shalt become a priest, "and many shall be saved through thy beatitude, and shall be "sanctified through thy words; but first of all, lay firm hold upon the "love of our Lord Jesus Christ." Then he blessed him and sent him away in peace, and Mabâ' ŞĒyôn returned unto his own country glorifying God Almighty, praised be He! And it came to pass that he went to Abbâ Gabriel the Bishop together with many of the brethren, and he received the mark of the priesthood, and became a priest. And he ministered as priest with the Body and Blood of our Lord, and he lifted up the precious Eucharist even as priests are wont to lift it up. May his help be with the soul of the sinner

¹ Gabra Krĕstôs wishes Mabâ' ŞĒyôn to understand that God had brought him to Jerusalem to partake of the Eucharist before himself and his brother ascetics because the excellence of Mabâ' ŞĒyôn's spiritual life was greater than theirs; this being so he was in duty bound to become a monk.

² *I. e.*, of the ascetic life.



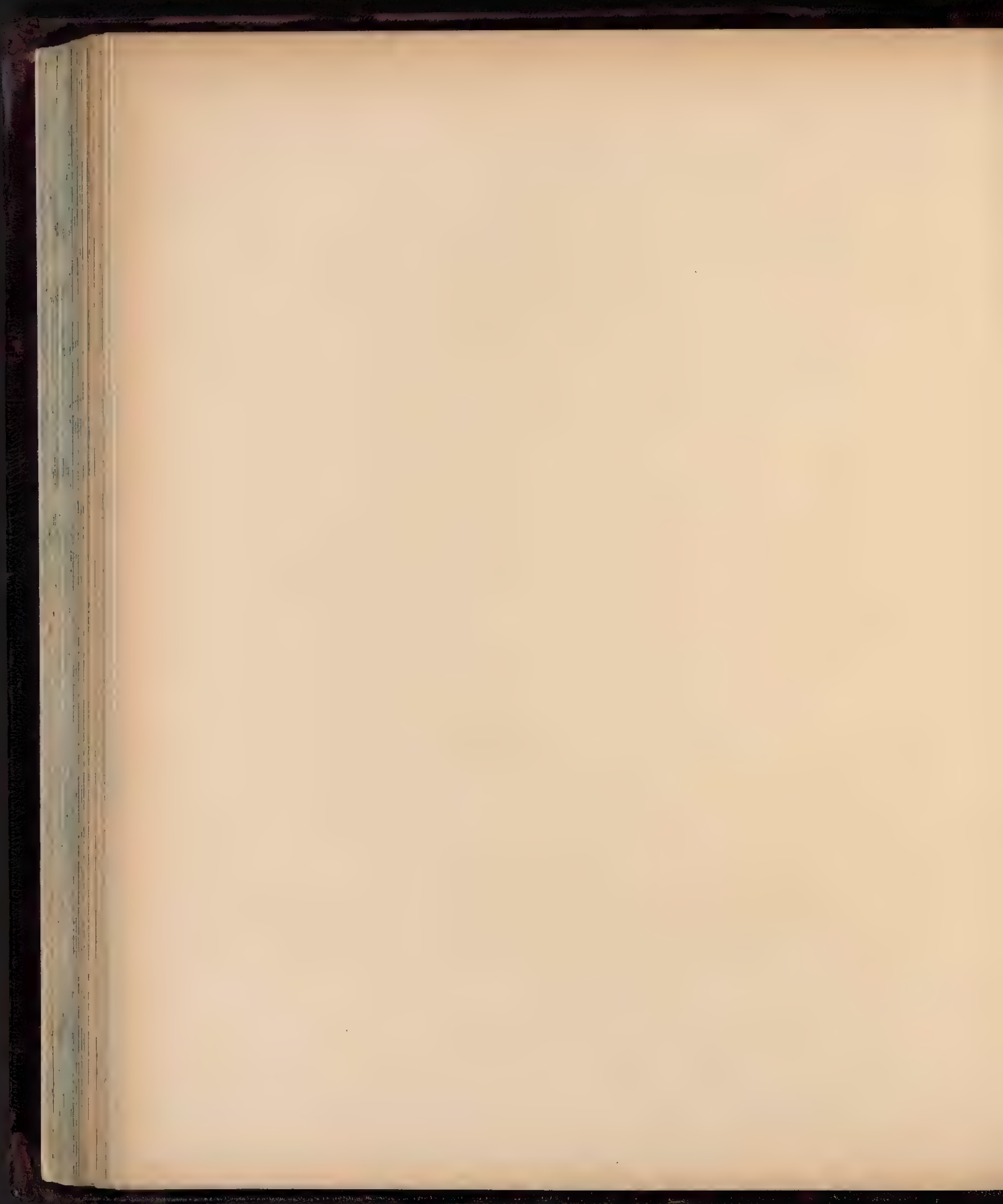


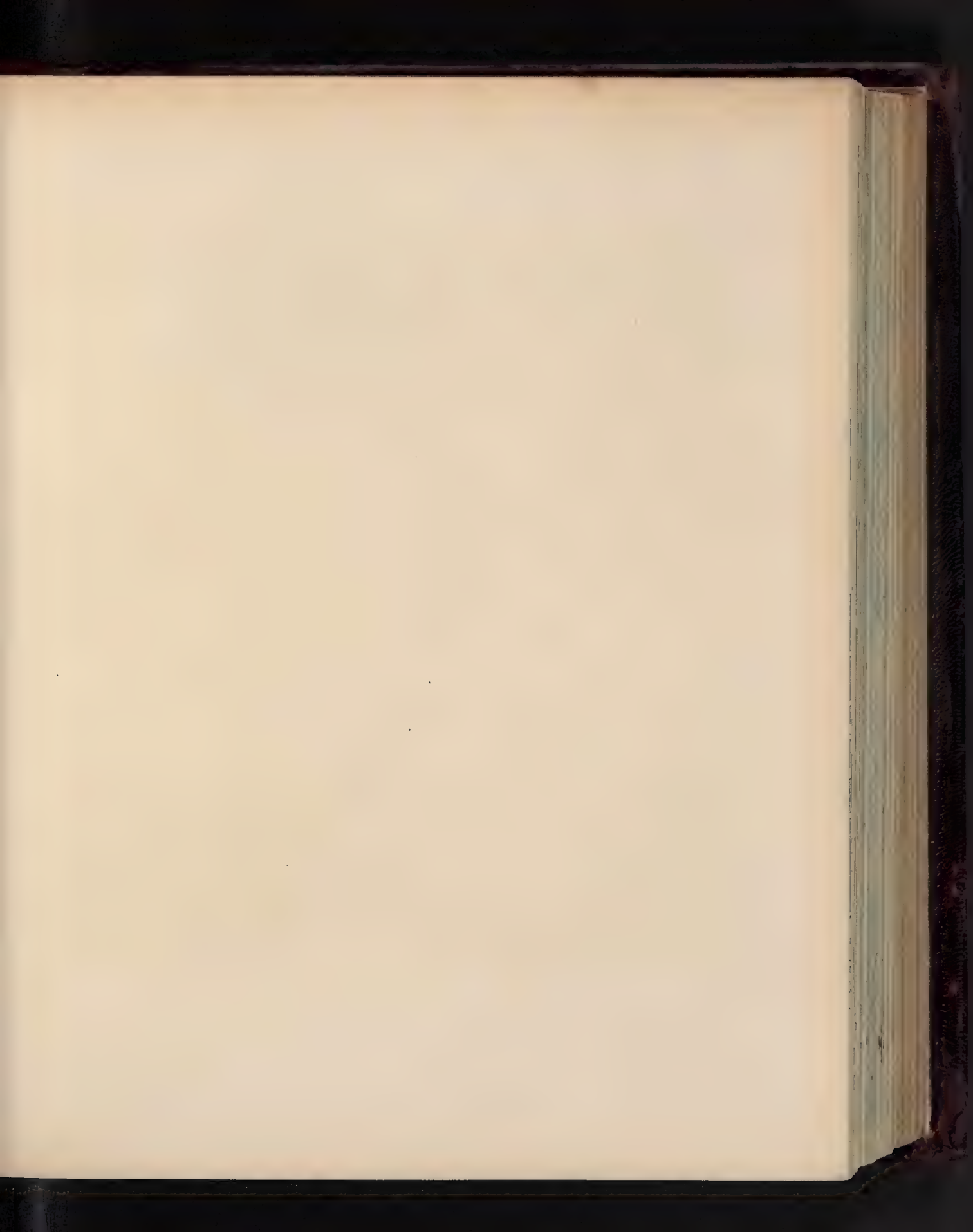
Mabá' Šeyôn administering the Sacrament and admonishing the recipients not to bite the bread but to swallow it unbidden, because the Virgin Mary who has appeared unto him with tears running down her face, has told him that she is greatly moved when the bread, which is the Body of her Son Christ, is bitten by the teeth of those who take it in their mouths.

his servant Takla Hây mânôt, and with [that of] his beloved [wife] Walatta Şĕyôn for ever and for ever! Amen.

[Fol. 15a] And it came to pass on a certain day that a great miracle was made manifest, and Mabâ' Şĕyôn who was offering up the incense before the altar saw it, and spake, saying:—"When the priest had gone forth to read the Gospel, I saw the Offering moving about hither and thither upon the paten. And when I had lifted up the covering thereof with my hand so that I might know what had happened, I saw a veritable white Lamb there; and I was greatly perturbed, and I covered up the paten as it was before. And when the priest had ended the reading of the Gospel, and had pronounced the prayer of consecration, he turned and made the bread ready, and we all received it, men and women alike. Now this appearance continued for three days."

"And again it came to pass on a certain day that I was sent to minister along with another priest, and that at the time when the Eucharist was being received an awful thing happened. I saw a woman of august and venerable appearance, shining with light, but tears were streaming from her eyes, and I was horribly afraid. And she answered and said unto me, 'Dost thou see how the people are crushing the [Fol. 15b] beloved Body of my Son with their teeth? When I see this my own bowels also are consumed. Is it possible that they imagine that my Son is dead, and that they do not know that He is alive?'" With such words did our Lady Mary speak to him; and he also wept by reason of her weeping. And Mabâ' Şĕyôn spake unto the priests and deacons and unto the men and women of the congregation, saying, "Bite not the bread with your front teeth,







Mabâ' Şeyôn being blessed by Saint Takla Hâyamânôt
at the Monastery of Libânôs.

"neither crush ye it with the teeth of your jaws, but [touch it] only "with your tongues and with the roofs of your mouths(?); and by reason of these words the people ate it reverently. Now, though some folk paid heed to them others did not, but they derided Mabâ' ŞĖyôn, saying, "The Lord in the Gospel saith, 'Eat my body', but "this man saith unto us, 'Ye shall not eat [it]'. And it came to pass that when he heard that [some of them] derided him, he said, "I have "only commanded that they shall not eat unto [their own] slaughter; "but let them not imagine that I have spoken unto them on my "own authority. However, I have delivered myself, [Fol. 16a] and it "is for each and all of them to know [this]."

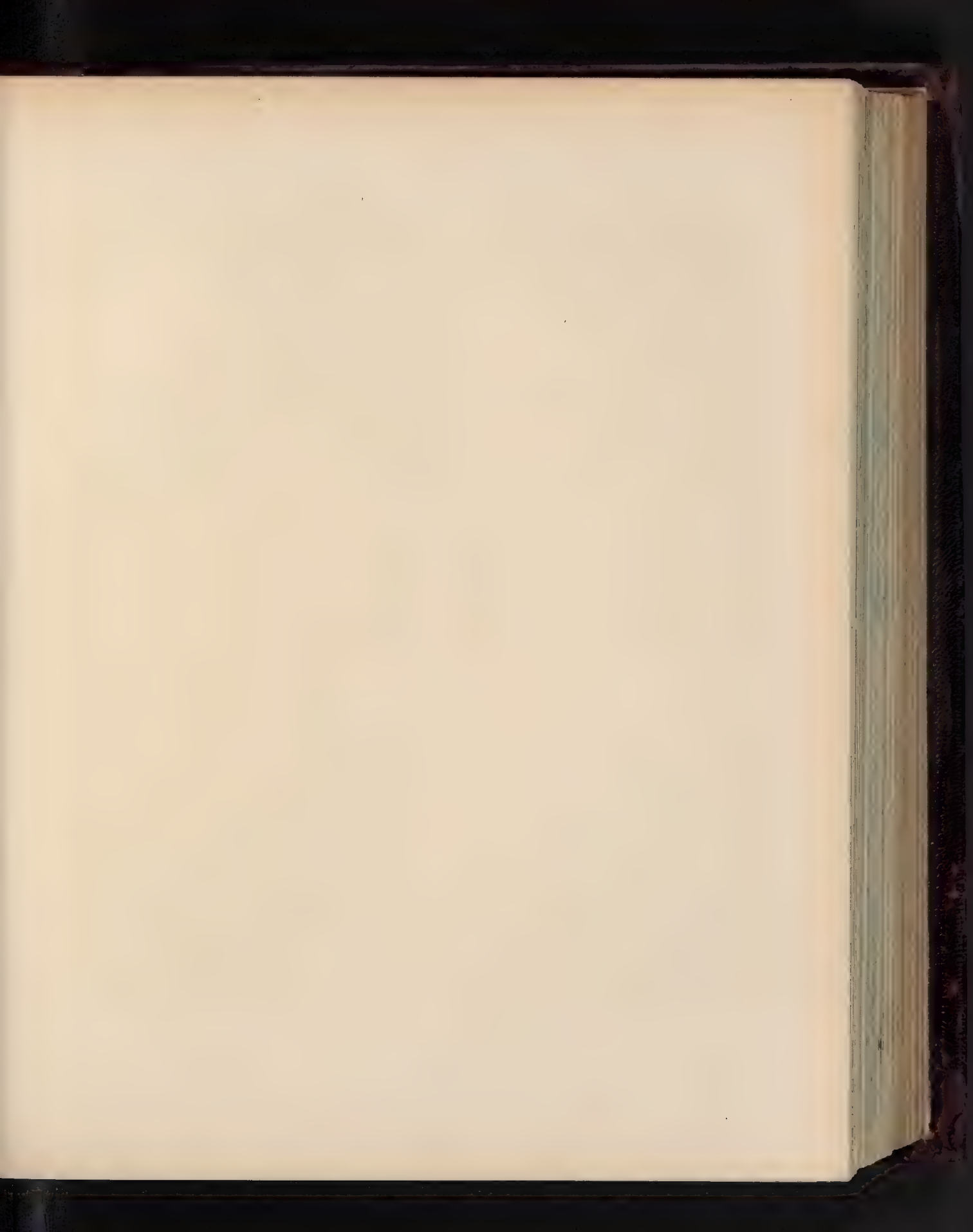
[Fol. 17a] Then Mabâ' ŞĖyôn rose up and went to the Monastery of Libânôs in order to receive a blessing at the grave of our father Takla Hâymânôt. And one of the saints who was praying in the church on the first day of the week, whilst the priests were chanting the psalms and hymns for the Pentecost festival,² on the day of the honourable commemoration of his festival, said to him,³ "I saw a man of comely and venerable appearance, who was our "father Takla Hâymânôt⁴; administering the Eucharist, whilst a multitude of priests and deacons stood round about him. And straightway "he beckoned to Mabâ' ŞĖyôn, and gave him the bread of the "Eucharist, and held him firmly with his right hand; and after him "he gave [the offering] to the others." And when he heard this he

¹ St. Matthew XXVI. 26. ወይቤ : እንክሙ : በለዑ : ዝውእቲ : ሥጋየ ::

² Read በበዓል :

³ I. e., to the writer of this history.

⁴ Takla Hâymânôt is said to have died on the night of the 27th of August, but he is commemorated on the 24th of August; see the Calender in Ludolf, *Hist. Aeth.*, (Nahassê 24 th) Commentary, p. 426. According to one authority he died aged 103 years



I. Saint Takla Hâyamânôt giving the sop to Mabá' Şeyôn
before the other members of the congregation.

PLATE IX.



II. Samuel the Prophet appearing unto Mabá' Şeyôn
in a cloud of light.

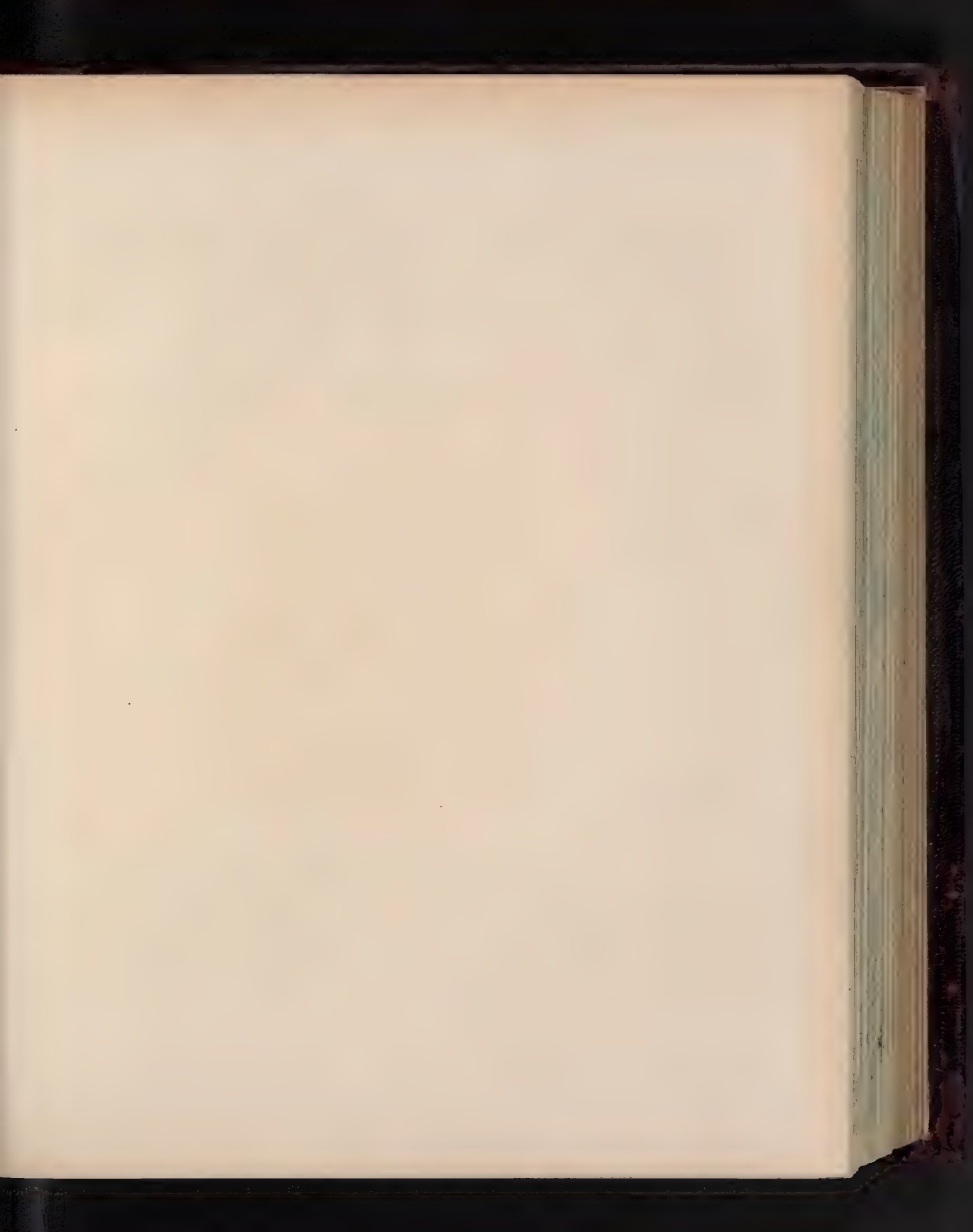
rejoiced, and gave thanks unto God Almighty; and he returned in peace to his own country.

And it came to pass one day as Mabâ' ŞĒyôn was standing in the high place, on the twenty-ninth day of the month Ṭekemt¹, that he saw above his head a cloud of light, wherein appeared a man [Fol. 17^b] whose face shone with light; and his beard fell upon his broad breast, and in his hand there was a cross of light. And he said to Mabâ' ŞĒyôn, "Peace, O my son"; and he replied "Who art thou?" And the man said unto him, "I am Samuel thy father whom God hath sent unto thee that I might visit thee and find out what is thy sorrow by reason of which thou weepest before God Almighty." And Mabâ' ŞĒyôn said, "My sorrow is great"; and Samuel said unto him, "Sorrow not, neither be cast down in any way, for God Almighty is with thee." And Mabâ' ŞĒyôn said unto him, "Remember me in thy prayers"; and Samuel answered and said unto him, "How could I possibly omit thee [from them]? And now, no evil whatsoever shall befall thee." And saying these words he blessed Mabâ' ŞĒyôn, and went his way from him. And Mabâ' ŞĒyôn gave

and 45 days, and according to another, 99 years, 10 months, and 10 days. At one time of his life he ate and drank only once a week, on Sunday, and one of his feet rotted off in consequence, and was buried by his disciples in the church. When he had led this life for seven years, Christ appeared unto him and told him that his end was nigh, and that his body should remain buried for fifty-six years, after which time it should be removed, and a large monastery should be built over the place where it would lie. The translation of his bones took place on the 12th day of the month Gēnbôt (= 7th of May), in the twenty-fifth year of the reign of Saifa-Ar'âd, i. e., A. D. 1367. See Conti Rossini, *Il Gadla Takla Hāymānot*, p. 46ff.; Basset, *Études sur l'Histoire d'Éthiopie*, p. 101; Ludolf, *Hist. Aeth.*, Commentary, p. 416.

¹ I. e., 26th October, a day of the commemoration of the birth of Christ, **ጊዳ**: **ጊዳ** ጊዳ: Samuel the Prophet is commemorated on the 9th of Sanē, i. e., May 3, and on the 27th of Naḥassē, i. e., August 20.

112





Saint Takla Hāymānôt conversing with Mabā' Šeyōn at the Monastery of Libānôs (?).

thanks unto God Almighty and said, "Let the name of Him Who hath searched me out in the plenitude of His mercy be blessed."

And again, on the fifth day of the month Ḥamlê', at the hour of night, when the sixth day of the week was about to dawn, the Apostles appeared unto him and gave him the salutation of peace; [Fol. 18^b] and Peter administered unto him the Eucharist. And multitudes of the righteous and of the martyrs used to visit him continually, but if we were to attempt to write down the names of each of them [our] discourse would become inordinately long. And similarly the grace of our Lord visited Mabâ' Šġyôn. May his help be with the sinful soul of Takla Hâymânôt, and with that of his beloved [wife] Walatta Šġyôn for ever and ever! Amen.

[Fol. 19^b] Then Mabâ' Šġyôn diligently kept with honour the festivals of the Lord, both those of His Nativity² and of His circumcision³, and all the festivals of the Son, as well as [those of] the first day which is the Sabbath. And besides all [these] works of excellence he praised God and sang hymns to Him with music continually [with a voice] like unto thunder; and moreover, he did this also on the festival

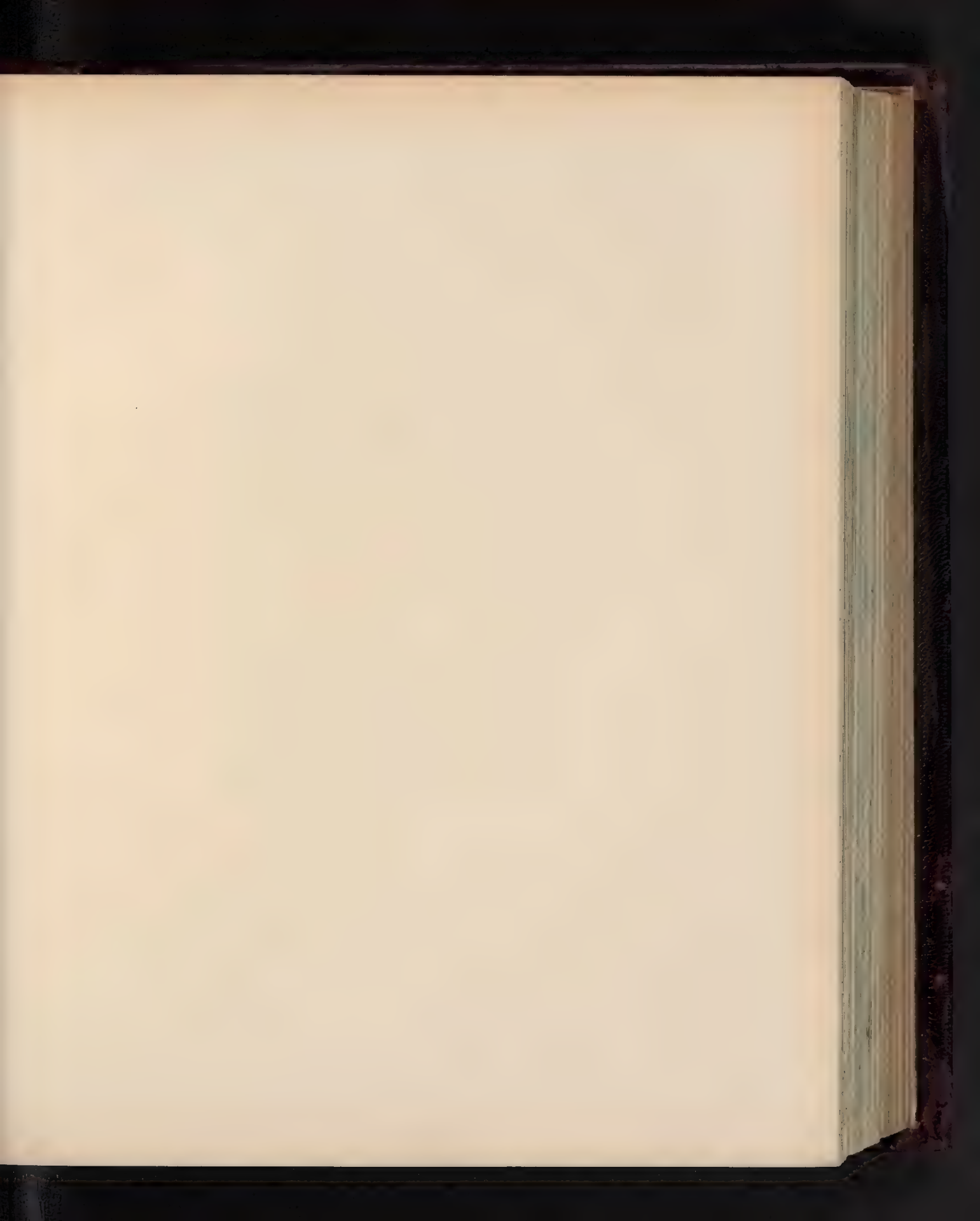
¹ I. e., July 29, the day of the commemoration of the Apostles Peter and Paul, and of the "seventy disciples", **አር.ድኢት : ሰባት :**

² The birth of Christ was commemorated on the 29th of each month.

³ The Conception of Christ was commemorated on the 29th of Magâbit, i. e., March 25; His Circumcision on the 6th of Têr, i. e., January 1; His Baptism on the 11th of Têr, i. e., January 6; His Flight from **ሐሳ :** to **ቀ-ሰጃም :** on the 6th of Hêdâr, i. e., November 2; His Fasting on the 4th of Jakâtît, i. e., January 29; His Flight to Egypt on the 24th of Gënbôt,⁴ i. e., May 19; His Entrance into Jerusalem (Feast of Palms) on the 22nd of Magâbit, i. e., March 18; His Transfiguration on the 13th of Naḥassê, i. e., August 6; His Passion of the 27th of Magâbit, i. e., March 23; His Resurrection on the 29th of Magâbit, i. e., March 25; and His Ascension on the 8th of Gënbôt, i. e., May 3.

of our Lady, the holy Virgin Mary. Now unto other folk he gave admonition, and exhorted them carefully, saying, "Make ye not the "festivals of the saints like unto the festivals of our Lord." And for the angels he invented festivals, and for the saints he made festivals of sanctification; and he stablished orders of men for the series of the festivals of the Son, and for the festival[s] of her who gave Him birth, the Virgin Mary.* And he spake unto them, saying, "Let us neither "eat nor drink, and let us give unto the Lord the portion which is "His, but the portion which belongeth to her who bore Him, the "Virgin Mary, let us give to the poor, and to the needy, and to "those who are with child. And for ourselves we will do nothing "except after [Fol. 20 a] we have brought in according to their names "those who are gathered together and have given [their portion] unto "them." And they said unto him, "Command us according to thy "wish." And he said unto them, "For my part I desire that we should "give the one half [of what belongeth] to our company; but let us "be satisfied to give less, and we will make one third to be their "share." And all those who were gathered together agreed [to this]. Thenceforward, on all the days of the festivals of the Son, he made the prayer for the gift of good things to come first, and then he divided the offerings of food into portions for three tables; and the portion of one of them he gave to the poor, and the needy, both men and women alike, and to the aged, and to those who were with child, and to the destitute, and to those who were ready to perish.

* The conception of the Virgin Mary is commemorated on the 16th of Tâhshâsh, i. e., December 12; her birth on the 10th of Maskarram, i. e., September 7; her entrance into the Temple on the 3rd of Tâhshâsh, i. e., November 29; her purification on the 8th of Yakâtît, i. e., February 2; her death on the 21st of Têr, i. e., January 16; and her ascension into heaven on the 16th of Naḥassê, i. e., August 9. A festival in honour of the Virgin was celebrated on the 21st of each month.





Saint George, by the command of the Virgin Mary,
riding to gather together the saints to the feast
which Mabâ' Şeyôn has made in honour of her
nativity.

And after he had given them both meat and drink, they all gave thanks and cried out, saying, "Praise be unto God Almighty Who hath "created us that we may render service unto Him"; and then Mabâ' ŞĖyôn made ready a table for himself and those who were with him. And on the day of the festival of the nativity of our Lady Mary, the mother of God, he invited the priests and the deacons, and made a feast for them; and he made them sit down and he himself ministered unto them. [Fol. 20b]. And many of the saints said, "And straightway "we saw our holy Lady, the Virgin Mary, going round about along "with him as he went about ministering. And calling unto Saint "George, that star of glory, she said unto him, 'Go and bring to- "gether the saints who are in heaven, and those who are upon earth, "from [their] cells and caves, in order that they may be gathered "together in honour of my nativity to my beloved Mabâ' ŞĖyôn, for "I and my Son will keep the feast here'. And straightway Saint "George mounted his horse and did as she had bidden him to do; "and the saints were gathered together, and our Lord came down "[from heaven], and there was great and marvellous glory in that "place. And seventy priests went round about with him burning in- "cense in their censers, but as for the multitudes of people who were "gathered together there, no man knoweth their number except God "Almighty. And preparations were made for celebrating the service "of the Mysteries of the heavenly [Fol. 21a] Queen, and the Eucharist "was administered unto those who were gathered together. And the "rejoicing was great among all people, and was continued for three "whole days after the day of the festival had passed."

And again, a certain man who was arrayed in the glory of virginity said, "As I was going to the Mary Chapel on the festival

I. Mabá' Şeyôn feeding the poor and needy.

II. Mabá' Şeyôn sitting at meat and ministering unto his companions.

PLATE XII.



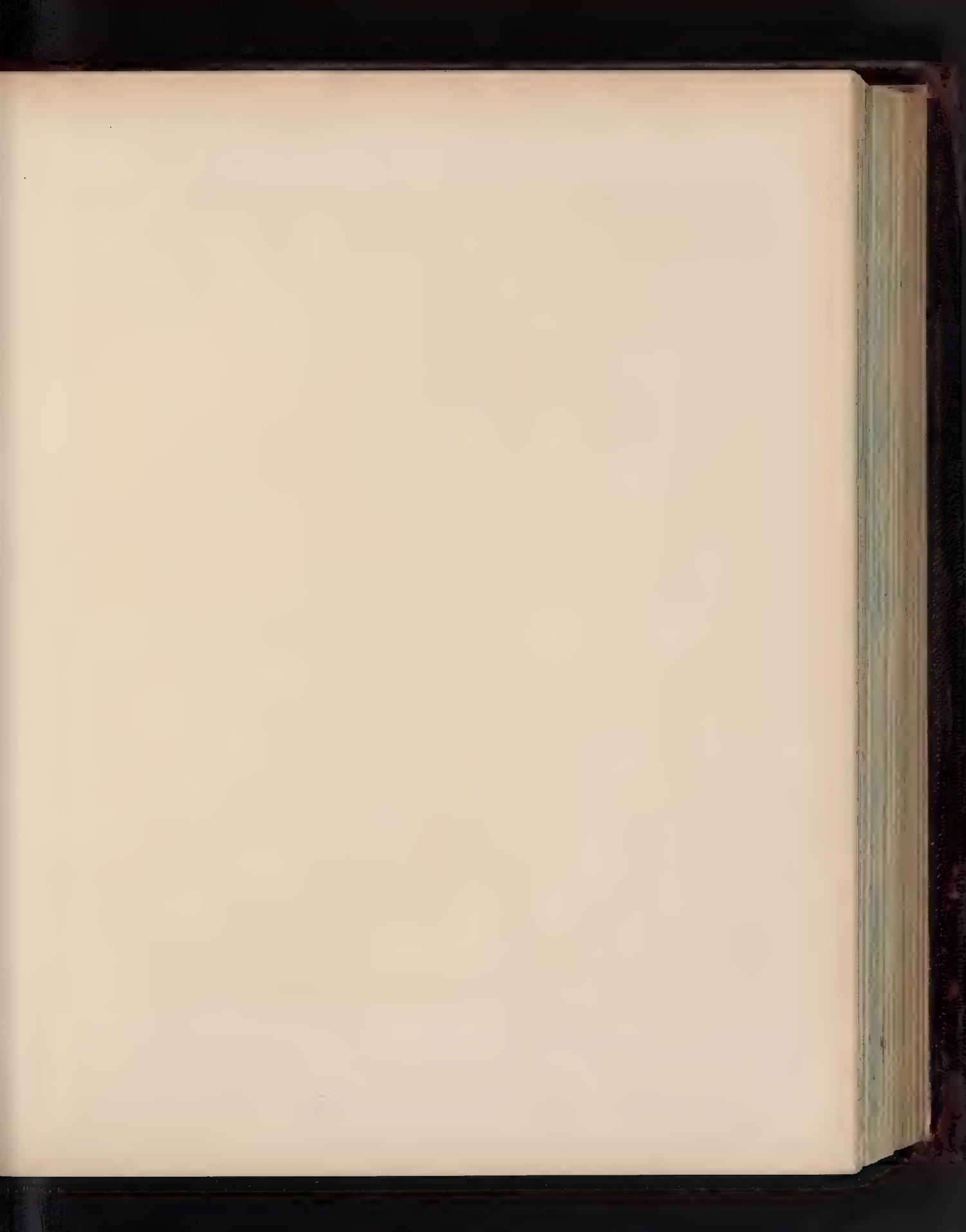
III. Mabá' Şeyôn, accompanied by Christ and the Virgin Mary, ministering unto the saints whom Saint George had gathered together by the Virgin's orders on the day of the celebration of the festival of her nativity. On the right are priests with censers.

"of her nativity, I found myself in the company of a man who, against
 "my wish¹, urged me and brought me into his habitation, and I tarried
 "there. And about the time of midnight I looked out upon the wide
 "expanse of the country, and behold, it was filled with the saints and
 "with those who were arrayed in the glory of chastity, and I myself
 "stood up along with them. And straightway the heavens were rent
 "asunder, and there was mighty dread [upon them], and a cloud
 "of light like unto the sun descended, and out from it there came an
 "august Child, from whom went forth lightning among the saints [that
 "were there]. And Mabâ' ŞĖyôn rushed forth and took hold of the
 "Child, and they embraced each other's neck, and kissed each other.
 "And the saints marvelled and disputed among themselves for what
 "reason so great an act of grace had been shewn unto him. [Fol. 21^o]
 "And some there were who said, 'It is because Mabâ' ŞĖyôn celebrateth
 "the festival of the nativity of His mother, and the Child is pleased
 "thereat'; but in our opinion [his coming was as much as to say],
 "I am sorry that I did not come to thee [before]. And thus indeed
 "did the Child speak to Mabâ' ŞĖyôn who, when he heard it, rejoiced,
 "and in future time celebrated the festival with still greater honour.
 "And each month² he paid honours unto her by reason of the majesty
 "of her nativity, and on the sixteenth day [of each month] he celebrated
 "her honourable ascent into heaven. And it came to pass that many
 "miracles and wonderful things were wrought during the festivals of
 "our Lady Mary."

And Mabâ' ŞĖyôn spake continually unto the Virgin Mary, saying,
 "Look thou upon me, and be not thou ashamed of thy servant."

¹ Read ፈቃድኝ :

² Read ሰላወርኑ :




I. Mabâ' Şeyôn in the desert.

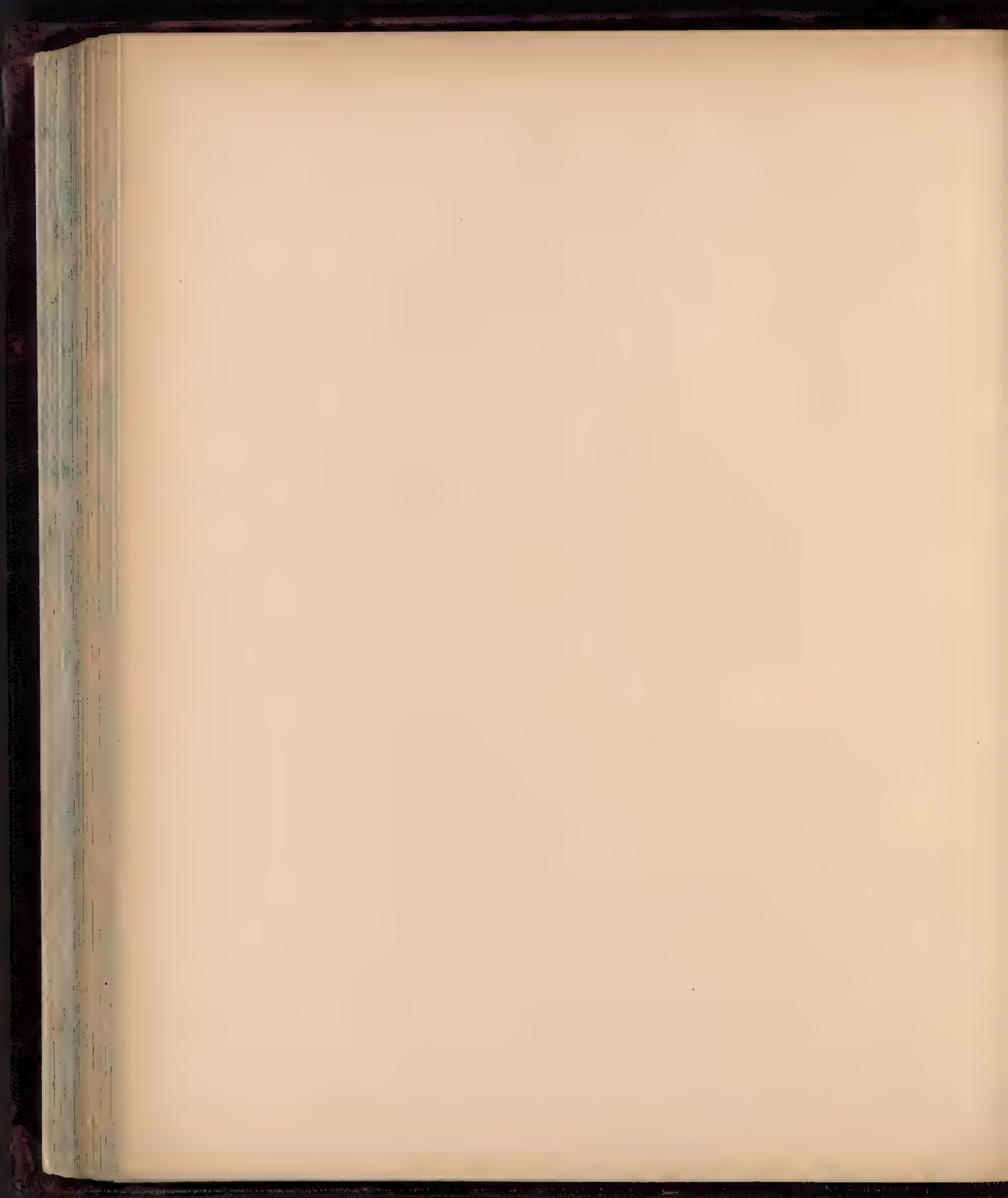


II. Mabâ' Şeyôn and his companion are led by night to the river by a bright star; out of the darkness the Devil appears, hissing like a snake, but he is put to flight by the Lamb of Life which comes down from heaven in answer to the prayers of the saint.

And he began to fast with severity in order that he might yoke himself unto God Almighty. And he made bonds and fetters for his legs, and chains for his hands and sides, and for his loins also did he make bonds; and on the days when he fasted he put on sack-cloth beneath his garments in order that men might not know [that he was wearing it]. And he ate [Fol. 22a] once every three days of the herbs of the field, and by reason of the exceedingly great pain of his fasting he used to go and stand in the water of the river until the flesh of his body wasted away. And it came to pass one day that a certain man from among those who were with him asked him, saying, "What dost thou see in front of thee when thou goest down "into the river at night time?" And he said unto them, "What shall I not see in front of me and in front of you?" And our father Mabâ' ŠĚyŏn gave praise unto God Almighty, and said, "Whenever "I go forth from my habitation, a brilliant star appeareth and leadeth "me as I watch it unto the river"; and when we heard [this] we marvelled at the good things which God worketh for His saints.

And it came to pass as they were standing in the river that Satan came forth from out of the darkness, hissing like a serpent; by his wrathful aspect he made them sore afraid, but his speech was not to be understood. And our father Mabâ' ŠĚyŏn said, "Be strong in the strength of our Lord Jesus Christ", and he made the sign of the cross [Fol. 22b] over himself. Then suddenly a Lamb¹ descended from heaven with great majesty, and his colour

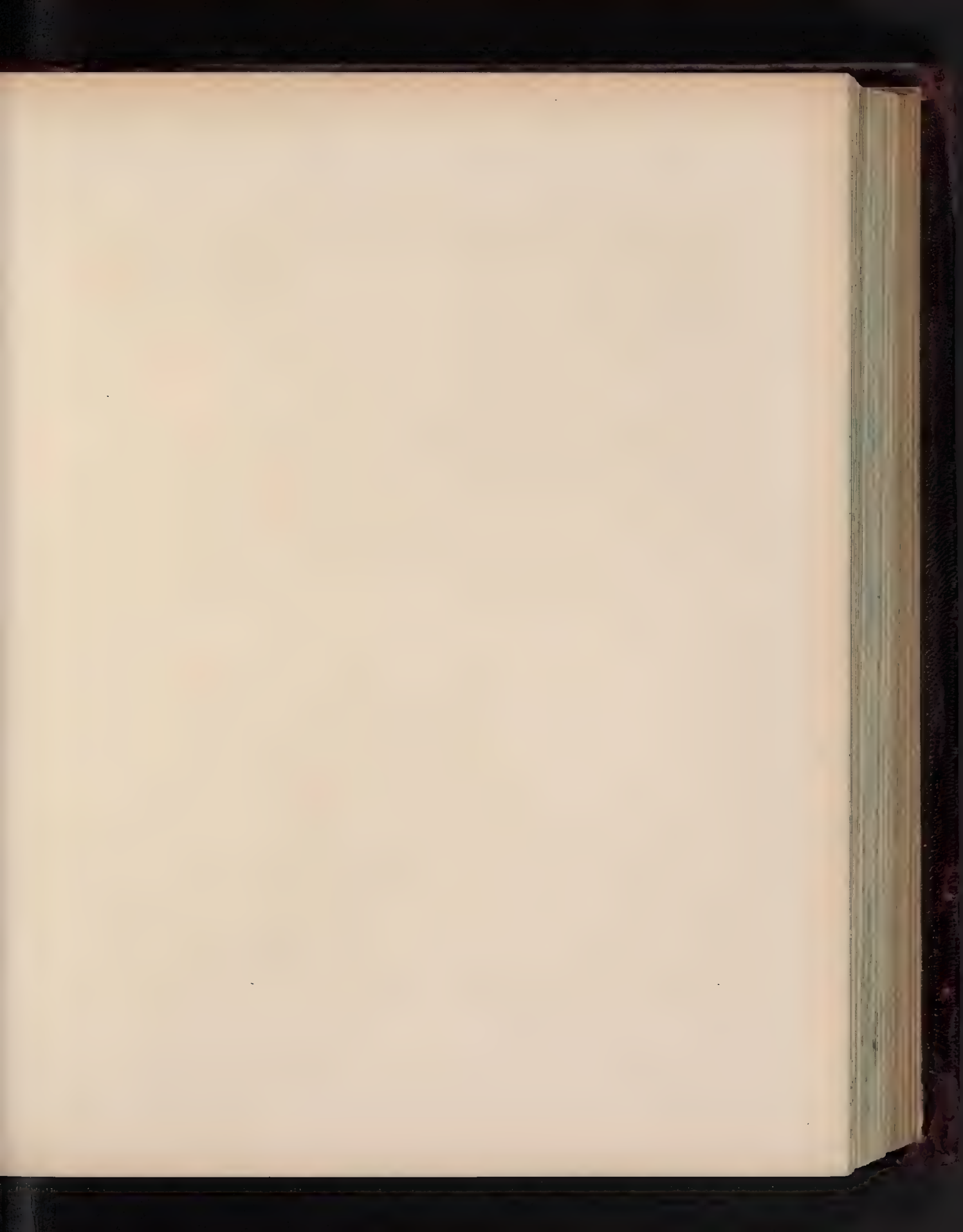
¹ The lamb here depicted is identical in form and appearance with the lamb which was the type and symbol of Āmen-Rā, the great god of the confraternity of Amen at Thebes, from about B. C. 1700 to B. C. 700. One of the titles of this god is *aa shefsheft* , and curiously enough, this title is reproduced in the Ethiopic by the words *ጸሐይ: ገርማ*:



was red like that of a lion, and he was furnished with horns; and he stood on the river bank and turned himself about, hither and thither, and by reason of the awful majesty of his appearance Satan the deceiver vanished. Praise and thanksgiving be unto the Lamb of Life Who descended from heaven and delivered His servants by a nod from their adversary, the hater of that which is good; in like manner may He deliver the soul of the sinner Takla Hâymânôt, and [that of] his beloved [wife] Walatta. ŠĚyŏn, for ever and ever and ever! Amen.

[Fol. 25*a*] And moreover, I will describe unto you the virtue and the excellence of Mabâ' ŠĚyŏn. He said, "There came to me "an odour of life, and the smell thereof was more beautiful than the "smell of incense; and during the time [I was there in the monastery] "sometimes I was standing up, and sometimes I was sitting down, "and sometimes I was with the brethren; but never even for a moment "did the odour leave me. Then I meditated as to what had come "upon me, and I went to the saints, so that if God Almighty had "shewn them concerning the odour they might tell me. Now when I "arrived I told them all that had happened to me; and when they "had heard¹ they marvelled and blessed the God of mercy." And one said unto the holy and blessed man Mabâ' ŠĚyŏn, "The smell of "this odour of thine is Jesus Christ, and it is His custom to give forth "an odour when He cometh unto His chosen ones; first of all He "bestoweth the gift of His scent upon them, and then He cometh and "sitteth at meat with them. Now take thou heed that thou be prepared "to see Him; and when He breatheth forth the odour upon thee pay "homage unto Him, and know thou that indeed [Fol. 25*b*] He hath

¹ Read *ωησλρσν* :



I. Mabá' Šëyôn embracing the Christ-Child on the day of His Nativity.

II. Mabá' Šëyôn offering the Christ-Child a part of his apparel.

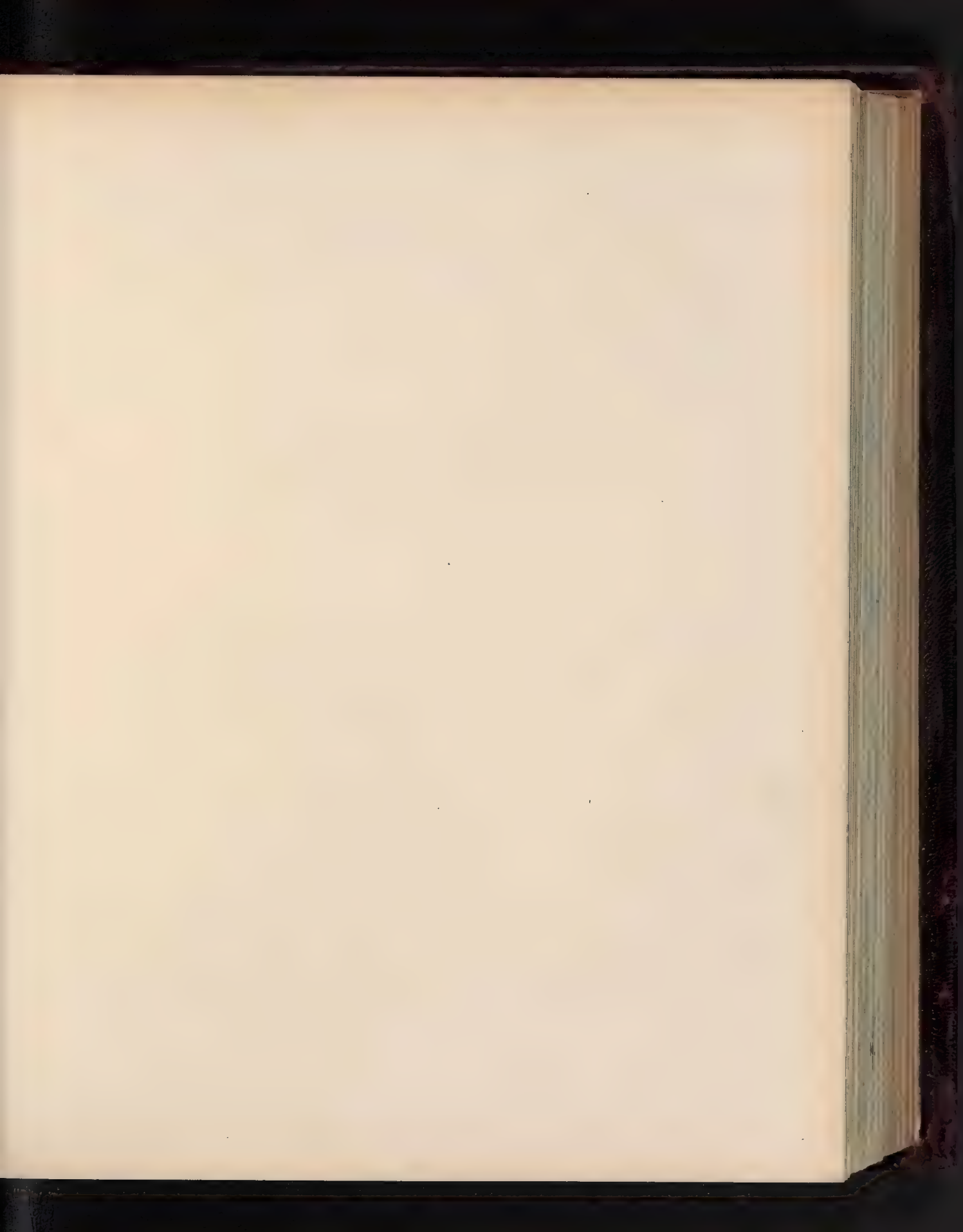


III. Mabá' Šëyôn lending to another man the part of his apparel in which the Christ-Child arrayed Himself when He came to the earth to visit the saint.

"come unto thee." And when Mabâ' ŞĒyŏn heard this he was greatly troubled, and he said, "What can I say unto Him, for I am a sinner? "But let Him prepare me [to receive Him] according to His good "pleasure"; and the saints who were there said, "Amen". And it came to pass that he abode there for a few days, and that the odour which came forth from him did not leave [him].

And it came to pass on a day, which was the twenty-ninth day of the month Tâkhshâsh¹, that is to say the day of the nativity of our Lord Jesus Christ, that when he went out from his habitation to celebrate the festival, straightway a light [as] of the moon cleft the heavens; and Mabâ' ŞĒyŏn prayed unto God Almighty. Then immediately he saw the doors of heaven open wide. "And there "descended, [he said] behold as it were brilliant lightning before my "sight; and when the lightning drew nigh unto me, it was the Child "[Jesus], and He seated Himself in my arms and embraced my neck. "Then straightway fear and trembling laid hold upon me, and I melted "and became like unto wax. And the Child answered and said unto "me, 'Fear thou not. I am the Child of Mary, Who was born on "this day'. [Fol. 26a] And having said the words He hugged my "face, and by reason of the sweetness of His words, and of that "which dropped from His mouth I ceased to feel that my heart was in "despair. And I brought unto Him as an offering some of my "apparel one day, and when He wished to depart from me I said "unto Him, 'O my Lord, wilt Thou go without a sign that I have satisfied "Thee?' And straightway He spat His spittle upon my garments, "and said unto me, 'Take [this], and let it be an emblem of hope for

¹ I. e., December 25.



I. Christ telling the monk in a dream
that Mabá' Šeyôn had lent a part
of his apparel to another man.

PLATE XV.

II. The monk rebuking
Mabá' Šeyôn.

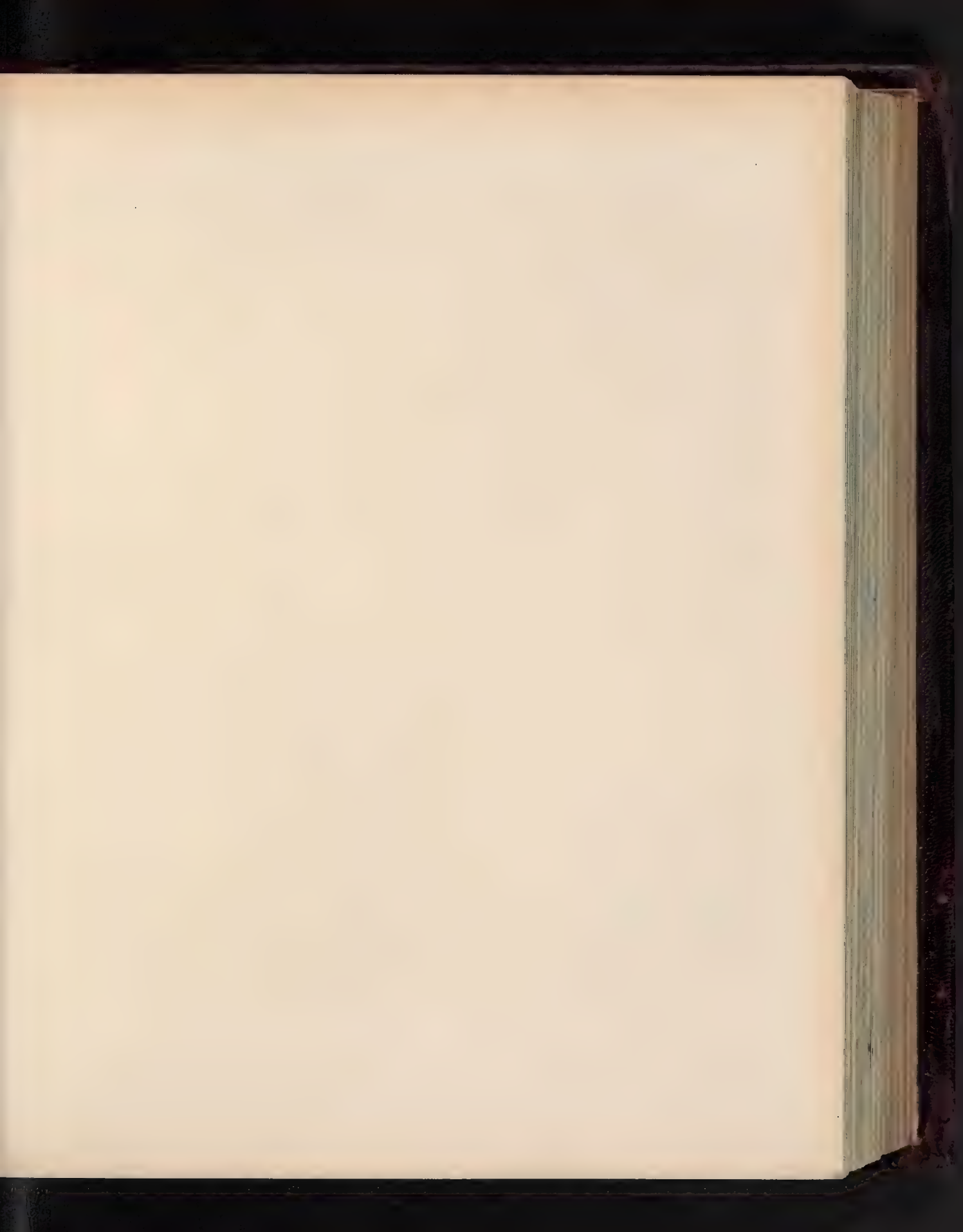


III. Mabá' Šeyôn confessing to Abbá Tímôn what he had done.

"thee, and thou shalt comfort thyself therewith. And I will never "forsake thee, and I will be with thee continually'. And when He "had said this He was caught up into heaven, and I remained kissing "the spittle which had come forth from His holy mouth; and on that "day I did not partake of the Eucharist because I licked the spittle "in the place thereof."

"And it came to pass on a day that a certain man came to "me" [said Mabâ' ŞĖyôn] "and said unto me, 'Lend me some of thy "raiment', and I lent him a garment which was a portion of my "apparel. And straightway there came unto me a certain monk from "a distance, and he spake unto me harshly, saying, [Fol. 26δ] 'I have "seen a vision concerning thee'. And I said unto him, 'What is it?' "And he said unto me, 'There came unto me a young man of beautiful "appearance, and he stood at my head, and spake with me in a dream "saying, Harken unto me concerning Mabâ' ŞĖyôn. I came unto "him, and I embraced him, and I spat my spittle upon his garment', "and I rested myself in confidence therein; but now he has lent the "garment to another. And I said unto him, Who art thou? And "he said unto me, He knoweth me. But now, speak [in answer] to "what I say unto thee'." And it came to pass that when our father Mabâ' ŞĖyôn heard this he fell upon his face and wept exceedingly. Then he went to the Mary Chapel and came unto our father Tîmôn, who was full of the spirit—now Tîmôn was his spiritual father—and he said unto him, "Hear, O my father, what hath come upon me"; and he told him everything which had happened. And when Abbâ Tîmôn had heard these words from him, he rejoiced and said, "Verily,

* Read HĀW:



I. Abbā Ṭimôn finds the Virgin and Child at the east-end of the church.



II. The Christ-Child addressing Abbā Ṭimôn.

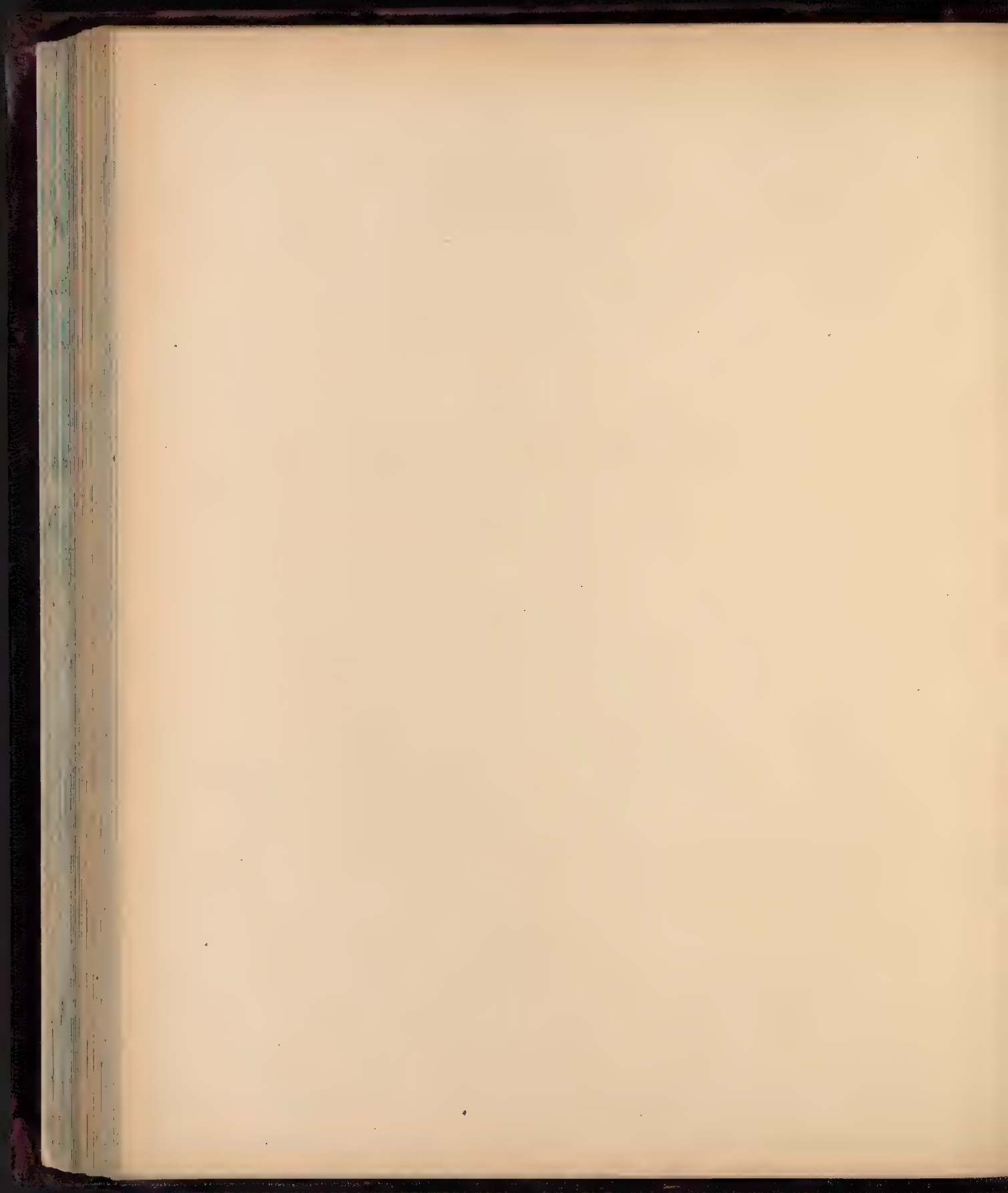
"my son, thou art he [Fol. 27a] in whom the only begotten Son of Mary is well pleased; be not thou sad, because He hath revealed His mercy unto thee; if He be about to take vengeance upon thee, then will He shew His anger unto thee in secret." And Mabā' Šĕyōn said unto Abbā Tīmōn, "Set me a penance, O my father, because I have sinned against the Child and have lent the garment unto another"; and he set him a penance according to that which was meet for him. And Abbā Tīmōn said unto him, "Thou shalt never wash that garment wherein the Child was enfolded and whereon the son of God Almighty spat; and thou shalt fold it up and shalt guard with purity that which hath flowed for thee from the mouth of the Child of the Virgin upon that which was thy covering." And they discoursed together concerning the mighty things of God Almighty.

And Abbā Tīmōn said unto the blessed Mabā' Šĕyōn, "Hearken unto me and I will tell thee [a thing]. As I was walking in the eastern part of the church at the time of the third hour after noon, I met the Child and His Mother; now they were shining with glory and splendour, [Fol. 27b] and straightway I was greatly perturbed. And I said unto them, 'Peace be unto you', and they replied, 'The peace of Christ be upon you'. And I said unto them, 'Who are you both? for the sight of you terrifieth me exceedingly'. And the Virgin answered and said, 'I am the lily of the valley of virginity'. And then the Child said unto me, 'I am Jesus of Galilee'; and when I heard [this] I bowed down to His feet in homage. Then the Virgin raised me up and embraced me, and the Child took my mouth and kissed me, saying, 'Let there be a sweet odour to the priesthood of Tīmōn'; [and with these words] they departed from me." And when Mabā' Šĕyōn heard these words, [and knew] that Tīmōn should be

sweeter than honey and sugar, he marvelled at the graciousness of the act, and at the beauty of the memorial of the meekness of Tîmôn [which had been shewn] by the son of God Almighty, and at the goodness of the spiritual ship¹, our Lady Mary. Then the young man Mabâ' ŞĖyôn was blessed by his father, [Fol. 28a] and he came back in peace to his own country.

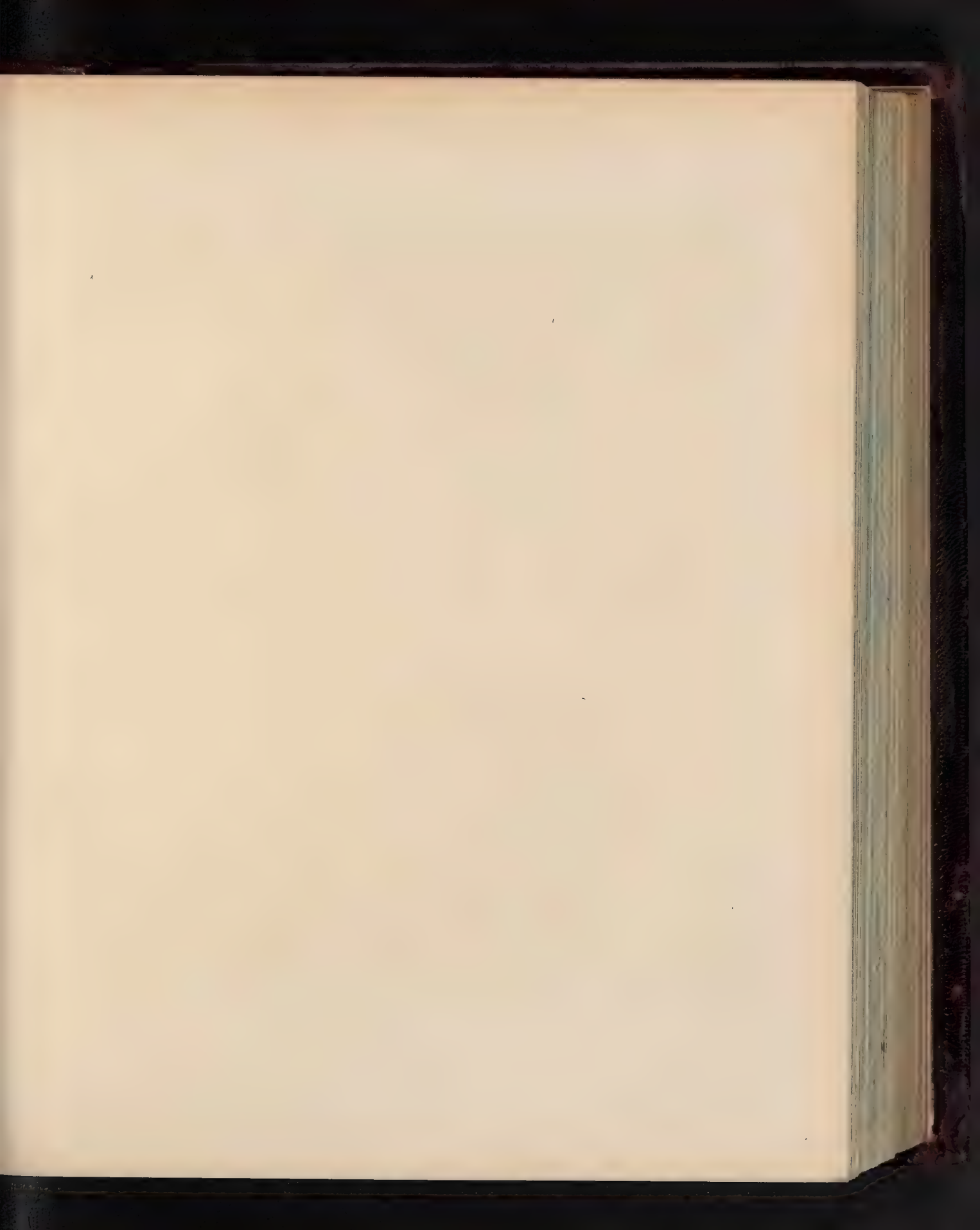
And it came to pass after a few days that the blessed man Mabâ' ŞĖyôn called a certain poor deacon unto him and said, "Art thou able to keep a matter [secret] if I tell it unto thee?" And he said unto him, "Yea, father." And Mabâ' ŞĖyôn said unto him, "Wilt thou bind thyself by the power of Peter and Paul that thou wilt not relate it to any other person during my life? After my death thou mayest do as thou pleasest." And the deacon said unto him, "Yea. Speak, O father." Then Mabâ' ŞĖyôn said unto him, "Hearken. One day when I was praying at the time of the third hour of the day, I wept when I remembered the sufferings and death of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the grief and sorrow of His Mother the Virgin. And I said, 'O my Lady, with what feelings of agony must thou have gazed on the crucifixion of thine only begotten Son when He was naked, and on His scourging and nailing to the cross, and on the piercing [of the side] of thy beloved One! For He was thine only Child, and He had neither brother nor sister, O my Lady. [Fol. 28b] Oh, how I wish that I had been holding the wood of the cross of thy beloved One, and that I had died before the soul went forth from the Body of our Lord! And as

¹ Both the Virgin Mary and the Church are compared unto a ship; see Dillmann, *Lexicon*, col. 75.



"I was weeping and uttering these words there came a glorious light upon my right hand, and straightway I saw our holy Lady, the Virgin Mary, and she raised me up, saying, 'O Mabâ' ŞĒyôn, why dost thou weep with so great a weeping at this time? Unto me belongeth the weeping, for I saw the nakedness of my beloved One, and the scourging of my Child, and the nailing to the cross of my Firstborn, and the crucifixion and death of my Only-begotten One; but thou didst not see [these things], therefore why shouldst thou weep." And as she said these words, I even I, wept with her. And we ended our weeping, and I committed my soul to her, and she asked for my tears [and put them] in her apparel; then she departed. In this wise did she act."

[Fol. 31a] And it came to pass at another time that Mabâ' ŞĒyôn was standing in the church at the third hour of the day, and was praying and saying, "O my Lord and God, O my Redeemer Jesus Christ, Thou Who art nigh unto those who call upon thee, I entreat and supplicate Thee most earnestly not to depart from me, for the sake of those who have been blessed by my hand; for they have gained consolation from my words, and they have confided in me and believed that their sins would be pardoned, not knowing that my similitude of a righteous man is a lie. There is none pure before Thee except the blessed Mary who bore Thee; but Thou art merciful, and longsuffering for ever. Amen." And straightway there stood before him a young man of beautiful form, and he had the sign of the cross [upon] his apparel, and a spotless crown upon his head, and he said unto him, "Behold, I have come unto thee to fulfil thy petition, and to bestow upon thee gifts according to thy word. I will shew mercy upon him that hath put his trust in thee, or hath



I. Christ appearing to Mabá' Šěyôn in the form of a young man.



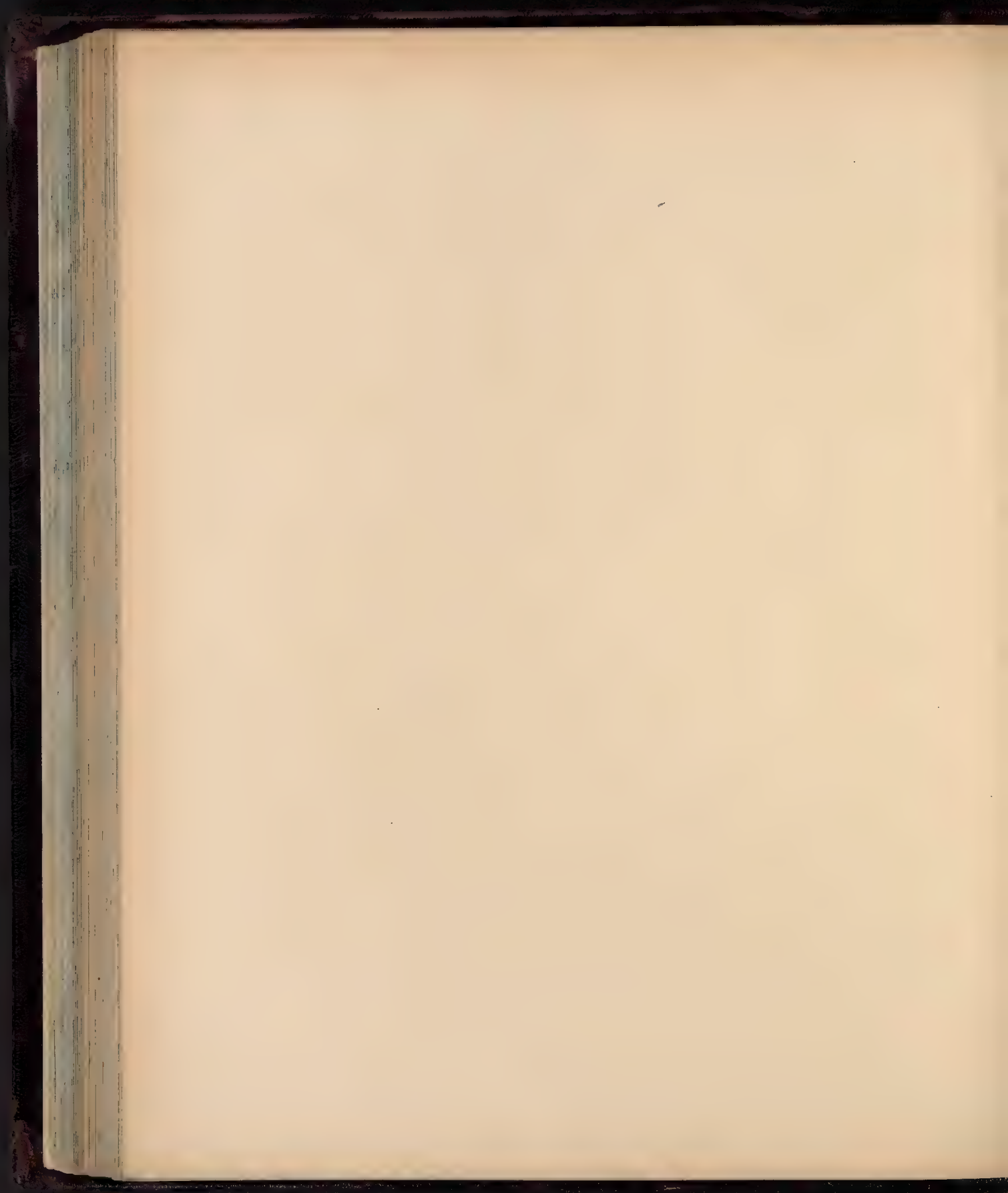
II. Christ anointing Mabá' Šěyôn with the Essence of His Body.

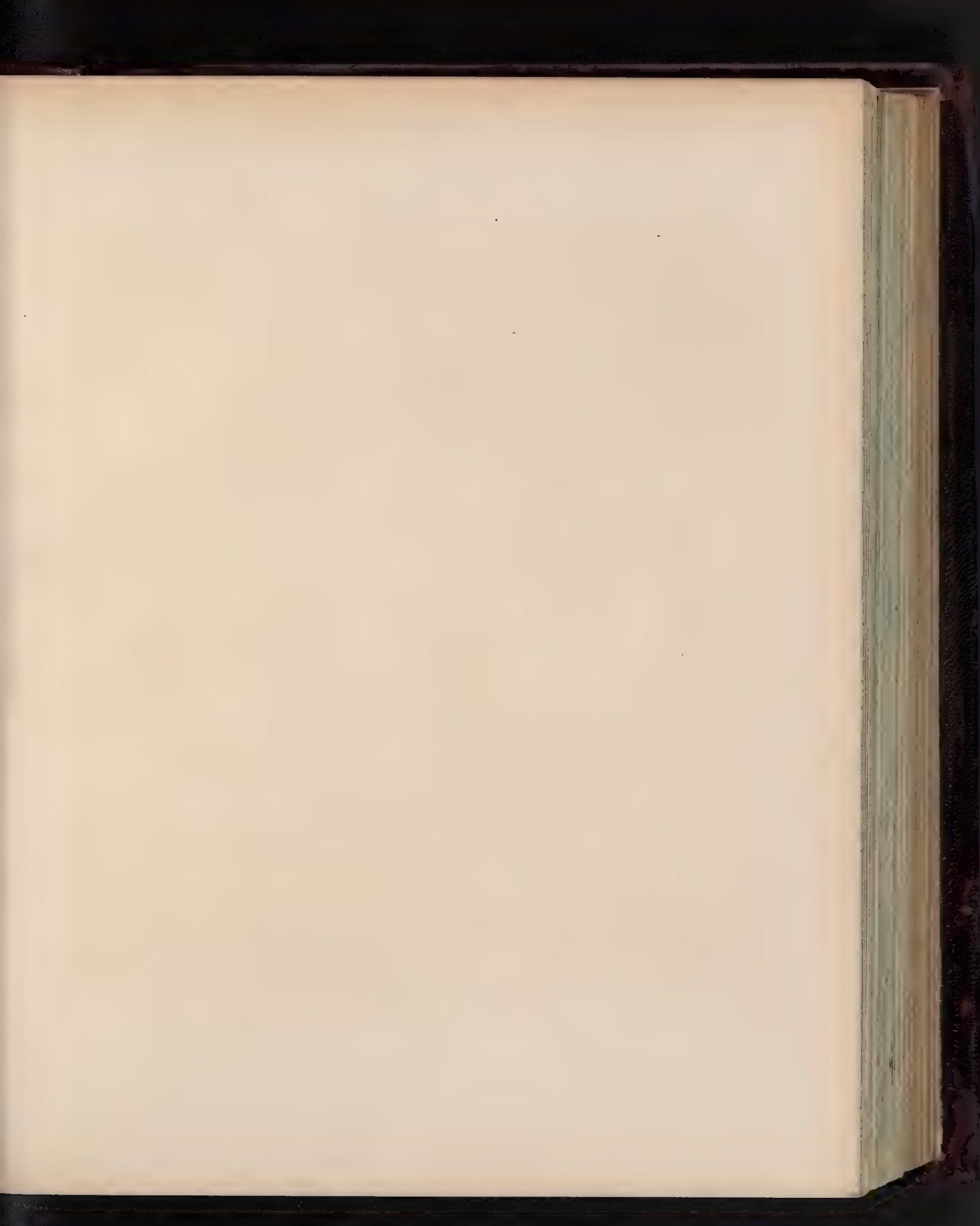
"taken refuge in thy name, or hath been baptized by thee, or [Fol. 31^b] "hath been blessed by thy hand, or hath walked in thy precepts, and "even if I hear that he hath heard of the fame of thee afar off I will "be gracious unto him. And this I swear unto thee by Myself. I am "the Son of God Almighty, and the firstborn of the blessed Mary; "My word hath no falsehood in it, and My covenant shall never be "broken. And moreover, I swear unto thee that, when thou in the "future shalt ask of Me whatsoever thou desirest, I will hearken unto "thy petition and I will give thee according to thy wish." And saying these words He brought forth essence from His own Body and said unto Mabâ' ŞĖyôn, "Come hither to Me." And our Lord anointed him so that his face and the whole of his body might be covered with the essence of Divinity; then He departed from him. And his heart beat with love for Him because of His gift, and his mind was led away captive by His beauty; and the odour which Mabâ' ŞĖyôn had aforetime did not leave him. May God Almighty have [Fol. 32^a] mercy upon us in His graciousness, and upon the sinner His servant Takla Hâymânôt, and upon his beloved [wife] Walatta ŞĖyôn, for ever and ever. Amen.

[Fol. 33^a] In the Name of the Holy Trinity we will continue [to relate the story of Mabâ' ŞĖyôn] for him that will read¹, or will listen thereunto with his understanding.

And it came to pass that when God Almighty increased exceedingly His love for Takla Mâryâm [who was surnamed Mabâ' ŞĖyôn], to such a degree that He visited him to give him the covenant of mercy, and fed him from His breast, Mabâ' ŞĖyôn meditated in

¹ Read ἈΝΕΓΓΡΑ :







Mabâ' Şeyôn exhorting the priests to celebrate the death of our Lord
on the twenty-seventh day of the month Magâbit.

his heart and said, "What can I give in return to my Lord God "Jesus Christ, Who hath shewn His love to me so far as to be un-
 "mindful of my sins? And what festival can I celebrate in return for
 "His love? I keep with all the honour in my power the festivals of His
 "Nativity, and Baptism, and Passion, and Resurrection, along with
 "other folk, but what festival can I celebrate in His honour by myself?
 "And with what can I please Him?" And having said these words
 he prayed, saying, "O my Lord and God, reveal Thou unto me a
 "festival which I may celebrate—one which Thou wouldst wish to be
 "celebrated—and with which Thou wouldst be well pleased." And the
 Lord heard his petition, and [considered] his meditation, and [Fol. 33^b]
 shewed him by the Holy Spirit that he should celebrate with honour
 the glorious, and holy, and excellent day wherein they crucified our
 Lord Jesus Christ for the redemption of the whole world. And he
 enquired of the priests saying, "On what day was He offered up as
 "a sacrifice? And on what day did our Lord and God and Redeemer
 "Jesus Christ rise [from the dead]?" And some said, "On the twenty-
 "ninth day of the month Magâbît,"¹ and some said, "According to
 "the Book of the Acts of the Saints" He was offered up as a sacrifice
 "on the twenty-seventh day, and He rose [from the dead] on the
 "twenty-ninth day; and thus do the Three hundred and eighteen²
 "orthodox [fathers] say in the Book of Khadâr³; and thus also doth
 "the book [containing] the discourse on the Ascension of our Lady
 "Mary say." And when Mabâ' ŞĒyôn learnt this he rejoiced that he
 had found that for which he had great desire⁴, namely, a suitable day

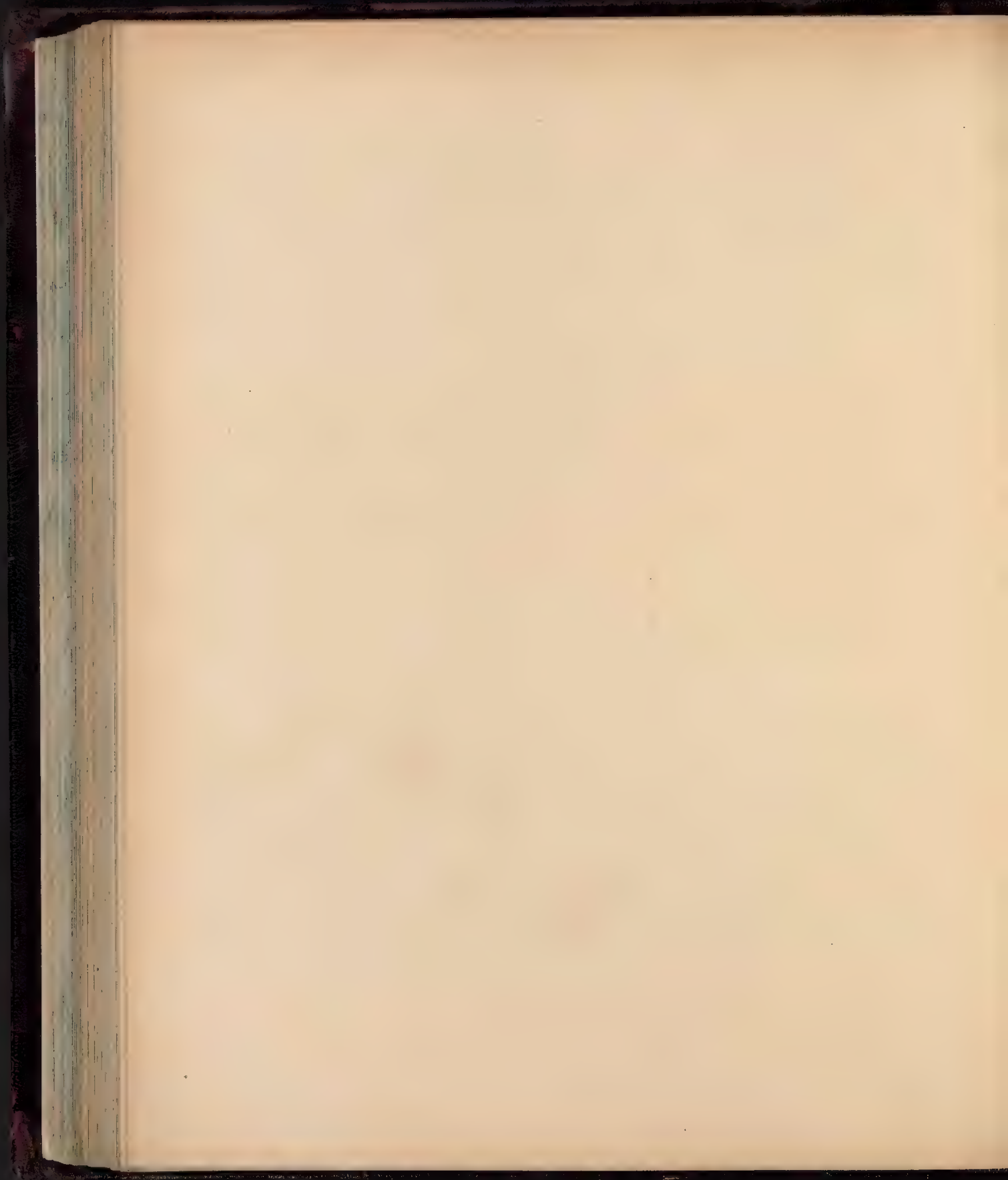
¹ I. e., March 25.

² I. e., the Synaxarium.

³ I. e., the 318 bishops who met at Nicæa.

⁴ A section of the Synaxarium.

⁵ Read **ዘተመዘ**:



and one which had not been already adopted as a festival day, and which had not been employed for the commemoration of [any one of] the saints [Fol. 34*a*] or martyrs. This day then did Mabâ' SĖyôn chose, and he loved, and beautified, and exalted and magnified [it]. And all his brethren, and sisters, and children, and relatives were gathered together, and he spake unto them, saying, "Hearken ye unto me, and I will tell you that I have tried [to learn] how we may find life everlasting in the kingdom of heaven. For all the saints have acquired advantage for themselves, some by fasting, and some by abstinence, and some by leading the life of the recluse, and some by prayer, and some by kneeling in worship, and some by watching; but as for us, we are unfaithful folk. Come, let us yoke ourselves to the work of celebrating the death of our Lord and Redeemer Jesus Christ, for by this we shall see the face of the Lord, Who Himself said when He gave them the Mystery of Himself, 'When ye celebrate [this feast] do ye it in remembrance of My death', and in 'memory of My resurrection.' Ye shall proclaim the desire that we have to celebrate His commemoration, [Fol. 34*b*] and let us search out and see how He Who became the firstborn of life for us may be well pleased with us. The death of each one of our fathers the Apostles is commemorated on the day of his festival, whilst the death of our Lord Jesus Christ, Who Himself created them, and sanctified them, and chose them, and exalted them, is not commemorated in any way whatsoever; only His life-giving resurrection is commemorated. If He had not died for us who would have risen from the dead to give us life? And why should the remembrance² of His death be less esteemed than the remembrance of His resur-

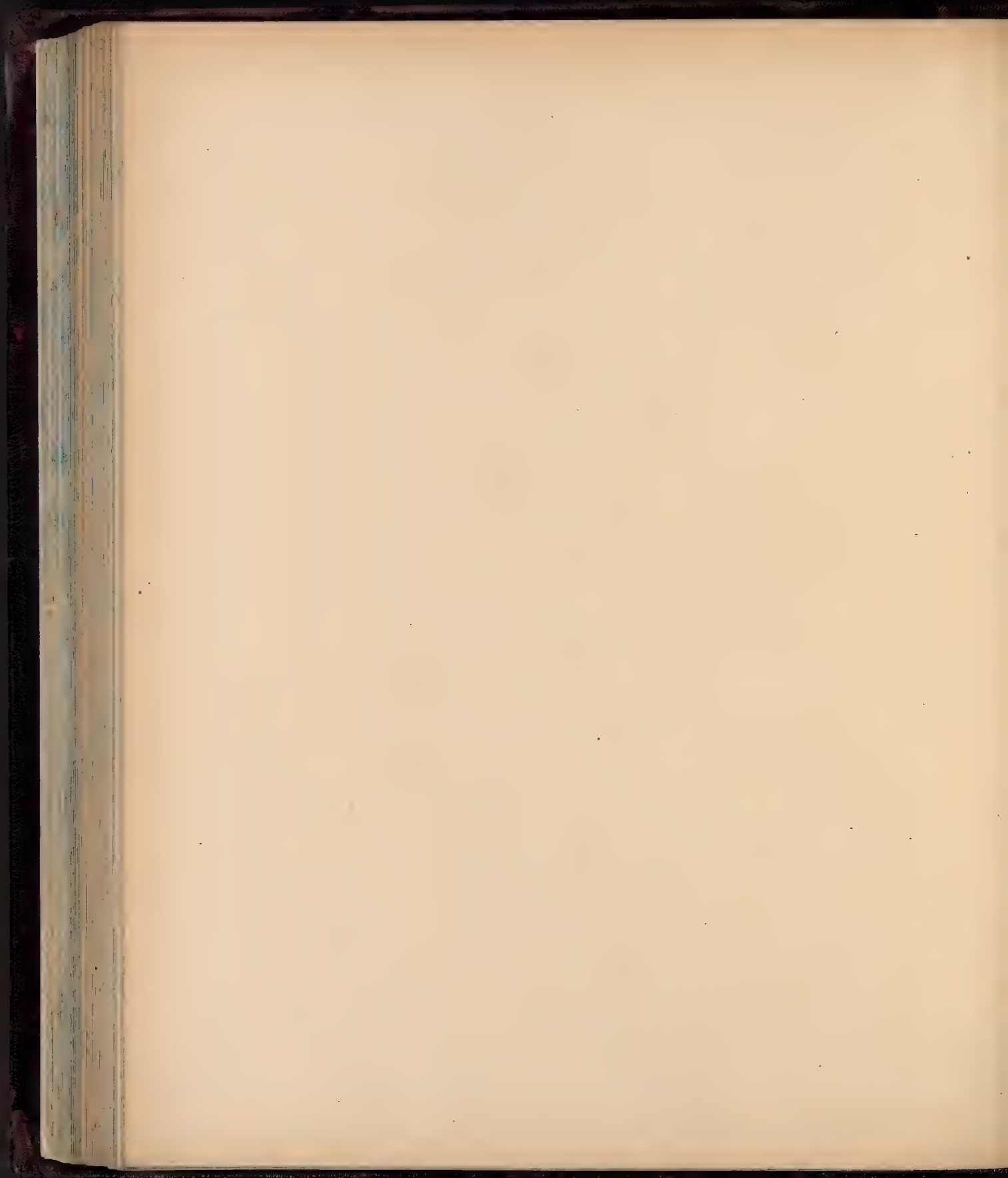
¹ St Luke XXII. 19; 1. Corinthians XI. 24.

² Read ܐܡܢܐ :

"rection? And moreover, according to that which is meet, I desire "that no manner of work, either of the cultivation of the field, or "selling in the market-place, and no work which is done by the body, "shall be performed on the day of the festival of our Lord and "Redeemer Jesus Christ. And I desire that we celebrate the festival "with weeping, and with grief, and with exceedingly great sorrow "[Fol. 35a] because of the crucifixion of our glorious Redeemer. And "now, hearken, and give your assent, O ye who are with me, so that "we may undertake and carry out this thing, whether it be for our "death or for our life." And [the priests] said unto him, "We consent: "let the will of our Lord be done according to what thou hast com- "manded us. And we set thee to be our guide unto the kingdom "of heaven, to which thou thyself art the path of righteousness." And Mabâ' ŞĒyôn said unto them, "Entreat ye our Lord God that He "may strengthen us."

Now there were certain men who hated¹ us, and they upbraided us, saying, "They have not the power to make laws for a festival "and to celebrate it according to their own will." [And Mabâ' ŞĒyôn said unto his followers,] "Ye shall not fear those who are our enemies, "for we will confront them with the Scriptures; and if we are nôt able "to answer them, let them crucify me and pierce me with the spear, "for the honouring of the death of our God, and let my death come "in this wise [Fol. 35b]. For He, Who died for our sakes (whether "[the festival be celebrated] on the day we name, that is to say, "on the twenty-seventh day of the month Magâbît, or on any other "day, or whether we know the day or not), knoweth our mind; and "He will neither lessen our reward nor restrain us because we know

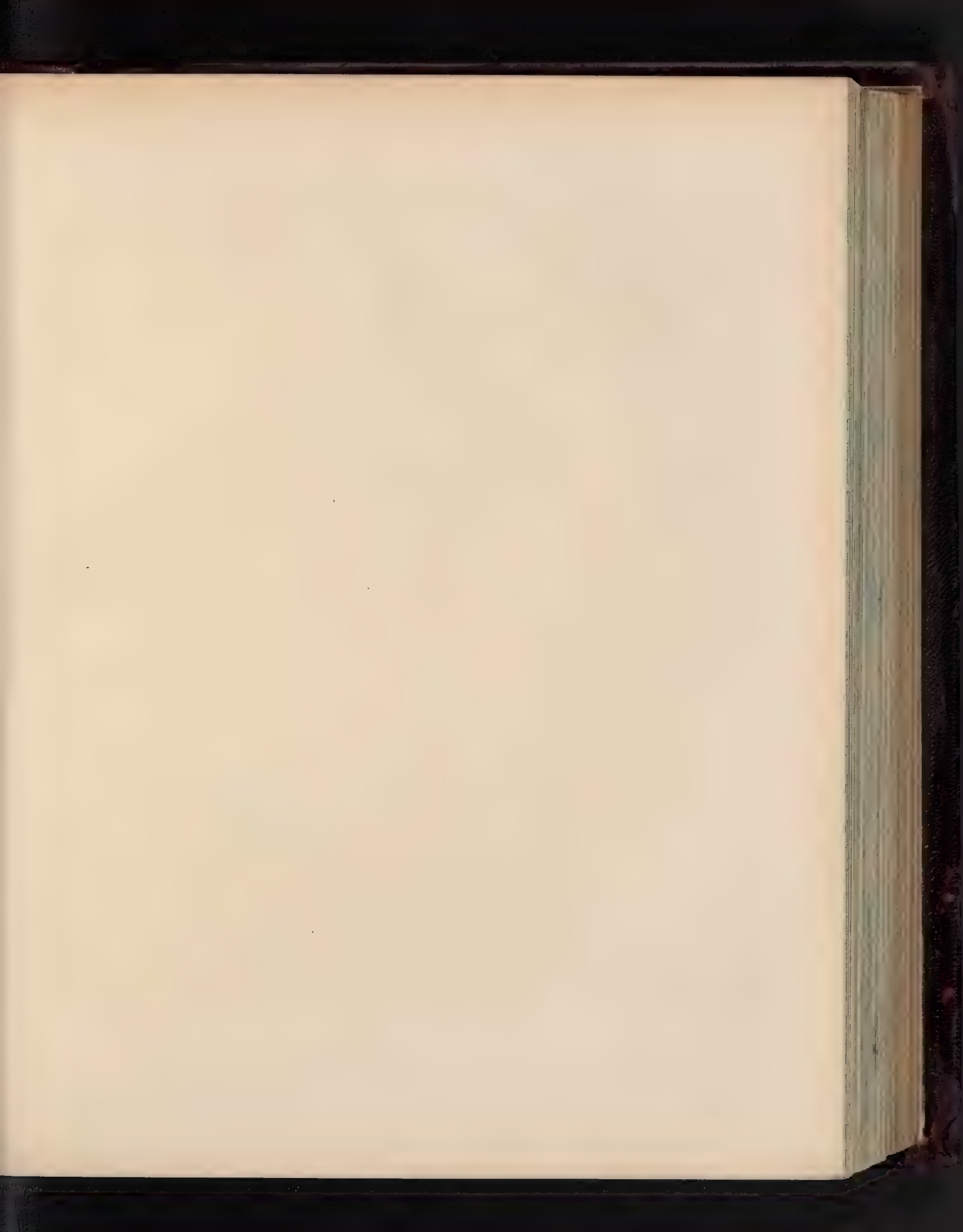
¹ Read **ዘጸጸጸጸ**:



"not [the day]. Let us, then, be bold in our mind and strong in this "work until the time when our souls shall depart from this fleeting "world." And having said these words he celebrated the festival honourably in peace, together with those men who were his associates and were firm in the faith like unto our father Mabâ' ŞĖyôn. May the might of his prayer preserve his beloved one Takla Hâymânôt and his beloved [wife] Walatta ŞĖyôn, always for ever and ever! Amen.

[Fol. 37*a*] And it came to pass that four months afterwards Mabâ' ŞĖyôn beckoned unto him to whom he had told his affair aforetime, and he brought him into his habitation. And Mabâ' ŞĖyôn wept bitterly, and his breast heaved with sobs, and straightway the man who was looking at him became terrified, and said unto him, "What aileth thee?" And Mabâ' ŞĖyôn spake unto him, saying, "I entreated the Lord to shew me how He was crucified, and how "He was nailed to the wood of the cross, saying, 'Shew this unto "me, so that I may weep and make lamentation for Thy sake when "I see Thy sufferings, as a memorial of Thy death. O Lord, Thou "hast said unto me, 'Ask whatsoever thou desirest, and I will give "[it] unto thee'; shew me now that which I ask of Thee, and treat "not lightly my expectation, for Thou art my father and my mother, "and besides Thee I have none other.' And whilst I was praying in "this manner He suddenly appeared¹ unto me and said unto me, 'Dost "thou wish to look upon My sufferings?' And I said unto Him, "Yea, O my Lord, [Fol. 37*b*] I do desire [this thing]. And He said "unto me, 'Art thou able to bear the sight of My sufferings?' And

¹ Read **âdîcâz** :



II. Christ conversing with Mabá' Şeyôn.



I. Christ, having taken Mabá' Şeyôn to Golgotha, shews him how He was crucified in the presence of the Virgin Mary and Saint John.

III. Mabá' Şeyôn watching the Crucifixion, falls prostrate to the earth.

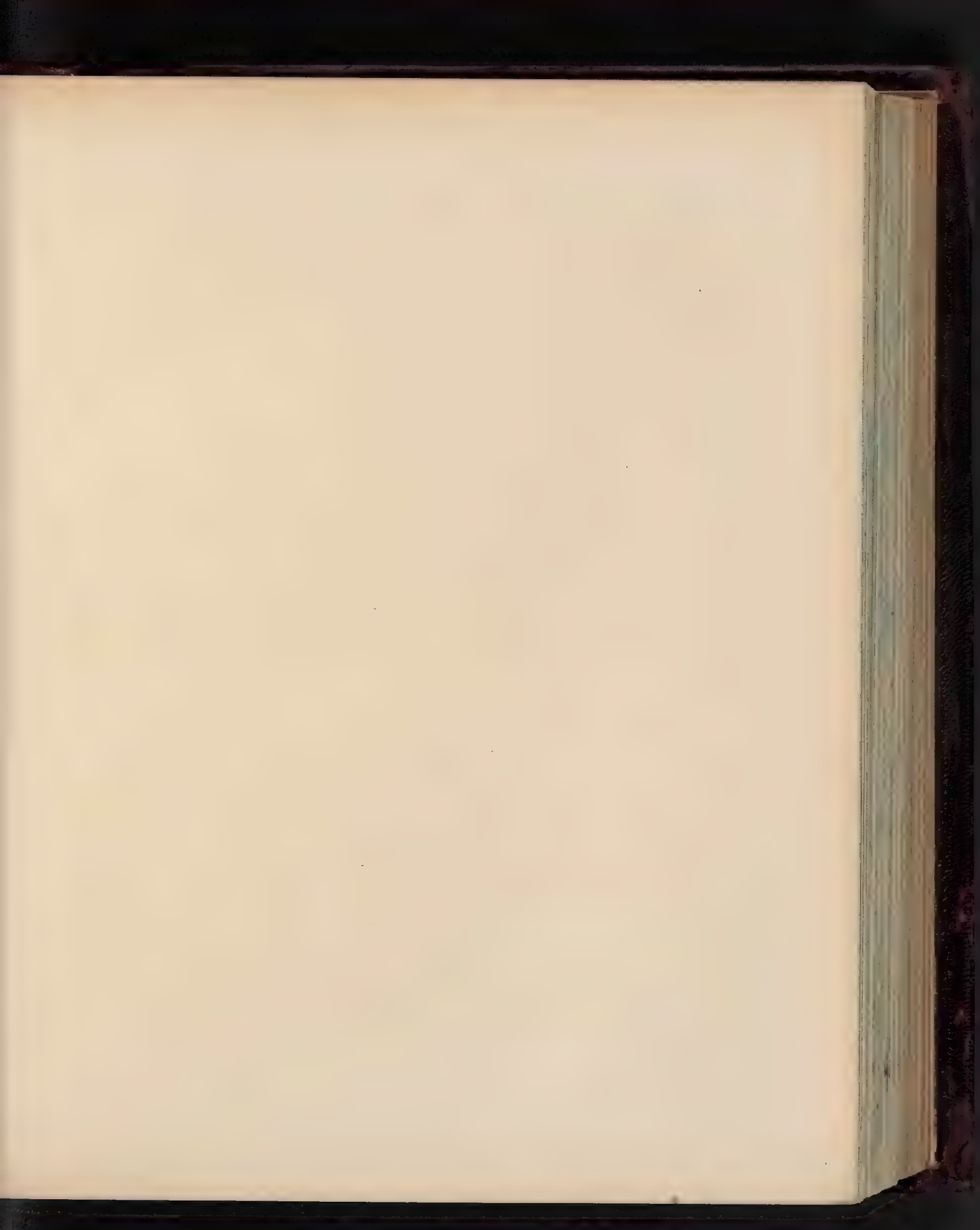
"I said unto Him, 'The might which belongeth to Thee will give me
"strength to bear it; only do Thou, O my Lord, be pleased to let
"me see them.' Then He said unto me, 'Come, thou shalt see them.'
"Then He bore me in a chariot of light and took me towards the
"east, and He brought me in the twinkling of an eye unto Jerusalem;
"and He said unto me, 'This is Kṛânyô, (*i. e.*, Κρανίου τόπος, *i. e.*,
"Golgotha'), the place whereon I was crucified.' And straightway,
"in the twinkling of an eye, the wooden cross came and stood up
"here as it did in days of old, and the Lord Himself ascended it forth-
"with; and He stretched out His holy hands upon the wood of the
"cross, and His hands and His feet were nailed thereunto, and He
"wore the crown of thorns upon His head, and He looked upon me
"with His consoling eyes filled with tears. And straightway when
"He had looked upon me my whole frame melted, and I sank down
"prostrate to the earth, and became as one dead; and had it not
"been for the strength of the Lord my soul must have departed
"[Fol. 38a] forthwith from my body. And when He had come
"down from His cross He said unto me, 'Did I not tell thee that
"thou wert not able to bear the sight of My sufferings?' And I
"said unto Him, 'O my Lord, I did not know that Thy death would
"be such a terrifying thing, and such a horribly appalling sight. But
"blessed be Thy Name because Thou hast graciously granted unto
"me my petition and my earnest desire, and because Thou hast ful-
"filled for me Thy loving kindness, O Thou lover of mankind. And
"now, O Lord, bless Thou me, so that I may celebrate the commemo-
"ration of thy death according to my strength, for I am Thy servant
"Mabâ' ŞĒyôn. And be pleased, O Lord, to let me offer unto Thee

¹ St. Matthew XXVII. 33; St. Mark XV. 22; St. John XIX. 17.

"a little oblation, and incense, and offerings, in return for the smiting
"of Thy cheeks, and the blows upon Thy head, and the beating of
"Thy back, and the nailing of Thy hands and feet to the cross, and
"the piercing of Thy side, and the wounding of Thy body, and the
"shedding of Thy precious blood. Be Thou graciously pleased [to
"grant] me [this] which I shall love [to do]."

And it came to pass when our father Mabâ' ŞĖyôn had said those things unto the Lover of men that the Lord said unto him, "It shall be unto thee as thou wishest, O holy and [Fol. 38b] blessed one, and on the day wherein thou celebretest My commemoration I will not depart from thee. And not only on the day wherein thou celebretest my commemoration [will I be with thee], but never at any time will I leave thee; and each time that thou makest mention of My name I will not be absent from thee, for as thou hast loved Me, even so do I love thee. Only, however, choose thou in what form I am to appear unto thee, whether I am to come as a child, or as a young man, or in the form in which I have appeared unto thee in the sufferings of My death."

"And I Mabâ' ŞĖyôn said unto Him, 'Let it be according to Thy good pleasure'. And then a second time He said, 'Do thou choose according to thy heart's desire.' And I said unto Him, 'Since Thou hast permitted me so to do I will choose; by Thy good pleasure unto me the sinner Thy servant Mabâ' ŞĖyôn, I desire that Thou shouldst appear unto me in the form of a gentle child.' And the Lord said unto him, 'I consent'. And straightway the blessed man bowed down to the ground and paid homage unto Him, and gave praise unto Him; then the chariot of light bore him away and brought him to his own country, and our Lord [Fol. 39a] covered him with glory indescribable. May his labours guard His servant



I. Mabá' Šěyôn grinding corn; the flour is running into a jar.

II. Servant bringing water or ale for the feast.

III. Mabá' Šěyôn mixing dough for the festival cakes.

IV. Mabá' Šěyôn carrying wood for the bakery fire.



V. Servant filling an earthenware bottle with beer for Mabá' Šěyôn to take to the table.

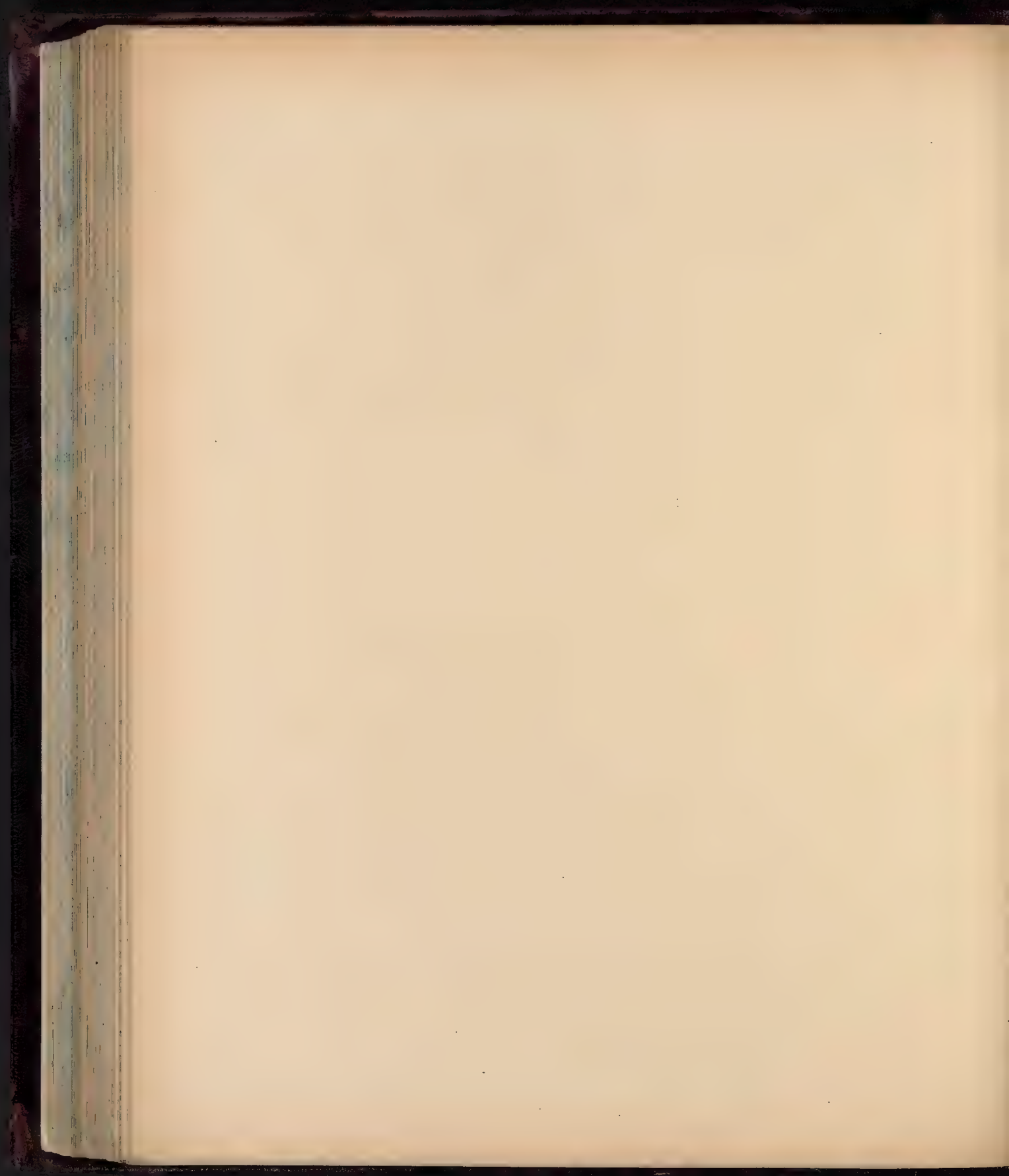
VI. The hungry sitting at meat on the day of the festival, and being ministered unto by Mabá' Šěyôn.

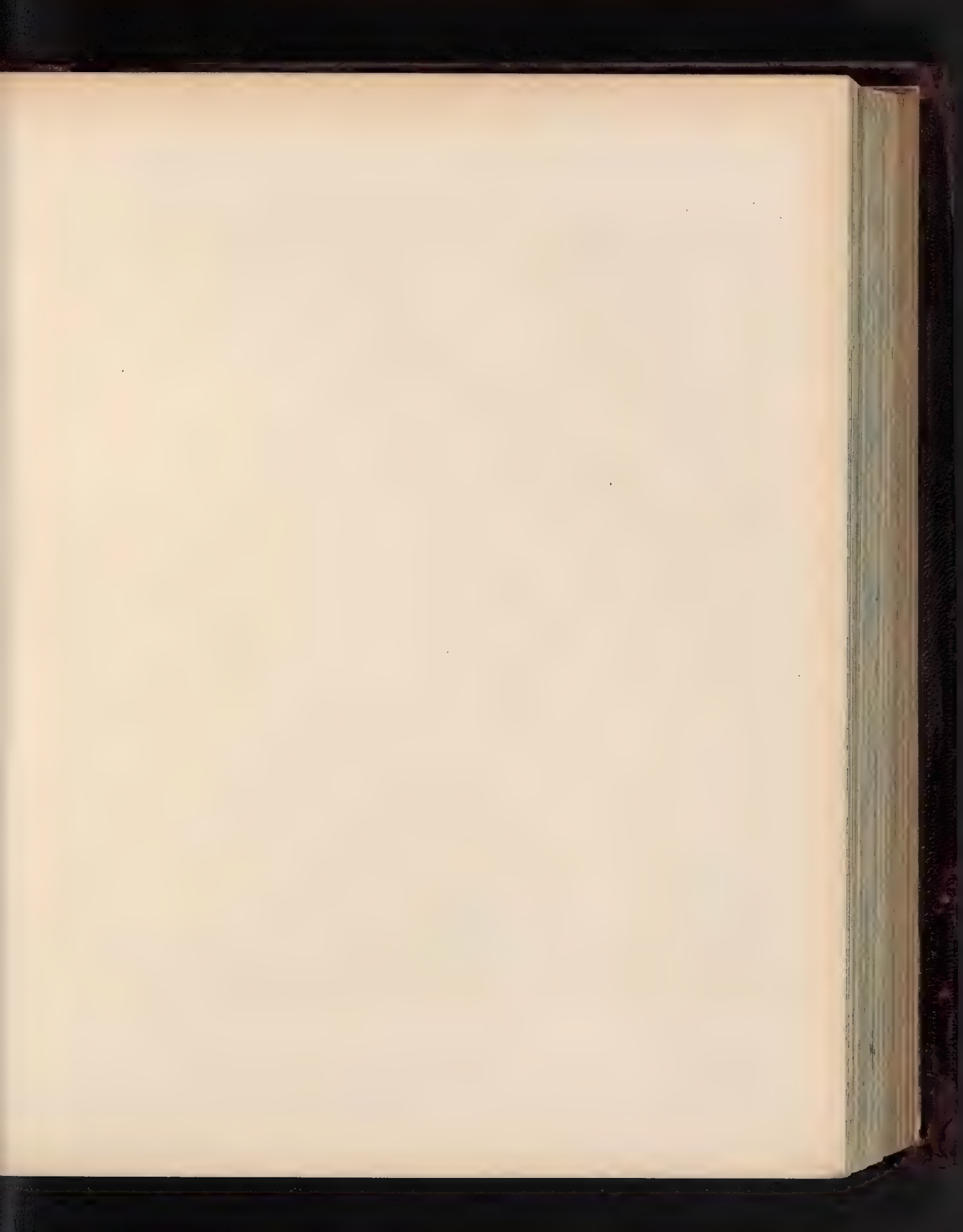
Takla Hâymanôt and his beloved [wife] Walatta ŞĖyôn for ever and ever! Amen.

[Fol. 40a] And it came to pass at that time that Mabâ' ŞĖyôn persevered the more, and he was eaten up with care for the celebration of the commemoration of the death of our Lord and Redeemer Jesus Christ. And he crushed wheat with his own hands, and prepared ale from grain, and baked bread; and he brought water and poured it unto jars. And he hewed wood and carried it upon his head and shoulders, and thereby he made himself like unto our Lord Jesus Christ, Who bore the wood of His cross that He might redeem His handiwork, saying, "I also will carry [the wood] that I may celebrate His commemoration, and that I may be His servant." Now he honoured Him with the most humble service, for in the presence of his servants he kindled the fire, and although he was a priest and a teacher he bowed the knee in service; he did not desire to do himself honour with the wine of the love of the Son of Mary nor to be drunk therewith. And he turned not backward but celebrated the festival on the twenty-seventh¹ day of the month Magâbît with praise, and with fasting, along with the priests [Fol. 40b] and deacons, and with holiness, and with incense, and with the offering up of prayer, and with the feeding of the hungry, and with the giving of drink to the thirsty, in commemoration of the death of the Redeemer.

And moreover, he stablished an order of priests [to serve] each month, and he appointed each company to its month by lot. And he spake unto them, saying, "Ye shall serve and labour for the commemoration of the death of your God until your strength shall fail,

¹ Read ፳፻፲፱፻፳ :







Mabâ' Sëyôn exhorting the company of priests to keep diligently, and with all honour, the festival of the death of our Lord.

"and until the sweat shall fall from you drop by drop, and until your bones shall crumble to pieces, and until your blood be shed. Hear ye what our Lord saith in the Gospel':—'Whosoever giveth a cup of cold water in the name of My disciple, verily I say unto you, he shall not lose his reward.' Whosoever worketh in His name shall certainly find honour and grace with Him. Toil ye then, and labour for the sake of the honour of His death, and for the sake of His mother's weeping, and for the sake of the wonder of His Passion. And keep ye Him in your minds that ye may do honour to Him to the utmost, and let the festival of the commemoration of the Son of God Almighty be greater than the festivals of the saints [Fol. 41a] and righteous men. If ye do these things with the firm endeavour of your heart, ye shall be judged, but He will judge me for your sakes; only be ye not disturbed by the talking of the tongue, and by the rising up of Satan, and keep ye yourselves from the snares of the world." In this wise did our father Mabá' Šěyôn, the preacher of holiness, the priest, exhort continually those who were about to celebrate the commemoration of the Redeemer; may his prayer preserve his beloved one Takla Hâymânôt, and his beloved [wife] Walatta Šěyôn like the pupil of the eye for ever and ever! Amen.

[Fol. 42b] Now Mabá' Šěyôn set his mind with zeal and diligence to celebrate the commemoration of [the death of] our Redeemer each year from the day of the Eve of Easter, and no computation was brought into his counting. He celebrated the commemoration of the Redeemer for three days, along with [the commemoration of] His

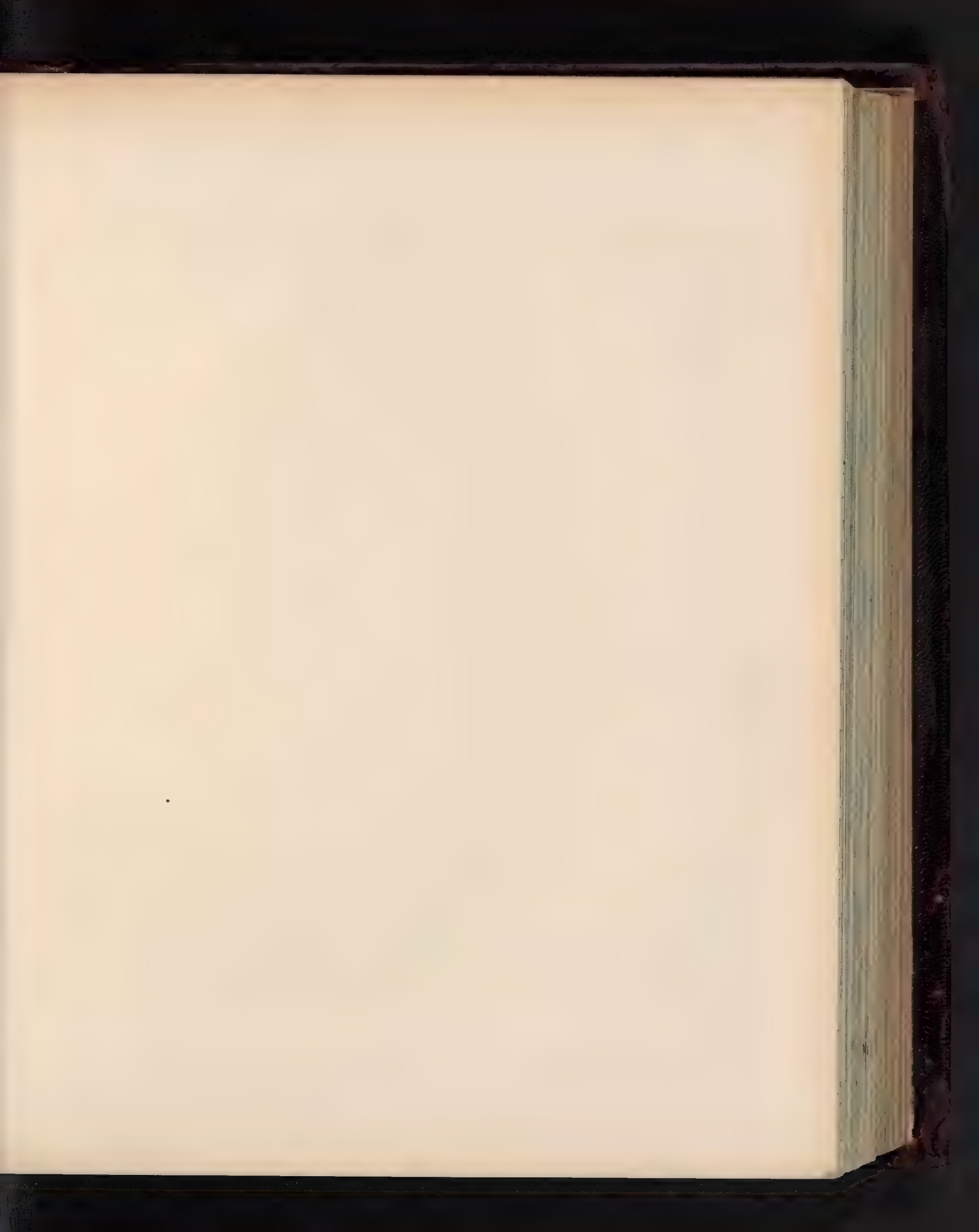
* St. Matthew X. 42. The ordinary text reads ወዘአስተየ፡ አሐደ፡ እምአሉ፡ ገሩሳ፡ ጽዮን፡ ማየ፡ ቁሪር፡ ባሕተ፡ በስሙ፡ ረድእ፡ አማን፡ እብሰክሙ፡ እደሐጉል፡ ዐሰሶ።

holy Resurrection in seven days, thus counting the tenth, twentieth, thirtieth, and fortieth day until he came to the Eve of Easter each year, whereby the day of His Crucifixion always arrived, whether with the [first day of the] month, or the second, or the third, according as the month occurred¹. On this day he celebrated the commemoration of the Redeemer each time in its proper month; but on the day of the Easter Eve he celebrated the festival saying, "On this day our Lord and God and Redeemer Jesus Christ was crucified for the redemption of the whole world, at His own desire and by His good pleasure; He never committed sin, and no falsehood was ever found² in His mouth; He suffered and died for the sins of many." On this day [Fol. 43a], on each Eve [of Easter], for a memorial of His death, Mabā' Šēyōn used to pierce his own side, and make himself bow the knee. And he used to bake bread-cakes made of the finest wheat flour, and make divination by casting lots [therewith]; now he ornamented [them], and scented [them], and stamped them with the sign of the Cross. And after the Offering he used to break the [remainder] and give them round to the children of the church, and he had the cups filled with drink, and many sick and diseased persons were healed when they ate the bread which had been made in commemoration of the Redeemer. And the folk came from far and near anxiously wishing to eat in faith the bread which Mabā' Šēyōn had offered³ up, may his prayer and blessing deliver us and all those who hear from the hosts of the Adversary, and from disputes with the tongue; and may he protect the sinner his servant Takla

¹ I am not certain that I have rightly understood the text of this passage.

² Read **ወሐተኛበ** :

³ Read **ዘእቃረበ** :



I. A woman bringing her sick child to Mabá' Şeyôn.



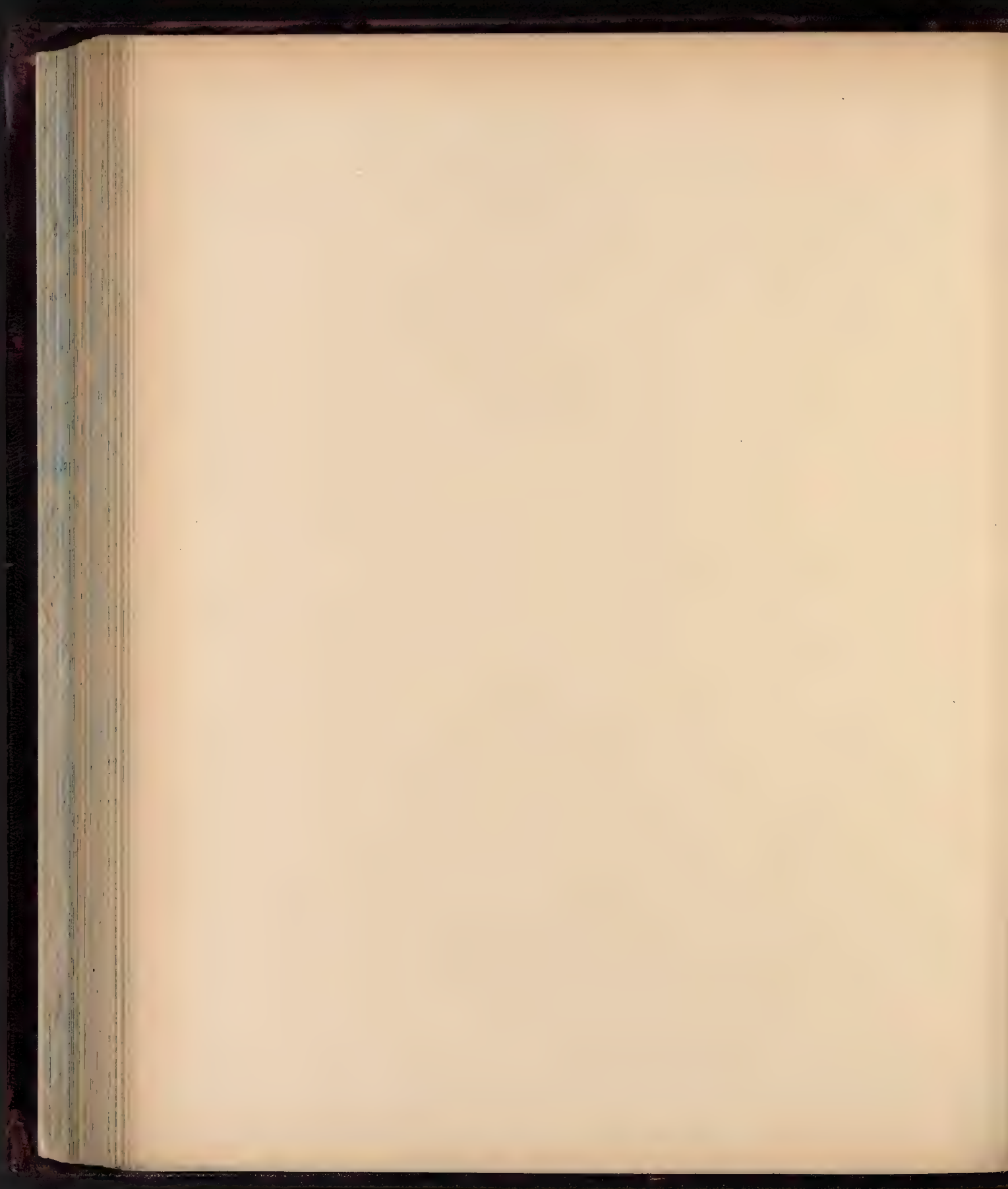
II. The child having had a piece of the holy cake from the paten put into his mouth, vomits a stone as black as soot, and recovers at once.

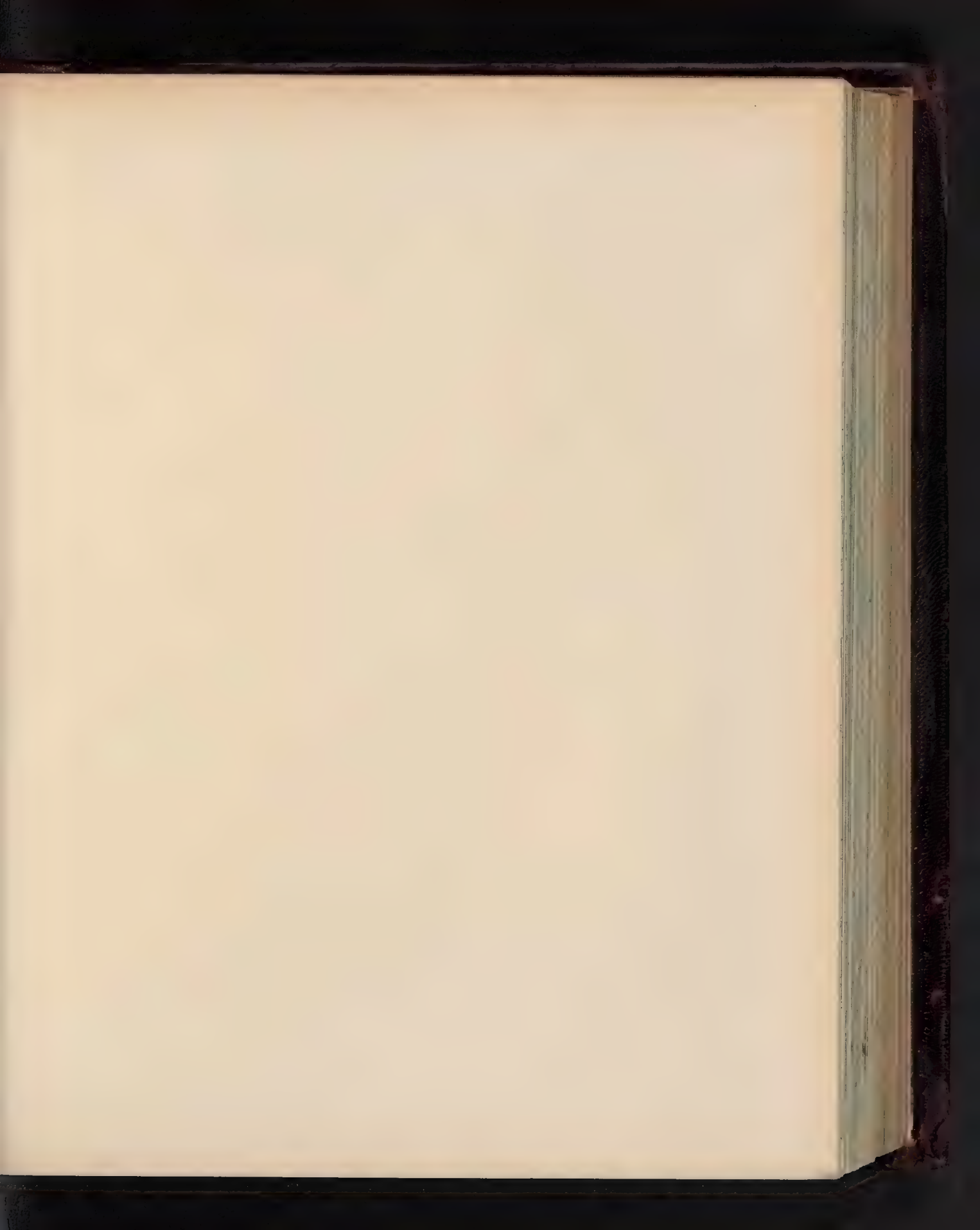
Hâymanôt, together with his beloved [wife] Walatta ŞĖyôn, for ever and ever! Amen.

[Fol. 44 b]. In the Name of God Almighty the Holy Trinity! Hear, O ye [people], and I will tell you of the miracles which our Lord and Redeemer Jesus Christ wrought by means of the bread of His holy commemoration, and by the hand of His servant Mabá' ŞĖyôn, who was filled with the Spirit; may his prayer and blessing protect the sinner, his servant Takla Hâymanôt, together with his beloved [wife] Walatta ŞĖyôn, for ever and ever! Amen.

I. THE MIRACLE OF THE SICK CHILD.

Now a certain woman came unto him and brought unto him a sick child, whose throat was so much swollen that he could not suck the milk from his mother's breast; and she said unto Mabá' ŞĖyôn, "Look, O father, for my child is dying, and heal him for me, for I put myself under the protection of thy God." And he said unto her, "If I heal him wilt thou give this child to Him as an offering, that he may celebrate the commemoration of our Redeemer?" And she said, "Yea. It shall be as thou sayest." Then he brought forth a little of the Eucharistic bread, and thrust it into the child's mouth; and the child vomited a stone, which was as black as soot, [Fol. 45 a], and straightway he became alive and sucked his mother's breast. Now when our father Takla Máryâm (*i. e.*, Mabá' ŞĖyôn) saw him, he gave thanks unto the Lord for that which He had wrought by his hands. And when the woman saw how her child had become alive she marvelled, and she went unto her own country with joy and gladness. May Mabá' ŞĖyôn make us to live, and may the might of his prayer preserve the sinner his servant Takla Hâymanôt,





I. A woman brings her sick child to Mabâ' Sëyôn, and lays him at his feet ; the saint having given the child some of the sacramental cake, cures him of his sickness, and the child is taken home by his mother, who has promised to dedicate him to Christ.

PLATE XXIII.



II. The woman's house is on fire, and one of her three children is burnt to death.

III. The child who had been vowed to Christ's service is found alive and well among the ruins of burnt house.

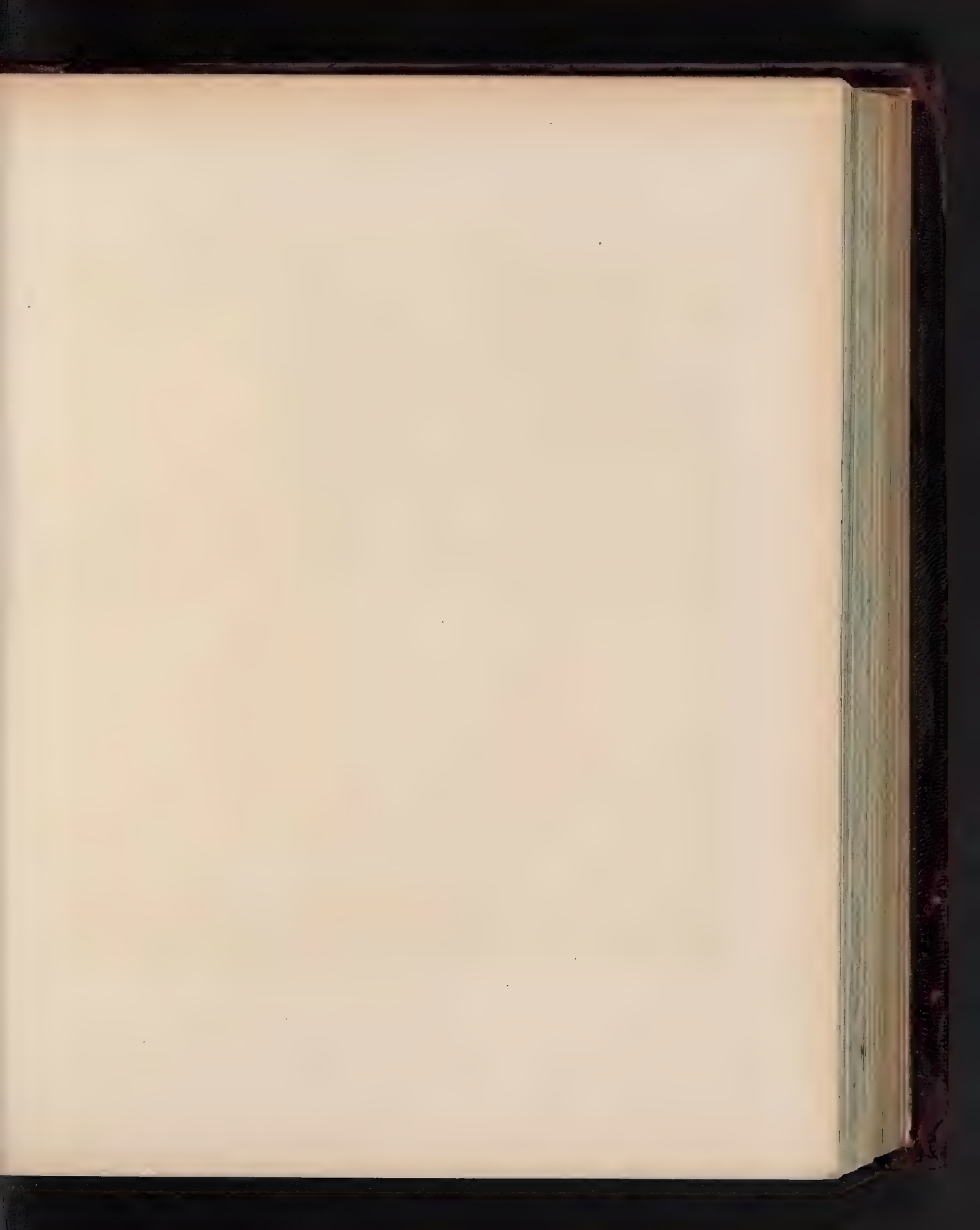
together with his beloved [wife] Walatta Šĕyŏn, for ever and for ever! Amen.

II. THE MIRACLE OF THE BURNING HOUSE.

[Fol. 46*a*]. The miracle which our Lord and Redeemer Jesus Christ wrought by the hand of His servant Mabā' Šĕyŏn; may the ship of His body deliver us from the raging whirlpool for ever and ever! Amen.

And again a certain woman came unto Mabā' Šĕyŏn carrying to him a sick child who was very nigh unto death, and she laid him down at his feet, and said unto him, "Take this child, and if thou canst heal him by thy holy prayers he shall be thy servant." And he said unto her, "To me he may not be a servant, but to our Lord 'Jesus Christ he shall be'; and when he had said these words he gave some of bread of commemoration to the child, who straightway became alive. Then Mabā' Šĕyŏn said unto the mother, "As soon as he hath grown a little more bring thou him here, and he shall abide in the church, and shall celebrate the commemoration of our 'Redeemer, since thou hast made of him a votive offering"; and the woman consented, and departed with rejoicing and came to her house.

And it came to pass one night [Fol. 46*b*] whilst she was sleeping along with her husband and three children that a fire broke out, and her house was set in a blaze. And the woman escaped with her husband, but they left behind them two children; now one of the three children was a young man, and as he was much older than the other two he therefore also escaped; and the woman in escaping burnt her body and legs and feet. And there was a great crying and noise of grief because of the two children who were [left] in the burning house. Now when the fire had died out they searched



II. Christ mixing the honey
and flour.

III. Mabâ' Şeyôn returning thanks
to God.



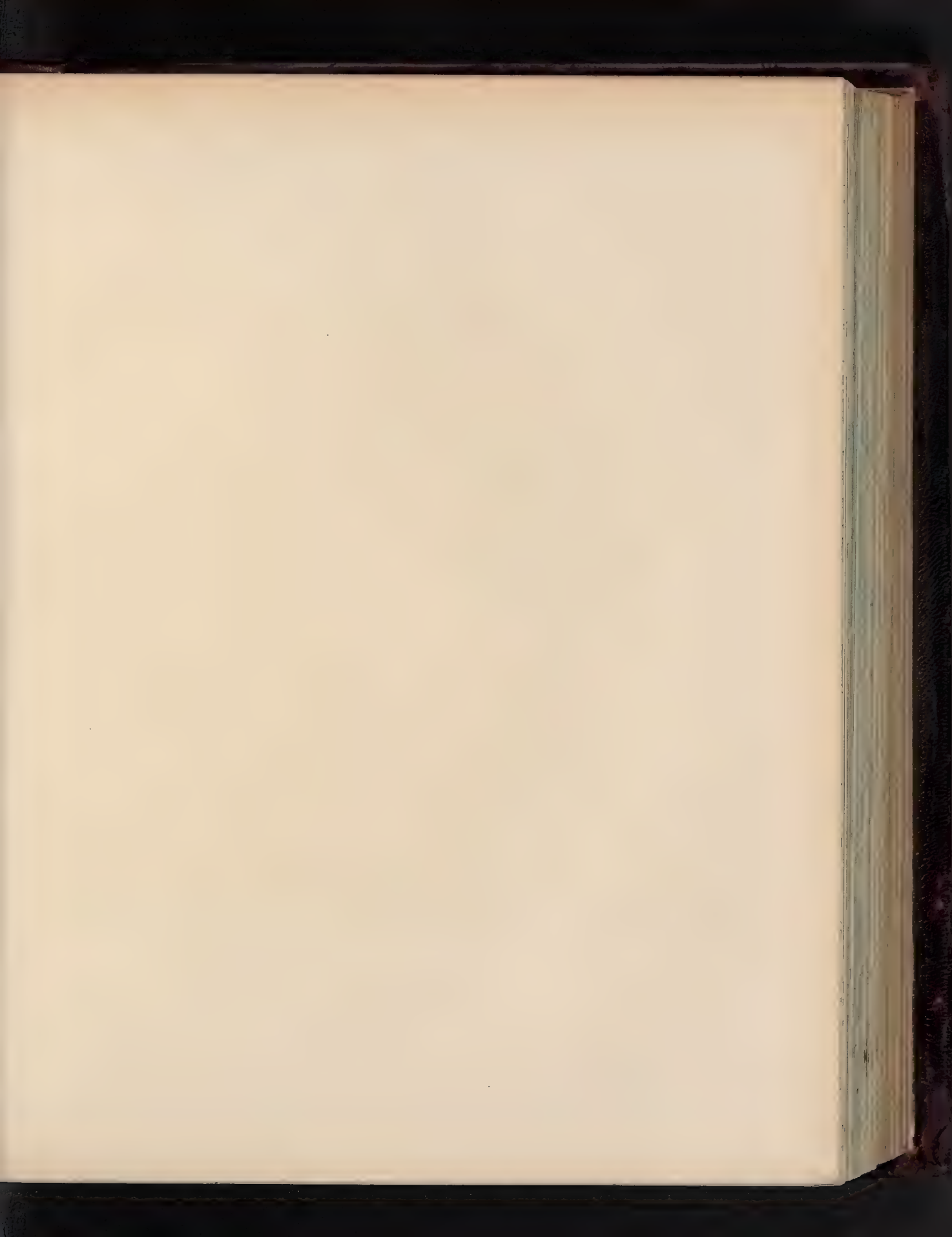
I. The priests watching the fire in the bowl of flour and honey
prepared for the festival-cakes.

through [the ruins] that, peradventure, they might find the bones of the children and bury them. And they found the child who had been vowed as an offering for the commemoration of the Redeemer alive, and neither the hair of his head, nor the garments which were upon him were burned; now this happened that his having been chosen for the commemoration of the Redeemer might be made known, but his brother was consumed by the flames and had become ashes. And one told this to the blessed man, the lover of the Redeemer, and he gave thanks unto the Lord for this miracle which had come to pass through His power. Thus likewise may the Lord deliver us from a horrible death, and from grievous sin, and may He [Fol. 47*a*] bless us in love; and moreover, may His longsuffering and His mercy be with His servant Takla Hâymânôt and with his beloved [wife] Walatta Şĕyôn for ever and ever! Amen.

III. THE MIRACLE OF THE BREAD OF COMMEMORATION.

[Fol. 48*a*] The miracle which our Lord and Redeemer Jesus Christ wrought by the hand of His servant Mabâ' Şĕyôn; may His blessing be with the sinner His servant Takla Hâymânôt for ever and ever! Amen.

Now there was a certain vessel (*or* bowl) full of flour which was about to be made into bread-cakes for the commemoration of the Son of God Almighty, our Lord Jesus Christ, and upon the flour there lay some fine, white honey which had been run out from the comb. Now upon the honey a fire, which shot out multitudes of sparks, was burning; and when the folk pressed forward to look at it, the sparks of light which were joined with fire became extinct. But the honey was left standing upon the flour, and the flavour thereof was more wonderful than that of any other honey which had



I. Mabâ' Şeyôn giving the bread of commemoration to the barren woman.



II. The woman bringing to him, two years later, the children which she had got through his prayers.

been run out of the comb. And Mabâ' ŞĒyôn rejoiced and sang praises, saying, "Blessed be the Lord Who hath been graciously "pleased with this my offering, and Who hath made manifest a "wonderful thing thereby; and moreover, He hath not remembered "my sin, but hath mixed that honey with the flour." And it became a thing to wonder at; by it he gave us [Fol. 48^b] victory, and fed us with meals of hidden manna through his prayer. May he protect the sinner his servant Takla Hâymânôt, and his wife Walatta ŞĒyôn for ever and ever! Amen.

IV. THE MIRACLE OF THE BARREN WOMAN.

[Fol. 49^b] The miracle which our Lord Jesus Christ wrought by the hand of Mabâ' ŞĒyôn; may the might of his prayer protect his servant Takla Hâymânôt and his beloved [wife] Walatta ŞĒyôn for ever and ever! Amen.

Now a certain woman came and said unto our father Takla Mâryâm (*i. e.*, Mabâ' ŞĒyôn), "Remember me in thy holy prayers. "I have come to many [other] saints [with this request], but I have "not [hitherto] accomplished my desire; and when I heard of the fame "of thee I came to thee straightway that thou mightest help me by "thy prayers." Then Mabâ' ŞĒyôn said unto her, "I am a sinner and "am unfit to be dust for the feet of the saints [to tread upon]; thinkest "thou that that which thou hadst a difficulty in finding with them thou "wilt find with me? Tell me now, what is thy heart's desire?" And the woman said, "I am a barren woman, and I have never brought "forth a child, although I have lived with my husband for a long "time." Then Mabâ' ŞĒyôn saith unto her, "If the Lord giveth thee "a son, wilt thou dedicate him to the commemoration of the Redeemer "as an offering?" And the woman said unto him, "Yea. It shall be





Mabá' Şeyôn giving the bread of commemoration
to one of his sisters.

"as thou [Fol. 50*a*] sayest unto me." Then Mabâ' ŞĒyôn gave her some of the bread of the commemoration of the Redeemer, and she ate it, and she was blessed by him, and, believing that [the Lord] would shew mercy unto her, she came to her own country. And it came to pass that two years after she went back to Mabâ' ŞĒyôn, carrying with her two children, and she said unto him, "Behold these "two children to which I have given birth, through thy prayer, O "father." And when Abbâ Takla Mâryâm (*i. e.*, Mabâ' ŞĒyôn) looked at them he smiled, and laughed, and rejoiced, and praised God Almighty; and he took them in his hands, and said a blessing over them, and he breathed in the faces of the [two] children. Then he said unto their mother, "If I am alive bring the children to me when "they have grown up, and if I am dead, then give them for the "commemoration of the Redeemer according to thy vow, that the "Lord may not keep anger against thee"; and he gave the children to her, and she took them and departed with rejoicing. So likewise may the Lord make the sinner His servant [Fol. 50*b*] Takla Hâymânôt to rejoice, and his beloved [wife] Walatta ŞĒyôn for ever and ever! Amen.

V. THE MIRACLE OF TRANSUBSTANTIATION.

[Fol. 51*a*] The miracle which our Lord and Redeemer Jesus Christ wrought by the hand of His servant Mabâ' ŞĒyôn; may His blessing protect the sinner His servant Takla Hâymânôt and his beloved [wife] Walatta ŞĒyôn for ever and ever! Amen.

Now there was a certain woman among the sisters of our father Takla Mâryâm (*i. e.*, Mabâ' ŞĒyôn), and she asked him to give her some of the bread of the commemoration of our Redeemer; and he gave her two very small pieces. And when she had taken them,



II. His sister giving the bread to the monk.

I. Mabâ' Şeyôn with the bread, some of which he gave to his sister.



III. The monk finding the Virgin and Child in the bread-box.

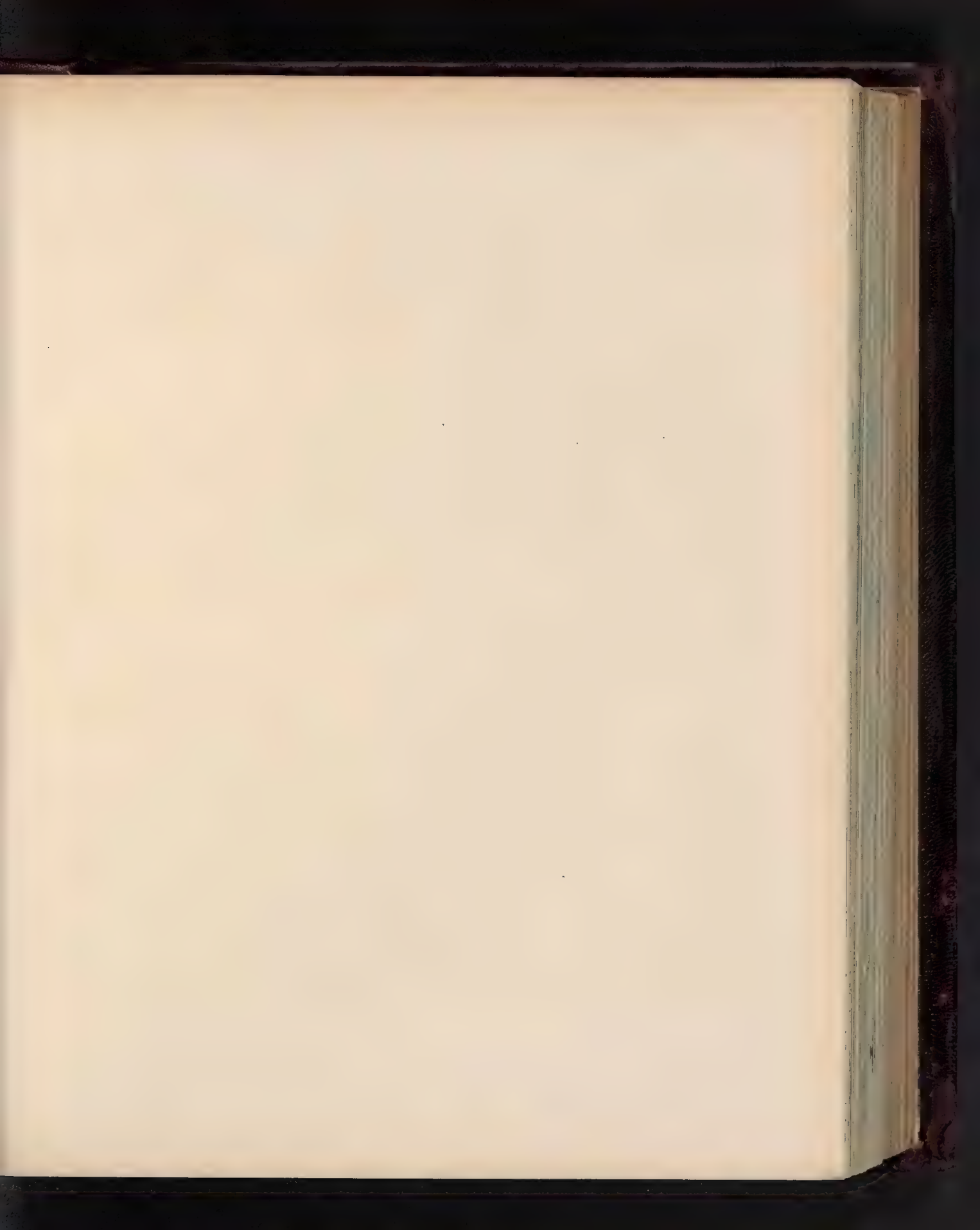
IV. The monk eating the bread afterwards.

and was going on her way, a certain monk met her and asked her to give him the fragments, and she did so; and he took them and put them straightway into the case until the time of supper. Now when the evening had come he opened the case intending to eat the pieces of bread, but he found therein a figure of our Lady Mary with her beloved Child; and straightway he was greatly perturbed and he covered up the case as it was at first and set [it] down. And when he had waited some time he looked at it again, and then he opened it and found that it contained bread [only]; and he ate it forthwith, and was satisfied with the blessing thereof. And it came to pass in the morning [Fol. 51b] that the monk rose up and went to our father Takla Mâryâm (*i. e.*, Mabâ' ŞĖyôn), the lover of the Redeemer, and he told him all that had taken place; and our father marvelled, and was silent, and gave thanks unto God Almighty and said, "O my Lord and God, art Thou pleased to make manifest Thy "marvellous work on the bread which was made to commemorate "Thee? Blessed be Thy kingdom for ever and ever!" May His loving kindness and mercy be with the sinner His servant Takla Hâymânôt, and with his beloved [wife] Walatta ŞĖyôn for ever and ever! Amen.

VI. THE MONK AND THE BREAD OF COMMEMORATION.

[Fol. 52b] The miracle which our Lord and Redeemer Jesus Christ wrought by the hands of our father Takla Mâryâm (*i. e.*, Mabâ' ŞĖyôn); may His prayer and blessing be with the sinner His servant Takla Hâymânôt, and with his beloved [wife] Walatta ŞĖyôn for ever and ever! Amen.

And it came to pass on a certain day whilst our father Takla Mâryâm (*i. e.*, Mabâ' ŞĖyôn), was giving the bread [to the brethren]



I. A monk eats a second sop,
contrary to rule.

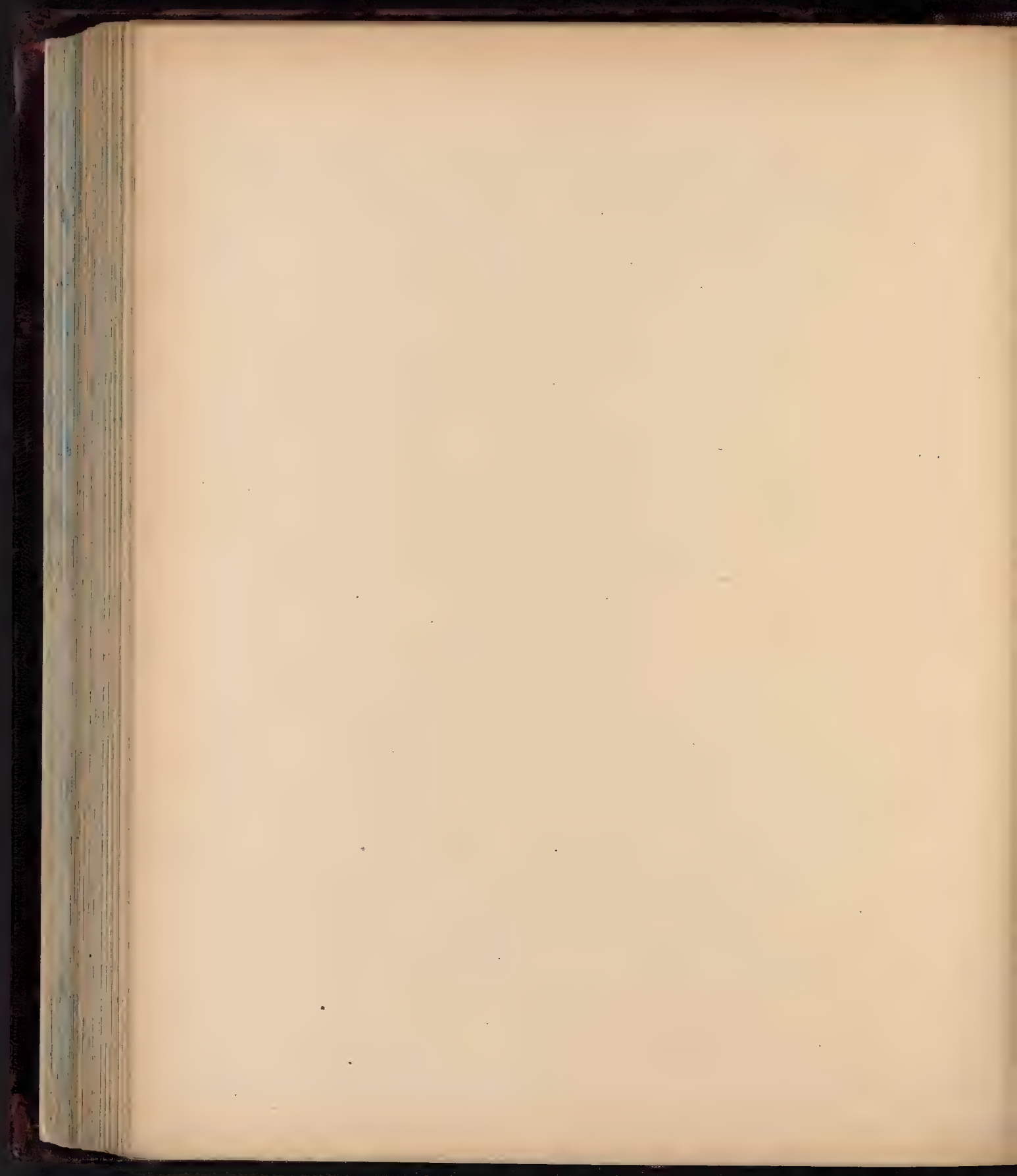
III. He dreams that two devils come
and fetter him with chains.



II. He falls sick through eating
the second morsel.

IV. He confesses his sin to the priest at
the grave of the saint and recovers.

with his own hands after the Offering, according to his general custom, that one of them after having swallowed one piece of the blessed bread took a second portion; now Mabâ' ŞĖyôn did not know the man who had done this thing. Now the man became ill, and the flesh of his body dried up, and he became [as hard as] bones. And when he was asked concerning his sickness, he said unto those who asked him, "When I received the bread which had been made for the commemoration of the Redeemer by the hands of Mabâ' ŞĖyôn I ate it, and afterwards I took a second portion, whereupon I became like this; and when I had swallowed that piece my heart burned like fire. Then trembling all over I came into my [Fol. 53a] habitation, and fell asleep, and I saw in my dream that chains came down from heaven [in the hands of devils], who fettered my whole body, and through this thing I became ill and all my bowels burned like fire." This is what he said. Now he told the brethren [these things] after our father Takla Mâryâm (*i. e.*, Mabâ' ŞĖyôn) was dead, and those who heard him marvelled at the might of our Redeemer, and said unto him, "Go thou to the grave of Mabâ' ŞĖyôn, and entreat God Almighty to heal thee through his prayers." And he went and made supplication and prayer through Mabâ' ŞĖyôn, and he was confessed by the priest; and he recovered straightway from his sickness, and his bonds were loosed, and his whole body which had dried up became sound and healthy. And he said, "I will not leave the grave of Mabâ' ŞĖyôn, [but I will become] a monk here"; so he was joined unto the children of the saint. May his longsuffering and mercy be with the soul of the sinner his servant Takla Hâymanôt, and with his beloved [wife] Walatta ŞĖyôn for ever and ever! Amen.

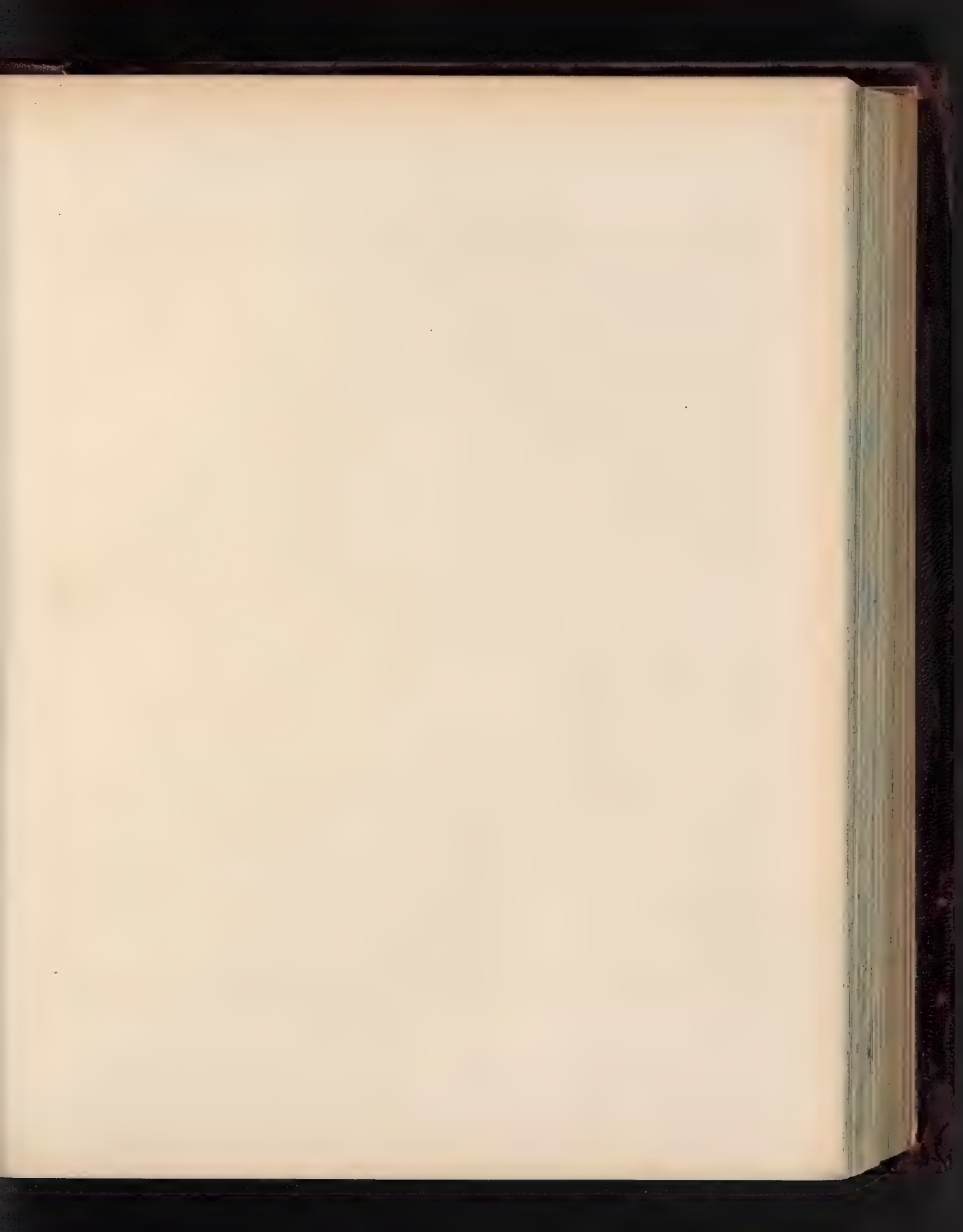


[Fol. 54^b] Hear, O ye my fathers and brethren who love Christ. The miracles which Mabâ' Šĕyôn wrought were so great [and so many], that if all of them were written down [our] discourse would become inordinately long; therefore, these few must be sufficient for us, and they will serve as salt [for the remainder], even as the Book saith, "To the wise man a single word will be beneficial."¹

Now the blessed man our father Takla Mâryâm (*i. e.*, Mabâ' Šĕyôn), loved our Redeemer, and he did not collect offerings, and incense, and wine, and oil, and food, and salt, which might be for the commemoration of the Redeemer for festivals other than His; but these things he set aside for Him until he died in hunger. Each day he tasted nothing whatever of the food set apart for the commemoration of our Redeemer, and besides, he gave away as a free-will offering everything which he acquired for the festival of the commemoration of the Redeemer, and the festival of the Nativity, and the festival of the holy Resurrection, and the festival of her who bore Him, the Virgin. And moreover, he made a vow, saying, "Of everything which I eat, and of everything which forms my food, the one half thereof shall belong to the poor and the needy; this shall be the portion [due] to my God. For as men give gifts unto the kings of the [Fol. 55^a] various countries in token of their submission unto them, even so will I also give gifts unto my king and God, Jesus Christ." And he stablished this rule in his district continually, and he called [the half which he gave away] the "portion of the Redeemer"; and whether he was dwelling in his own country, or whether he was travelling in another, he never ate his food without first of all giving unto the poor [their portion]. And he never failed

¹ Compare "Verbum sapienti sat est". Plautus, Act IV., Scene VII., 19.





I. Mabâ' Şeyôn giving one-half of
his offerings to the poor.

II. The Virgin Mary anointing
his eyes.



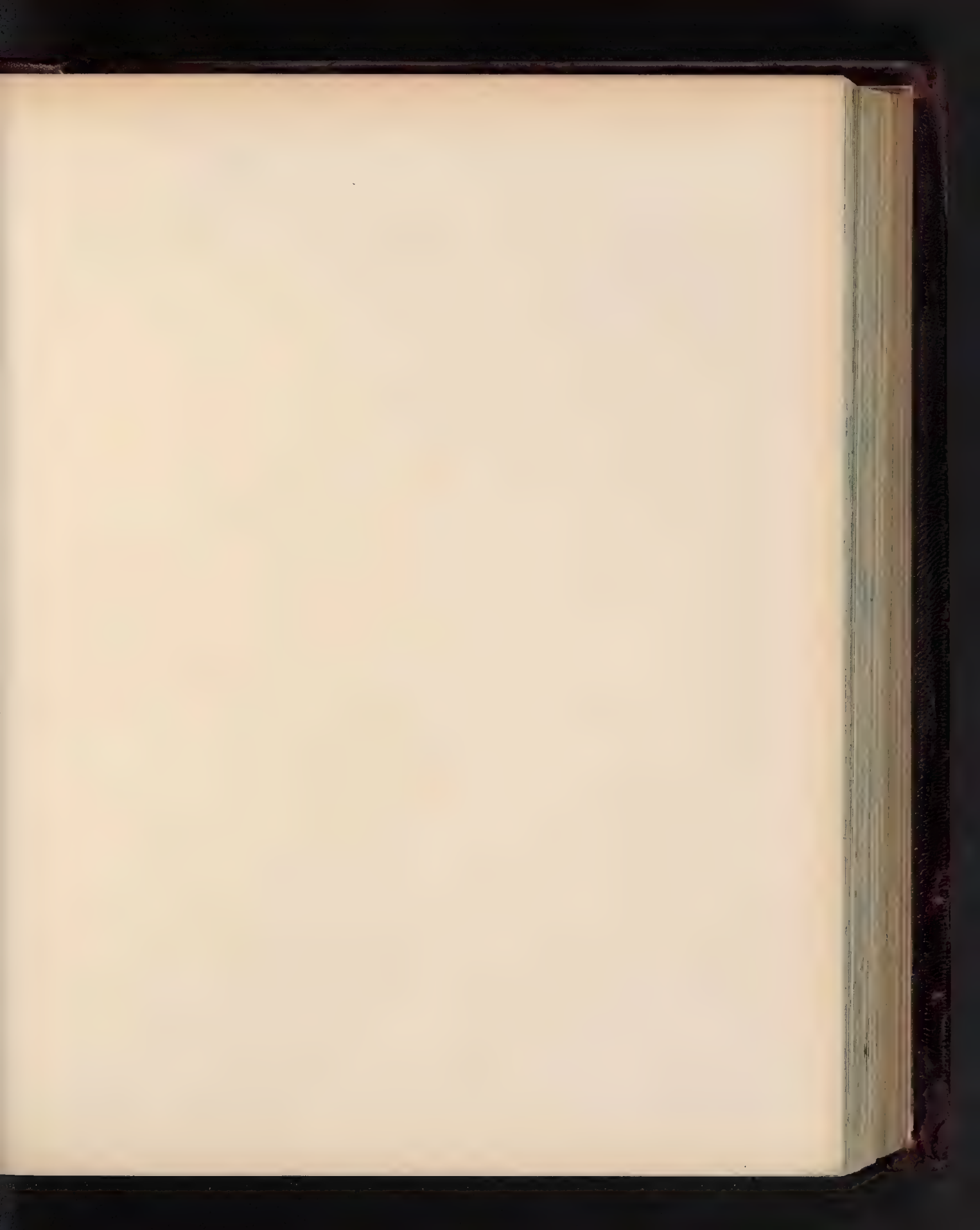
III. Christ embracing Mabâ' Şeyôn after his self-inflicted scourging.

to do this day by day, and at the same time he looked for the reward of his hope. And when the festival of the Redeemer drew nigh in the various months in which it came¹, he made intercession and supplication for seven days with prayer and fasting, and during these days he never filled his belly; and he never slept at all during that time by reason of [his] abundant weeping and tearful cries, and the very ground was wet with the tears which flowed from his eyes.

And it came to pass one day that our Lady Mary came [to him] holding in her hand a vessel, which was like unto a glass cup, and she said unto him, "Peace be to thee, O my beloved [Fol. 55b] "Takla Mâryâm (*i. e.*, Mabâ' ŞĒyôn)! Behold, I have come that I may "give thee healing for thine eyes, the pain of which is like unto the "pains of my beloved Son." Then straightway she dipped her finger into the vessel [which contained a substance] like unto an unguent, and she anointed his eyes therewith; and he was healed of his sickness and became as he was aforetime, and from that day onwards the pain never again attacked him. Now of this matter there was a witness, that is to say, a certain excellent woman whom our Lady Mary visited, and she was sitting at a distance from Mabâ' ŞĒyôn. And it came to pass on a day that she came and said unto him, "Didst thou see our Lady Mary anoint thine eyes with unguent and "heal thee?" And he said, "Yea. I saw [her] even as thou thyself "didst see [her]"; then they gave thanks together unto God Almighty, and unto our Lady the holy Virgin Mary.

¹ It seems as if Mabâ' ŞĒyôn celebrated the festival of the commemoration of the death of our Lord each month, even as the festival in commemoration of His birth was celebrated.

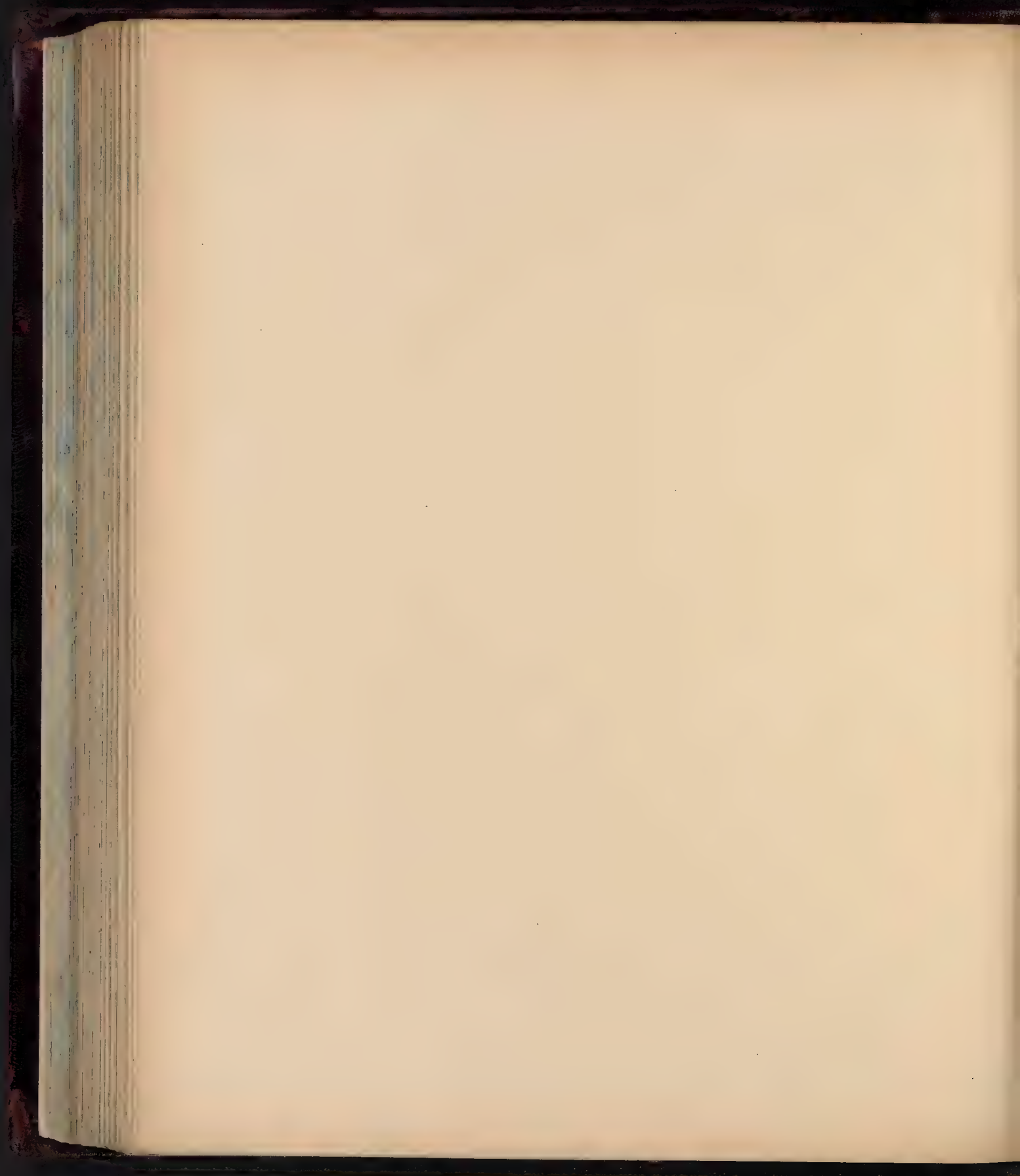


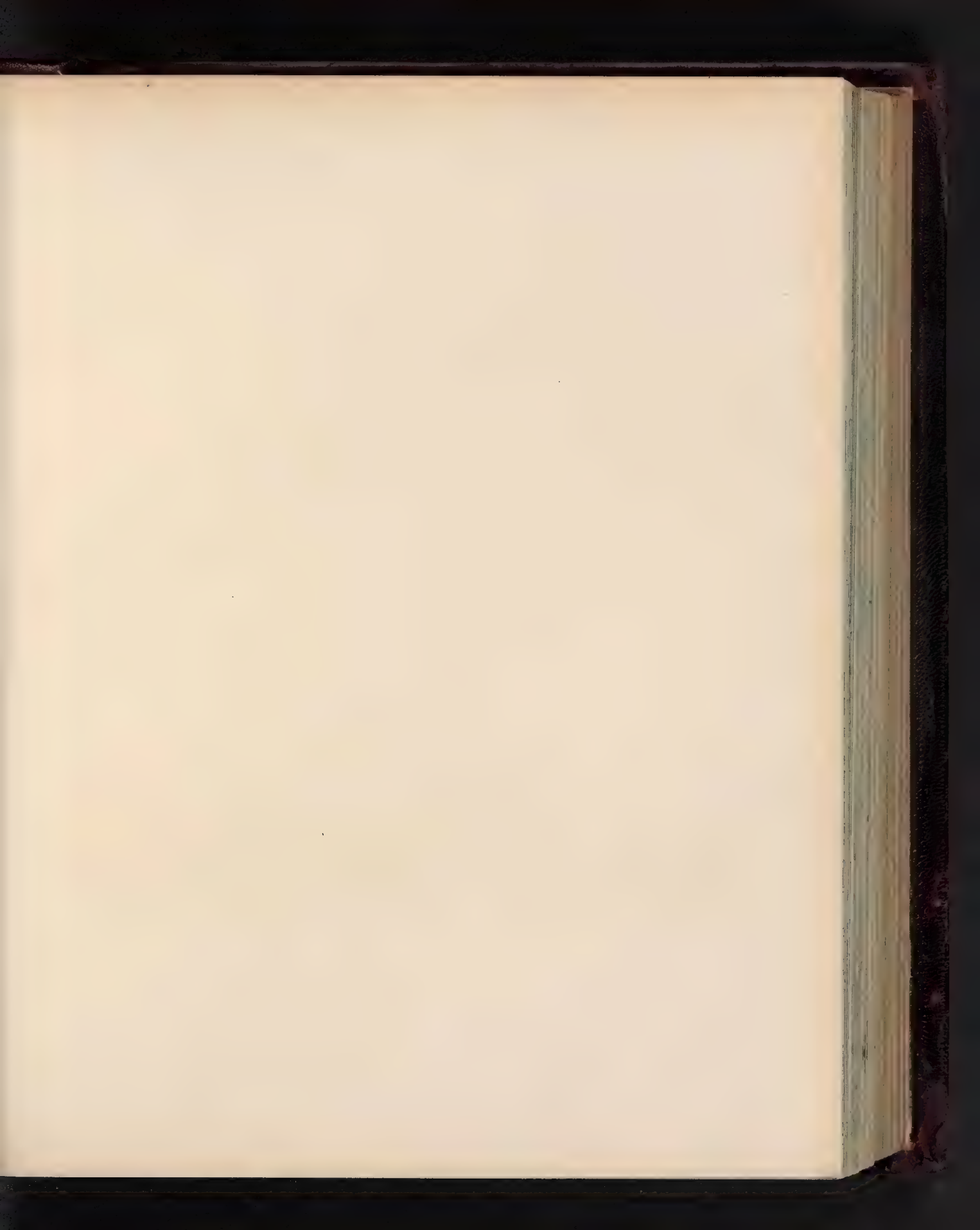




Mabâ' Şeyôn taken to the Virgin's bosom with the Christ-Child.

Thus Mabâ' ŞĒyôn served the Lord, and he multiplied his fastings and prayers exceedingly, with smiting of the cheeks, and scourgings of the back with whipcords continually; and he obtained [Fol. 56*a*] help from Him. And during the holy fast of the forty days of Lent he was scourged and beaten with whips one hundred times, and on one day during the Passion he was beaten with as many as ten thousand stripes, which were laid on in great numbers until the blood flowed from the wounds on his back, and until his heart failed him and he fell upon the ground and became [as] one dead. Then straightway the Child of the Virgin raised him up by the might of His voice, and He called and said unto him, "Takla Mâryâm (*i. e.*, Mabâ' ŞĒyôn), "rise up"; and He embraced him and lifted him up; and he opened his eyes forthwith, and his heart regained its power of feeling. And His holy mother the Virgin Mary was there, and she touched the wounds on his back, and straightway he recovered and became as if nothing whatever of evil had attacked him at any time. Then the blessed Child said unto him, "Wouldst thou slay thyself with thine own hand? I was slain by the hands of men of iniquity, the Jews." And straightway Christ held the lips of Mabâ' ŞĒyôn, and opened his mouth, and breathed [therein] three times, and said unto him, "My holy breath shall restore thy breathing, and thy soul and thy body shall become blessed and holy; and whatsoever thou breathest upon shall become blessed and holy." And having said these words the Child and His mother the Virgin embraced him, and she gave the Child her right breast to suck, and to Mabâ' ŞĒyôn she gave her left breast, whilst the Child looked at Takla Mâryâm (*i. e.*, Mabâ' ŞĒyôn); and He Who is awful and terrible unto men conversed with him. Then straightway the Virgin smiled and rejoiced by reason of the greatness of his love for her Son.



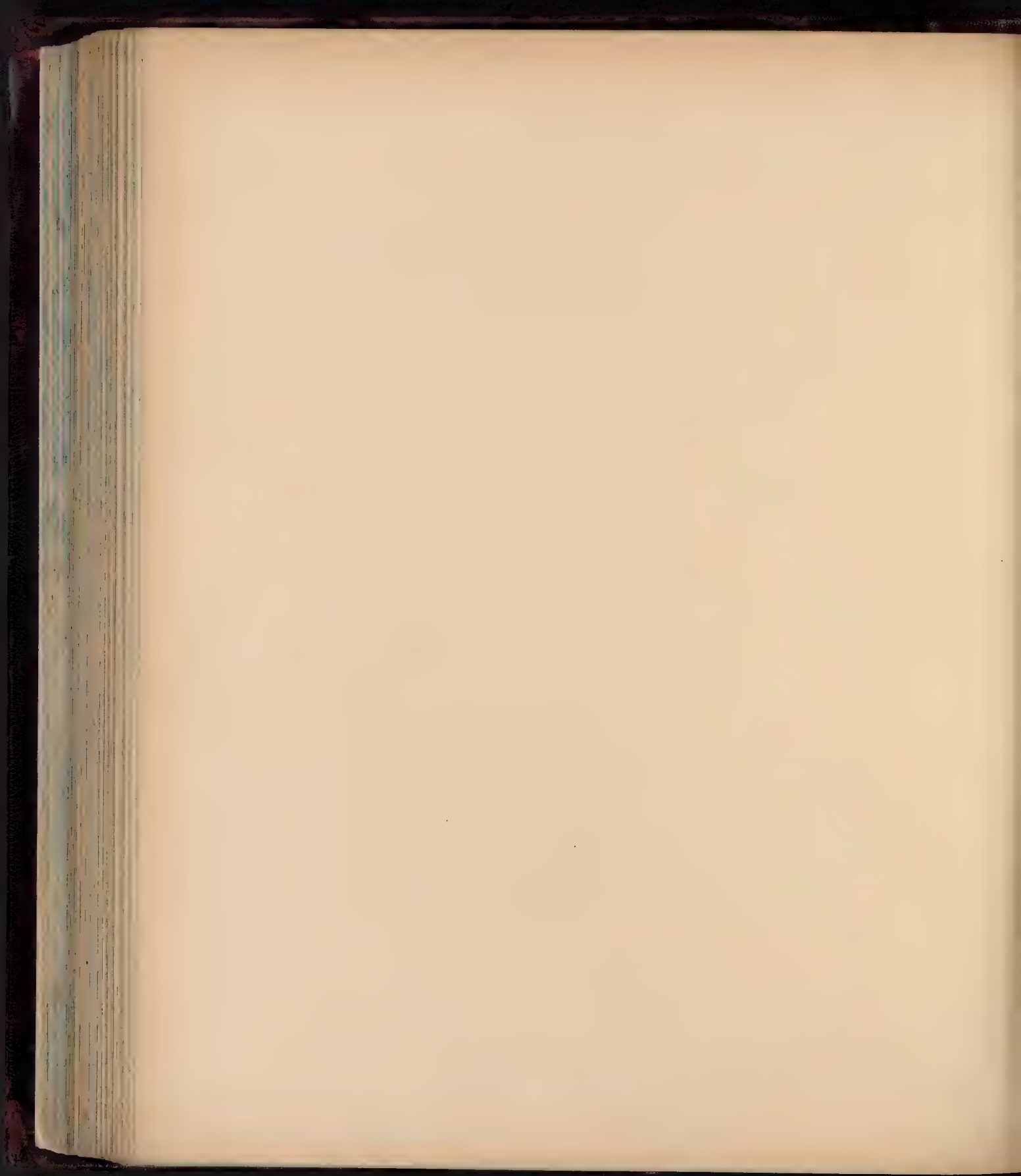




Christ addressing Mabá' Šeyôn.

And the blessed Child said unto Mabá' Šěyôn, "Inasmuch as "thou hast endured suffering because I endured suffering, and hast "died and shed thy blood because of the shedding of My precious "blood, I love thee as thou hast loved Me, and I will never depart "from thee. Whosoever loveth thee loveth Me; and whosoever maketh "an offering unto thee maketh an offering unto Me; and whosoever hateth "thee hateth Me, and is an enemy of Him that sent Me; and as the "Jews who hated Me and who crucified Me even so shall they be "[reckoned]. On the day in which thy soul goeth forth [from thy "body] I will not give it into the hands of any other being, but "I Myself will receive [it from] thee. And I, even I, Jesus Christ, "swear unto thee by Myself and by My mother Mary, that I will "shew mercy upon every one [Fol. 57*a*] who hath come unto thee, "or who hath taken refuge in thy prayer, or who hath been blessed "by thy hand, or who hath called upon thy name, whether he be "near or whether he be far; and of this I give a pledge unto thee, "for My word cannot be gainsaid, and My covenant cannot be broken." And when our father Mabá' Šěyôn heard these words he rejoiced exceedingly, and he said, "What can I give unto the Lord in "return for all that He hath done for me, a sinner? But blessed "be His name for ever and for ever! Amen."

[Fol. 59*a*] Hear ye now, [O brethren], what the Redeemer saith. "Whosoever celebrateth the festival of My commemoration with a "loaf of bread, or a cup [of water], and whosoever shall give a candle "(or lamp) to the church from the depth of his heart, desiring greatly "to commemorate My crucifixion, verily I say unto thee—and My "word cannot be gainsaid—that I will shew mercy unto him even "unto the twelfth generation. And moreover, I will shew mercy,





I. The Baptism of Christ by Saint John, which Mabâ' Şeyôn saw in a vision.



II. Christ baptizing
Mabâ' Şeyôn.

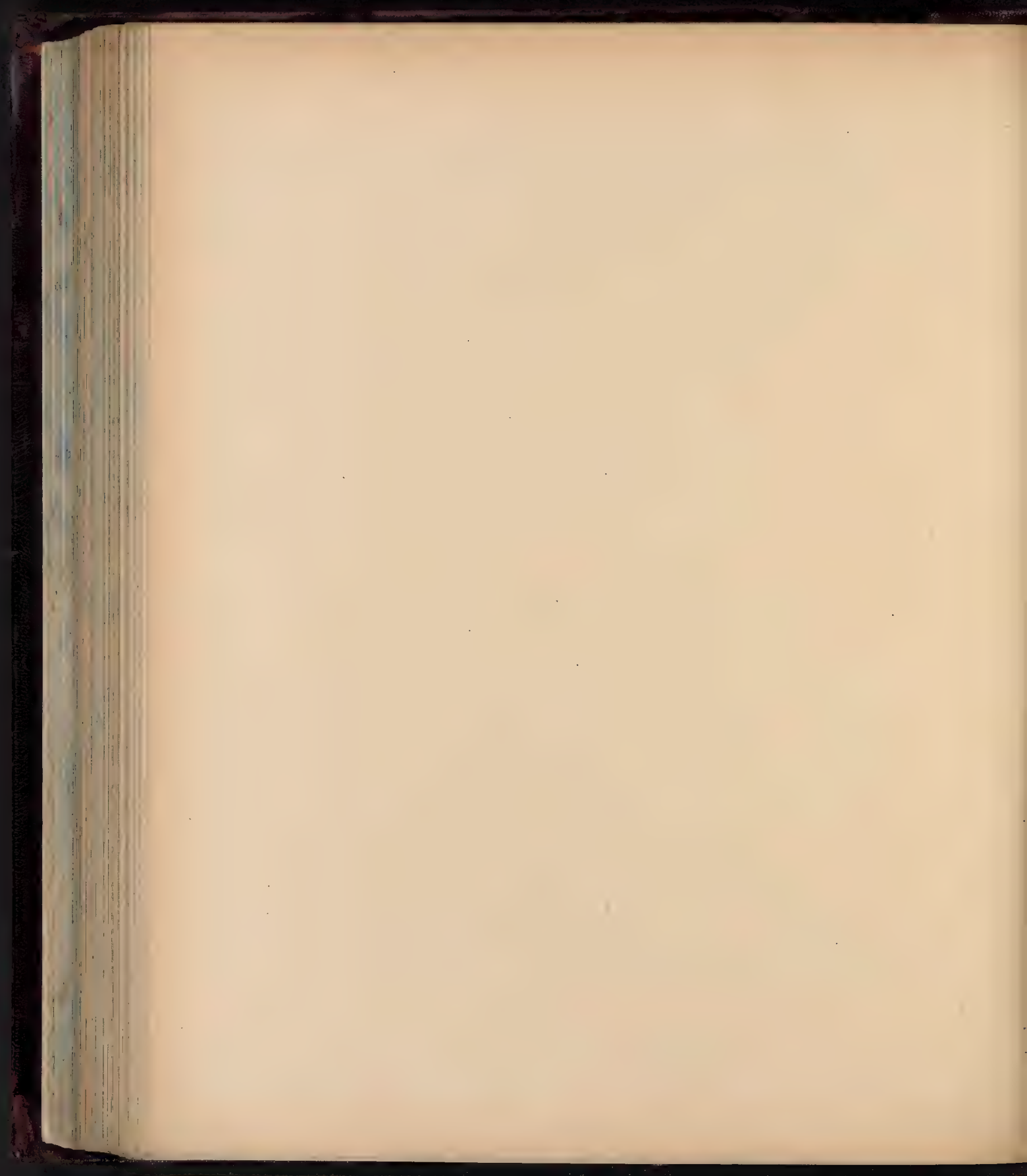
III. Christ exhorting
Mabâ' Şeyôn.

IV. Mabâ' Şeyôn baptizing
the saints.

"even unto the seventh generation, upon him who, lacking food where-
"with to celebrate the festival of My commemoration, hath given that which
"he hath [been obliged] to borrow. And let all of us live in faith, for
"without faith none of the prophets, or apostles, or martyrs could
"have redeemed themselves, and without faith none of them could
"have justified themselves. And now, unto him that is faithful and
"unto him that celebrateth the festival of My commemoration in order
"that he may obtain all these things which I have described, I swear
"by My Father, and by His Son, Myself, and by His Spirit, [which
"is] My Spirit, and by Mary My mother, and not only for the sake
"of Mabâ' ŠĚyŏn but for the sake of My crucifixion, that I will come
"down from heaven and keep the festival with him." And now, [O
brethren], keep ye the festival of the commemoration of the Redeemer
on [Fol. 59^b] the twenty-seventh* day of each month in which it
falleth for ever and ever. Amen.

And again, on the day of Epiphany a stream of water began
to flow down in order that our father Mabâ' ŠĚyŏn might baptize
the multitude according to his rule; now the day was the first day
of the week, and our Lord together with His holy angels came with
great [glory], and [stood] in the water. And all the saints were
gathered together from the desert, and from the mountains, and from
[their] holes and caves, and some of them arrived on a cloud, and
some on the wings of the spirit, and some in chariots of gold; and
each one of them had the odour which belonged unto him. And
there was a mighty assembly, and a mighty deed of grace was
wrought; for the water became divided into two parts, one of which

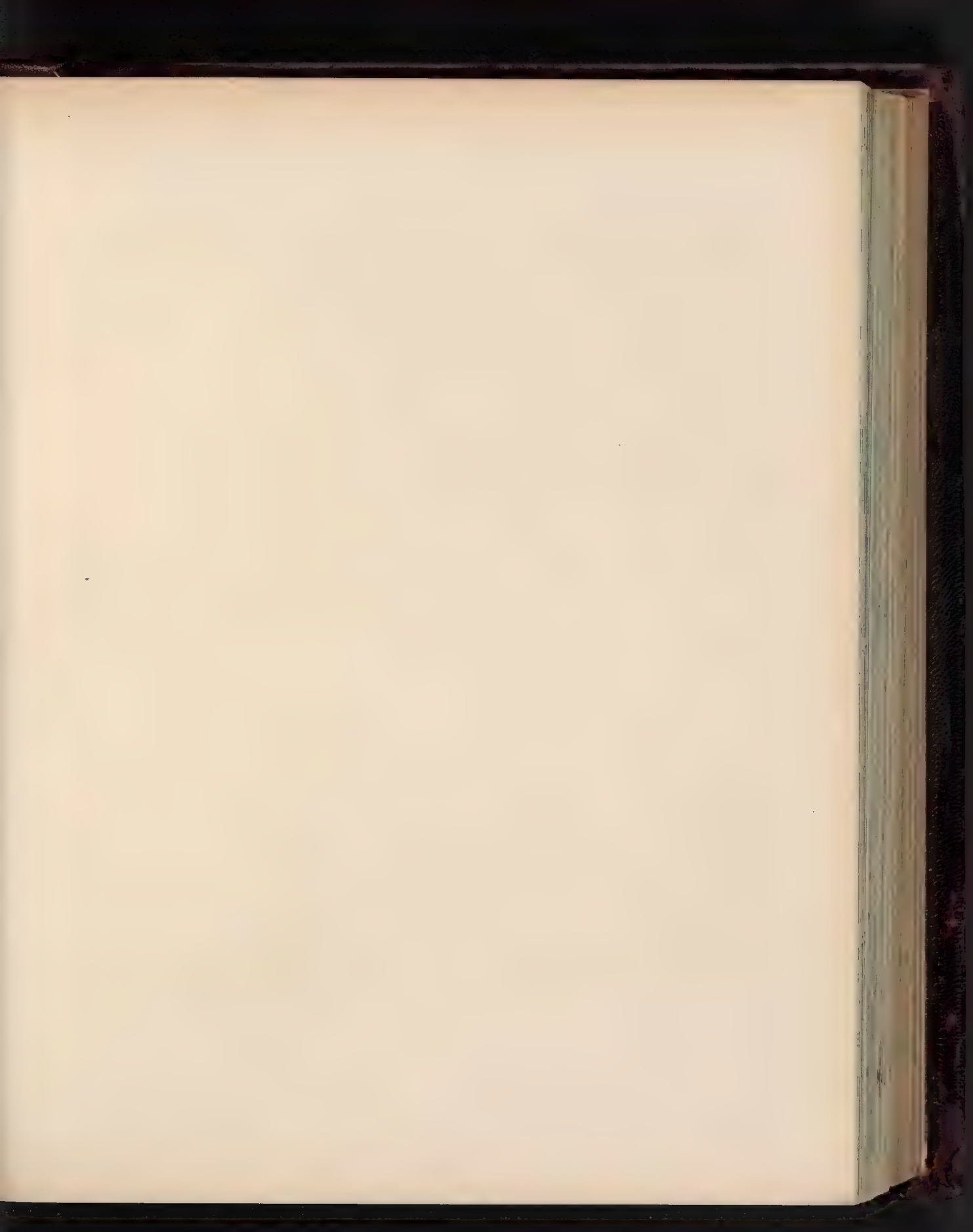
* Read 𐌸𐌹𐌺𐌰:



was of fire, and the other was of water. Into the part which was of fire came our Lord Jesus and baptized Himself, and then He baptized Mabâ' ŞĖyôn (i. e., Takla Mâryâm) and two of the saints of those who had come thither. And as He was going forth [from the fire] He laid His hand upon the head of Takla Mâryâm (i. e., Mabâ' ŞĖyôn), and commanded [him] to baptize [Fol. 60a] the saints who had come [thither]; and this was accomplished by the might of God Almighty. And again He commanded a certain priest to baptize the multitude, both men and women, in the water of that stream, and he made them beautiful with the water of holy baptism, and they went back to their own countries; and the saints, according as it was meet for them, returned to their habitations. But our Lord remained there along with His angels, and He asked him that would have enquired of Him, saying, "Knowest thou these saints?" And he answered Him, saying, "Lord, how could I know so many? There were some whom I knew, and some whom I knew not"; and [the Lord called] them by their names that he might know them. And again the Redeemer asked them, saying, "Have ye given the gracious gift of baptism to those who were baptized this day in the water of the stream?" And they said, "Yea, Lord, the gracious gift of purifying baptism hath been given unto them, and Thy people are cleansed from their sins." And He gave the tithe of them to that poor man (i. e., Mabâ' ŞĖyôn), and commanded [him] to baptize the saints; may the kingdom [Fol. 60b] of our God be blessed for ever and ever! Amen.

[Fol. 62a] And again on a certain day whilst our father Takla Mâryâm (i. e., Mabâ' ŞĖyôn) was praying, and was full of care and anxiety, it came to pass that he saw afar off the Child who was laughing after the manner of children; now He was holding a staff





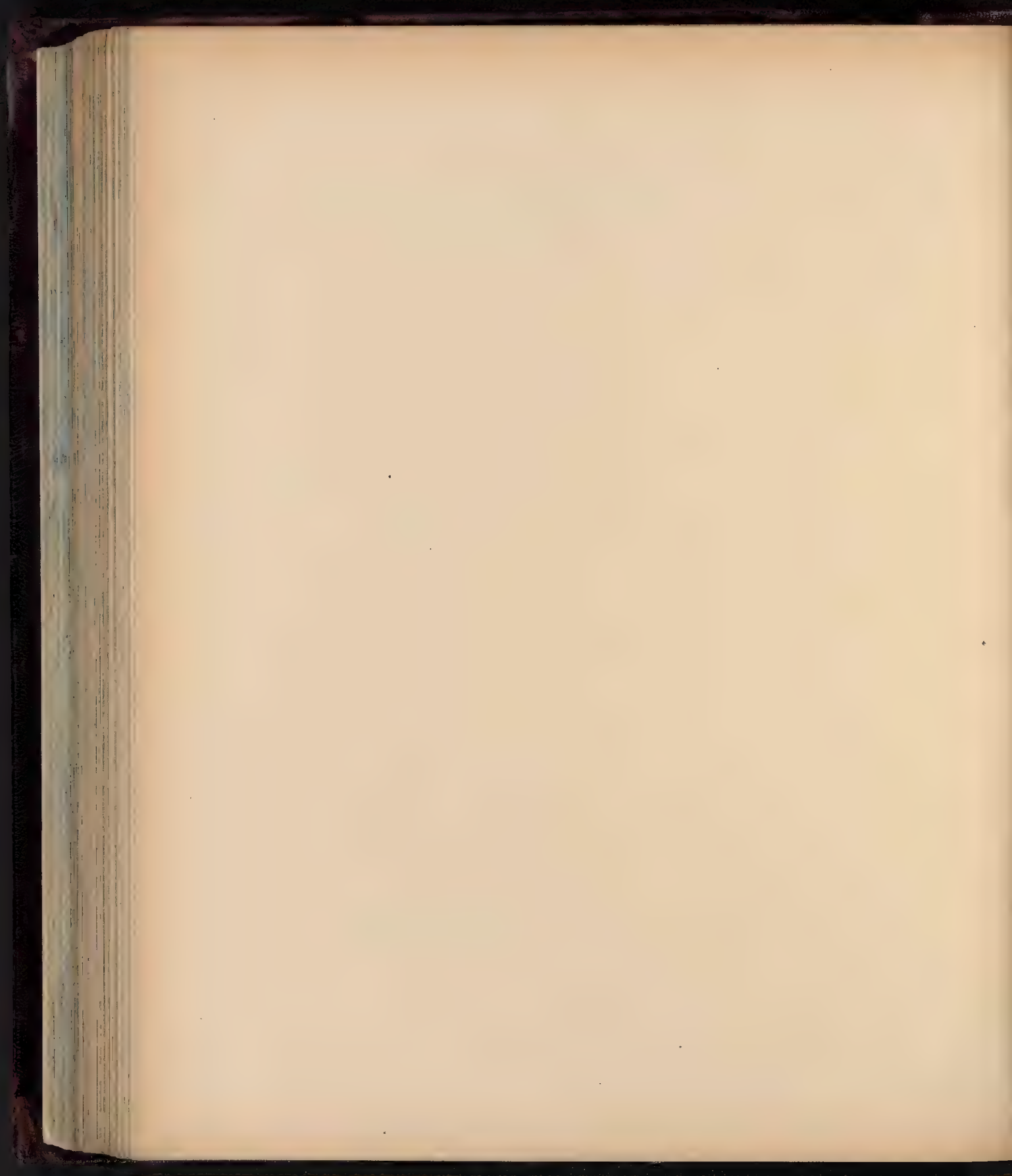
I. Mabâ' Şeyôn watching the Christ-Child exhorting the saints.



II. Mabâ' Şeyôn embracing the Christ-Child.

III. The Christ-Child placing the golden staff in the hands of Mabâ' Şeyôn.

of gold [in his hand]. Then straightway he meditated and said, "Whose Child is this that hath such a beautiful form? It must be 'the Child of a king Who is holding a staff of gold in His hand'; and as he was meditating in this wise the Child turned towards him, and saying unto him, "Arise", He placed the staff in the hands of Mabâ' ŠĒyôn. And Mabâ' ŠĒyôn knowing from His voice that He was the Lord Jesus, took the staff and bare it in his hands; and the Child said unto him, "Come back to Me." Then our father Mabâ' ŠĒyôn bowed to the ground and worshipped the Child, saying, "It is 'not meet for me, a sinner and Thy servant, to do this thing, O Lord, 'for Thou art the king of heaven and of earth." And the Child said unto him, "Since thou hast obtained the power from Me to do this 'thing, what hath happened unto thee?" Then He sat down with him, and held sweet intercourse with him after the manner of children, and He embraced him, and was carried by him upon his shoulders. [Fol. 62r] And when Mabâ' ŠĒyôn saw His loving kindness and gentleness, he besought the Child, saying, "Remember Thy covenant, "O Lord, and shew mercy, for my sake, upon those souls who have "been baptized in Thy name, and have been cast into Sheol." And the Redeemer said unto him, "Pleasant are thy words. Behold, do "thou thyself descend into Sheol, and bring forth therefrom as many "souls as thou art able to carry." And our father Takla Mâryâm (i. e., Mabâ' ŠĒyôn) said unto Him, "How can I, who am a wretched "man and a needy one, descend into Sheol?" And the Child said unto him, "I will send thee"; then He placed the staff of gold in his hand, and straightway the might of God Almighty lifted him up as [upon] wings, and he came into Sheol, which was rent from one end even unto the other; and Mabâ' ŠĒyôn heard there crying, and weeping, and wailing, and a mighty uproar. And when the souls who were





I. Christ addressing Mabá' Šěyôn, and giving to him the souls which he has brought up out of Hell.



II. Mabá' Šěyôn rising from hell with the souls which have "swarmed upon him like bees."

in Sheol saw him they clustered about him like bees, and one soul mounted upon another until he was heavily laden with them; but the might of God Almighty strengthened him, and by means thereof he mounted upwards until he [came to where he] was aforesaid [Fol. 63*a*], and he came to the Child bearing the souls. And the Saviour smiling and laughing said unto him, "Are the souls who are in Sheol as many as these? Who told thee to bring [them] forth?" And Mabâ' ŞĒyôn said unto Him, "By what power could I have brought [these] forth except Thine and that of Thy grace, O Lord? For without Thy will I am but dust and ashes, and without it how ever could I have been able to bring forth so many souls?" And the Redeemer said unto him, "Take [them], and let these souls be thy reward, and bring thou them into the Garden of Joy." Then the Living One Who dieth not unto all eternity departed from him; may His loving kindness and mercy be with the soul of the sinner Takla Hâymanôt [and] with [that of] his beloved [wife] Walatta ŞĒyôn for ever and ever! Amen.

[Fol. 64*a*] Then our father Takla Mâryâm (i. e., Mabâ' ŞĒyôn) went to the city of Dâmât for the commemoration of the festival of the blessed and honourable Cross¹, and he himself spake these words saying, "As I was going along the road I saw a multitude of people in the market, and when I arrived near there I wondered at their great number, and gave praise unto God Almighty therefor; then I sat down at the side of the market place so that I might rest myself a little. And straightway sleep came upon me, and I saw in a dream which I dreamed, that the Child of the Virgin, my Lord,

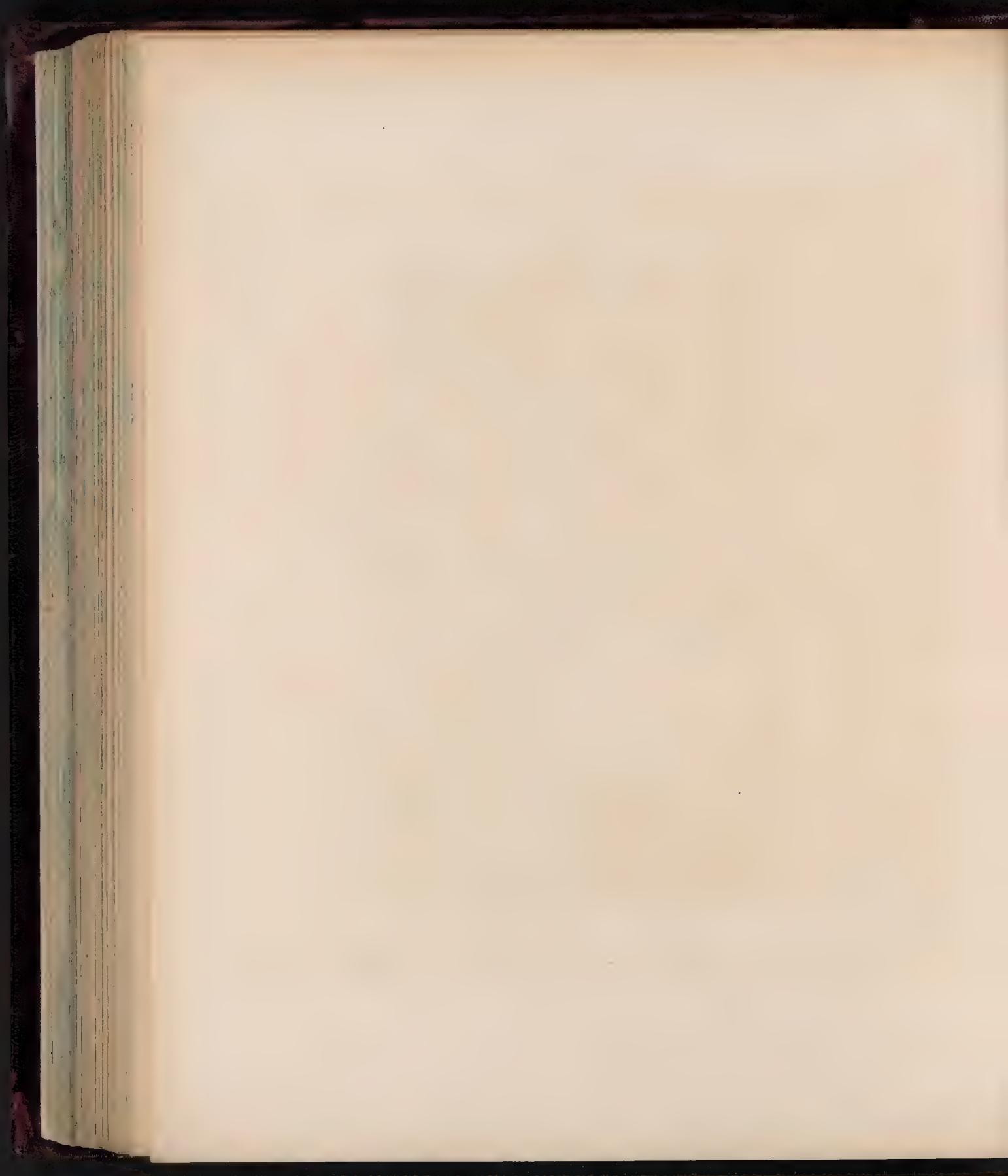
¹ His festival is celebrated on the 16th of Maskarram, i. e., September 13.



I. Christ conversing with Mabá' Şeyôn.



II. Mabá' Şeyôn watching Christ going up into heaven.



I. Mabá' Šěyôn sitting under a tree by the market-place.

II. The cloth merchant.

III. The sheep dealer selling his sheep for a bar of salt (?).

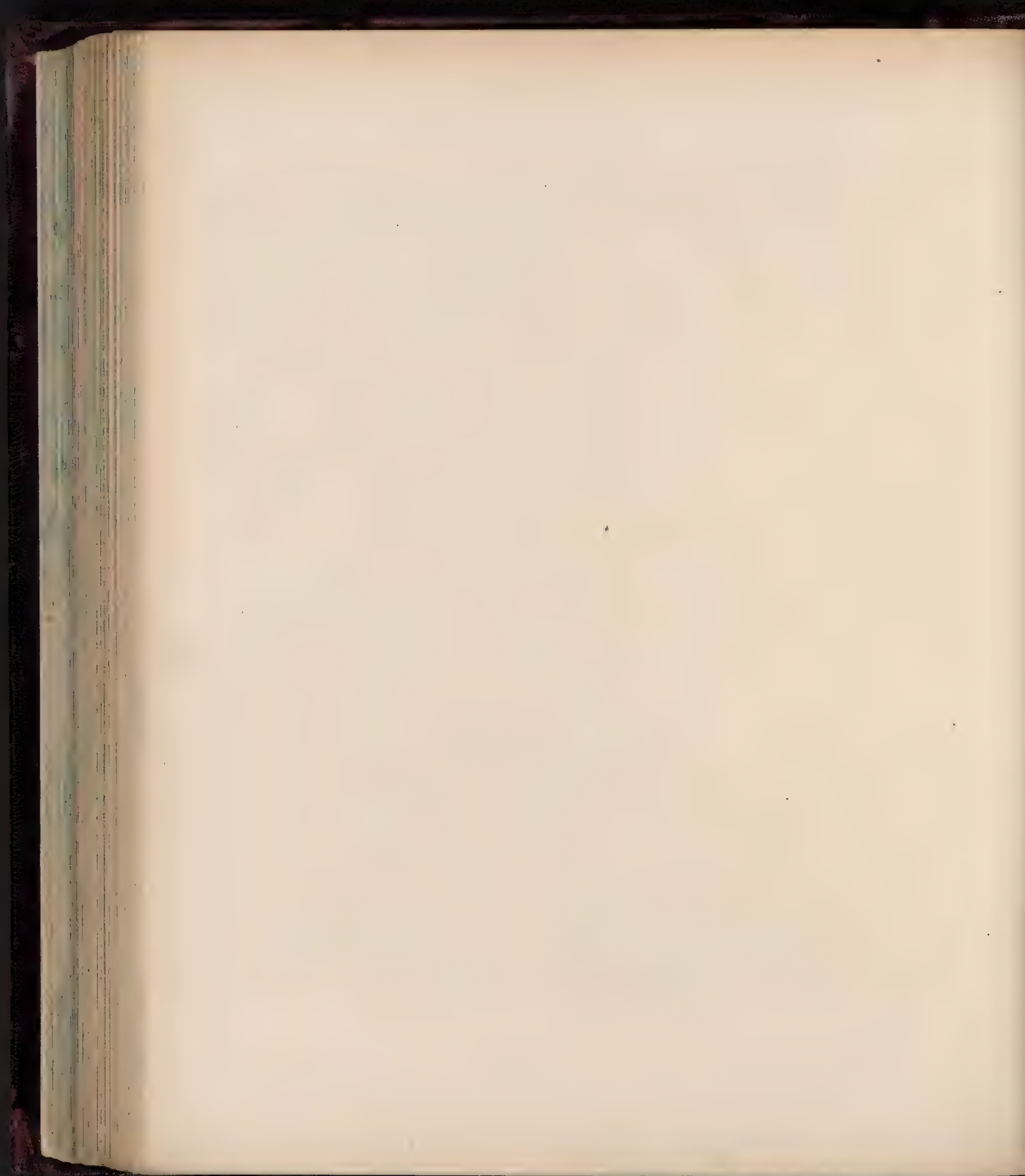


IV. The seller of ducks and chickens.

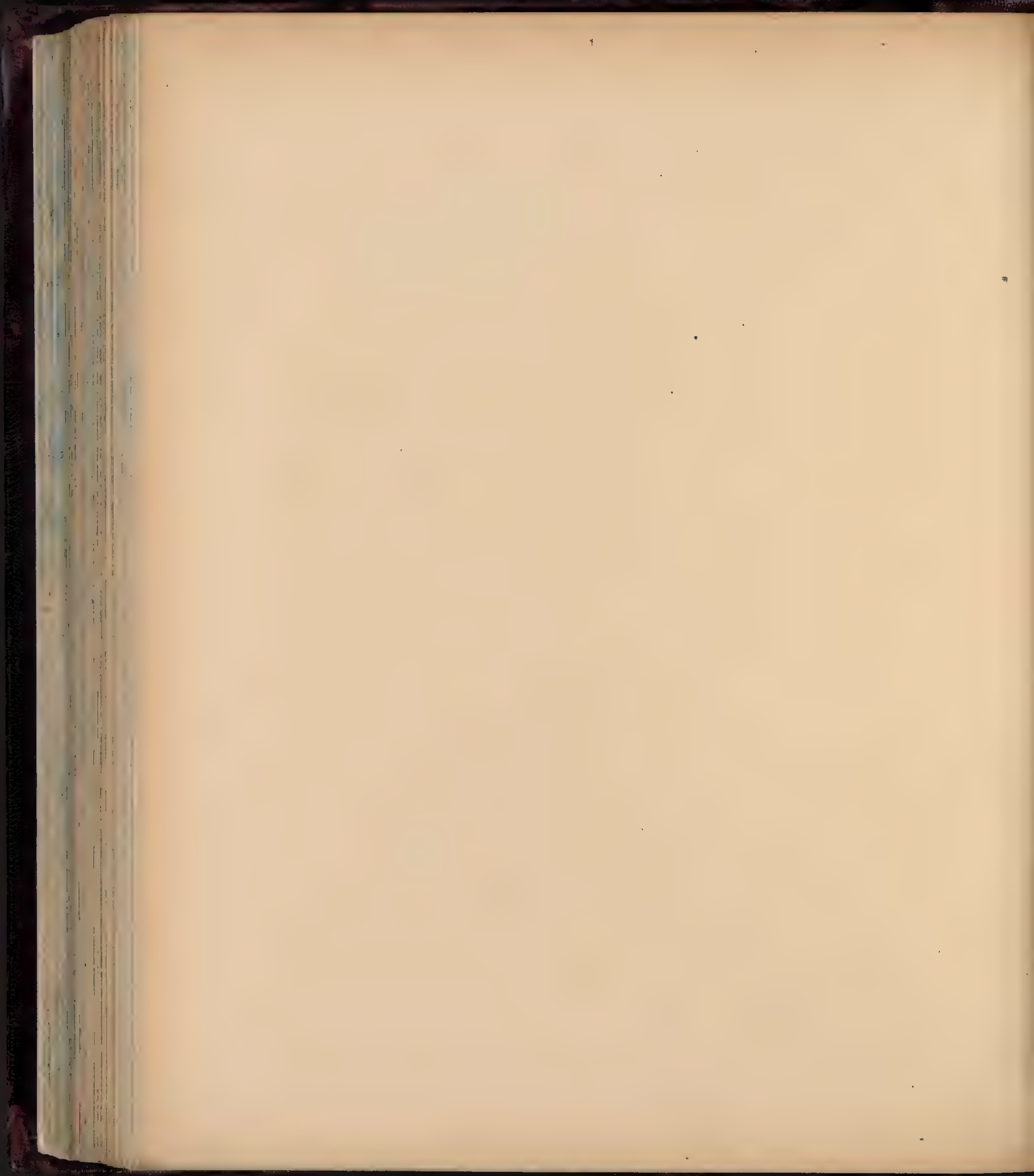
V. The sellers of butter, raisins, nuts, etc.

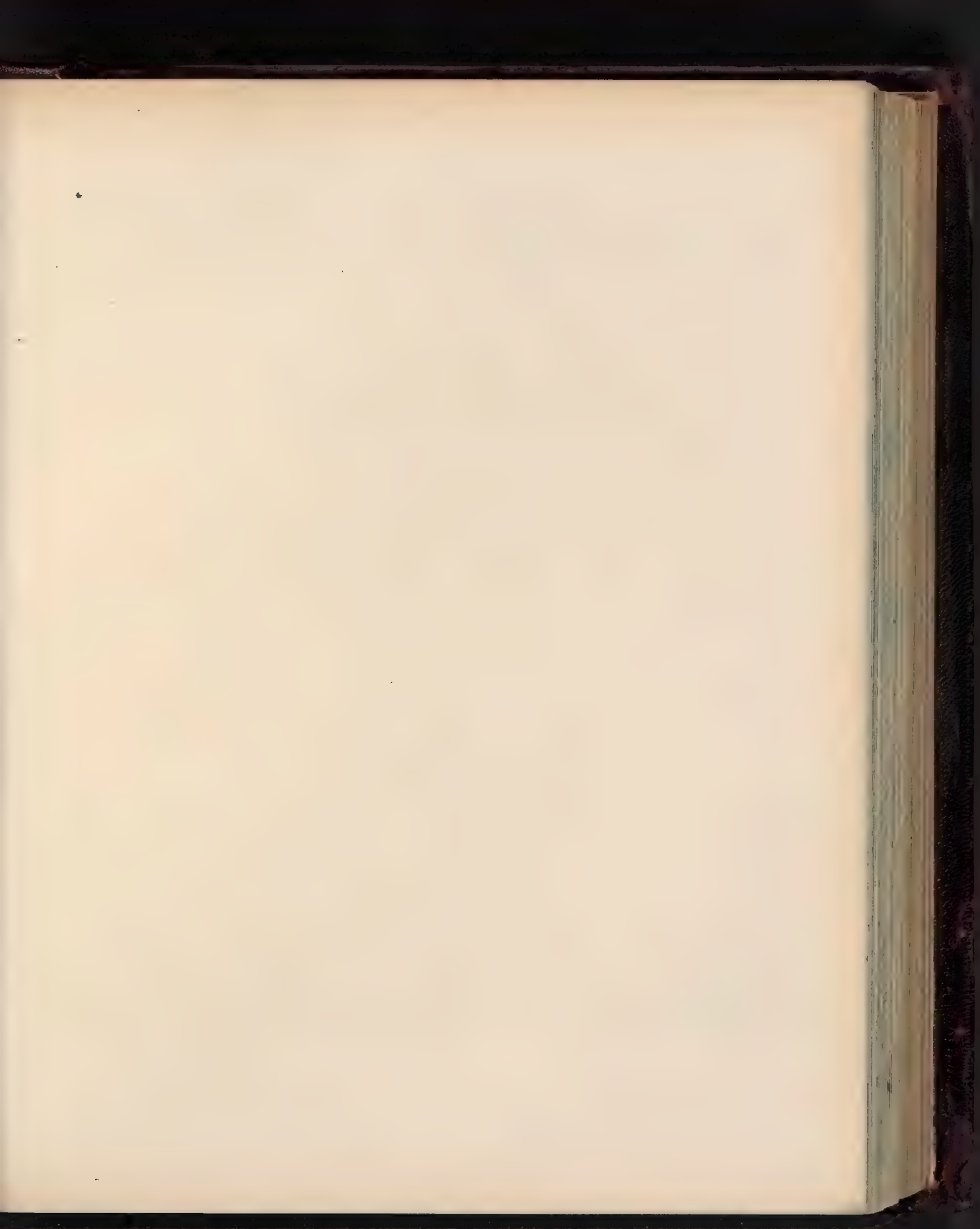
VI. Christ appears to Mabá' Šěyôn in his sleep.

VII. Christ addressing Mabá' Šěyôn.



"came to me, and sat down by my side and embraced me according
"to His wont. And forthwith I asked Him, saying, 'If Thy love for
"me, O my Lord, is perfect, shew mercy upon these men for my sake,
"and make a covenant with me'; and He made me no answer what-
"soever. At this moment I woke up. And I went on my way with
"the Child in my arms, and I arrived at a certain place which was
"under His protection, and there, on that night, I saw [a vision], and
"a great and glorious act of grace took place at the commemoration
"of the festival of the [Fol. 65a] honourable Cross. And the angels
"came down from heaven, and our Lord took His seat among His
"saints, and He set me nigh unto Him. Then there came a certain
"woman, who was like unto a sun of light, and stood before Him,
"and I enquired, saying, 'Who is this woman?' And they said unto
"me, 'She hath come in honour of the festival of the glorious Cross
"which is celebrated this day.' Then the woman did homage unto
"Him, and she asked Him, saying, 'O my Lord and God, [is this he]
"who hath come to the commemoration of me, and who hath offered
"incense and oblations in my name, and who having placed his hopes
"on Thee hath belief in Thine handmaiden? Give me now [my]
"reward according to the covenant of old which Thou didst make
"with me.' And the Lord said [unto her], 'Verily I say unto thee,
"thou hast not spoken falsely. Yea, I did make a covenant with
"thee. As thou hast said even so shall it be unto thee, with the
"exception of those who have done wrong yesterday in the
"market.' Then turning to me He said, 'Take all the men for whom
"thou didst ask me yesterday, and they shall be thy reward, with
"the exception of two, for I will not make thee to be put to shame.'
"Then straightway I bowed down to the ground and did homage
"unto Him, and gave thanks unto Him; and the woman also gave





I. Mabá' Şeyôn addressing the brethren.

II. Mabá' Şeyôn and the monk
conversing.

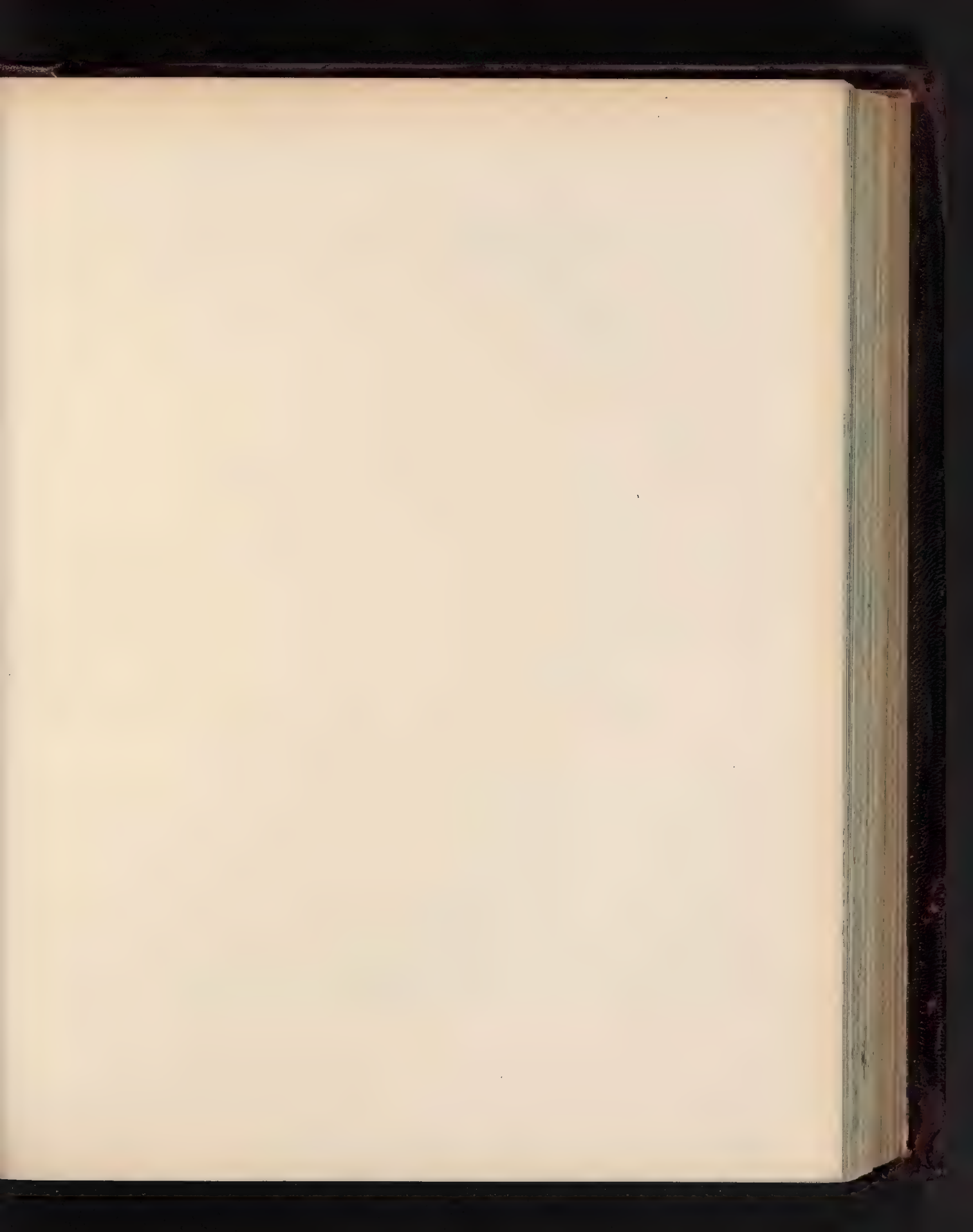


III. Mabá' Şeyôn in the desert.

"thanks unto Him and entreated Him on my behalf. Glory and "honour be to the kingdom of Him Who giveth gracious gifts for "nothing; and may He give us a portion of His mercy for ever and "ever!" And moreover, may His loving kindness and mercy be with the soul of the sinner His servant Takla Hâymanôt and with that of his beloved [wife] Walatta SĚyôn for ever and ever! Amen.

[Fol. 67*a*] Now on that day multitudes of people became his children, and he became their spiritual father. And a certain monk sought anxiously to find him, and he asked the people, saying, "Tell "me for God Almighty's sake, O ye who know him, where is he that "is Takla Mâryâm (i. e., Mabâ' SĚyôn) of the city of Sîwâ (Shoa)?" And those who knew him brought the monk unto him, and he rejoiced exceedingly, and conversed with him. Then our father Mabâ' SĚyôn said [unto him, "Why hast thou sought me out? seeing that "thou knowest me not." And the monk said unto him, "I have come "from the city of Abajîgâya¹ a distance of three days' journey. And "when I enquired of God Almighty concerning the exceedingly great "unquietness of my mind, I heard a voice from heaven which said, "Go thou to the festival of the commemoration of the honourable "'Cross, for there shalt thou find a priest whose name is Takla "'Mâryâm, and he shall give thee consolation.' For this reason have "I sought thee out, O thou saint of God indeed, Whose word never "faileth; may the name of our God be blessed!" And when the saint Mabâ' SĚyôn [Fol. 67*b*] had heard his words he said unto him, "Tell "me now thy business as God hath commanded thee, and He will

¹ A place situated, probably, on the borders of Shoa. See Pereira, *Chronica de Susenyos*, tomo I, p. 194, l. 115, where it is spelt አበጋይ, and Conti Rossini, *Catalogo dei Nomi proprii*, p. 12.



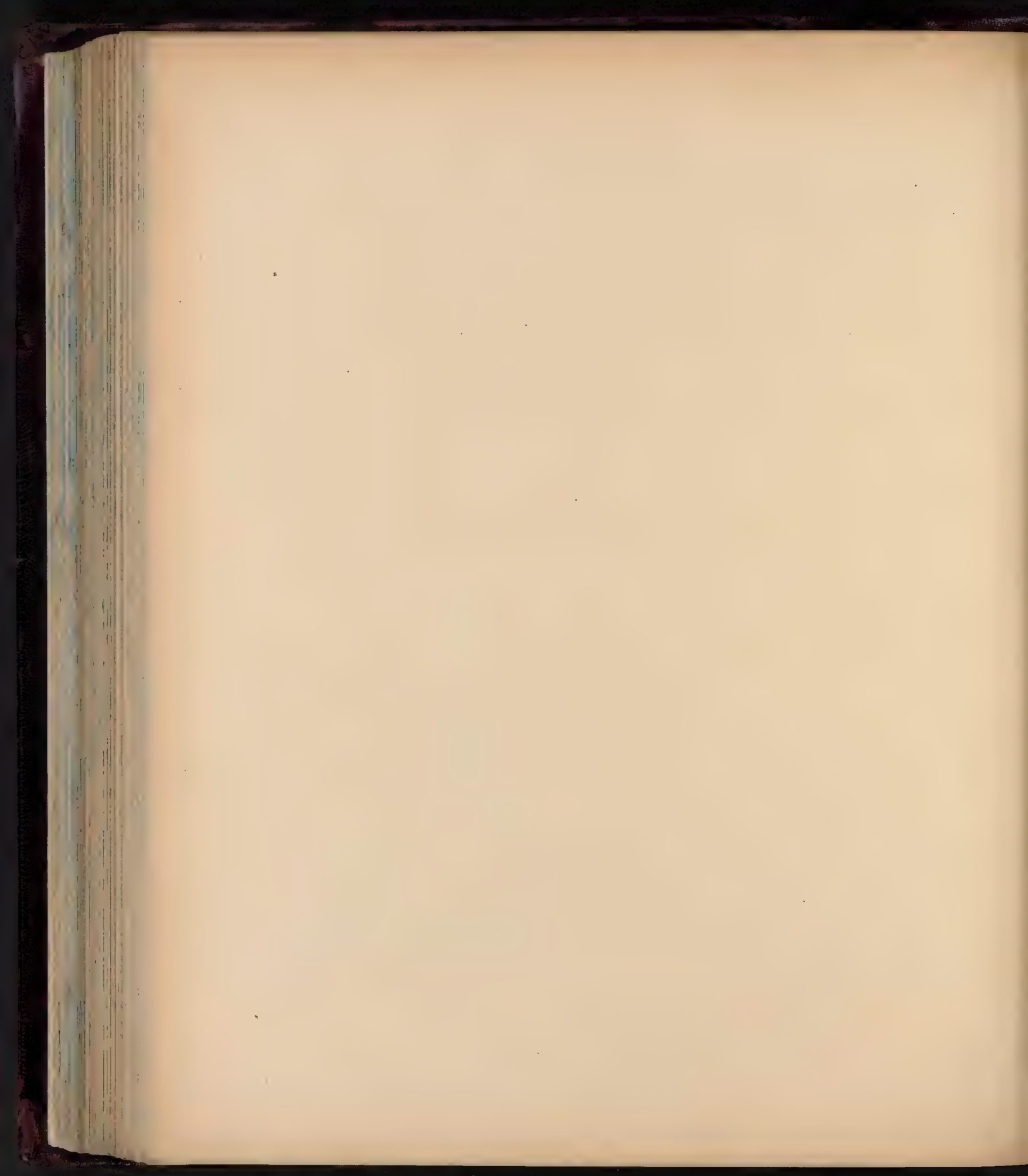


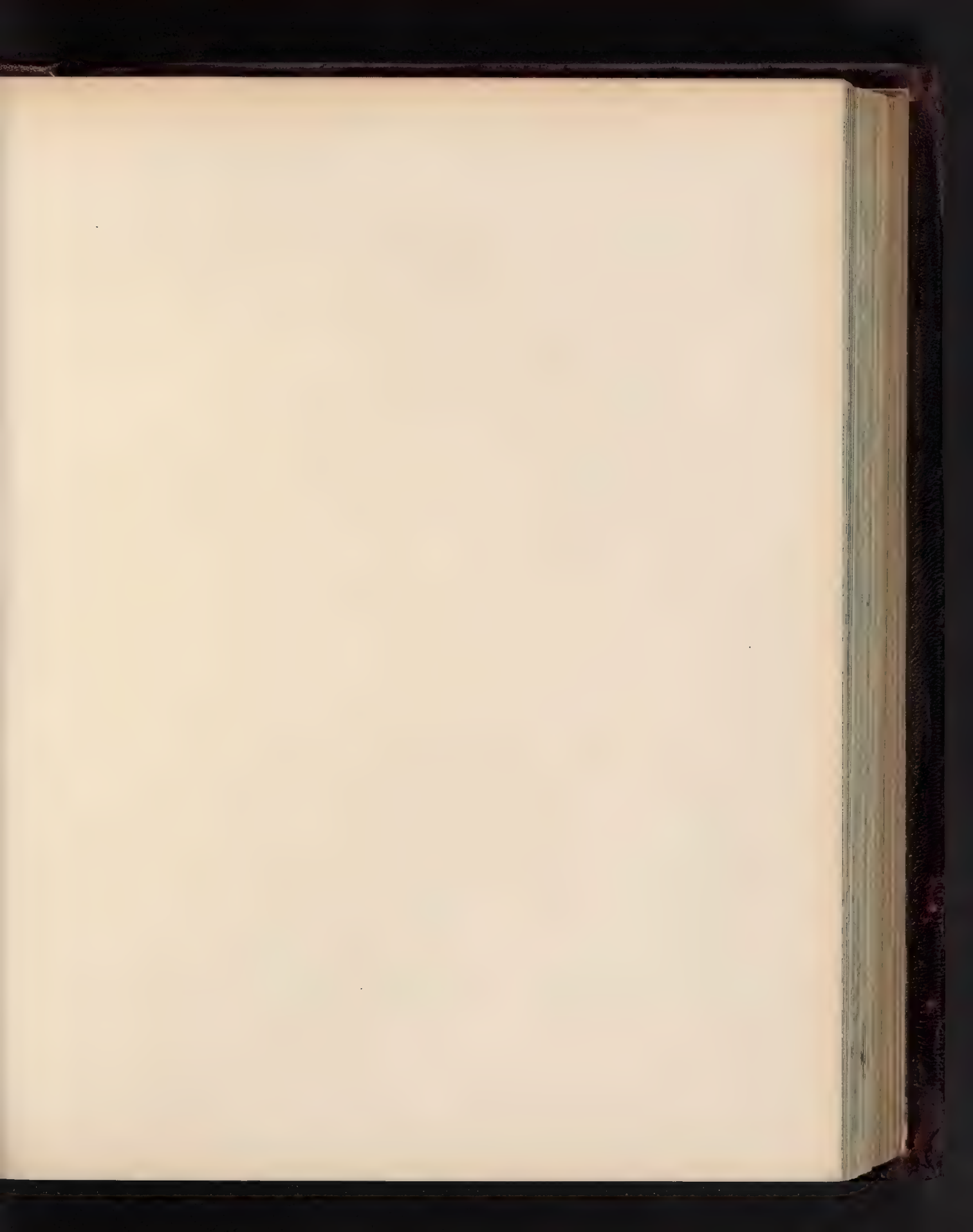
Christ, accompanied by the Virgin Mary and angels, appears to Mabá' Şeyôn, and promises to shew mercy upon the country.

"forgive thee"; and he told him all his sin, and Mabâ' Şĕyôn gave him absolution, and the monk was blessed by him, and he departed to his own country.

Then our father Mabâ' Şĕyôn also turned and came back to his own country, and he related [unto us] the works of God Almighty. And he meditated within himself and said, "Everything which I have asked for from Him hath He given unto me, and my God hath never put me to shame; why then should I hesitate to ask [for more]?" And he began to entreat God Almighty with crying and weeping, and said, "Remember, O my Lord, Thy covenant which Thou hast made with me to give me my desire, and put me not to shame in the matter of the petition which I now make unto Thee; and shew Thou mercy unto me because of the festival of the commemoration of Thy death."¹ Then he repeated the names of the cities [of the land], and made supplication for the people [thereof]. And the Lord hearkened unto his petition and [saw] his vigils, and He came unto him along with her who gave Him birth, the Virgin, being girt about with glory, and He said unto him, "Peace [be to thee], O my chosen one, behold I have come unto thee that I may fulfil thy petition [Fol. 68a] in the matter of the people who are the inhabitants of such and such a city; I will shew mercy unto thee and they shall be unto thee [thy] reward for the festival of the commemoration of My death. And as for the people of such and such a city, I will shew mercy unto thee because of the love which My mother beareth unto thee; and moreover, it shall be for thee to deliver them

¹ I. e., because I have established a festival to commemorate Thy death.





I. Mabâ' Şeyôn conversing with a company of men who are going to King Zara Yâ'kôb.



II. King Zara Yâ'kôb addressing the men who had come to him.

"from the Gâfât', and I, even I, will give them unto thee [as thy] "reward." Now when His mother heard [these words] she gave thanks unto Him, and the angels bowed to the ground and worshipped Him, saying, "Glory be to God in the heavens, and peace upon earth unto "those who are well pleased at Him¹." Now we do not make mention of the names of these cities that the people thereof may not boast themselves thereat, even as it is said by the Prophet, "Some things "shall be revealed, and some things shall be concealed."

Now the blessed man Takla Mâryâm (i. e., Mabâ' Šĕyôn), was wondering concerning the Gâfât which God had promised unto him, saying, "When will they believe aright, during my lifetime or after my "death?" Then he rose up and went towards Ethiopia on the twenty-second day of the month Yakâtût², on the second day of the week, and there met him on the way multitudes of the Gâfât who, by the good pleasure of God Almighty, were [Fol. 68b]³ marching out to king Zar'a Yâ'qôb to receive gifts from him because they had been baptized, and had believed in the name of the Trinity in those days⁴.

¹ The Gâfât or Jâfât ጋፋት : were probably the inhabitants of the province of Gâfât which lay to the south of Gôyâm; compare አሐዱ፡ጋፋት : and ሐረ፡ገብ፡ጋፋት : Pereira, *Chronica de Susenyos*, p. 12, l. 31, and p. 23, l. 98. A number of passages where the name occurs are given by Conti Rossini in his *Catalogo dei Nomi propri*, p. 27. In the map which Perruchon has reproduced at the end of his excellent work *Les Chroniques de Zar'a Yâ'qôb et de Bâeda Mâryâm*, Paris, 1893, the "Gafates" are marked as inhabiting a narrow strip of country to the south of Gôyâm and west of the district in which Dabra Libânôs was situated.

² The ordinary text of this passage reads: — ስብኣት : ሰለገዚአብሔር : በሰማይት : ወ ሰላም : በምድር : ሰለገሰ : አመ : ሕይወ : ሥምረቱ :: St. Luke ii. 14.

³ I. e., February 16.

⁴ Read Fol. 68b instead of Fol. 98b.

⁵ From this passage it is clear that Mabâ' Šĕyôn was living during the reign of Zar'a Yâ'qôb; who died on the 3rd of Pâgwēmēn A. M. 6960, that is to say, on the 26th of August A. D. 1468, after a reign of thirty-four years and two months. See Basset, *Études*,



And when they saw him, they ran to him and pressed forwards eagerly to meet him, and when they came up to him they said unto him, "Give us thy blessing." And he said unto them, "Do ye believe in Christ my God, so that I may bless you?" And they said unto him, "Yea, we do believe"; and he blessed each one of them. And again they said unto him, "Give us a name, and we want thee to set a priest over us; baptize us also, and be thou to us a father to give us consolation." Then Mabâ' Šĕyôn said unto them, "Christ shall be a father unto you. Behold, now that I have blessed you with my own hand ye have become children unto me"; and this he said because he remembered the covenant which our Lord had made [with him]. Then the Gâfât said unto him, "Shew us thy city so that we may come unto thee frequently, and that the love of thee may come back into our hearts"; and he shewed them [the name of] his city and they went on their way rejoicing exceedingly. And the blessed man knew that they were the people of whom our Lord—to Him be praise!—had spoken to him.

And it came to pass that on the twelfth day [Fol. 69a] of the month Khêdâr¹, on the festival of Saint Michael, he prayed that he might know [concerning] the inheritance of his father, and on the fifth day, which is the day upon which Michael, the Archangel, was wont to visit him, he came to him and said unto him, "Peace be unto thee, O lover of the Redeemer." And Mabâ' Šĕyôn said, "Peace be unto thee, O Archangel, who comest unto me"; and he imagined

p. 102; and Wright, *Catalogue*, p. vii. The chronicle of the life and deeds of Zar'a Yâ'kôb has been published by Perruchon under the title, *Les Chroniques de Zar'a Yâ'qôb et de Bâ'eda Mâryâm*, Paris, 1893.

¹ I. e., November 8.





I. Mabá' Şeyôn blessing the company of men who had recently become Christians.



II. The Archangel Michael presenting Mabá' Şeyôn to Christ.

that he had come to visit him according to his wont. Then the Archangel said unto him, "The Redeemer saith unto thee, 'Come'"; and he was greatly perturbed and said, "Where, O my Lord?" And the Archangel said unto him, "[Come], that thou mayest see that 'which thou hast asked, that is to say, how the Lord hath acted 'towards thy father.'" Then the Archangel took him upon his wings and carried him away into the heavenly Jerusalem, the appearance of which cannot be described, wherein our Lord Jesus Christ is enthroned along with her who bore Him, the Virgin. And Mabâ' ŞĒyôn bowed down in worship before our Lord with fear, and he saw there the saints our fathers, and he saw his father also standing side by side with the heavenly priests; and he rejoiced greatly. And a mighty and most marvellous [Fol. 69^b] splendour, which it is impossible to describe, burst forth at the time of [making] the heavenly Offering. And the Lord commanded our father Honorius¹ to minister at the altar which was in the midst; the father of Mabâ' ŞĒyôn was to minister on this side, and on that another also was to minister, but we may not pronounce his name until he hath departed from this fleeting world. Now the other matter which happened to his father, Mabâ' ŞĒyôn was not able to describe perfectly.

"And it came to pass after the Offering was ended" [saith Mabâ' ŞĒyôn], "that the Redeemer called me, and set me among the 'twenty-four priests of heaven, and He said unto me, 'Thou shalt 'rank with them from this day henceforth and for ever and ever'."

Then Mabâ' ŞĒyôn strengthened greatly his mind in the love of our Lord, and he meditated how he could suffer because He suffered, and how he could be pierced with nails because He was

¹ I. e., the Emperor Honorius.

I. Angelic incense bearers at the celebration of the festival of Palm Sunday.



II. Christ conferring upon Mabá' Šeyôn the priesthood of the orders of Saint Stephen, and St. Michael the archangel, and Saint John.



pierced with nails. And he said unto himself, "If I make [holes] in "the palms of my hands, and in the soles of my feet, men will see "them and know that I am suffering; therefore it will be better for "me to make them in my knees." Then he brought[†] instruments of iron which were made sharp like unto a bradawl, and he drove them into his knees with a stone; and he wept tears because of the intensity of his suffering. And he praised the Lord Christ, Who straightway came unto him and smiling [said unto him], "Did I shed tears thus "when nails were driven into Me? Why didst thou not strengthen "thyself [to bear] the pain thereof?" Then Mabâ' ŞĖyôn said unto Him, "Thou, O Lord, by Thine own might didst bear [the pain with] "patience, but I am infirm and feeble; how could I bear [the pain] "patiently?" And straightway the Lord drew out the sharp irons from him, and He touched his wounds with His hands, and made him to live [again]. And He said unto him, "Whosoever kisseth and "toucheth these thy knees shall receive redemption, and salvation, and "remission of sins, and thy knees shall redeem many souls; when they "stand still they shall protect [with] loving kindness and mercy, and "when they move about cities and lands shall be sanctified. And be- "hold, I have touched them with Mine own hand that thou mayest be "a participator in My sufferings."

And it came to pass that our Lord Jesus Christ carried him to heaven, and He brought him before the throne; and Mabâ' ŞĖyôn saw priests and angels round about the throne, and judgments went forth from round about the throne [Fol. 70] of His kingdom. And when a priest said, "Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to

[†] Read ወክሥቶች :



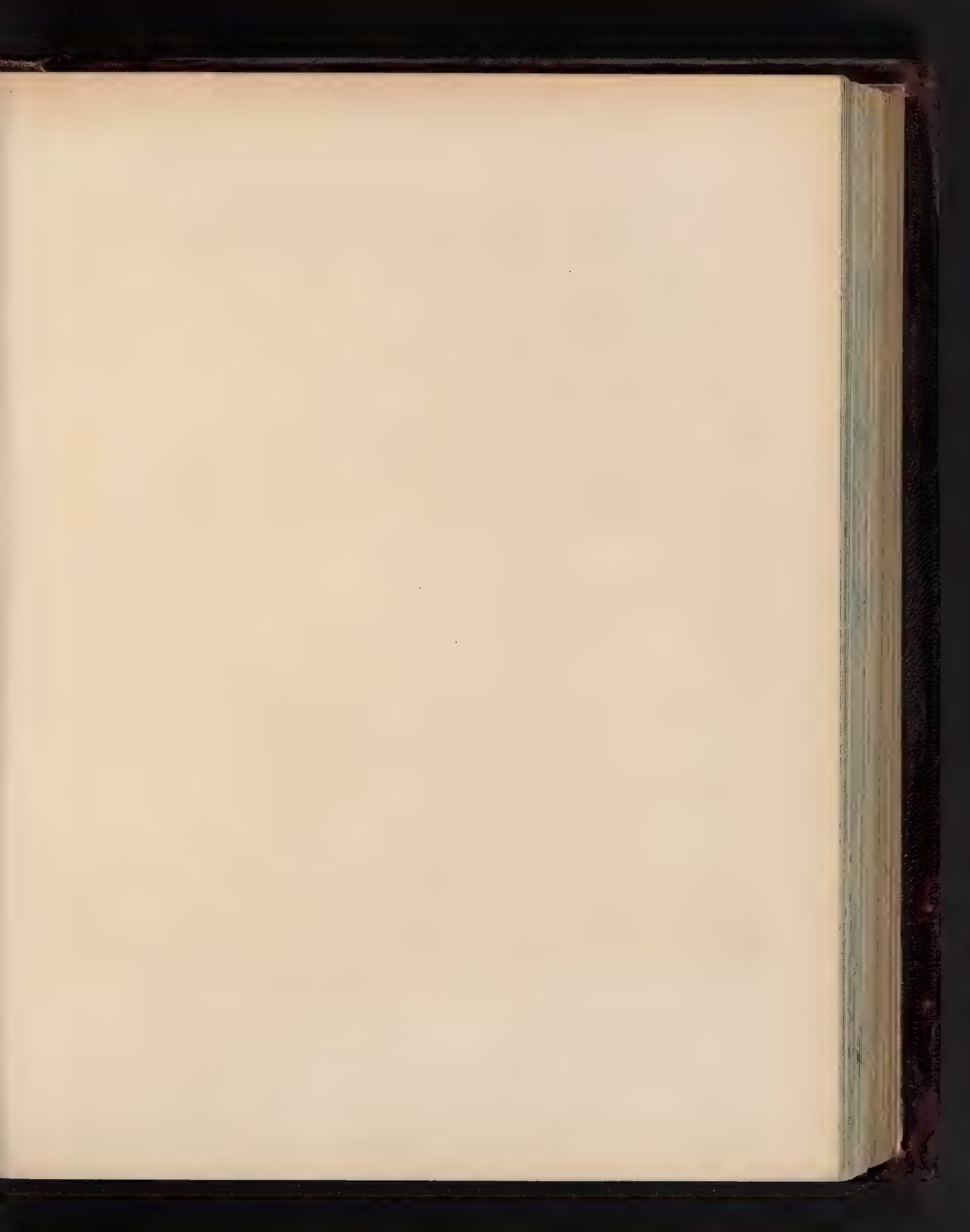
"the Holy Ghost", he could not say 'Amen'. And again, when the priest said 'Holy', he could not comprehend that he spake of God the Almighty; and moreover, when the priest said, "Let us worship," he could not say, "The Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost"; and when the priest said, "Glory be to God," he could not say "Righteousness is meet for Him, [and] there can be [no] wickedness "in God."

And he saw, moreover, awful and wonderful things, a spacious and a shining city; and again, he saw the darkness of the abyss, and multitudes of men were falling therein. Then he asked him that was with him, saying, ["Who are these?"] And he said unto him, "These "are they who have slandered Zar'a Yâ'kôb the king." And moreover, he saw two clouds which were like unto [two] white horses, [and he said unto him that was with him, ["What are these for?"] And he replied, "One is for thee and one is for Zar'a Yâ'kôb, that "ye may ride thereon and draw nigh unto Jerusalem." Then Mabâ' ŞĖyôn said unto him, "In what thing canst thou make me, a sinner, "to be like unto Zar'a Yâ'kôb, the sun of the faith, and the king of "righteousness?" And he made answer [Fol. 71a] unto him, "Thou "art like unto him in that thou hast made thy mind to follow after "the love of thy God." And when he had heard these words he gave thanks unto God for the gift of the riches of His grace.

And our father Mabâ' ŞĖyôn said moreover, "My Lord Jesus "Christ came unto me on the fourteenth day of the month Yakâtî' "holding a rope [in His hand, and He said], 'With this I was bound, "and the wicked Jews fettered Me therewith; I have brought it unto

* I. e., February 8.





I. Mabâ Şeyôn is shewn two horses in heaven ; one is intended for him, and the other for King Zara Yâ'kôb.



II. Christ sheweth Mabâ' Şeyôn the rope with which He was bound upon earth.

“‘thee that thou mayest see it.’ Then straightway I took it, and kissed
“it, and hung it round my neck, and I wept when I remembered
“that they had bound my Lord therewith; and would have made it
“a seal upon my neck and a goad in my side. And He said
“unto me, ‘Thou art not able to bear it upon thee; I did but bring
“‘it unto thee that thou mightest see it.’ Then He lifted me up
“with His hand and ascended into heaven. To Him be glory for
“ever and ever!”

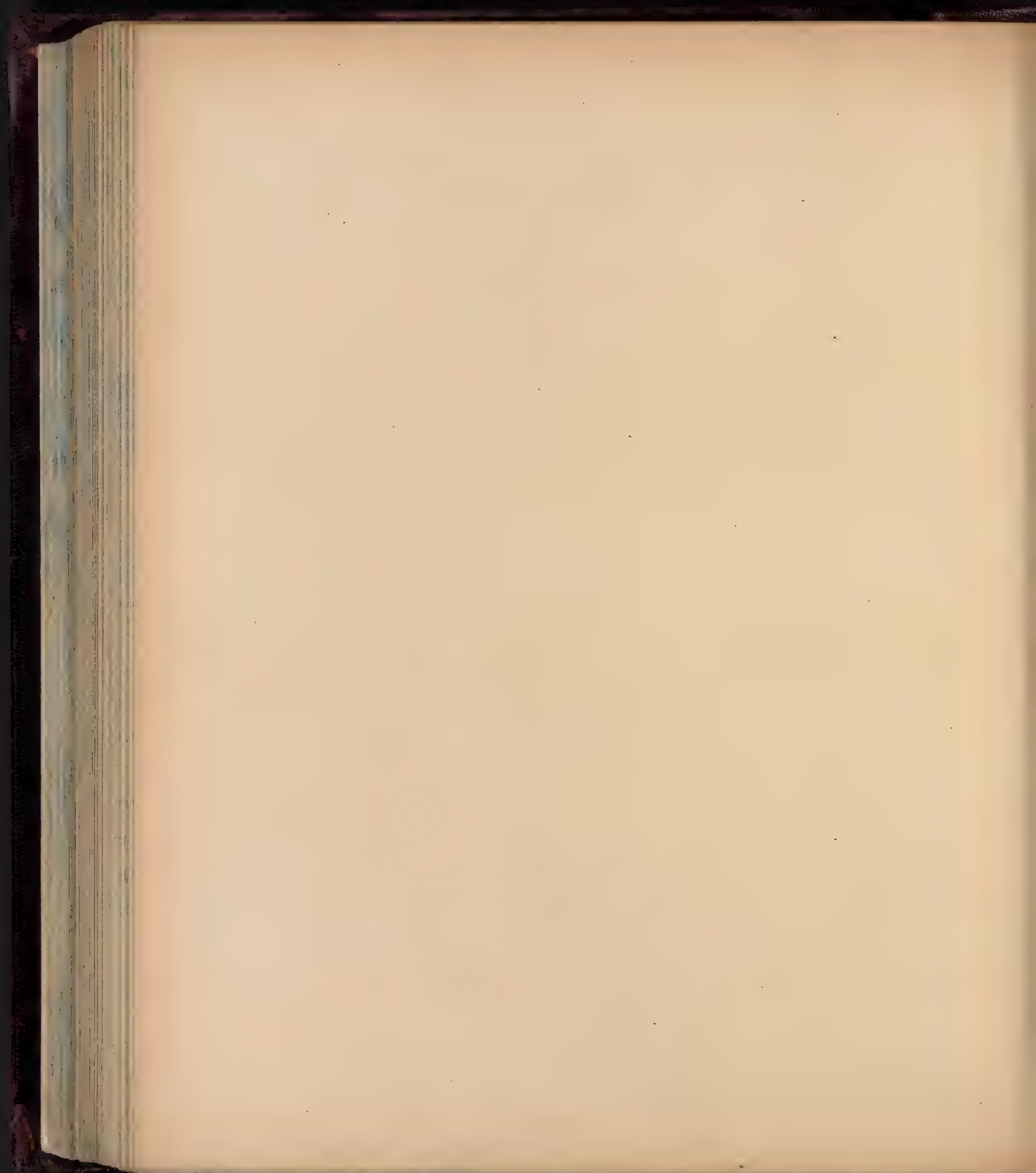
And then on the twenty-seventh day of the month Magâbît¹ our Lord Jesus Christ came with her who bore Him, the Virgin, and with His holy angels, [Fol. 71^b] on the night of the first day of the week, on the day of the holy Hosanna², when the priests and the censors were gathered together for the great festival of the commemoration of His death; and he that was on the earth³ was transformed and became a being of heaven. And our Lord shewed love unto Mabâ' Şeyôn because of the festival of the commemoration of His death, which had become a traditional custom through him. And He made Himself to be a priest, and made the blessed man a priest like unto Stephen, the head of the deacons, and Michael, the chief of the angels, and Saint John, whom He made priests, each in his respective order. And Christ made Mabâ' Şeyôn to be a priest of the three orders of the Offering⁴ on three thrones. And as for the deacons who served, "I will make ye to know them forthwith," said Mabâ' Şeyôn.

¹ I. e., March 24. Read 𐎠𐎠𐎠𐎠;

² I. e., Palm Sunday, the festival of which was commemorated on the 22nd of Magâbît, i. e., March 18.

³ I. e., Mabâ' Şeyyôn.

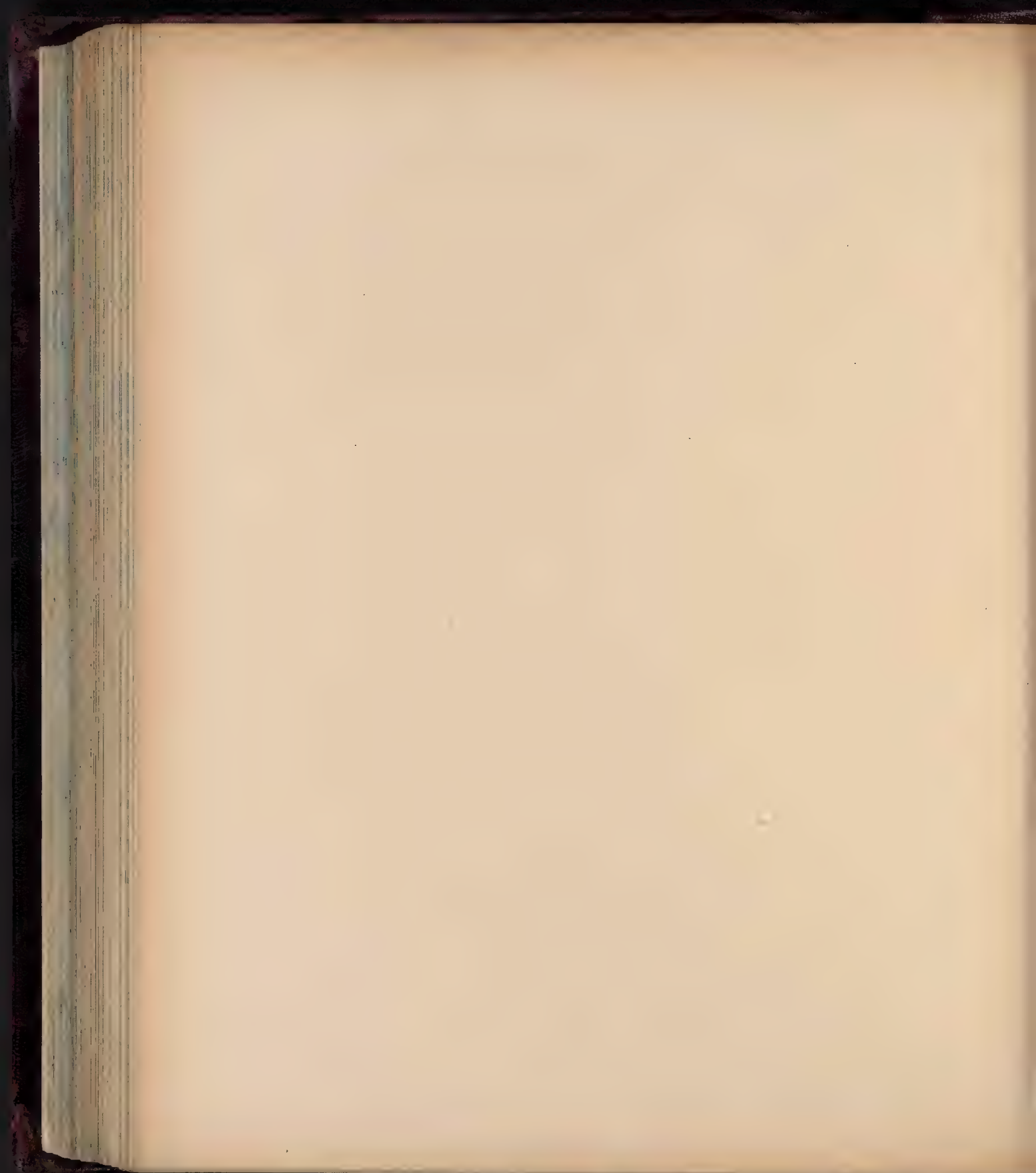
4 Read **ΦCQ7** :



"And after the Offering was ended," said Mabâ' Šĕyôn, "He called me and set me before Him, and said unto me, 'Once before' 'I gave thee a reward, and now again do I give thee a reward. 'And I covenant with thee to shew mercy, for thy sake, on the day 'in which thou shalt celebrate the festival of the commemoration of 'Me every month, upon five thousand souls; and each day of the eve of 'the festival of My crucifixion for thy sake will I shew mercy upon 'three hundred and forty souls. And as for thyself, I will adorn 'thee with raiment of gold set with precious stones, and with a 'brilliant crown which shall shine with light brighter than the sun'; and [Fol. 72a] thus saying unto him He arrayed Mabâ' Šĕyôn in most glorious apparel. Then Mabâ' Šĕyôn straightway bowed down and worshipped Him, and said unto Him, "O Lord, complete Thou unto me Thy goodness, and shew mercy unto him that shall flee to me for refuge, and shall call upon the name of the sinner Thy servant." And the Lord said unto Him, "I will complete [My goodness] unto thee. Whosoever shall call upon thy name, or shall flee to thee for refuge, or shall celebrate the commemoration of thee after thy death, or shall eat the bread of the commemoration of thy death which thou thyself shalt make, or shall hear afar off of the fame of thee—"if his heart be pleased therewith and he love the same—but who shall not be able to be present at the commemoration of Me which thou thyself shalt celebrate, upon him will I have mercy." And when our Redeemer had said these things unto him, He laid His hands upon his body, and swore unto him by His own precious blood [that He would do this thing].

Now when our Lady Mary who gave Him birth heard these

¹ Read $\Phi\eta\sigma\eta\iota$:



words she said, "O my Son, What wilt Thou give unto him for my "sake?" And the Lord said unto her, "O My mother, on each day "of thy festival, for thy sake, and through him, will I shew mercy "unto five thousand souls"; then she rose up and kissed His feet and gave thanks unto Him.

And now, let us ask Mabā' Šĕyôn, saying, "Why hath this "[reward] been given unto thee by God? Is it because of thy fasting? "Or is it because of thy prayers?" Then will he say [Fol. 72^b] unto us, "It is not according to my warring, but according to the "greatness of His mercy that He hath given me¹ the reward of seven "hundred² souls on each day of His festival; and moreover, my prayers "were few. And it is because I loved Him, more than because of "all my prayers, that He will bring forth, for my sake, five [thousand] "souls out of hell on each day of His festival. May His kingdom be "blessed for ever and ever!"

Now these things Mabā' Šĕyôn told, not only to the man to whom he spake them, but also to him that wrote this [book]; and not to them only but also to three men, one of whom was a priest, and two were deacons, when they together made enquiries of him concerning these things, for in days gone by he used also to tell the faithful how the Redeemer visited him. And the Gospel saith, "By "the testimony of two or three witnesses everything shall stand³." Behold then, multitudes of saints were witnesses of what the Holy Spirit shewed them.

¹ Read ወመሀበኒ :

² This number seems to be wrong.

³ በአፈ : ክልኢቱ : ወሠለስተ : ሰማዕተ : ይቆውም : ስሉ : ነገር :: 2 Corinthians, XIII. 1. See also Deuteronomy XIX. 15.

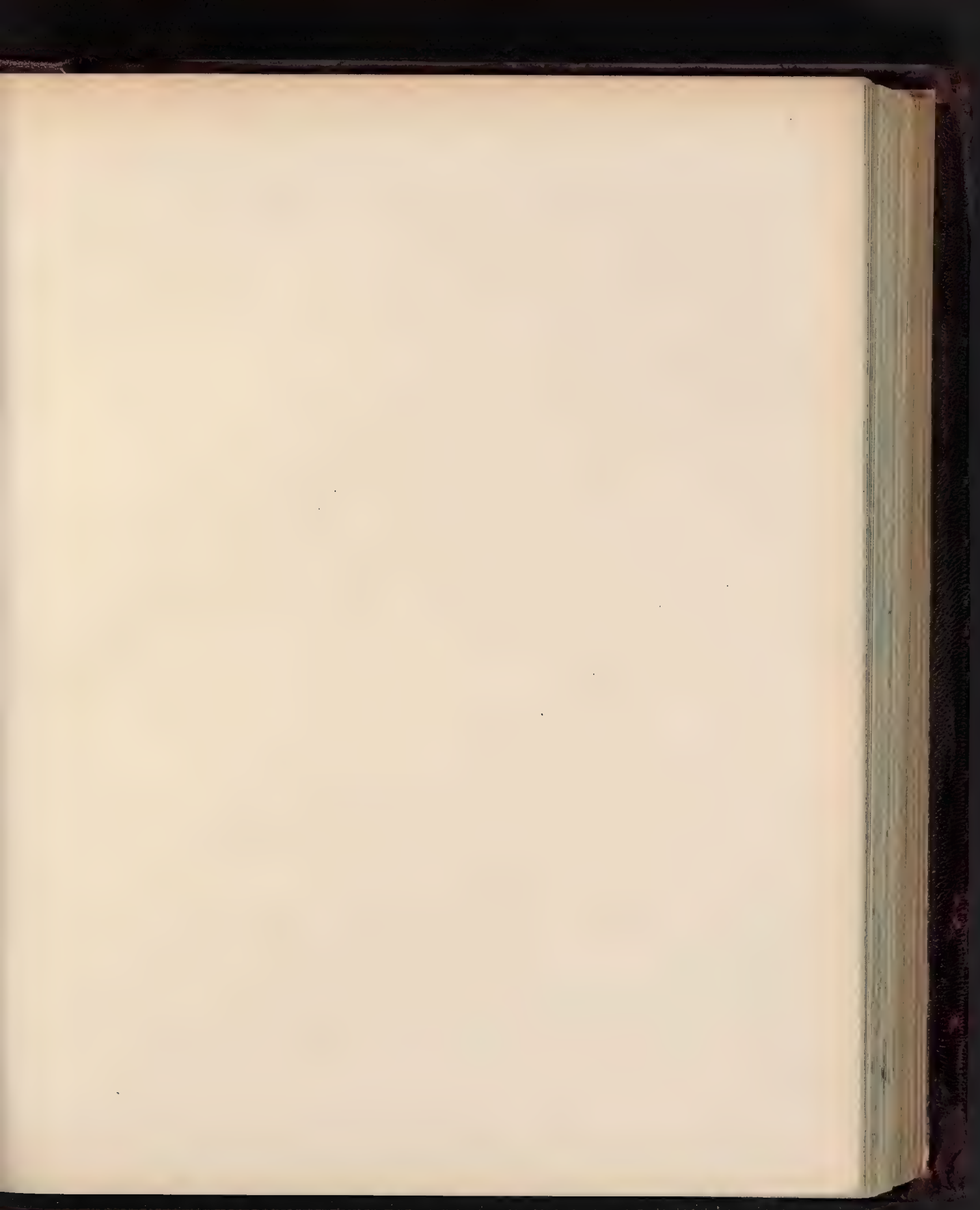


And it came to pass that when God Almighty wished to take Mabâ' ŞĖyôn to Himself, and to make him to rest from the toil and labour of this world, a certain monk came unto him and spake unto him, saying, "I have seen beings rejoicing and singing in the air for "three months past, and when they descended to me they were the "saints. And' they said unto me, 'Say thou unto Takla Mâryâm (i. e., "Mabâ' ŞĖyôn), Prepare, for the day of thy departure from this world "is nigh." And when Mabâ' ŞĖyôn heard this he said, "Let the will "[Fol. 73^a] of my God be done. For what hope have I upon the "earth except the commemoration of the festival of the death of the "Redeemer? And for my own part, I desire to go to the city of "light, and to enter into the inheritance of the saints." Then he went to the Monastery of Mary¹ and embraced all the saints there and was embraced by them; and he told them all that had taken place, and received consolation from them, and was sent on his way back with salutations of peace. (And it came to pass that the third month of which [the monk] had spoken, wherein he was to take upon himself the form and likeness of the saints drew nigh; now in the first month, on the twenty-second day², his death took place). And it came to pass that seven days after he gathered together all his children, and said unto them, "Dwell ye together in the love, and in "the commandment of God Almighty"; and after this he exhorted them with many words of righteousness. Then the heavens were opened [unto him] and he looked in, and his children said unto him, "What

¹ Perhaps the Dabra Mâryâm mentioned in the Chronicle of Za'fa Yâ'kôb; see Perruchon, op. cit., p. 28. The country in which this monastery was situated lay to the north of Gôyâm.

² I. e., the 22nd of Maskarram (= September 19); but below we are told that he died on the 21st of the second month, which is Teķemt, that is to say, on October 18.





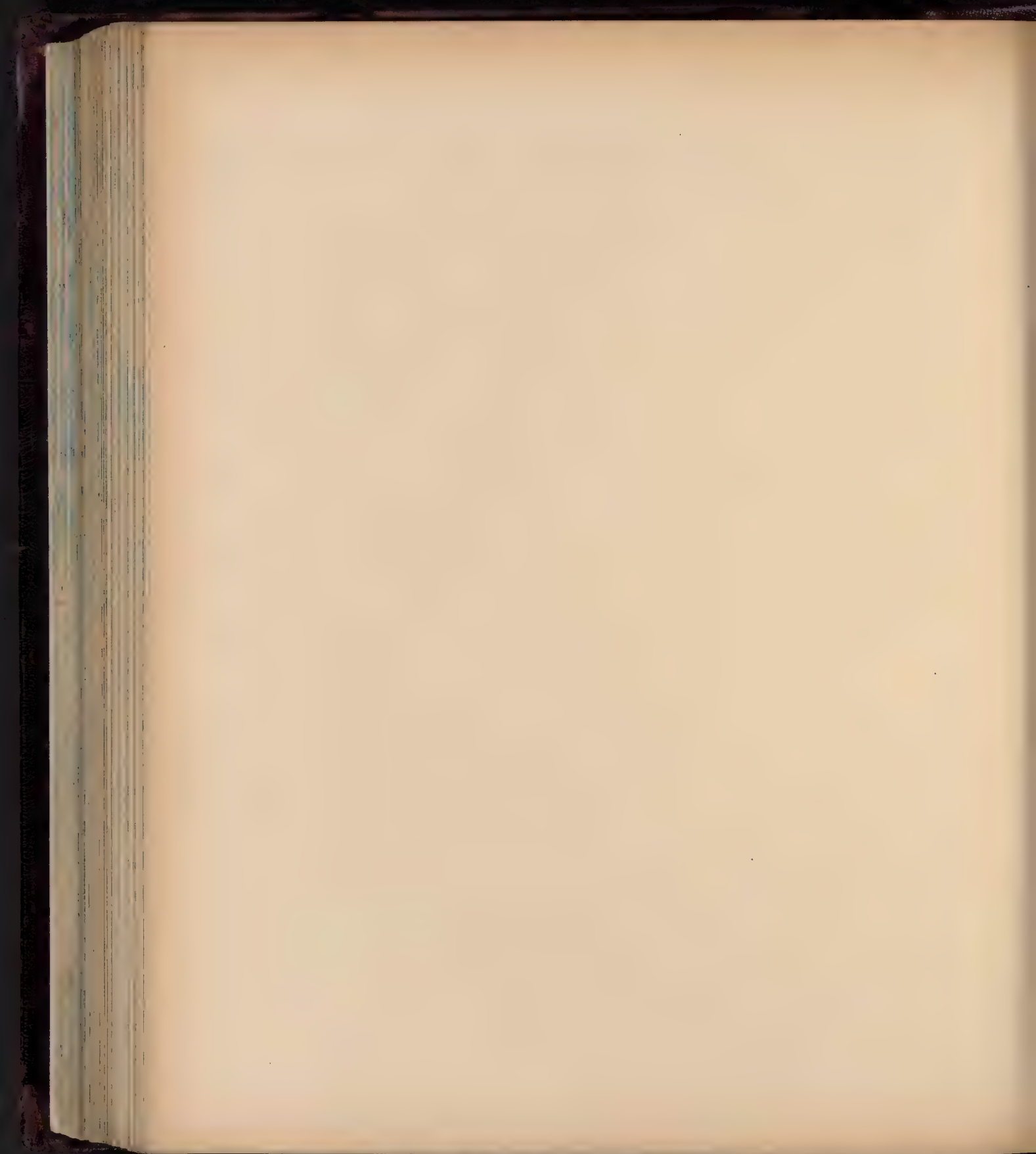
I. Christ and Mabá' Şeyôn in the Church.

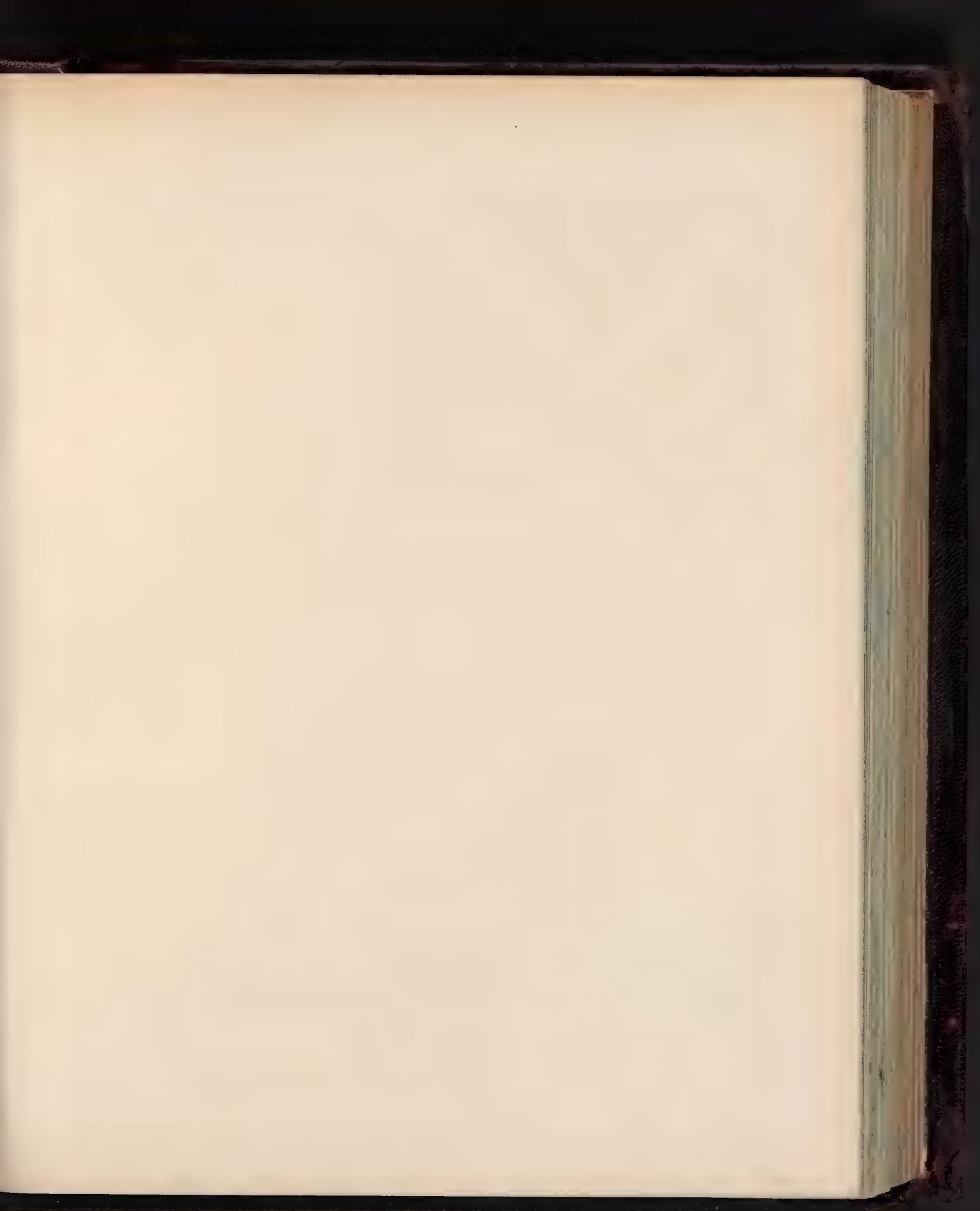
II. The dying vision of Mabá' Şeyôn.

II. The dying vision of Mabá' Şeyôn.



III. The death of Mabá' Şeyôn, and Christ receiving his soul in the presence of angels.





I. An angel giving the key of the divine house to Mabá' Şeyôn.

II. Mabá' Şeyôn's mansion in heaven.

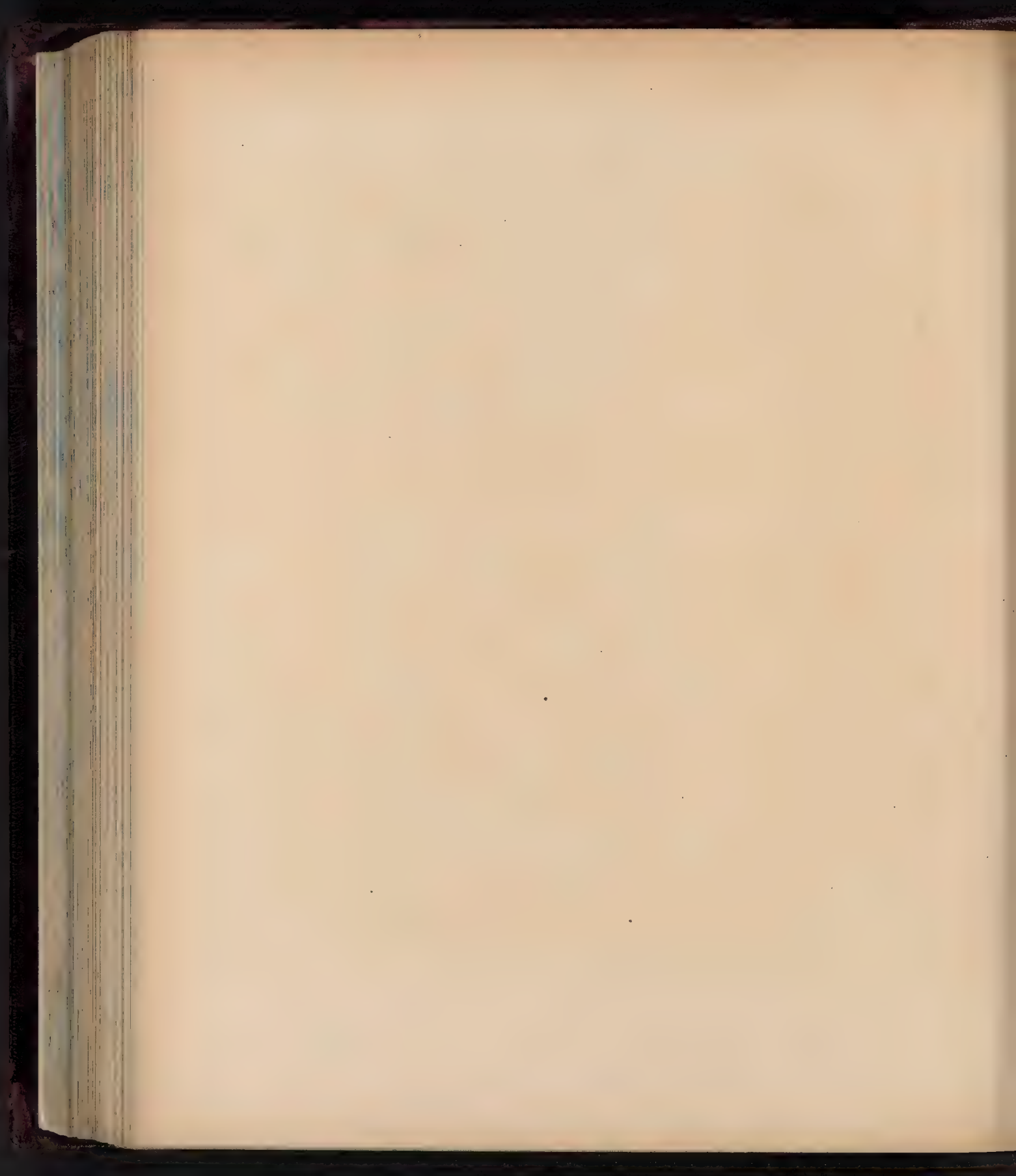
III. The three heavenly bulls.



IV. An angel shewing the priest the soul of Mabá' Şeyôn sitting in the middle mansion in heaven.

manner in which the Lamb allotted habitations unto all the saints, and how his Lord commanded that each habitation should have its own odour, and how the Holy Spirit, the mighty One, is the helper of each one of them; to Him be praise for ever and ever! Amen.

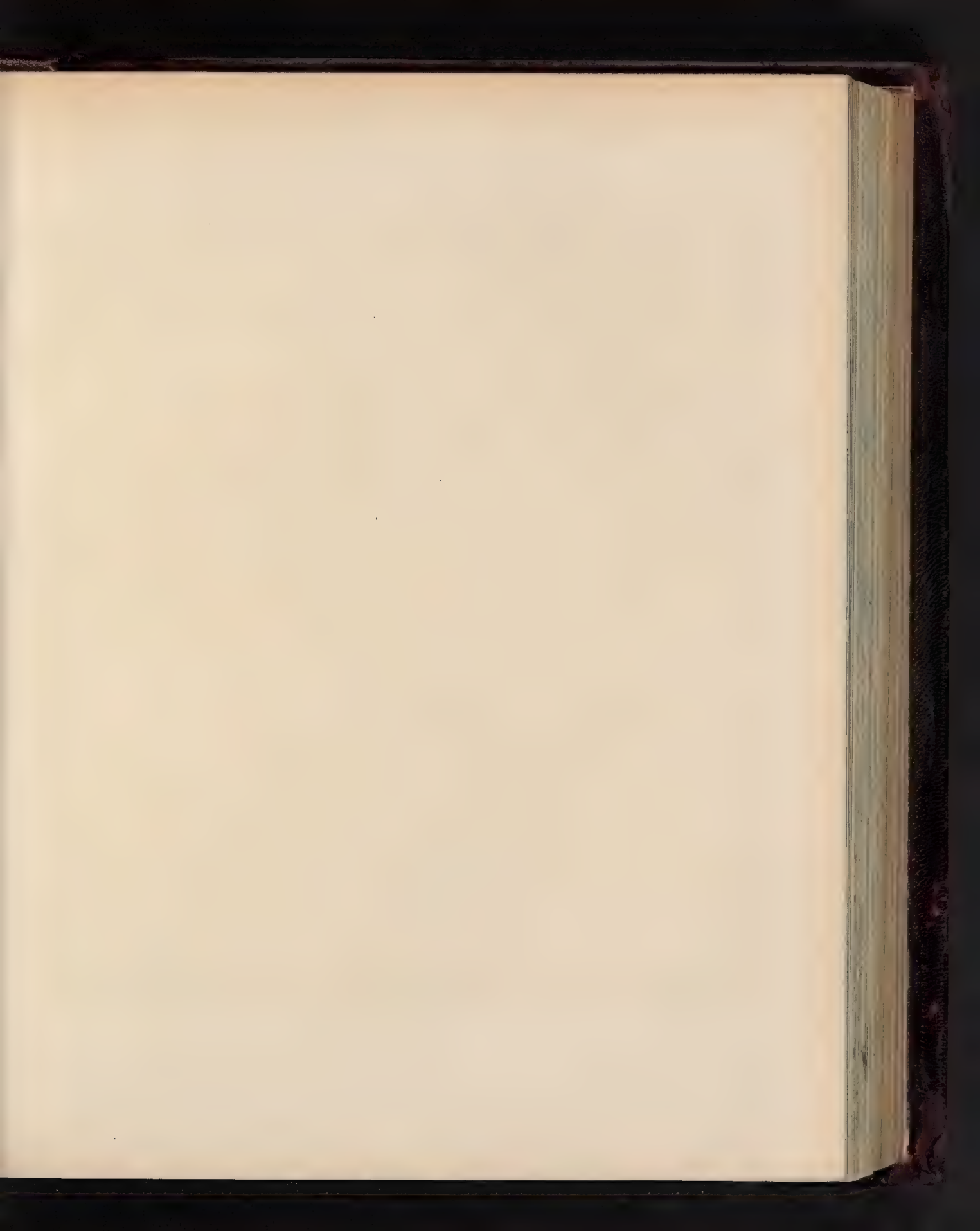
And he saw above the heavens ten mansions that were built of gold and precious stones, and these buildings were exceedingly beautiful, and they shone with brilliant light. And above the mansion which was in the middle was a canopy which was overshadowed by the form of a great cross that shone like the sun, and was fixed in the upper portion of the canopy. From the edges of the canopy a great number of strings of gold like fringe descended, and though they hung close together each was separate from its neighbour; upon each string precious stones were threaded, and these jewels cast their shadow over every portion of the mansion. And moreover, three cords of gold hung down in front of the three windows (?) of the house, and Saint Michael opened the windows (?) by turning the crosses which were attached to the cross. Inside the house was a throne the workmanship of which cannot be described, [Fol. 81 *δ*], and that which crowned it was a shining cloud; and upon the throne was a little child [in the garb of] a monk. And he said unto the angel, "Who is this that is seated [here]?" And the angel, "It is the 'soul of Mabâ' ŞĖyôn, and our Lord hath seated him here and fixed 'his habitation [here], so that on the day in which He desireth He 'calleth unto his soul, and holdeth converse therewith." And when he had seen this thing with the angel which spake unto him, he marvelled at the wisdom of God which no man can know. And, moreover, God set within the house three white bulls which were similar in nature; but these the angel did not explain to the writer. Now the holy sages have given an interpretation of them and say



I. The first heaven and the saints thereof mounted on horses.



II. The angel shewing the monk the second heaven and the saints mounted on horses.



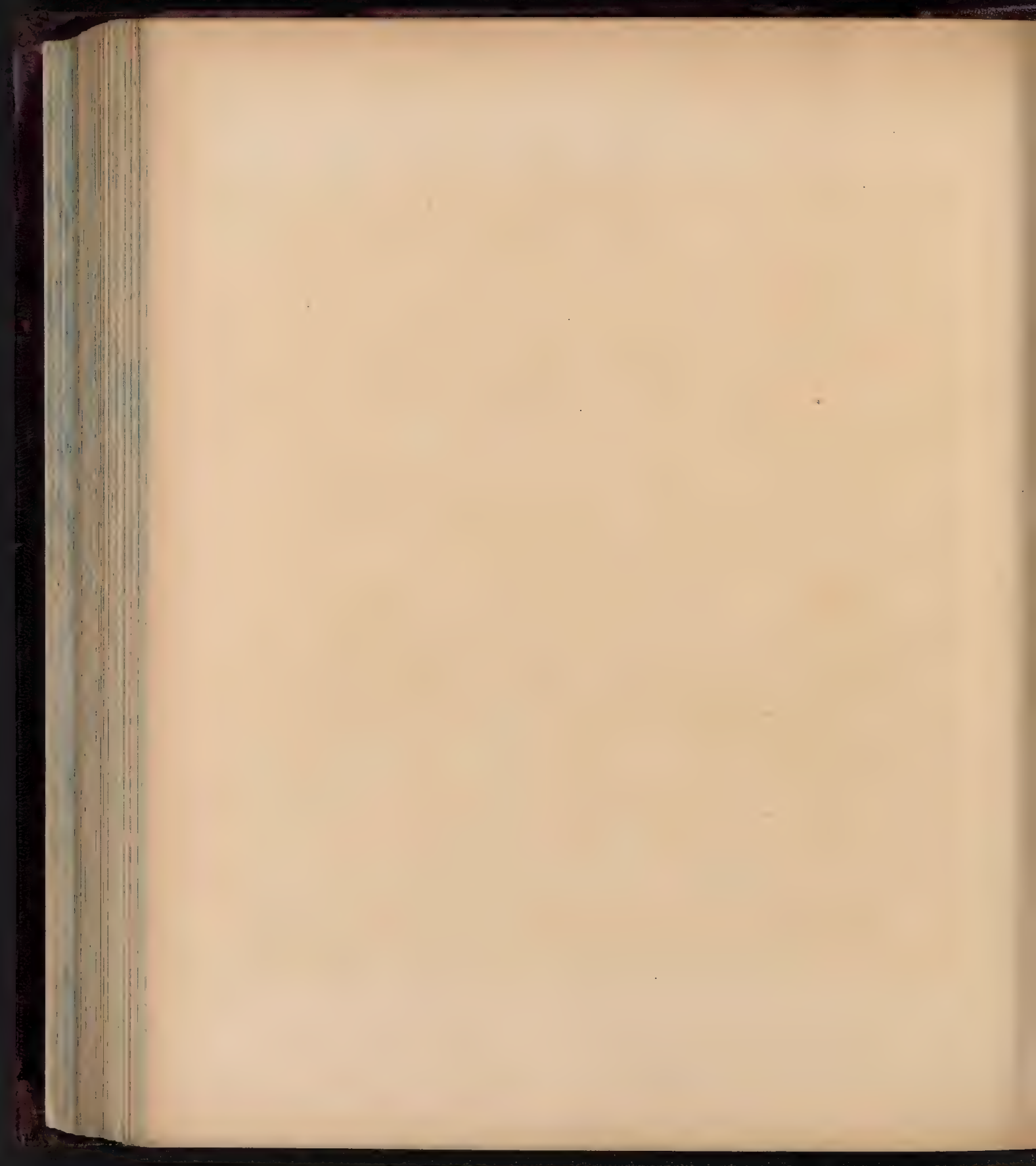


The angel shewing the monk the third heaven, and the man to whom the Lord had given much apparel prostrate before Christ and the Virgin.

that they are the Persons of the Trinity, and some [say] it is their substance

Then the Holy Spirit took me, and lifted me up to heaven, and there I saw a wide open space which was like unto a cloud and was white like frost; and upon it were multitudes of the saints riding upon horses, and they were making merry among themselves. And again the Holy Spirit lifted me up above these, and I saw multitudes of the saints who were making merry among themselves, like those I had first seen; and they were beautifully arrayed, [Fol. 82a] and their horses were of divers colours and were brilliantly marked with white, and were far more handsome than the horses which I had first seen. And here I saw my father, whom I recognized from having seen him before at the festival of the commemoration of the Redeemer, and I communed with him; and the Lord Himself had given unto him the apparel of light.

Then the Holy Spirit lifted me up to the third heaven which was [like unto] a long and vast cloud; and it was much longer and wider than the first and second heavens, and it shone with brightness greater than that of the sun. And above it I saw our Lord with her who gave Him birth, the Virgin, and it was filled with companies of angels and men. And again I saw a man who rejoiced, and he shone with a light brighter than that of the sun; and our Lord had given him majesty and had arrayed him in His splendid apparel, and with abundance of raiment, saying, "Whatsoever he desireth that give him." Then straightway that man kissed the feet of our Lord, and paid reverence unto the Child; but he took nothing from Him, because he had already received from our Lord both horses and the apparel of light. And he turned round towards Him, and looked, and our Lord gave unto him a cross [Fol. 82b] of light; and [the Child] said



III. Archers with bows and arrows shooting at the serpent.

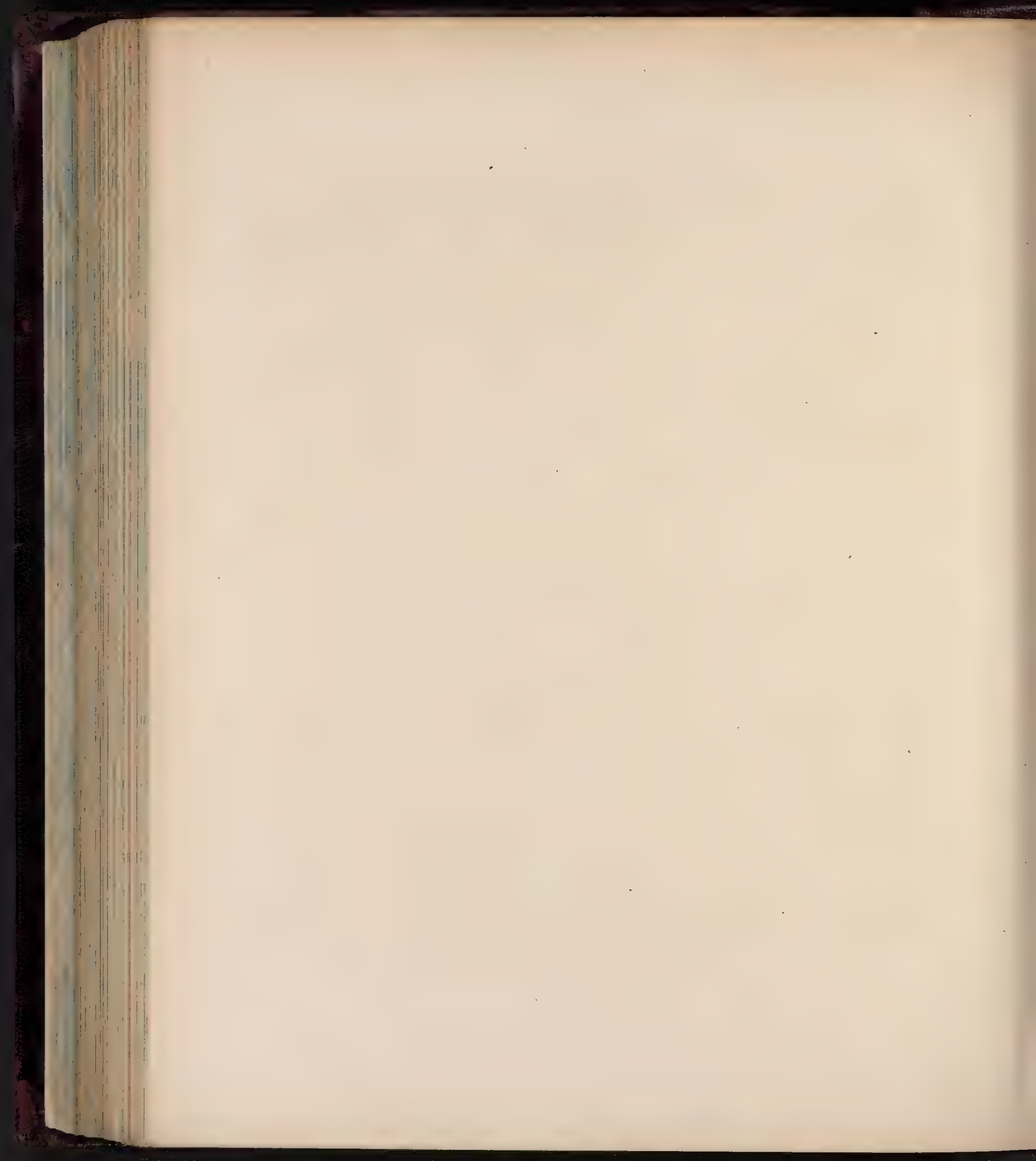
The Vision of the Monk.

II. Black and white bull.

I. Black men leading a serpent.



IV. Saint Michael commanding the Lamb to descend and visit angels and men; the black men, and the bull, and the serpent departing.



unto him, "Accept this from Him," and straightway he took [it] from our Lord. And this is He who handed on unto my friend what our Lord spake unto John Sankôrîs.

Then I saw a black serpent which was being dragged along by black men, and behind it there followed a mighty bull, of pleasant aspect, and of the colour of black and white [mixed] together; and behind him there followed black soldiers who held bows and arrows in their hands. And the Lord said unto Michael the Archangel, "Rise up and command the Lamb (*or* ram) to descend to all the "angels who are in the world, and to the men of such and such cities "who are my saints; touch neither [a hair of] their heads nor of their "children, and approach not their city"; now when the Lamb departed the bull also followed him, and the black soldiers. Then there came unto Michael a certain monk, who was an adversary of the Child, and who said unto him, "Send away from me the Lamb and the black "soldiers, and command [them to go] to the [Fol. 83*a*] monks of such "and such cities, with the exception of seven monasteries"; and he went to the monastery¹ and city where the child was. Then was our Lord angry with that envious man, and He made him to be brought to Him and said unto him, "Why didst thou refuse [to receive] the Lamb, since "thou hadst full and certain knowledge that the festival of the com- "memoration of my death was about to be celebrated?" So the Lord departed from that city and commanded that all the fair things thereof should be destroyed. And [Michael] beat that monk with whips until his whole body became like pulp, and afterwards he bound him in chains, and fastened his back and sides with fetters, and dragged him along like a bound captive; and when his children saw him they wept.

¹ Read ٢٠١ :

Now these things took place on the first day of the month Maskarram¹, and on the next day when they were arraying the child in apparel of gold, he was overcome with anger and he writhed in his fetters. And it came to pass on the tenth day that our Lady Mary asked him and made him swear that he would never do the like again, and that if he did, all his inheritance and all his children [Fol. 83^b] should become the property of the Child; [and when he had done so] she unfastened his bonds. And the child fell down before the throne of our Lord and entreated Him to remove from his city every lamb, and every black man, and every bull, saying, "Have mercy upon Thy handiwork, O Lord." And our Lord said unto him, "I will shew mercy unto thee because of the festival of the commemoration of My death which thou dost celebrate." And He commanded them to go forth, and straightway they went forth from the city, the black soldiers which were with the lamb, and the bull, and I know not whither He led them as He hastened them away.

And it came to pass on the following day that the child devoted himself to the preparation of beautiful things for the festival of the commemoration of the eve of the festival according to his wont², and our Lord came in the form of a child, and embraced his neck, and He adorned all his body, and took his head [in His hands], and touched his face and his cheeks, and they were very joyful together. Now when she who gave Him birth saw His graciousness, she said unto Him, "Hast Thou anything remaining with Thee which Thou didst promise by Thy covenant which Thou hast not given unto him?" And He said unto her, "Yea, there remaineth one thing with Me; but behold, I will fulfil the [Fol. 84^a] oath which I sware unto

¹ I. e., the first day of the Ethiopian year.

² Read **ḏḡḡ**.



I. Christ embracing Mabá' Şeyôn.

II. The foes of the saint attack his dwelling in heaven.



III. Saint Michael driving away the foes of the saint.

"him before thee, O My mother, for thy sake, and for the sake of "the Passion of My death, and for the sake of the shedding of My "blood." Then straightway He swore by oath many things unto him, saying, "From now and henceforth if any man shall take thought to "make ready fine bread-cakes for any festival of the commemoration "of My death, and shall fully perform the celebration thereof, I will "not depart from him until [his life] be ended. And to him who, "from the time of the coming in of the Offering until it goeth forth, "shall be of ready mind to receive My body and blood, I swear that "three times ten thousand souls shall he cause to go forth from hell; "for the sake of the festival of the commemoration of My death, and "for thy sake, O My mother, shall this be the reward which I will "give him until I, Myself, rise up." Then His mother rising up kissed His feet and gave thanks unto Him.

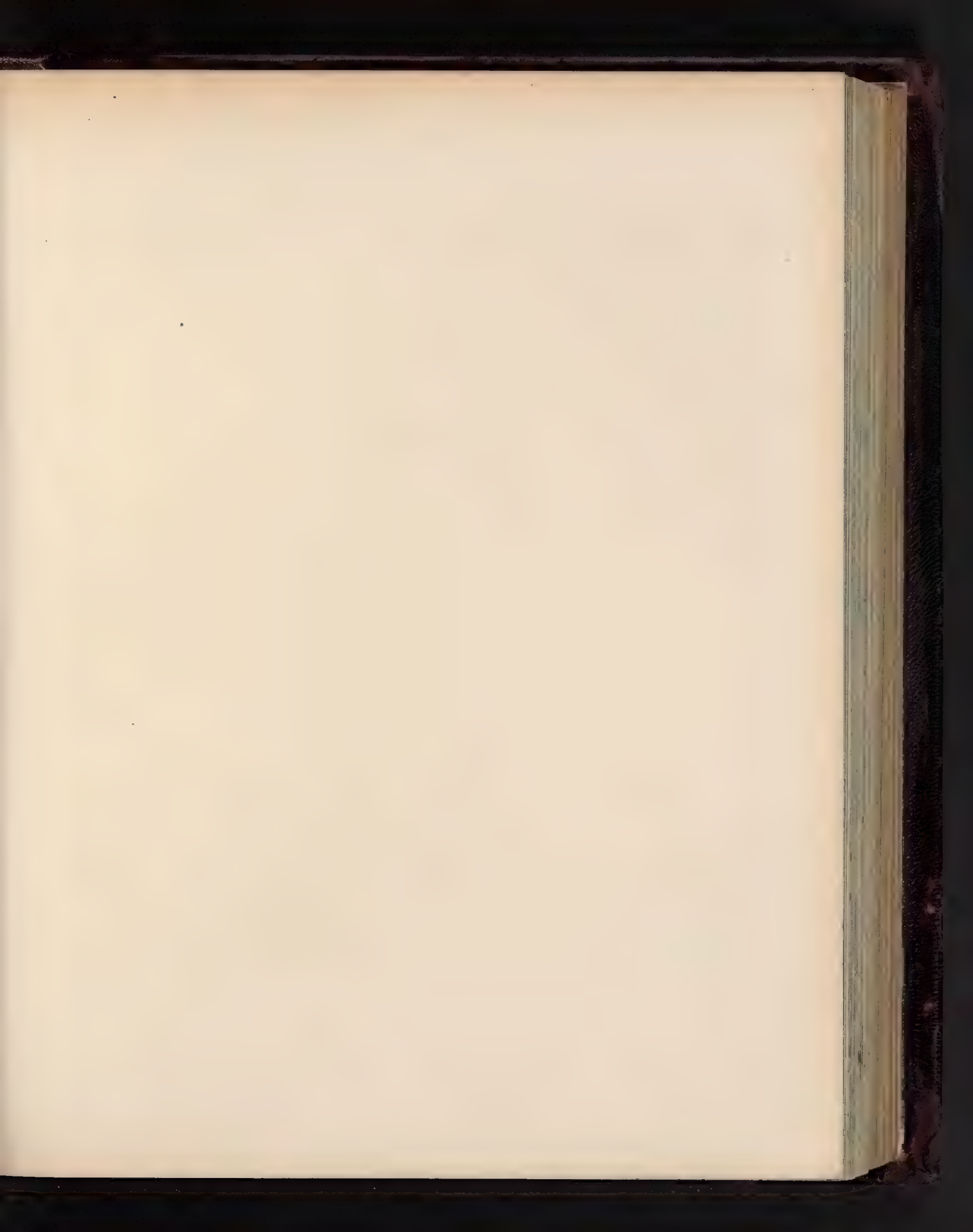
And whilst one was talking with our Lord, with a hesitating tongue, according to his wont, a bright moon came down from heaven and rested upon the place where the child stood in front of the city, and then that moon went and seated itself upon the child; and our Lord smiled and became a man, and at that moment I knew that that moon [Fol. 84b] was my Lady Mary. And she said, "Wilt thou "keep silent, O my beloved one, [whilst] the hosts of darkness gather "round the house of the commemoration of my festival?" And the Lord kept silent whilst He shewed His rejoicing in the child [and whilst He spake unto him] in a gracious voice.

And I saw the hosts of darkness outside, the number of which could not be told, and they had their bows drawn, and their arrows dipped in poison, and they surrounded the house; and it seemed to me that they would leave none of it standing. But whilst I meditated in this wise there came a flash of lightning and consumed them, and

they all disappeared, and that house remained by itself under the tree. And the angel [who] sat in the house wished to close the doors thereof, but Saint Michael made him leave them [open], saying unto him, "Leave them [open], and let the child be slain as he desireth." Now there were with him two angels, and when they had smitten the earth twice, a huge, black serpent of enormous girth put forth his head, which was covered with hair like unto that of a man; and one half of the serpent remained in the ground. And the serpent hissed [Fol. 85*a*] and uttered cries, and he shed his hair in front of the wall of the house from which the child was looking. Then the child went forth from the Lord holding a bow [in his hand], and our Redeemer gave him a panoply of gold and silver wherewith to cover all his body; and the work of this was formed of fire mingled with white and green flowers, and the sign of the cross was thereon. And the child avenged himself, and making the sign of the cross, he shot arrows at the serpent, and straightway the earth was rent asunder, and the serpent was drawn forth in the twinkling of an eye, and flew like a bird and came to the city of the father of the child and fell down there; then the child shot arrows at him again, and he was straightway smitten and destroyed by the might of the divinity of God Almighty, to Whom be glory for ever and ever!

Then they saw our Lord sitting upon His exalted throne, and His mother was sitting on His right hand, and the chosen ones of heaven were singing psalms before Him; and the child stood below His feet. And the Lord commandēd that all those unto whom [Fol. 85*b*] He had shewn mercy through the festivals of the commemoration of His death should come [thither], and they came in the twinkling of an eye, and stood below His chariots, and filled the whole of the





I. Christ addressing the saints in heaven.

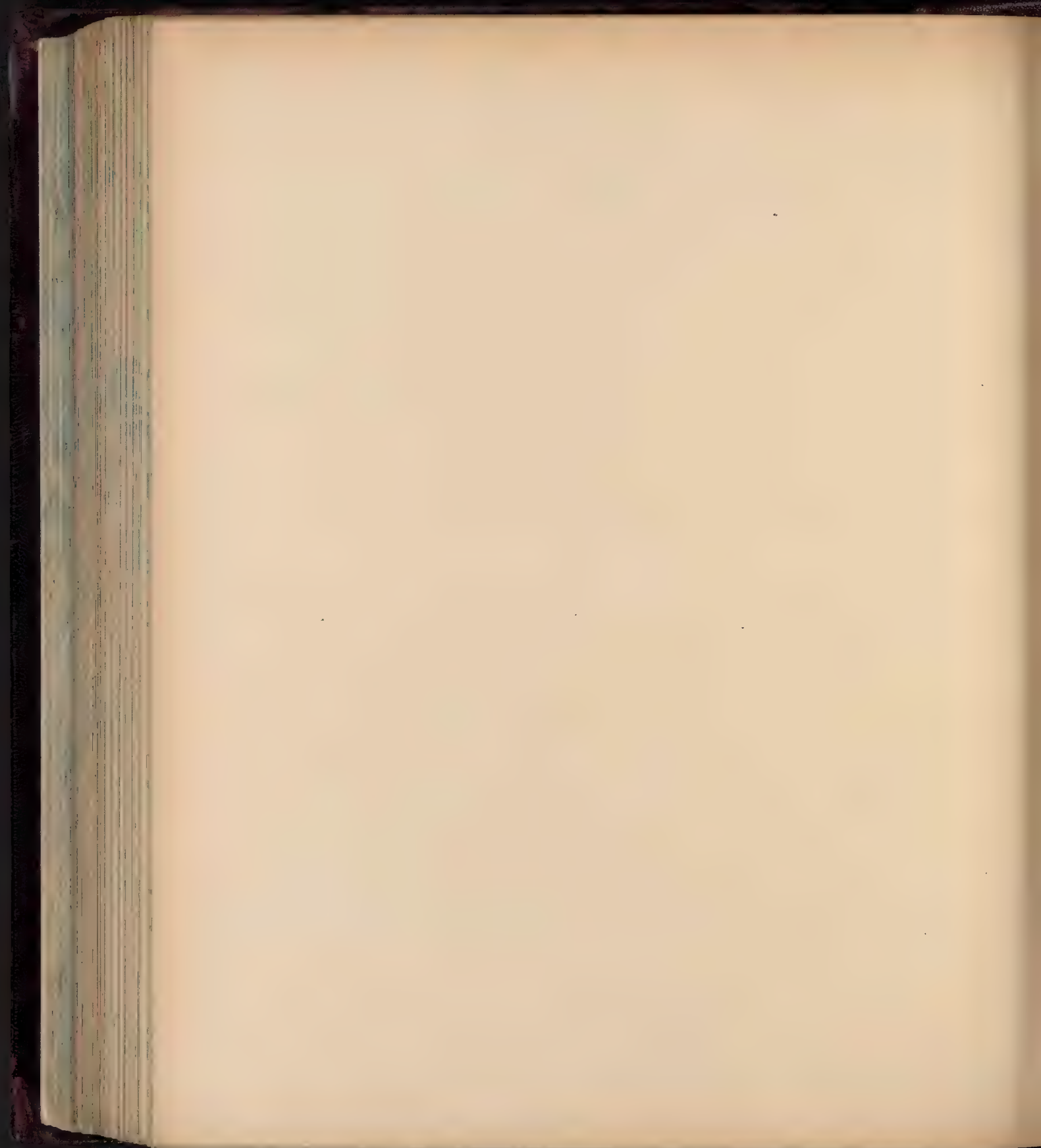


II. Christ crowning Mabâ' Şeyôn, and bestowing upon him ornaments of gold and precious stones, and arraying him in apparel of light.

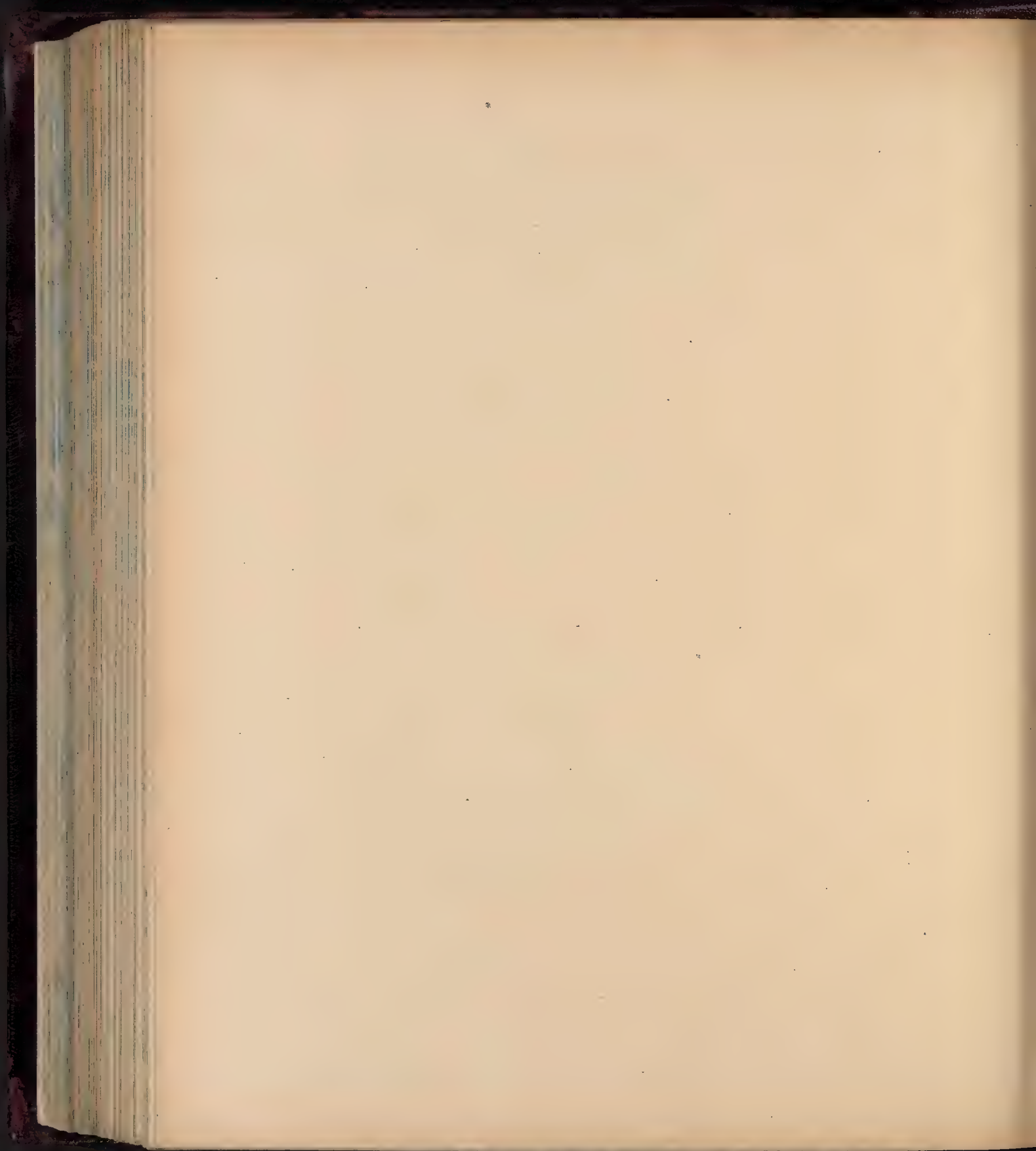
empty places of the city; and their number God [only] knoweth. And He adorned¹ them with crowns, and with beautiful diadems, and each one of them was like unto a flower; and some resembled white roses, and some red, and [some] yellow, [*or* gold-coloured], and [some] green. Then they all bowed down [to Him] in worship and cried out, saying, "O God of gods, Who hast shewn mercy unto us through the festival of the commemoration of Thy death, let Thy kingdom be blessed. And now, let us hear Thy voice, and give us a father that he may be unto us [as a] god." Now when they had said these words the Lord brought forth most marvellously ornamented apparel, and He decorated the child therewith; and He put upon his head a diadem set about with roses, and upon the diadem He placed a crown which shone with more brilliance than the sun, and upon his shoulders He placed raiment of gold set with precious stones, [the beauty of which] ravished the eyes. And the Lord holding both sides of the diadem lifted it up [upon the head of the child], and said unto them, [Fol. 86*a*] "Receive ye him in the place of your father, and remember ye both My death and that ye have received benefits from him; and let it be a thing that ye will remember for ever." Then they straightway rejoiced and glorified Him and bowed low in worship before Him; and He sent them away and they came [to their place] in peace.

Then many of the saints came and stood before Him, and they said unto Him, "O Lord, Thou Thyself dost know that we have borne affliction for Thy sake, wouldst Thou then give all the gifts of Thy grace unto one who hath been victorious in the fight after us?" And the Lord said unto them, "Are there none who are less

¹ Read ወአሠርገዎሙ :



"than you, and [none] who are greater than you? Dwell ye now, all
"of you, [in places] according to your strivings, and pass not away
"from the company in which I have placed you; ye shall dwell [in
"ranks] according to your good works. And [this child] loved Me
"and celebrated the festival of the commemoration of My death, whereby
"he hath become a witness unto My disciples." Then straightway the
father of the monks, Antony, rose up, and said, "O my Lord, it is
"meet for Thee to give [gifts unto them] according to Thy desire";
and forthwith the saints were angry with him because he had spoken
in this wise. [Fol. 86*b*]. Then the Lord turned towards the child
and said unto him, "I swear unto thee by the blows and buffetings
"which I received, and by My Passion, and by My Crucifixion, and
"by the floods of tears which My mother shed, that because thou
"didst celebrate the commemoration of My [death] and didst toil
"exceedingly thereat, I would give thee glory, and I would add
"unto thee as a gift (*or* reward) the one half [of the souls] of those
"who were dead, or who were still alive, and I would shew
"mercy unto thee through the festival of the commemoration of My
"death. Verily, I say unto thee now that I will not lie unto thee.
"And I will make thee strong, and I will set the love of Me in thy
"heart, for I will redeem sinners, and I will have compassion upon
"them for thy sake." With these words did our Lord Jesus Christ
speak unto him with His voice, even as He had before promised him.
To Him be praise, and upon us may there be compassion and mercy,
both upon earth and in heaven, through the prayers of our father
Mabâ' ŞĒyŌn, who was clothed with patience; and through our Lady
Mary, the mother of the God of hosts; and through the festival of
the commemoration of His death. And to the King be praise! May
He Himself [Fol. 87*a*] redeem us from death; may He deliver us



from temptation; and may He give us power to enter into the holy Mount Zion along with the saints and martyrs for ever and ever! Amen, and Amen. May it be! May it be!

Here end the miracles of the Redeemer which were wrought by the hand of Mabá' Šěyôn; may his prayer and blessing be with the soul of the sinner who loveth him Takla Hâymanôt, and with his beloved [wife] Walatta Šěyôn, and with all of us children of baptism for ever and ever! Amen.

O God of our father Mabá' Šěyôn, Thou Who art One in God-head, and in Persons Three, write Thou the name of me the sinner, Thy servant Ignatius, and [that of] his beloved [wife] Walatta [Šěyôn], and [that of] the scribe Mekēh Gîyôrgîs, with honour and praise, upon the pillar of gold [in letters] which cannot be wiped out, side by side with the names of Aaron and Moses for ever and ever! Amen.



THE
HISTORY OF GABRA KRĚSTÔS,
SON OF THE
EMPEROR THEODOSIUS.



INTRODUCTION.

THE History of Gabra Krěstôs, the son of the Emperor Theodosius, fills about the last third of the Lady Meux Manuscript No. 1., and its composition must date from a period earlier than that of the Life of Mabâ' Šěyôn. In editing the text of it I have added the variants from the ancient manuscript, Brit. Mus. Add. 16,198 (see Dillmann, *Catalogus*, No. XLVIII. 5), which help to explain the text at times; but I thought it unnecessary to print those from Brit. Mus. Orient. 709 (see Wright, *Catalogue*, No. CCLXXXV. 1. p. 188), because they are of no importance. It will be noticed that the text of the work that has come down to us is essentially the same in all the MSS., indeed, it seems as if all were copied from one archetype. In the Lady Meux Manuscript are the following coloured illustrations:—

- Pl. L. Fol. 96^b. 1. Theodosius the Emperor of Constantinople, and Markhêzâ the Empress, praying for a child in the sanctuary at Jerusalem.
2. The Empress Markhêzâ nursing the child whom God has given her, and whom she calls Gabra Krěstôs.
- Pl. LI. Fol. 97^b. 1. Gabra Krěstôs learning his lessons.
2. Gabra Krěstôs learning to ride and to hunt.

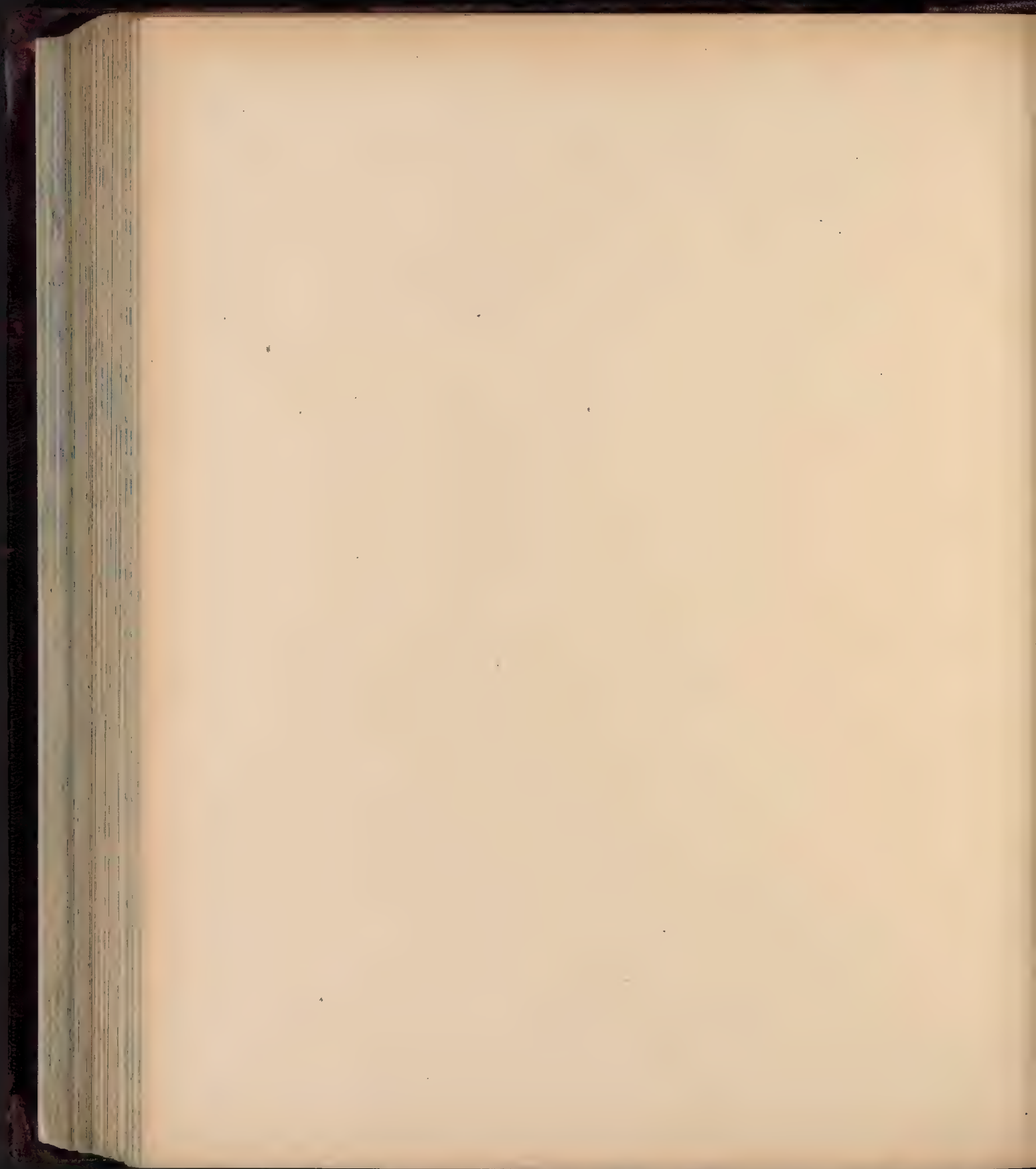
- Pl. LII. Fol. 99*b*. Theophilus, the Archbishop of Constantinople, performing the marriage ceremony over Gabra Krěstôs and his bride.
- Pl. LIII. Fol. 100*a*. 1. The guests and the musicians bringing Gabra Krěstôs to the nuptial chamber.
2. Gabra Krěstôs with his bride in the nuptial chamber.
- Pl. LIV. Fol. 102*b*. 1. Gabra Krěstôs and his bride making a covenant in the nuptial chamber. Outside, under a burning lamp, lies the sleeping attendant.
2. Gabra Krěstôs and his bride in prayer.
- Pl. LV. Fol. 103*b*. 1. Gabra Krěstôs taking money for the expenses of his journey.
2. Gabra Krěstôs bidding his bride farewell.
3. Gabra Krěstôs setting out on his journey by night whilst his kinsfolk are asleep.
- Pl. LVI. Fol. 104*a*. 1. Gabra Krěstôs giving money to the master-mariner.
2. Gabra Krěstôs setting out with the sailors in the ship to cross the sea.
- Pl. LVII. Fol. 107*b*. 1. The Emperor and Empress visiting the bride, who with bitter tears tells them that their son, her husband, has left her.
2. The Emperor and Empress bewailing the flight of their son.
- Pl. LVIII. Fol. 108*a*. The bride of Gabra Krěstôs having her hair cut off in token of her grief at her husband's departure.
- Pl. LIX. Fol. 108*b*. 1. The Emperor Theodosius ordering his soldiers to go forth and seek for his son Gabra Krěstôs.



2. The soldiers of the Emperor, armed with spears and shields, setting out on their journey.
- Pl. LX. Fol. 110*a*. Gabra Krěstŭs, giving his apparel to the poor.
- Pl. LXI. Fol. 110*b*. Gabra Krěstŭs standing in prayer all night.
- Pl. LXII. Fol. 111*a*. 1. Gabra Krěstŭs, having prayed all night standing, goes into the church for morning prayer at daybreak.
2. On the left is the verger striking with stones the two boards which are suspended from a bar, supported on two Y-shaped supports, and which take the place of bells.
- Pl. LXIII. Fol. 113*a*. 1. The soldiers of the Emperor Theodosius giving alms to the poor.
2. Gabra Krěstŭs giving to the poor the alms which he had received from his father's soldiers, who left the city without recognizing him.
- Pl. LXIV. Fol. 114*a*. Gabra Krěstŭs praying by his abode near the church.
- Pl. LXV. Fol. 116*b*. 1. The Virgin Mary appears to a priest in a dream and orders him to bring Gabra Krěstŭs to live in the church.
2. The priest goes to the abode of Gabra Krěstŭs and finds him standing in prayer.
3. Gabra Krěstŭs and the priests conversing in the temple.
- Pl. LXVI. Fol. 117*b*. Gabra Krěstŭs saluting the picture of the Virgin Mary, and asking her to guide him in his journeyings.
- Pl. LXVII. Fol. 120*b*. Gabra Krěstŭs begging for a passage in the ship.

- Pl. LXVIII. Fol. 121*b*. Gabra KrěstŮs arriving in his father's country.
- Pl. LXIX. Fol. 122*a*. Gabra KrěstŮs asking the Emperor's permission to have a little hut built for him inside the court yard of his palace.
2. Two of the Emperor's servants are told off to bring meat and drink to Gabra KrěstŮs.
- Pl. LXX. Fol. 124*b*. 1. The servants of the Emperor conspiring to drive away by ill-treatment Gabra KrěstŮs, and to injure the two men who waited upon him.
2. A servant smiting Gabra KrěstŮs on the face.
 3. A servant smiting Gabra KrěstŮs on the head.
- Pl. LXXI. Fol. 125*a*. 1. A servant plucking out his beard.
2. A servant pulling hair out of his head.
 3. Servants pouring dirty water upon him through the roof of his hut.
 4. A servant emptying the washings of a bowl upon him.
 5. Men spitting upon him.
- Pl. LXXII. Fol. 126*b*. 1. Dogs leaping upon him to catch the pieces of meat and bones which the servants threw at him.
2. The women of the palace objecting to the presence of Gabra KrěstŮs by reason of his evil smell.
 3. Gabra KrěstŮs standing in prayer.
- Pl. LXXIII. Fol. 129*b*. Gabra KrěstŮs standing and kneeling in prayer.
- Pl. LXXIV. Fol. 130*a*. Christ, and the Seven Archangels, and thousands of angels, come to visit Gabra KrěstŮs.
- Pl. LXXV. Fol. 130*b*. 1. David with his harp.

2. Enoch with his book.
 3. The Virgin Mary with the Twelve Apostles and the Seventy-two Disciples.
- Pl. LXXVI. Fol. 131*a*. 1. Abba Basilicus (?) with his five soldiers.
2. Quiricus and his mother Julitta (?).
- Pl. LXXVII. Fol. 136*a*. Christ conversing with Gabra KrĚstŏs, and granting all his petitions.
- Pl. LXXVIII. Fol. 138*a*. 1. Gabra KrĚstŏs sending his servants for the consecrated offerings and for pen and paper.
2. Gabra KrĚstŏs writing his life by the aid of the Holy Ghost Who appears to him in the form of a man.
- Pl. LXXIX. Fol. 139*a*. Gabra KrĚstŏs holding the vessel containing the consecrated bread.
- Pl. LXXX. Fol. 141*b*. Gabra KrĚstŏs receiving the Eucharist from the hands of the Lord Christ.
- Pl. LXXXI. Fol. 142*a*. 1. Gabra KrĚstŏs lying dead, clasping in his hands the roll on which he had written the story of his life.
2. Christ receiving his soul in His arms whilst the heavenly host blow their trumpets, and the saints rejoice.
- Pl. LXXXII. Fol. 142*b*. The Archbishop of Constantinople praying in the church.
- Pl. LXXXIII. Fol. 143*a*. The two servants of Gabra KrĚstŏs conversing with the Emperor in the presence of the Empress.
- Pl. LXXXIV. Fol. 145*b*. 1. The Emperor conversing with the servants.
2. The mother and bride of Gabra KrĚstŏs hurrying out of the palace to see his dead body.



- Pl.LXXXV. Fol.146*a*. The Archbishop Theophilus reading to the Emperor the life of Gabra Krěstôs which he had, by the help of God, taken from the dead man's hand.
- Pl.LXXXVI. Fol.149*a*. The Emperor Theodosius reading the life of his son Gabra Krěstôs which he had written before he died.
- Pl.LXXXVII. Fol.149*b*. The Emperor and his Empress Markhêzâ mourning the death of their son.
- Pl.LXXXVIII. Fol.150*a*. The Emperor, with the priests and deacons, going to take his son's body to the church.
- Pl.LXXXIX. Fol.151*a*. The bride of Gabra Krěstôs bewailing her sad fate, and taking a vow to lead a solitary life.
- Pl. XC. Fol.153*b*. The Archbishop, and the Emperor with his servants, try to take the body of his son to the church, but are prevented by the press of the multitude.
- Pl. XCI. Fol.154*a*. The Emperor Theodosius casting gold and silver coins broadcast before the gates of his palace with the view of drawing away the crowds from the road to the church; the people will not, however, pick them up, but prefer to stay near the body of the saint.
- Pl. XCII. Fol.154*b*. 1. The funeral chest in which the body of Gabra Krěstôs is to be laid, and the church in which it is to be buried.
2. The body of Gabra Krěstôs being wrapped in purple linen, and laid in its coffin.

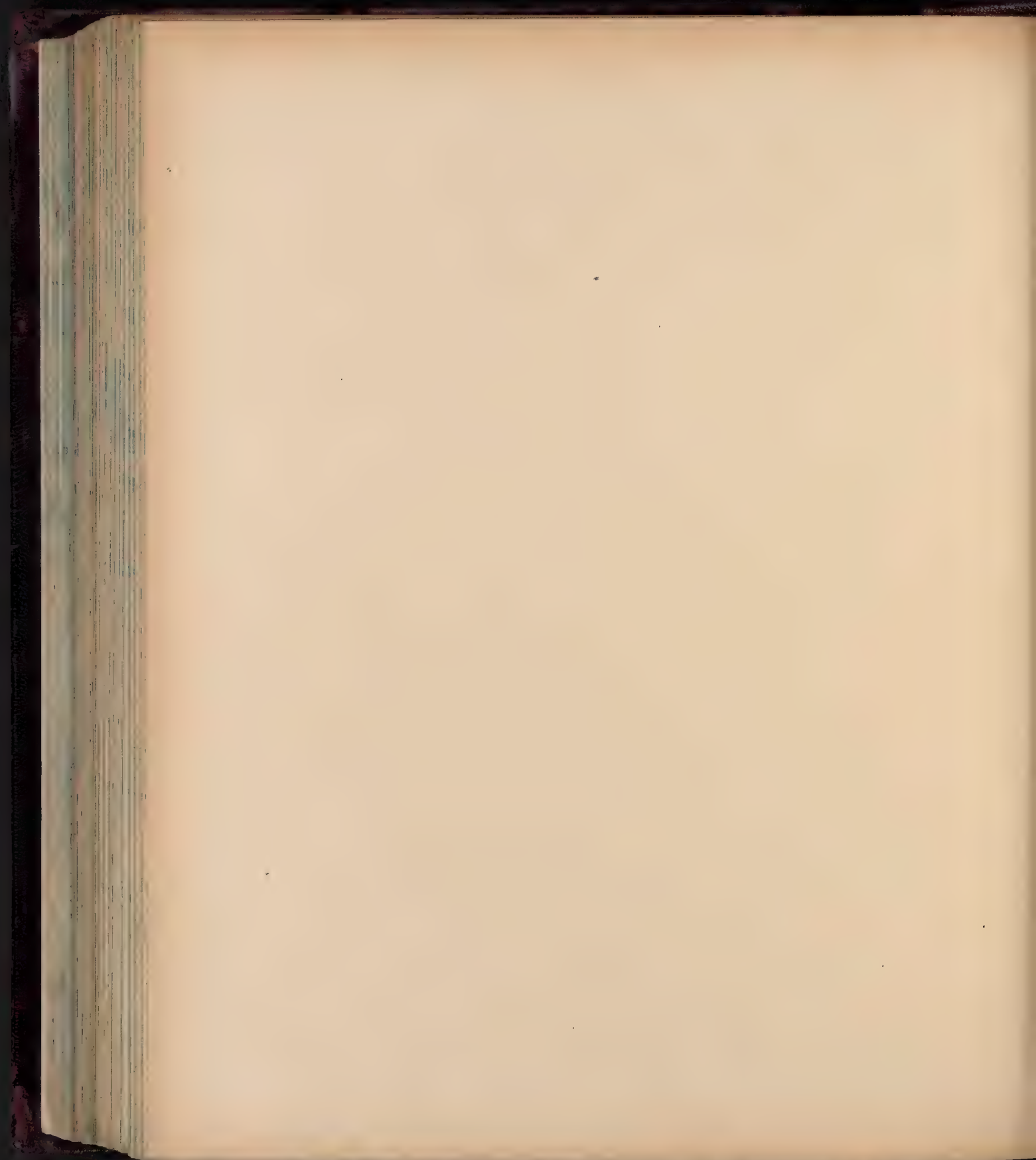
It is difficult to account for the appearance of the history of Gabra KrĚstôs in the same volume as that containing the life of Mabâ' Šĕyôn; for there is, apparently, no connexion between them. It will be remembered that the ascetic who induced Mabâ' Šĕyôn to adopt definitively the monastic life was called Gabra KrĚstôs, but it can hardly be supposed that the author of the history could make such a mistake as to confound a monk of the XIVth century with the son of an Emperor who reigned in the second quarter of the Vth century.

Our narrative begins with an account of the childless state of the Emperor Theodosius and his wife, who is here called Markhêzâ, and a description of the godly life which they both led. There is no doubt that the Theodosius referred to is the Emperor who was born A. D. 401, and died A. D. 450, for all that we learn of him from the Ethiopic work here printed agrees with what is known of him from Western writers. The name Markhêzâ seems to me but a transcription of the Italian marchesa, i. e., "marchioness", and its appearance here indicates that the life of the saint Gabra KrĚstôs was originally written in one of the languages of Southern Europe. From Socrates, the ecclesiastical historian, we learn (lib. VII, cap. 21) that the wife of Theodosius was Athenais, the daughter of the Athenian philosopher Leontius, and that she changed her name to Eudocia, when she renounced paganism and was baptized into the Christian religion. She was the mother of a daughter called Eudoxia, who married the emperor of the West, Valentinian III, at Constantinople about A. D. 436. Eudocia visited Palestine and gave away there large sums of money, and she brought back to Constantinople the chains of Saint Peter, the right arm of Saint Stephen, and a picture of the Virgin which was said to have been painted by Saint Luke. She quarrelled with



her husband's sister Pulcheria, and subsequently, after a violent dispute with Theodosius himself, she was stripped of her honours, and retired for the last sixteen years of her life to Jerusalem, where she died aged sixty-six years of age. Theodosius was kind and good, "chaste, temperate, liberal, and merciful"; he transcribed religious books in a beautiful hand, and he was skilful in painting and carving. These virtues were, clearly, esteemed by the writer of the work which the Ethiopian translator has preserved by a version written in his own language, but he has not considered the views of the life and character of Theodosius which other historians have held. Thus Gibbon (chap. XXXII) in his summary of this Emperor's character says, "His mind, enervated by a royal education, was oppressed, and degraded, by abject superstition: he fasted, he sung psalms, he blindly accepted the miracles and doctrines, with which his faith was continually nourished. Theodosius devoutly worshipped the dead and living saints of the Catholic church; and he once refused to eat, till an insolent monk, who had cast an excommunication on his sovereign, condescended to heal the spiritual wound which he had inflicted."

But to return to our narrative. When Theodosius and Markhêzâ had lived together for several years, and found that they were still childless, they made a pilgrimage to Jerusalem and prayed there, in the sanctuary, for a son who, in due time, was given to them. When the boy was old enough he was placed under the care of a master who instructed him in the Bible and in the Christian literature of the time, and he studied such science as was to be found in the writings of one of the sons of Noah. He also became an expert horseman, and could shoot with the bow, and sling stones, and hunt wild animals successfully. When the lad's education was completed,



his parents betrothed him to the daughter of a noble of the city and, after a time, Gabra KrĚstŏs and his bride were married in the Lady Chapel by Theophilus the Archbishop* of Constantinople. When the marriage had been performed, and the bridegroom and bride had been escorted to their chamber, Gabra KrĚstŏs, instead of remaining with the bride, changed the wedding garment for one made of wool, and, having taken much money, bade her farewell, and set out on a journey to a place where he could live the life of a mendicant recluse. He made his way to the sea-coast, and, having paid a master-mariner certain moneys, he embarked in his ship and set out to cross the sea.

Meanwhile the flight of Gabra KrĚstŏs was discovered by the Emperor and Empress when, on the day after the marriage, they came to pay the customary visit to their daughter-in-law, whom they found in tears. The grief-stricken girl told them how he had left her, and Theodosius and Markhězâ mingled their tears with hers. Then Theodosius gathered together five hundred of his servants, and having provided them with everything necessary he sent them forth, two by two, and ordered them to go into "every city of the world" and to bestow alms upon the poor and needy, hoping thereby to discover his son among the pious mendicants of some country. Among other countries which they visited was Armenia, whither Gabra KrĚstŏs had gone. In this country he had led a sternly ascetic life, and no one had succeeded in finding out who he was. He had taken up his abode in the courtyard of a church dedicated to the Virgin Mary, and here he had fasted, and prayed for five years when his father's servants arrived in the city in which the church was situated. The Emperor's servants bestowed alms upon the poor, among whom was Gabra KrĚstŏs, and when they had



carried out their orders they left the city without having recognized their master's son.

When Gabra Krěstôs had lived in the courtyard of the church for fifteen years, the Virgin Mary appeared unto a priest and commanded him to provide a dwelling-place for him in the church which was dedicated to her. In obedience to this command, the priest sought out the saint, and brought him into the church, and gave him a place wherein to dwell; and having pressed him to tell him his history Gabra Krěstôs did so. Soon after this Gabra Krěstôs found that his story was being noised abroad in the city, and he decided to depart to another place. He made his way by night to the sea-coast, and having begged a passage in a ship, he set out to cross the "sea of Barbar"; soon after they had started, however, a storm arose which drove them out of their course and brought them, against their will, to Constantinople, the city where his father reigned. Having made his way to his father's palace, he begged permission to be allowed to live in the courtyard, and to eat the broken meats which came from the Emperor's table; this was granted to him, and not only did his father, who failed to recognize him, give him food, but he told off two servants to wait upon him. When the other servants in the palace saw this, they murmured and determined to make the life of Gabra Krěstôs as uncomfortable as possible, so that they might drive him out of the place. With this object in view they smote him on the face and head, and plucked out his hair and beard, and spat upon him, and threw the washings of the pots and pans and other dirty water upon him, and they cast pieces of meat and bones upon him so that the dogs might leap upon him in their struggles to get them. Besides these things he was also cursed by his mother's handmaidens, who declared that he polluted the palace with his evil smell.



To these and such like annoyances Gabra Krěstôs paid no heed, for his Lord Christ, and all the Archangels, and Angels, and Patriarchs, and Prophets, and Apostles, and Disciples, and Martyrs, and the Virgin Mary, came to visit him. About this time, too, he was warned by Christ that his end was near, and, having made a series of petitions that every class and condition of men might be blessed through him, and having written his own life by the help of the Holy Ghost, Who appeared unto him, his soul passed to heaven on the twelfth day of the month Tekemt (i. e., October 9). When the news of the death of Gabra Krěstôs was carried to the Emperor, he went to salute the dead body, together with the Archbishop Theophilus, and a great number of priests and deacons bearing books, and censers, and seals. When they arrived they found the dead man lying with a roll of paper clasped tightly in his head, which they found to be impossible to open until the Archbishop had specially prayed that he might be able to draw the roll from it. When the roll had been opened and read, the Emperor knew that Gabra Krěstôs was his long-lost son, and he, and the Empress Markhêzâ, and their daughter-in-law, wept bitterly. With great care, and much expense the body of the saint was prepared for the grave, but when the day arrived for burying it in the church, it was found impossible for the funeral procession to move by reason of the press of people who filled all the roads which led from the palace to the church. On the advice of the Archbishop the Emperor had money scattered broadcast in the streets with the view of drawing away the crowds from the palace gates, but this had no effect whatever, for the people seeing in the body of the saint a new means of salvation for their souls and of cure for their bodies, determined to follow it to its grave in the



church. At length the body was brought to the church, and after the administration of the Eucharist by the Archbishop, it was put in the chest prepared for it, and then laid in its grave, inside the church. Then the light of heaven descended upon the grave, and many cures were wrought in those who flocked thither to pray for the help of Gabra Krěstůs, and to ask for his blessing.



TRANSLATION.

[Fol. 94^a] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER AND THE SON AND THE HOLY GHOST, ONE GOD, WE BEGIN TO WRITE, WITH THE HELP OF OUR LORD JESUS CHRIST, THE HISTORY OF THE HOLY AND BLESSED MAN OF GOD GABRA KRĚSTŌS, THE SON OF THEODOSIUS THE EMPEROR OF CONSTANTINOPLE.

Now the Emperor Theodosius was a lover of God and of pilgrims, and he gave gifts to the poor and the needy, and to widows and to those who were wretched and in misery; and he built churches, and gave alms and oblations, and he pleased God Almighty; and his wife was a beautiful and God-fearing woman, whose name was Markhêzâ. Now Theodosius and his wife dwelt together in their kingdom, [Fol. 94^b] but they grieved because they had no child. And Markhêzâ his wife said unto him, "Rise up, O my lord, and let us entreat God to give us a child, who shall make us to rejoice, and who shall inherit our kingdom, and shall give a name to the seed which shall come after us. Rise up now, and let us go to Jerusalem and make supplication to Him [there]; and let us vow offerings to the Lord our God, for He is one Who hearkeneth, and He is mighty." So the king and his wife Markhêzâ rose up and came to Jerusalem and entered into the sanctuary, to the place [called] Křányô, which is the place [called] Golgotha, where our Lord Jesus Christ, the second





I. The Emperor Theodosius and his

wife praying for a child at Jerusalem.



II. The Empress Markhêzâ with her child.

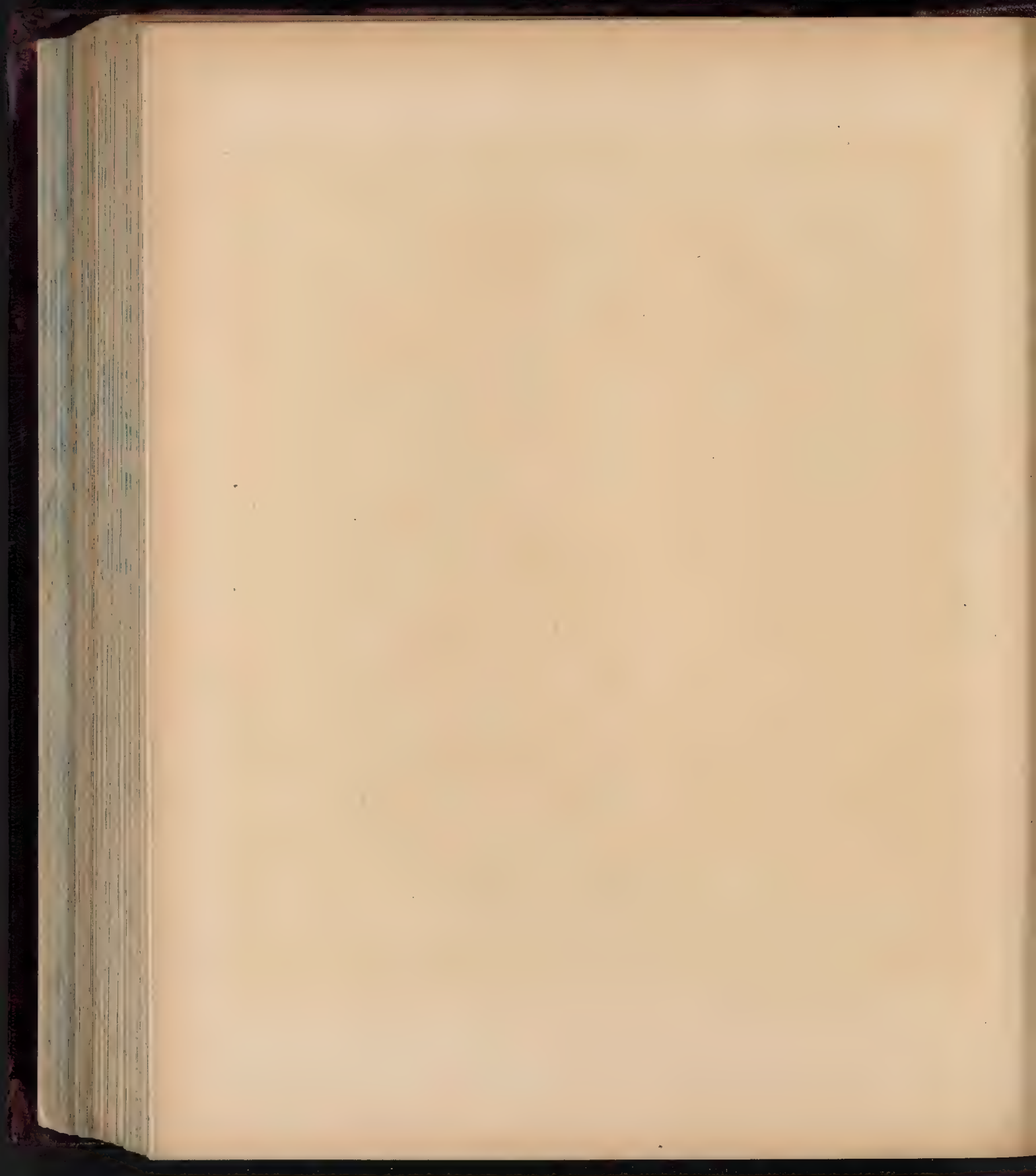
Adam and the Redeemer of the world, was crucified; and here [Fol. 95*a*] did they bow down on their knees in worship together. And they lifted up their eyes to heaven, and their breasts heaved, and they made supplication unto God with much crying, and they blessed God Almighty. And He hearkened unto their petition and to the bitter cry of their hearts, and He was not wearied by their prayers, and He cast not aside their expectation, even as it is written, "The Lord "casteth not away the hope of the righteous." And He gave unto them in the days of their old age a lovely child of joy, the odour of whom was like unto the odour of a field which the God of gods hath blessed; and the Emperor Theodosius called the child Abd el-Masikh¹, which is being interpreted, "Gabra Krěstŏs²." And the Emperor and his wife Markhězâ the Empress rejoiced, and they gave thanks unto God [Fol. 95*b*], Who had given them a beautiful son, and Who had heard their request.

And it came to pass that when the child had increased in years, and had arrived at the age for [receiving] instruction, his father and mother took counsel together and sent him away to a teacher, with whom he learned all the Books of the Prophets and the interpretations thereof. And, moreover, he learned the words of the holy Gospel, and the writings of the ancient fathers and Apostles, and the interpretations thereof, and he learned the explanation of everything which concerned Christ. And besides this, he acquired profane learning, and discipline, and the knowledge of the computation of the stars which is [found] in [the work of] Nĭtŏr³, the son of Noah. Then

¹ I. e., عبد المسيح "Christodoulos".

² I. e., "servant of Christ".

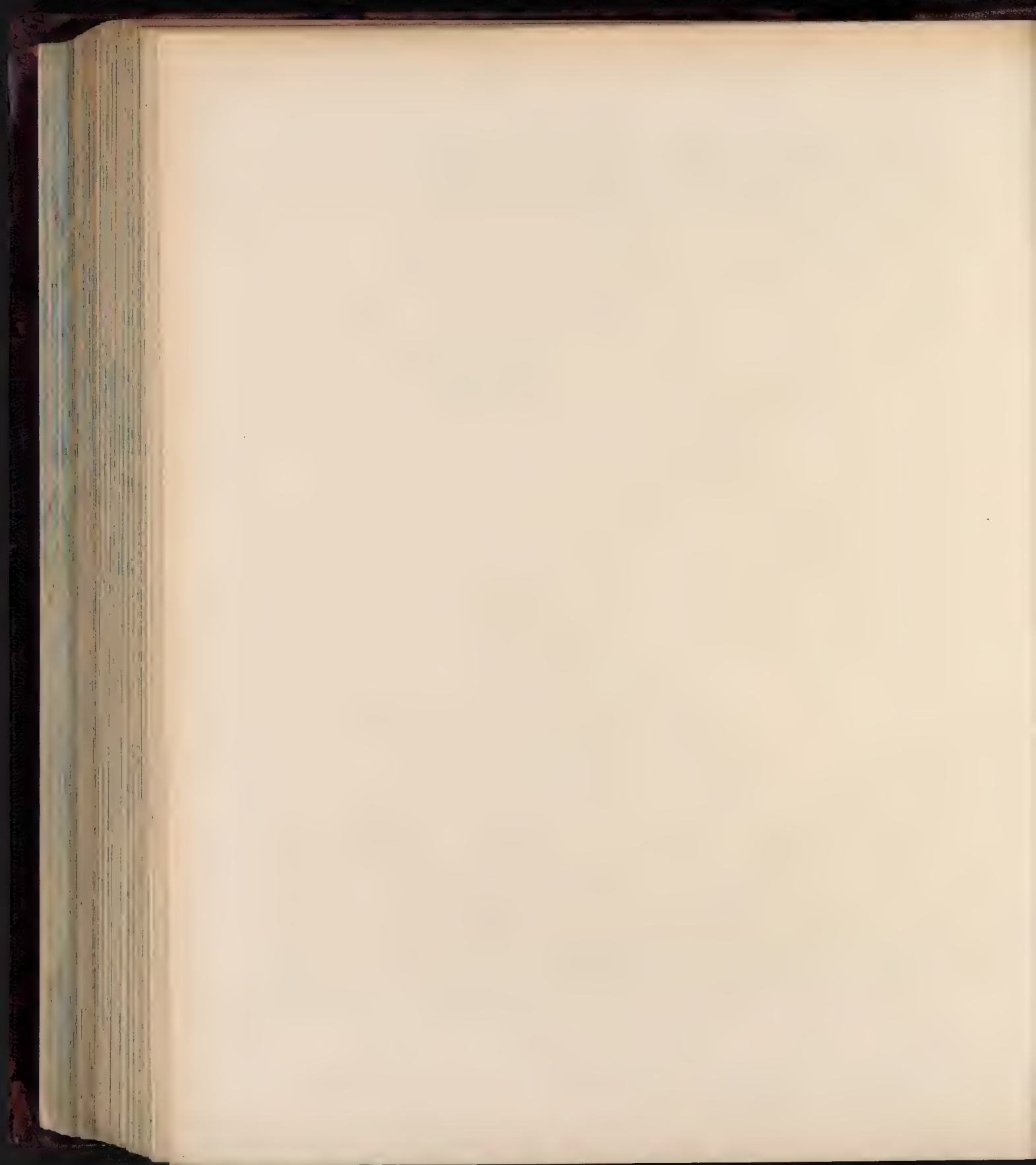
³ Shem, the son of Noah, is usually credited with a knowledge of astronomy; I cannot explain the allusion here.

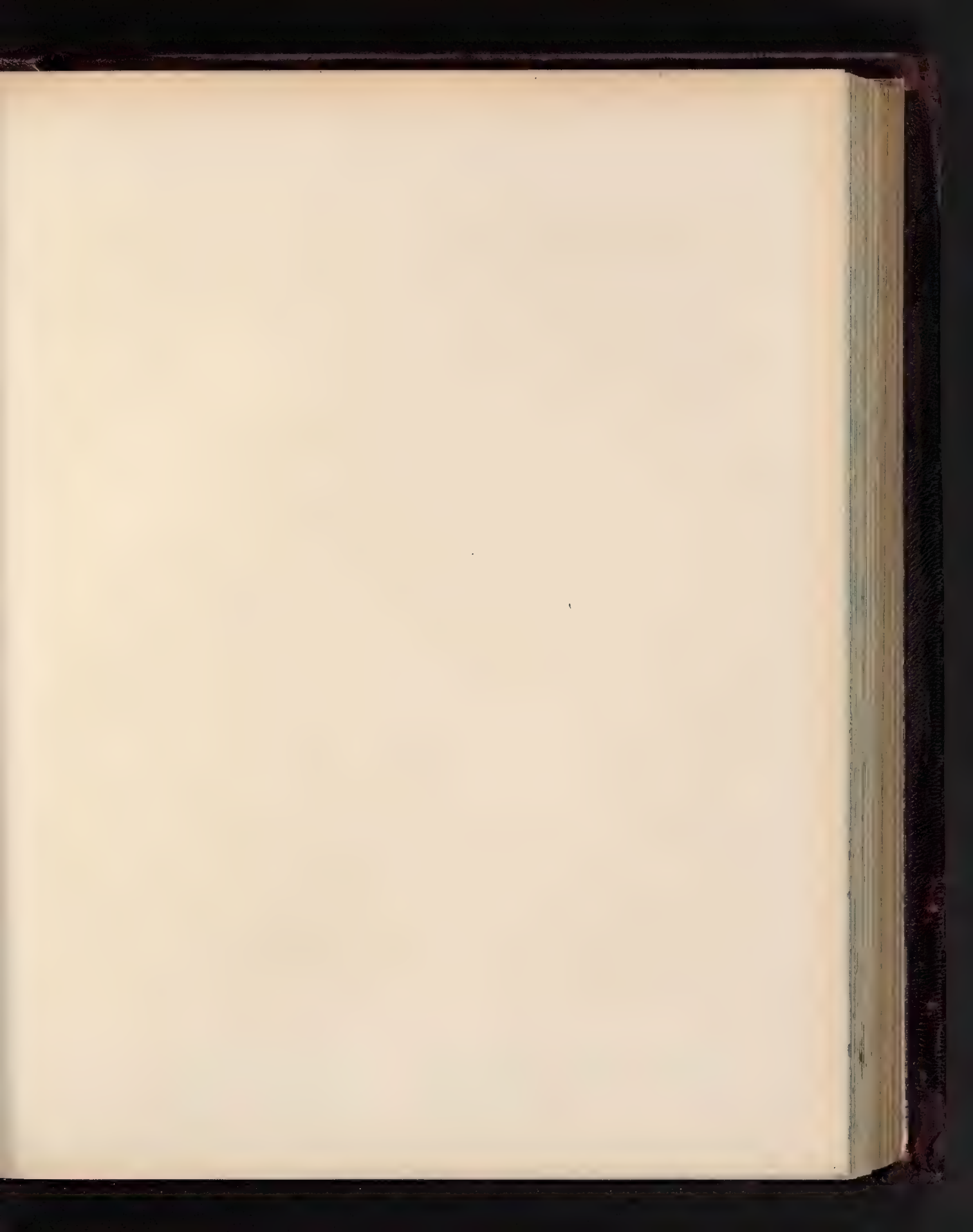


I. The child Gabra Krěstôs learning his lessons.



II. Gabra Krěstôs learning to ride and to hunt.







Theophilus, Archbishop of Constantinople, performing the marriage ceremony over Gabra Krēstōs and his bride.

after these things he learned to ride the horse and to hunt savage animals, and he learned to use the shield and the spear, and to shoot arrows from a bow and to sling stones with the sling, even as did David¹ the king of Israel; and there was nothing whatsoever which man can do [Fol. 96*a*] that the youth did not learn to do, with the exception of committing sin which putteth a man away from his Creator.

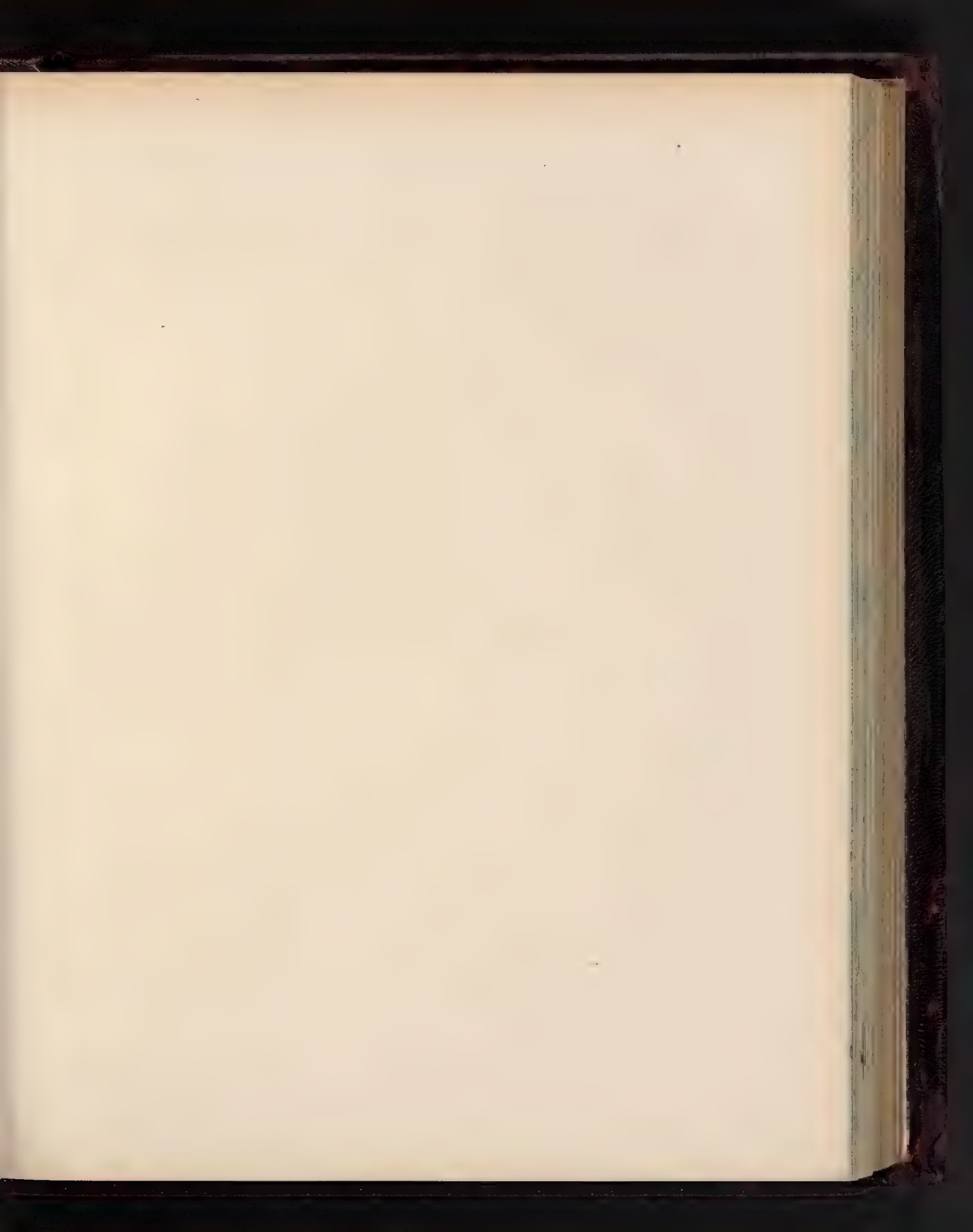
Now when his father and his mother knew that he had completed the whole course of his instruction they rejoiced with an exceedingly great joy, and they gave thanks unto God Almighty. And they took counsel together and said, "Let us give our son a wife during our lifetime, and let us go into the treasury and give unto him abundant riches, and rejoice in the days² of the marriage of our son." [Fol. 98*a*] And it came to pass that when Gabra KrĚstŏs was fifteen years old, [his parents] gave him to wife the daughter of a nobleman of Byzantium; and when they had made ready for the marriage³, according to their honourable rank and royalty, they brought to him the bride according to the law of the Christians. Then they took the bridegroom and the bride into the sanctuary of Saint Mary, and Theophilus the [Arch]bishop of Constantinople, and priests and deacons along with him, came and entered into the church, and performed the marriage service over the bridegroom and the bride. And Theophilus the Archbishop laid his hand upon the heads of both of them, and prayed the prayer of marriage [over them], and pronounced the benediction, saying, "May God Almighty make your seed to be multitudes, even as He [Fol. 98*b*] multiplied seed to Jacob by Rachel and Leah, who "made strong the house of Israel; may God Almighty bless you and

¹ 1 Samuel XVII. 50.

² Read ἡμετέροι :

³ Read ἡγάγον :





I. The guests and musicians bringing Gabra Krěstôs to the nuptial chamber.



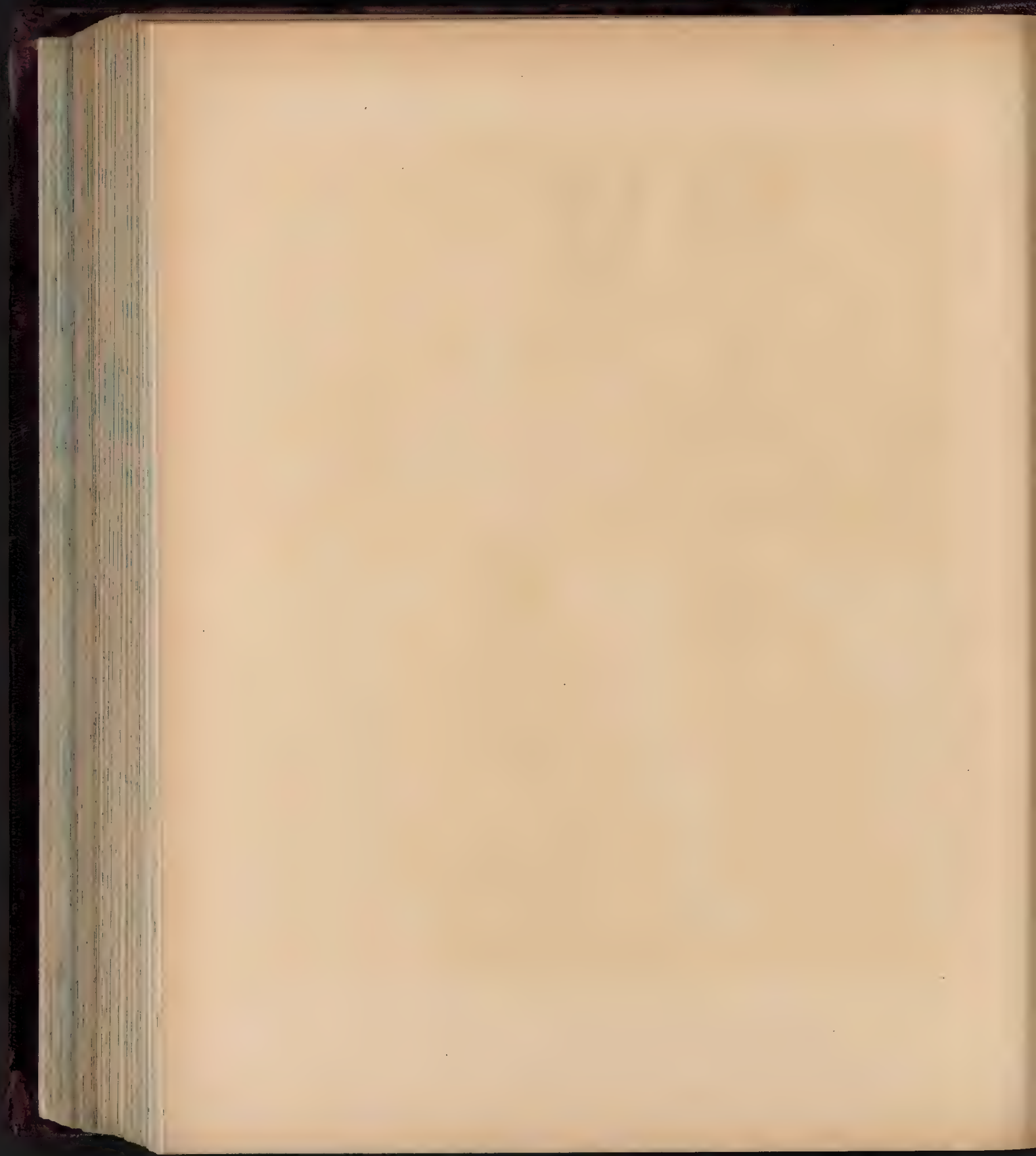
II. Gabra Krěstôs and his bride in the nuptial chamber.

"your bed, even as He blessed the bed of Noah, the son of Lamech, "in the days of the Flood; and may God Almighty bless your house "as He blessed the house of Abîdârâ' for the sake of Zion. And may "ye become thousands of thousands! Ye shall neither suffer hunger "nor thirst." And when Theophilus the Archbishop spake these words, those who were listening [to them] said, "Amen. Amen. May it come "to pass! May it come to pass!" So the bridegroom and the bride went forth from the church, and the people brought them into the nuptial chamber.

[Fol. 101a] And it came to pass that when it was midnight, Gabra Krĕstôs came to the bride, whom they had brought unto him, and taking hold of her hand he said unto her, "Come, let us make "a covenant together, and do thou agree to do that which I shall "say unto thee"; and she made a covenant with him that she would hearken unto what he was about to say unto her, and would do it. Then they rose up and prayed together, and they bowed down to the earth and worshipped, and looking up to heaven they said, "We "believe in One God, God Almighty the Father, the Sustainer of all "things, and the Creator of the heavens and the earth, and of things "which are visible, and of things which are invisible"—to the end of the prayer, when he bowed down to the earth three times*. Then he stripped himself of his marriage garment, which [came] from the royal house, and put on garments made of wool. And he took from his chest a great quantity of gold and of silver, as much as ever he could carry, and he went to the bride, and kissed her head, and said unto her, "God Almighty [Fol. 101b] be with thee and deliver thee "from the works of the Devil, the envious one." And the bride wept

* From the Greek Ἀβεδδαρά, see 2 Samuel VI. 12.

* Read 𐌸𐌹𐌳𐌹 :

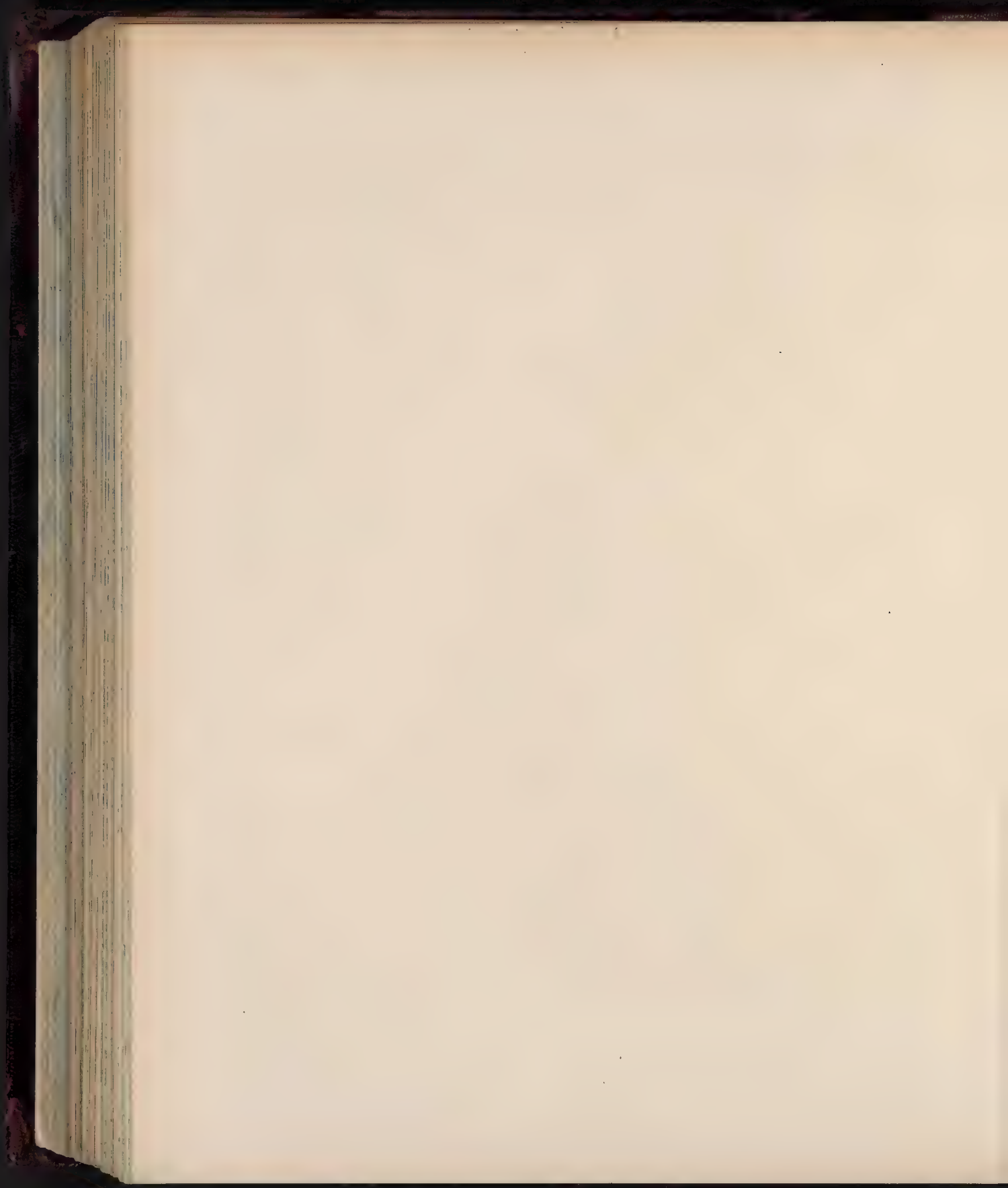


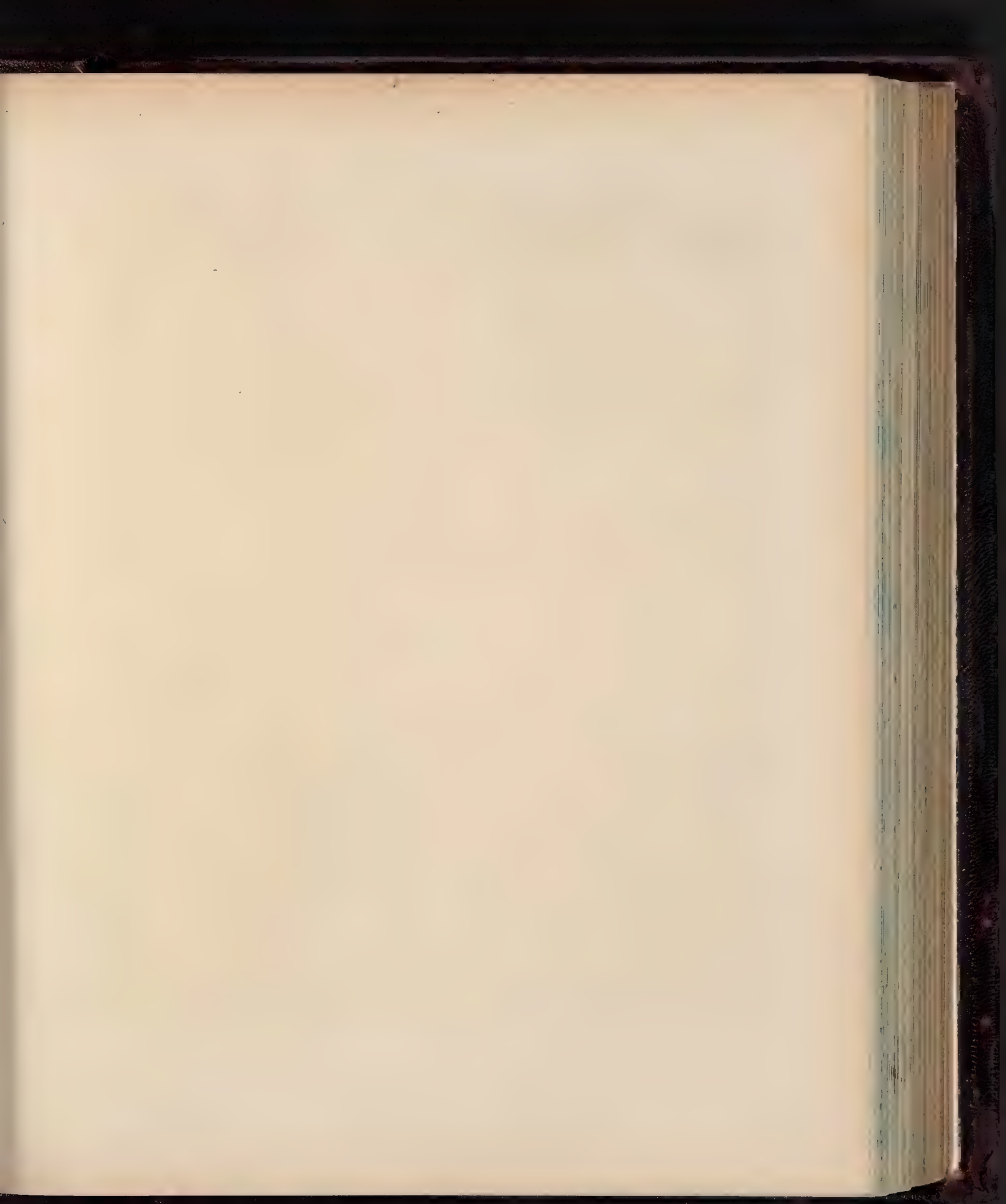
I. Gabra Krēstōs and his bride making a covenant together in the nuptial chamber. Without is the sleeping attendant.

PLATE LIV.



II. Gabra Krēstōs and his bride in prayer.

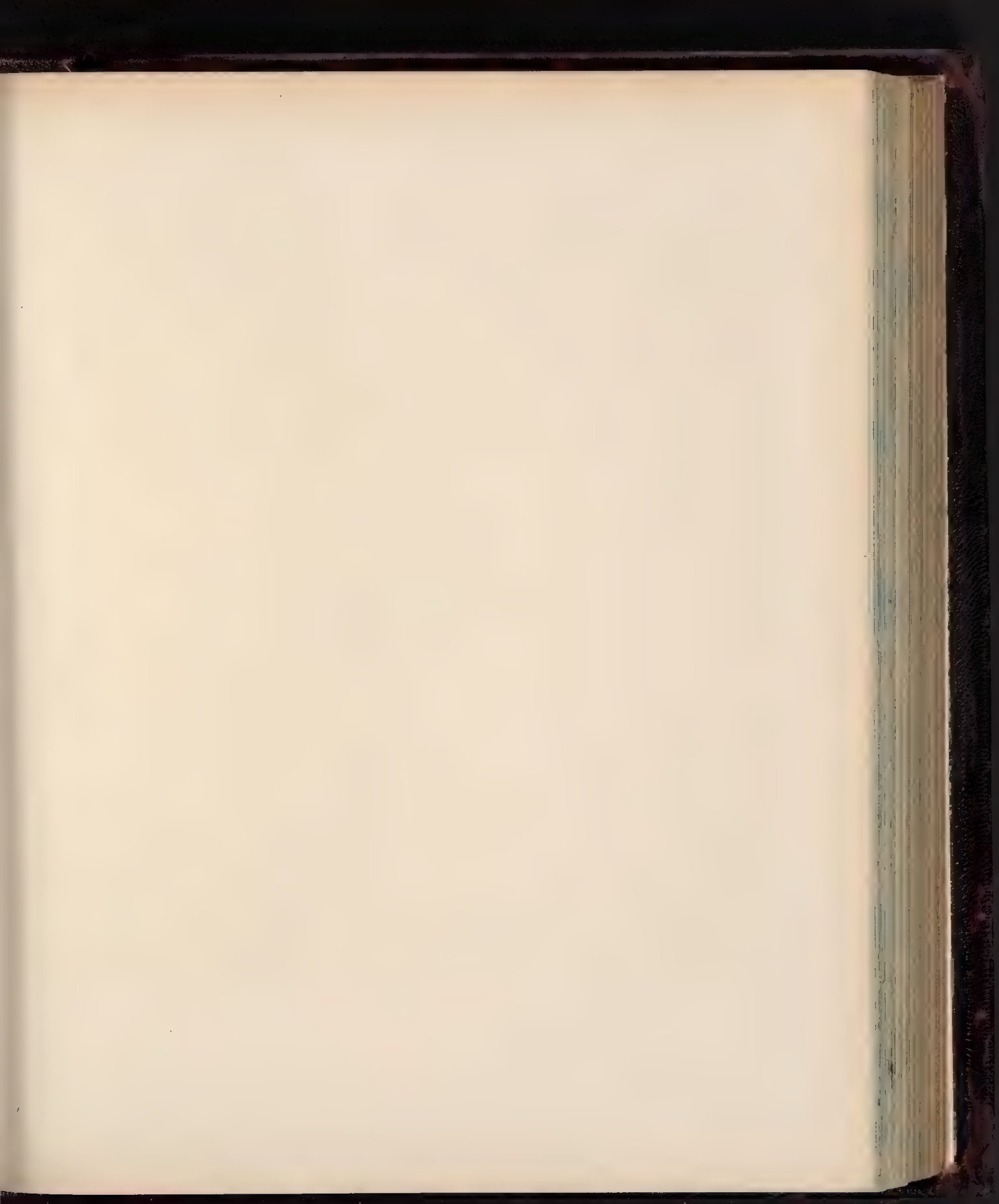






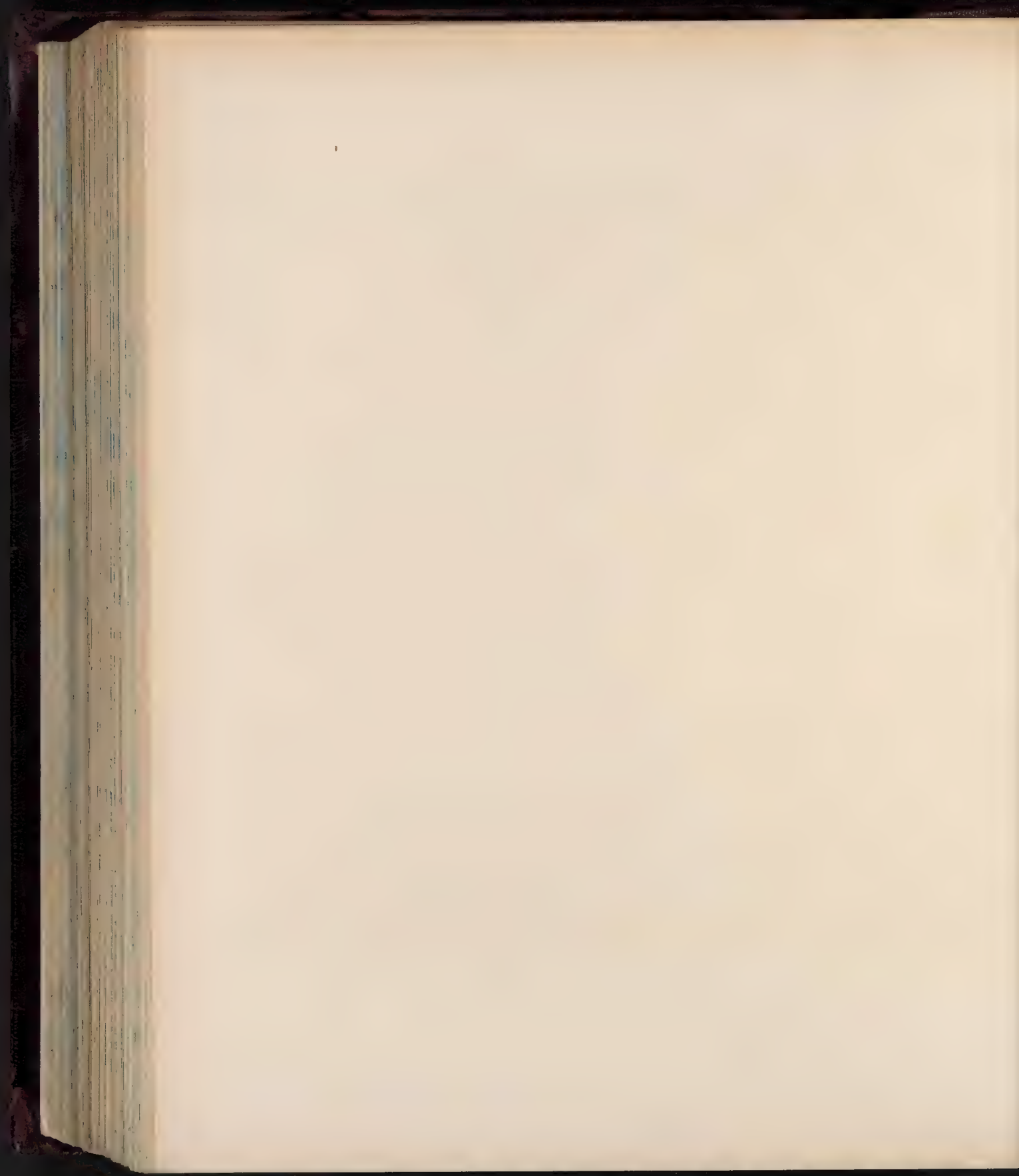
I. Gabra Krēstōs paying the master-mariner his hire.

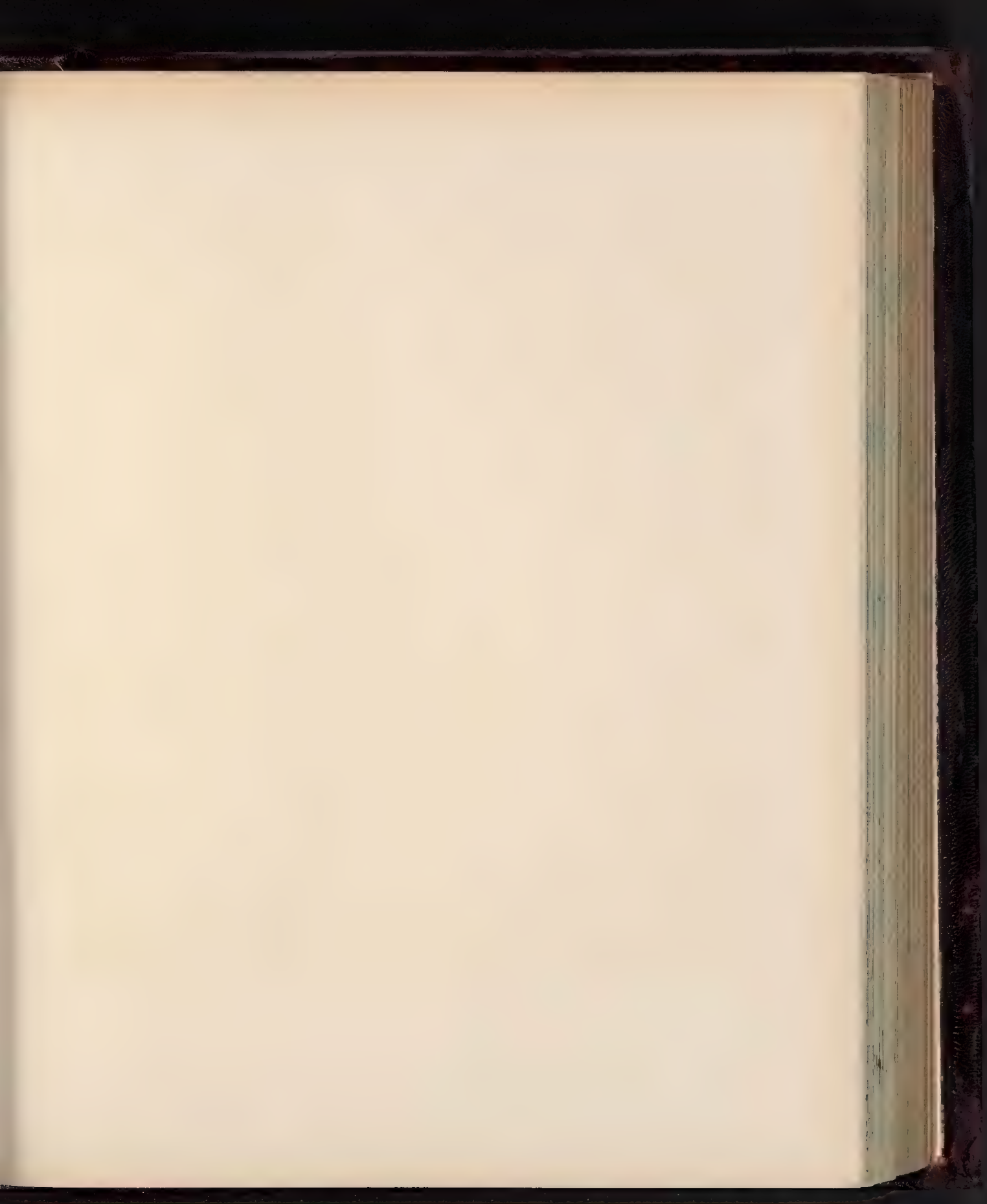
II. Gabra Krēstōs setting out with the sailors to cross the sea.





The bride of Gabra Krěstôs having her hair cut off in token
of her grief at his departure.





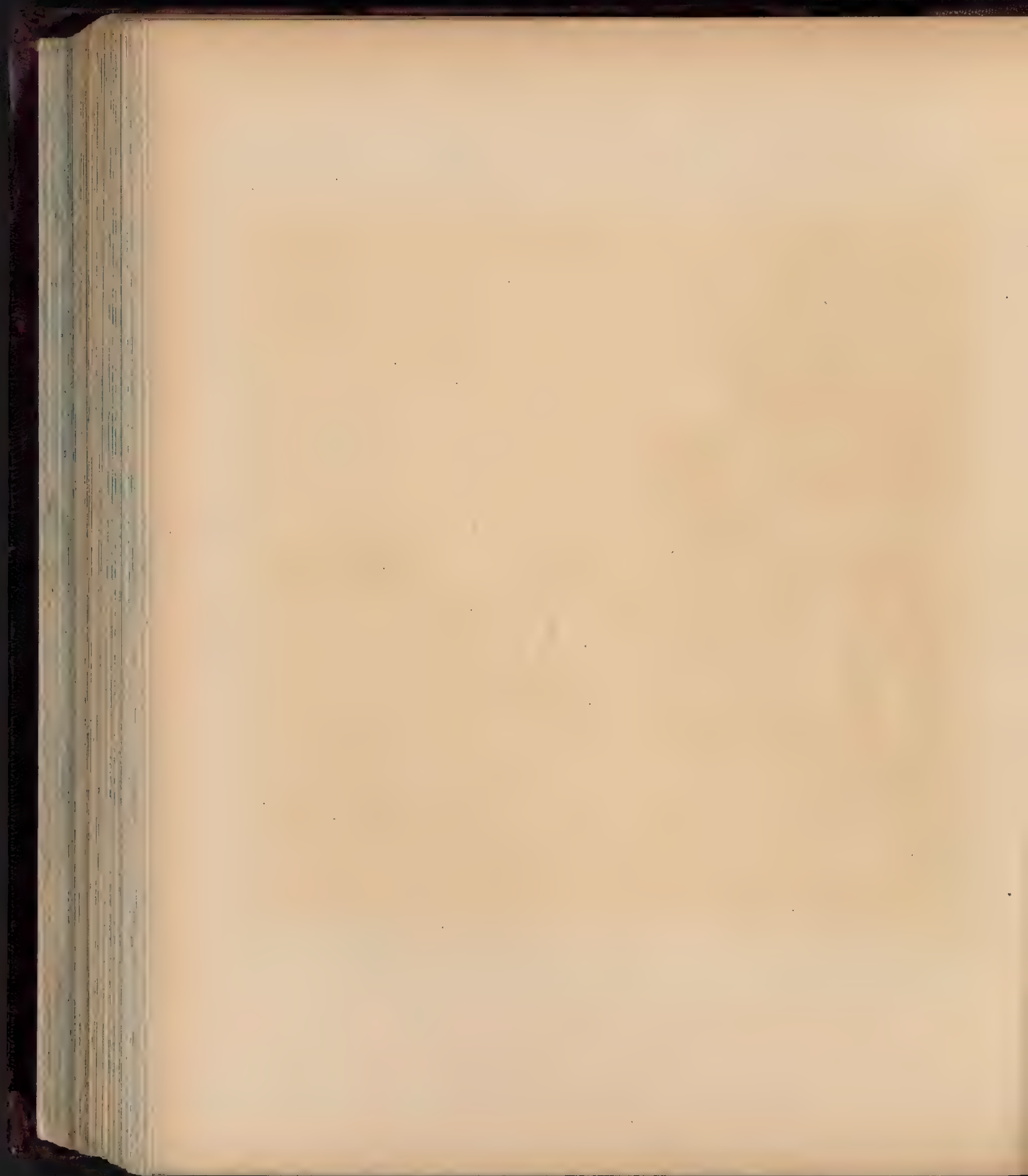
I. The Emperor Theodosius ordering his soldiers to go and seek for his son Gabra Krěstôs.



II. The soldiers of the Emperor armed with spears and shields setting out on their journey.

"world. And in every country into which ye shall come give ye "gifts unto the poor and the needy, and unto the widows, and unto "the sons of want and misery; and ye shall seek and search diligently "for tidings of my beloved son, [who is] the light of mine eyes. And "if there be one who shall find my son, I declare unto you by my "faith, that I will give him even unto the half of my kingdom. And "besides this, whosoever shall give me any information concerning "my son him will I appoint unto a position of authority under me, "and I will give him great riches. And behold, from this time forth "and until [Fol. 106b] I hear tidings of my son I will not go up to "the bed of my couch, and I will not put on [my] royal apparel, and "mine eyes shall not slumber, and my mind shall not cease from "sorrow until God Almighty shall make me to rejoice through a sight "of my beloved son, [who is] the light of mine eyes." And Markhêzâ the mother of Gabra KrĚstŏs put on the apparel of mourning, and she sat down in the ashes, saying, "These shall be my bed throughout my life, and my place of refuge until I die, or until God Almighty shall put away the sorrow of my heart, and shall bring back "my son to me." Then the bride cast away from her her marriage raiment which was of great price, and she put on the apparel of mourning, and shaved off the hair of her head, saying, "I will not go "forth [Fol. 107a] from this house, in which he left me and in which "he made a covenant with me; but I will wait for Christ to shew "me him to whom I became a bride by the law of Christ, when they "set me before the ark with him and crowned us according to the "law of marriage, me and him whom the Lord ordained to be my "husband."

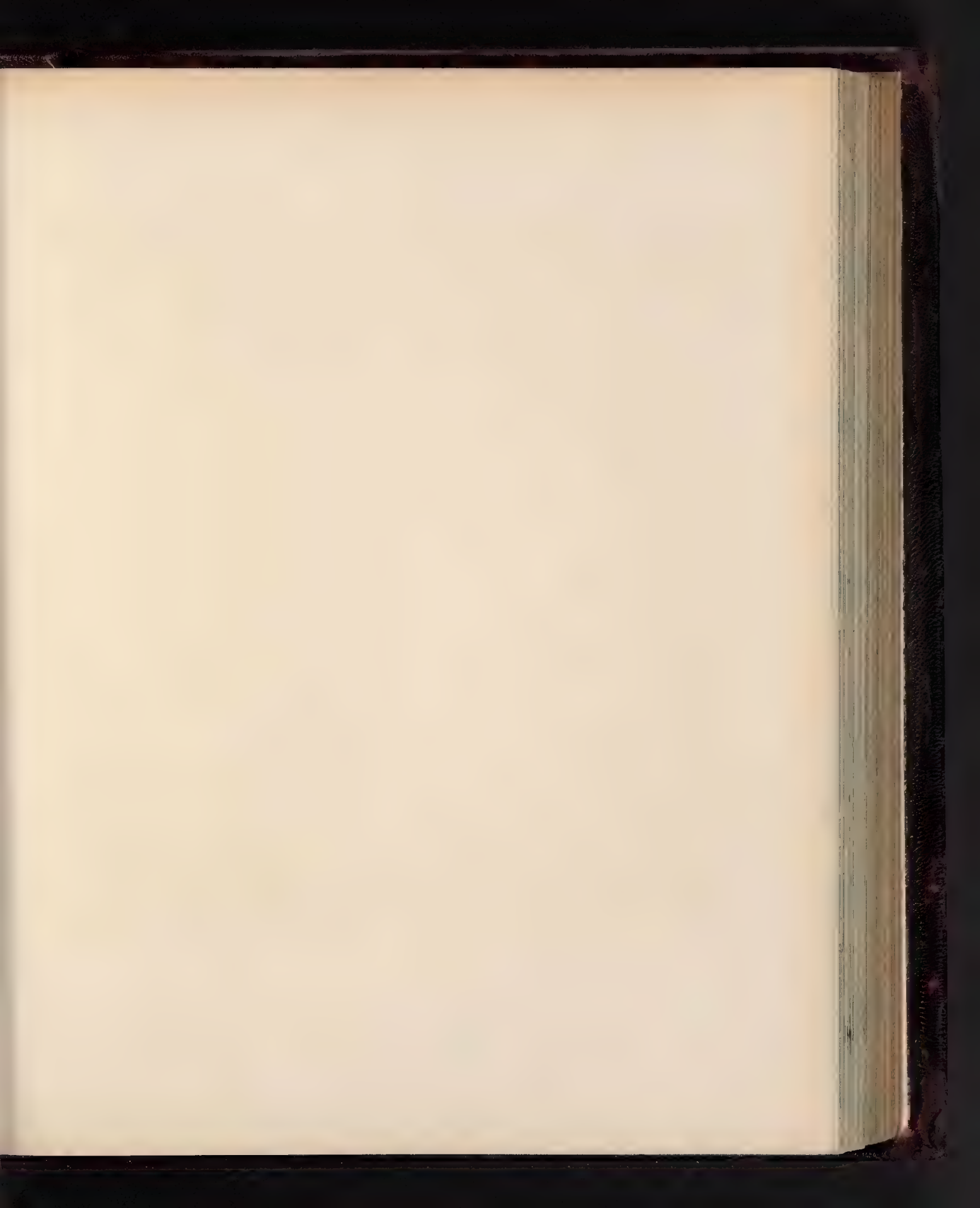
[Fol. 109a] Then the soldiers went forth and departed to search for the Emperor's son, whose name was Gabra KrĚstŏs, and they





Gabra Krēstōs giving his apparel to the poor.







Gabra Krēstōs standing all night in prayer.

sought for him in every city and in every country. Now Gabra Krěstŏs had gone away to a remote country which was one year's journey distant [from Constantinople], and he arrived at a city called Armenia; and in this place there was a church [which had been built] in the name of our Lady Mary. And it came to pass that at the door thereof there were [gathered together] many poor and needy folk, and aged women, and the children of want and misery, and people with impediments in their speech, and widows, for the city was very large, and a law had been established in the city that the folk who desired might dwell in the porch and courtyard of the church [to receive] alms. Now Gabra Krěstŏs had not ceased to give [Fol. 109b] alms from the time he crossed the sea until he arrived in that city, and unto all those who were in need he gave away everything which he had taken with him from the house wherein he should have lived after his marriage, until he had nothing left belonging to him. And he gave away his clothes from off his back and dressed himself in rags, and he made himself an abode with the poor and needy in the porch of the church; and he fasted by day and by night, and he tasted food only on the Sabbath day. He passed the whole night long in watching and in prayer in the place where he lived, and he ceased not to remain standing until the dawn of day. And when the board was struck for the morning service he was wont to go into the church with the multitude and take part therein, and when he went forth from the church he used to go back into his dwelling, and pass the whole day in prayer. And he ceased not to do this at any time, both by day and by night.

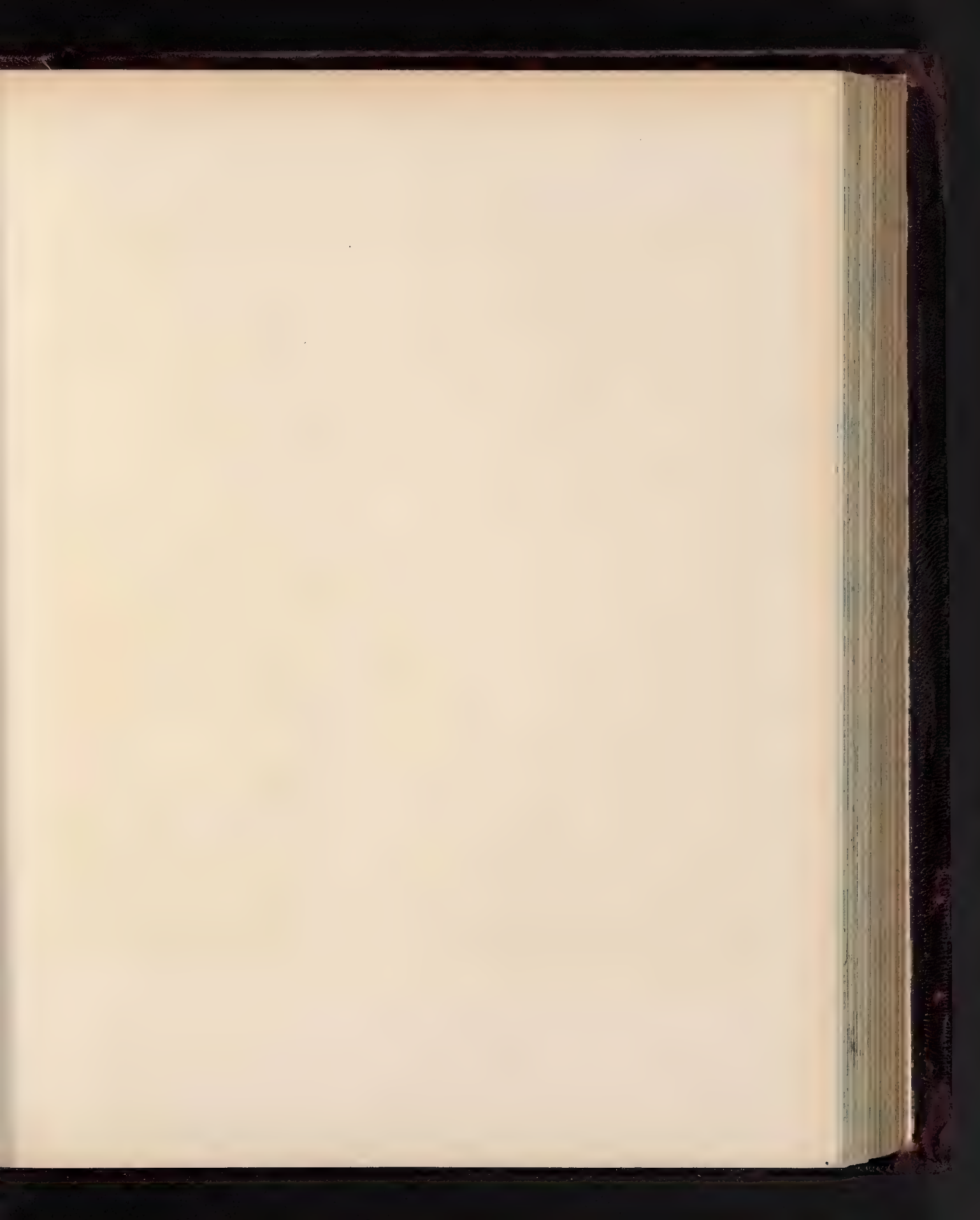
[Fol. 111b] So he dwelt in this way for five years without any man knowing of his vigils. And it came to pass after five years that two of the soldiers of his father came to the city to seek him

I. The servant of the church striking the boards, which serve as bells, to call the people to prayer.



II. Gabra Krëstôs, having stood up in prayer all night, goes into the church at dawn for the service.





I. The soldiers of the Emperor Theodosius giving alms to the poor.



II. Gabra Krēstōs giving to the poor the alms which he had received from his father's soldiers, who left the city without recognizing him.

out, but they were unable to do so, and they found no trace of him. Then they came into the porch of the church to the poor folk [there], and Gabra Krěstŏs saw the soldiers and recognized them as being servants of his father, but they knew him not, because the beauty of his appearance was changed by reason of his frequent fasts and vigils. And these soldier-messengers gave alms to the poor and needy, and unto all those who were in want among the folk that were in the porch of the church, even as the Emperor Theodosius had commanded them. And it came to pass that when the soldiers of the Emperor gave alms unto Gabra Krěstŏs [Fol. 112*a*] along with those who were poor and needy, he received the gift in his hand and went into his dwelling in tears. And he bowed down with his face to the ground, and looking up into heaven said, "I thank Thee, O Lord God Almighty, Thou Sustainer of the universe, thou holy God of Israel, "Who hast never been conquered by foe, Who alone doest great and "wonderful things, and Who hath given unto me this gift from the "hand of the servants of my father." And after these soldier-messengers of his father had given alms unto all the poor and needy, they departed without having recognized Gabra Krěstŏs or heard of the fame of him. Now after the soldiers of his father had gone forth [out of the city], Gabra Krěstŏs gave the gift which he had received from them unto the other poor and needy folk [Fol. 112*b*].

And after these things the saint dwelt in that city for ten years, and he laboured abundantly in fasting, and in worshipping, and in vigils without ceasing, without any man knowing of the vigils which he kept, and of the labours which he wrought for the sake of God Almighty.

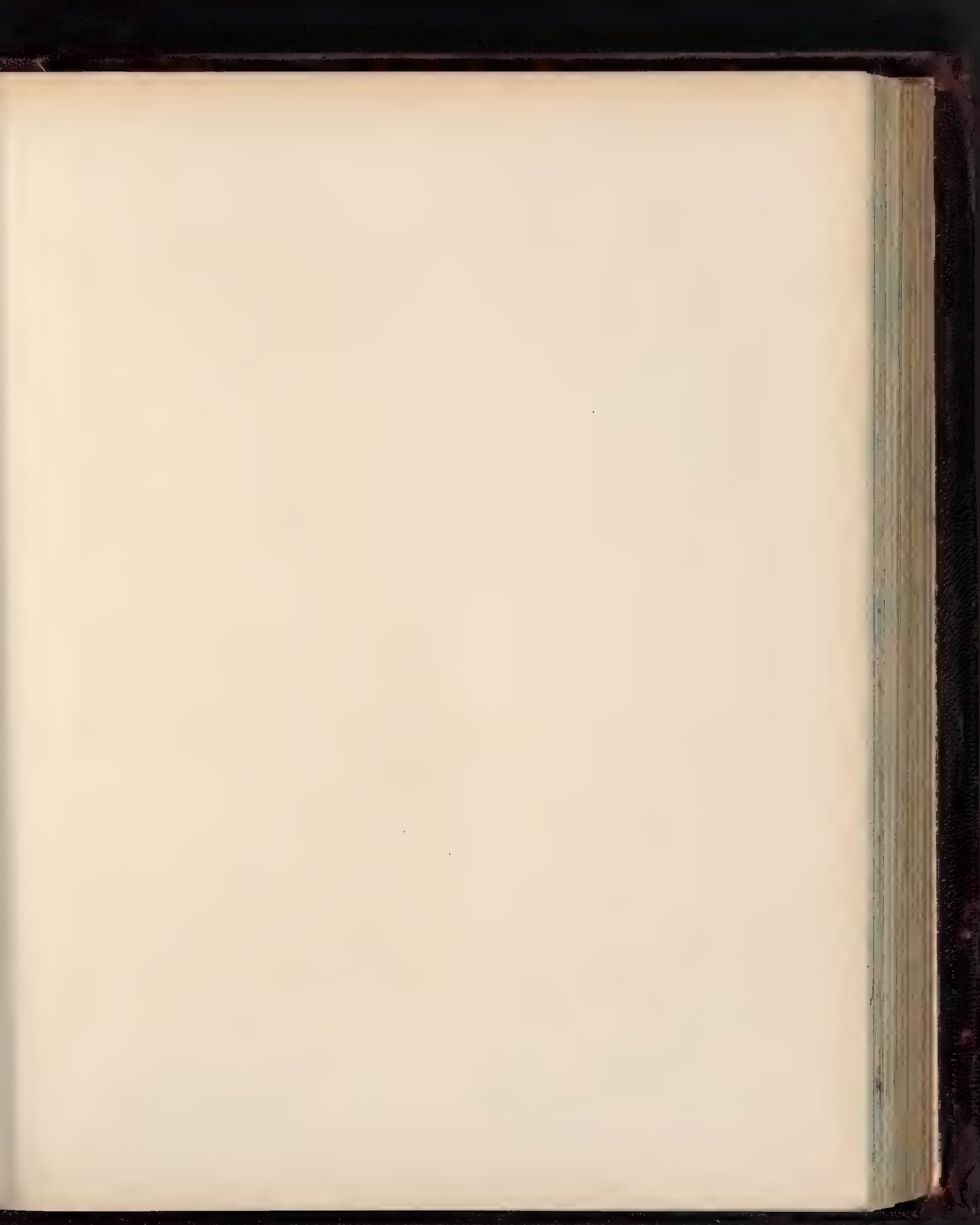
[Fol. 114*a*] And it came to pass after fifteen years that the holy Virgin Mary, who gave birth to God, appeared unto a certain





Gabra Krěstôs praying by his abode near the church.





I. The Virgin appears to a priest and orders him to bring Gabra Krëstôs to her in the church.

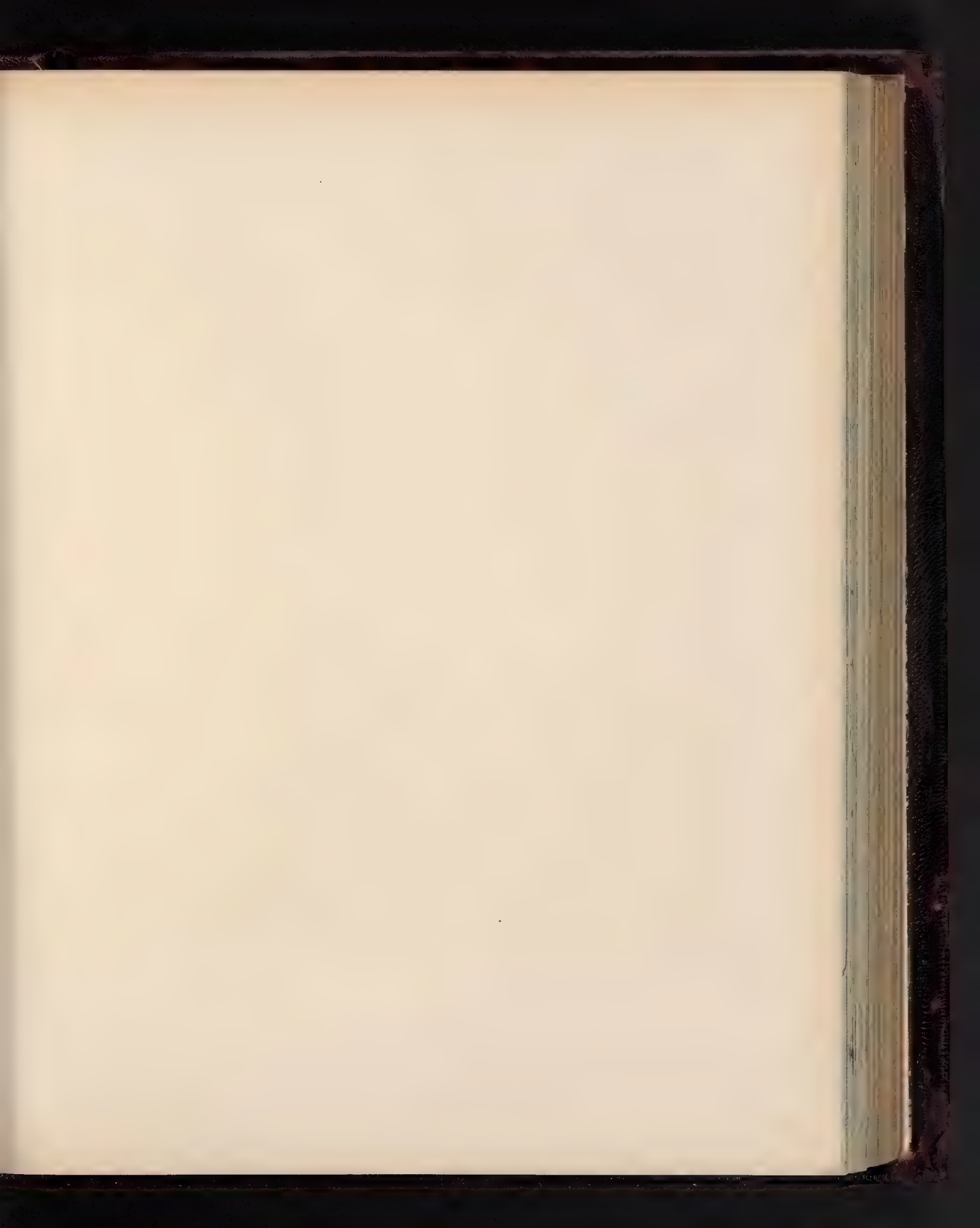
III. Gabra Krëstôs and the priest conversing in the temple.



II. The priest goes to the abode of Gabra Krëstôs and finds him standing in prayer.

good man who was a priest and a guardian of the church, and said unto him, "At dawn to-morrow go thou to the porch of the church to the place where the poor abide, and enter thou into the dwelling of one who resideth there by himself"; and she told him what manner of house it was. Then she said unto him, "Take thou the man of God [who is there], and bring him to the church wherein he shall have a new abiding place; and thou shalt not let him dwell with the poor and needy." Now they had given unto Gabra Krěstŏs the name of "The man of God". And it came to pass that when the day had broken, the priest went to the house which had been shewn unto him, according to the order which our Lady Mary had given unto him, and he entered in, and found Gabra Krěstŏs standing [Fol. 115a] in prayer. Then he said unto him, "O man of God, our Lady Mary calleth thee into her house." And he took him and brought him into the church, and made ready for him his habitation therein. And the priest said unto the man of God, "I will make thee to swear by Mary, who gave birth to God, the mother of light, the shining lady, and by the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost, that thou wilt tell me who thou art, where thy country is, who thy father is, and for what purpose thou hast come hither." Now when the man of God heard this he refused [to tell him], and he said unto the priest, "What hast thou to do with me, O my father? And why dost thou weary thyself in searching out the affairs of a sinner? And why wouldst thou make me to swear so great and awful [Fol. 115b] an oath, which is terrible even to hear? But I will make thee to swear by that same oath to tell me who hath related unto thee my business, and who hath made thee to know me." Then the priest said unto him, "I have no knowledge whatever of thee, but our Lady Mary appeared unto me and commanded



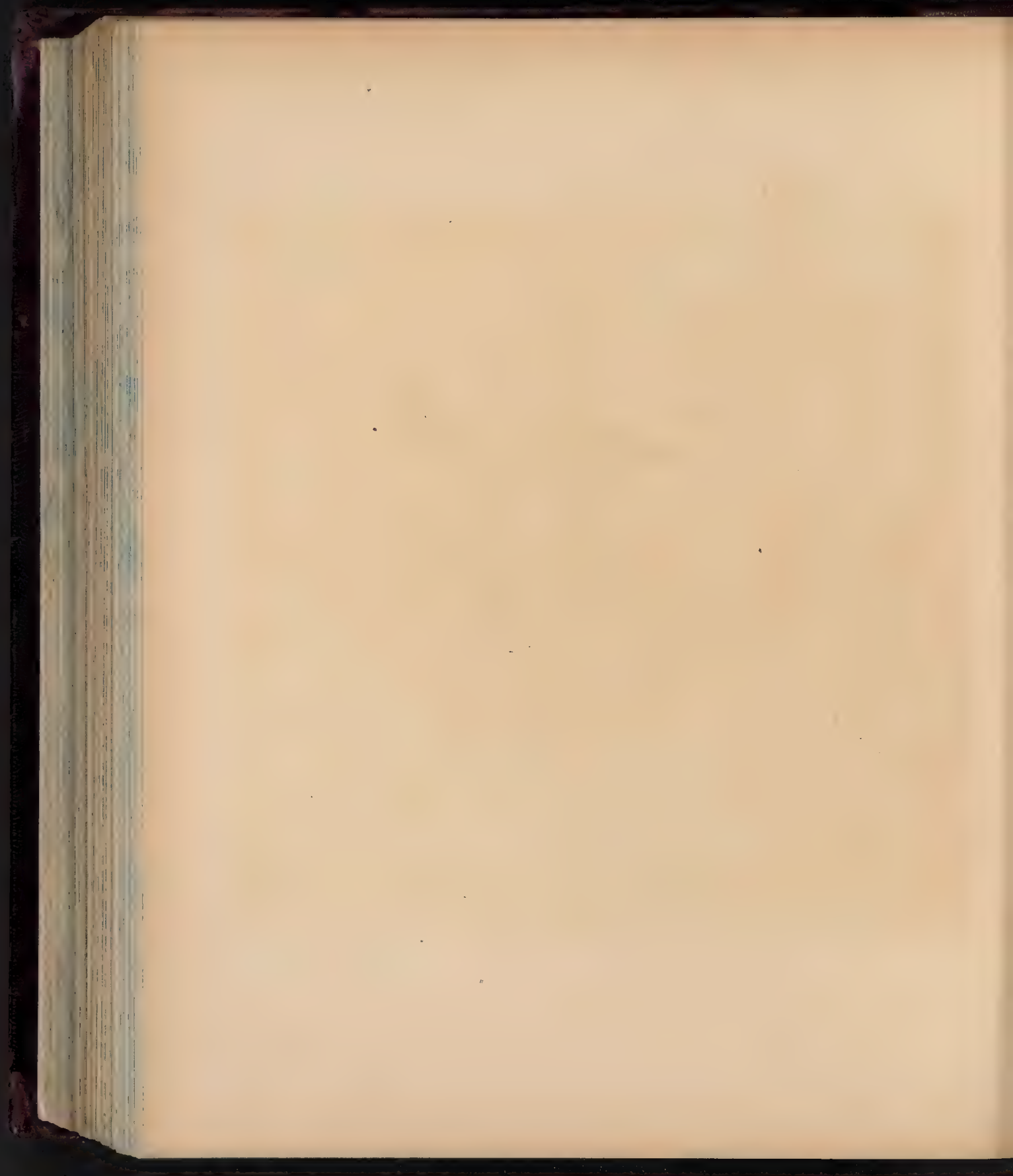




Gabra Krëstôs saluting the picture of the Virgin Mary, and asking her to guide him in his journeyings.

"me to bring thee hither, saying unto me, "Bring forth the man of
 "God from his dwelling [with the poor and needy], and make him
 "to come into the church, and his habitation shall be therein'. So I
 "came unto thee and I have brought thee hither, and have informed
 "thee of these things.

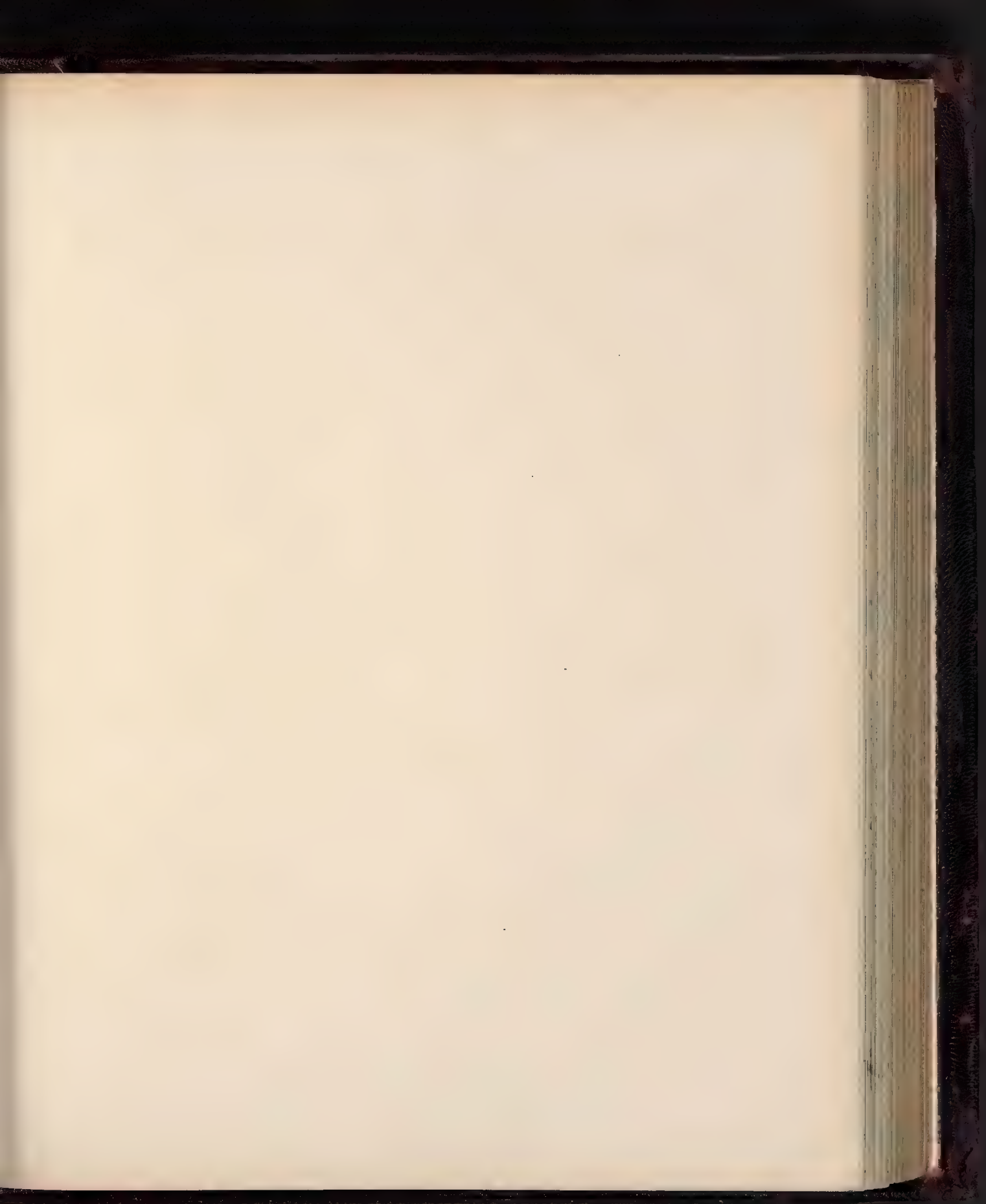
And the man of God hearkened unto the words of the priest, for he feared the oath which he had made him swear, and he told him, therefore, everything which had happened unto him from his childhood unto that day. And it came to pass that when the priest heard [these things,] he was sorry, and tears fell from his eyes, [Fol. 116a] and he bowed down to him, and was blessed by him with a blessing. So the man of God dwelt for a few days in the church, but when he learned that the people of the city had heard his history, he swore an oath, saying, "If I dwell in this city, the
 "people thereof will heap great honours upon me; and if the news
 "of me shall reach my father, he will come and take me away." Then Gabra KrĚstŏs rose up and prayed until midnight, and he saluted the portrait of our Lady Mary, and said, "Thou hast revealed
 "my hiding-place in this city, and thou knowest that I am afraid be-
 "cause of it; now, therefore, it is better that I should go to some
 "place where men know me not. Do thou, O my Lady Mary, guide
 "me to that place which is best for me." [Fol. 118a] And having said these words he went forth by night and departed, and none of the people of the city saw him; and he came to the sea-coast, where he found some people who wished to cross the sea of Barbar, which is towards Arabia. Then the man of God said unto the master of the ship, "Take me with thee, for Christ's sake"; and the sailors said, "Let us take this pilgrim for Christ's sake"; so they took him and departed. And it came to pass that when they had sailed a little





Gabra Krěstós begging for a passage in the ship.







Gabra Krěstôs arriving in his father's country.

way on the sea, God Almighty sent upon them a violent wind, and it drove them into a course which they did not wish to take, and brought them to Constantinople. Now God Almighty had seen the sorrow, and had hearkened unto the cries which the Emperor Theodosius and the [Fol. 118^b] Empress Markhêzâ had cried for their son, the man of God.

And it came to pass that when the man of God knew he had come to his father's country, he gave thanks unto God Almighty; and he bowed down with his face to the ground and worshipped. And he stretched out his hands, and lifted up his eyes unto heaven, and said, "I give thanks unto Thee, and I praise Thee, and "I exalt Thee, Thou Mighty One, Thou King, Thou God of Israel, "Thou most Holy One, Thou Doer of wonderful things, Who hast "by Thy will brought me out unto the place whither I had no wish "to come, and hast made me to arrive in my father's country. And "now, O my Lord Jesus Christ, reveal not to men my hiding-place, "until Thou art about to take my soul unto Thyself. Let me go to "the door of [Fol. 119^a] my father's house, for I wish to receive only "what is left on the table of my father's house, whither Thou Thyself "hast brought me, O my Lord, and not the alms of other men." And having said these words he departed and came to the door of his father's gateway, and he saw his father coming forth from his house. And he passed in and bowed down before him, and said unto him, "O my lord, I am a man poor and needy, and a wandering pilgrim; "God Almighty hath brought me to thee. And now, I desire thee "to deal graciously with me for the sake of Christ; let me abide "under thy shadow, and feed me with the crumbs of that which remaineth from thy table; thus shalt thou gain thy reward from God." And it came to pass that when the Emperor Theodosius heard [these



I. Gabra Krëstôs asking the Emperor to have a little hut built for him inside the courtyard of his palace.



II. Two of the Emperor's servants bringing meat and drink to Gabra Krëstôs.



words], for he stood still and hearkened unto what Gabra Krěstŏs was saying unto him, he straightway [Fol. 119 δ] remembered the wanderings of his beloved son and he wept. And he said unto his servants, "Which of you will deal graciously with this poor and "needy pilgrim, and will succour him, and will keep me [ever] mindful "of this wanderer, in order that I may send unto him his food from "my table? For this would I do in order that God Almighty may "receive my son graciously, wherever he may be?" And his servants held their peace, and answered him never a word. And a second time the Emperor spake and said, "By my truth, I say unto you, "that I will succour this poor and wandering pilgrim, and the remembrance of him shall be ever with me; and I will treat him like a "free man, and will give him food to eat until he dieth." Then one of the servants of the Emperor said, "Behold, master, we will do that "which is thy will, and we will succour this wanderer even [Fol. 120 α] "as thou sayest." And the man of God answered and said, "O master, "command that they make me a little dwelling in front of the inner "part of the doorway through which thou goest forth, so that thou "mayest see me as thou goest forth and comest in, and mayest not "forget me; [this I beg] for Christ's sake." So the Emperor commanded them to make a little dwelling in that place; and the man of God entered into the abode which they had made for him. Now his habitation was like unto a peasant's cottage. And he lived there praying by day and by night, and he never tasted food except on Sabbath days, for he took the food which was given unto him, and pretended to eat it, whilst in truth he gave it unto the poor secretly; and this he ceased not to do by day and by night. And he was wont to keep vigil the whole night long, and [Fol. 120 δ] to stand up and to pray until the day broke.

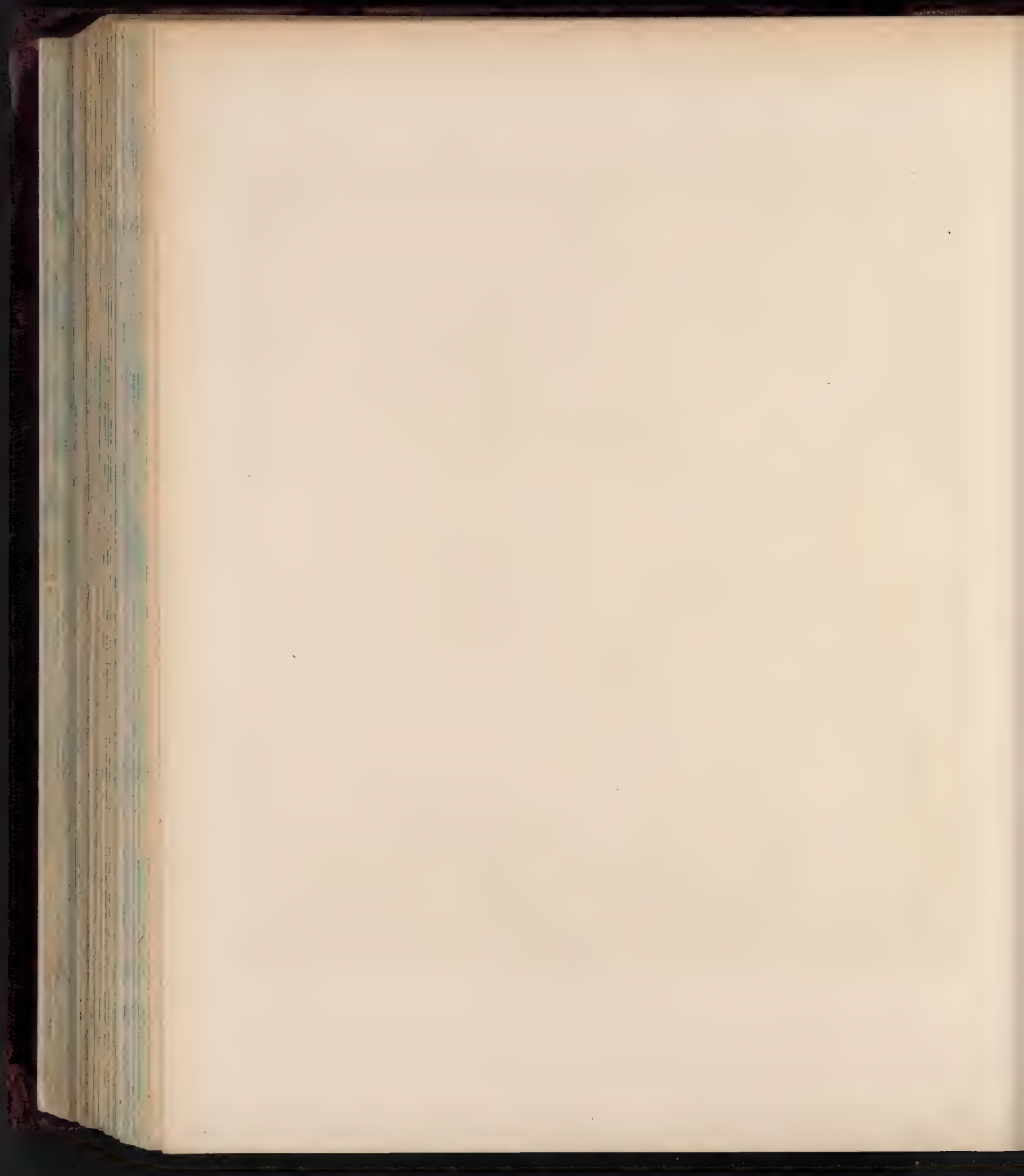


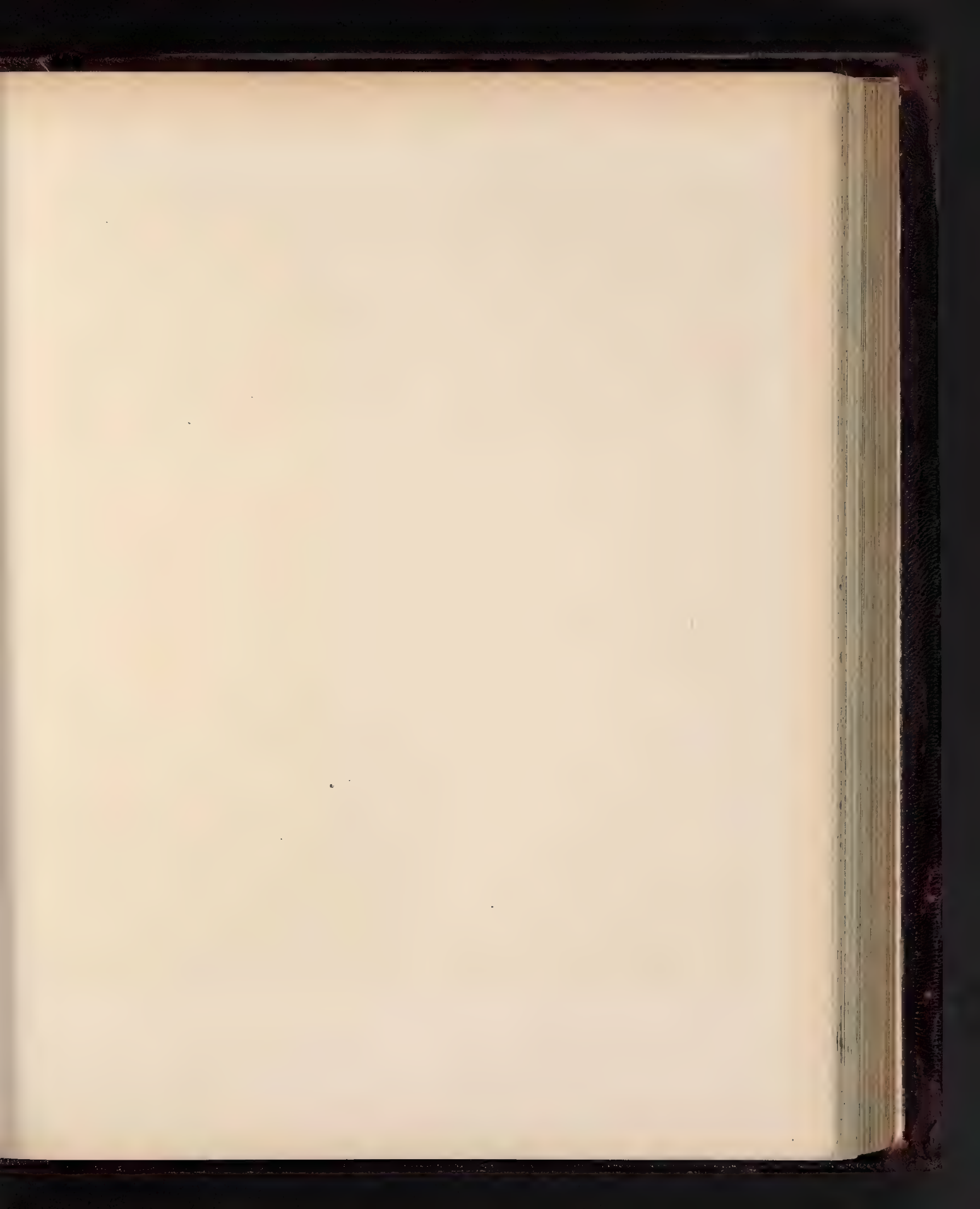
I. The servants conspiring together to drive Gabra Krěstôs away,
and to injure the two servants who waited upon him.



II. A servant smiting Gabra Krěstôs
on the face.

III. A servant smiting Gabra Krěstôs
on the head.





I. A servant plucks out his beard.

II. A servant pulling the hair out of his head.



IV. Servants letting filthy water fall upon him through the roof of his hut.

III. A servant emptying the washings of a bowl upon him.

V. Men spitting upon him.

[Fol. 122 δ] And it came to pass that jealousy laid hold upon the [other] servants of the Emperor, because of the two servants whom he had appointed to minister unto the man of God. And they meditated within themselves and said, "If this wandering pilgrim doth dwell in the courtyard of our master, the Emperor will give them money, and will make them free of service. And they will become both men of position and our superiors, and the people will call them men of high rank, whilst we shall have to remain as mere servants; but if this wandering pilgrim depart from the courtyard of our lord those servants will remain in the same position as ourselves." Then one of the servants said, "How can we drive away this poor and wandering pilgrim from the gateway (or courtyard) of our lord?" And the other servants said, "Come, let us inflict great sufferings upon him, and let us entreat him evilly; then shall he depart from the courtyard of our lord." Thus it came to pass that [Fol. 123 α] all the Emperor's servant banded themselves together in this evil design against the poor man Gabra KrĚstŏs, and from that moment they began to entreat the man of God evilly. Some of them smote his face with their hands, and some beat him on the head with their fists, and some plucked out his beard, and some went on the top of his dwelling and poured filthy water upon him through the roof, and some threw upon him the water in which platters and cups had been washed, and some spat upon him, and some filched bones and pieces of broken meat from the Emperor's table, and threw them at him, so that the dogs might [jump] upon him as they snapped at them. But the saint and man of God bore all these evil things patiently, and he received them as a blessing, in perfect love, and in gladness. [Fol. 123 δ] And he kept in remembrance [his] dwelling which was above, where there is neither death nor sorrow, and



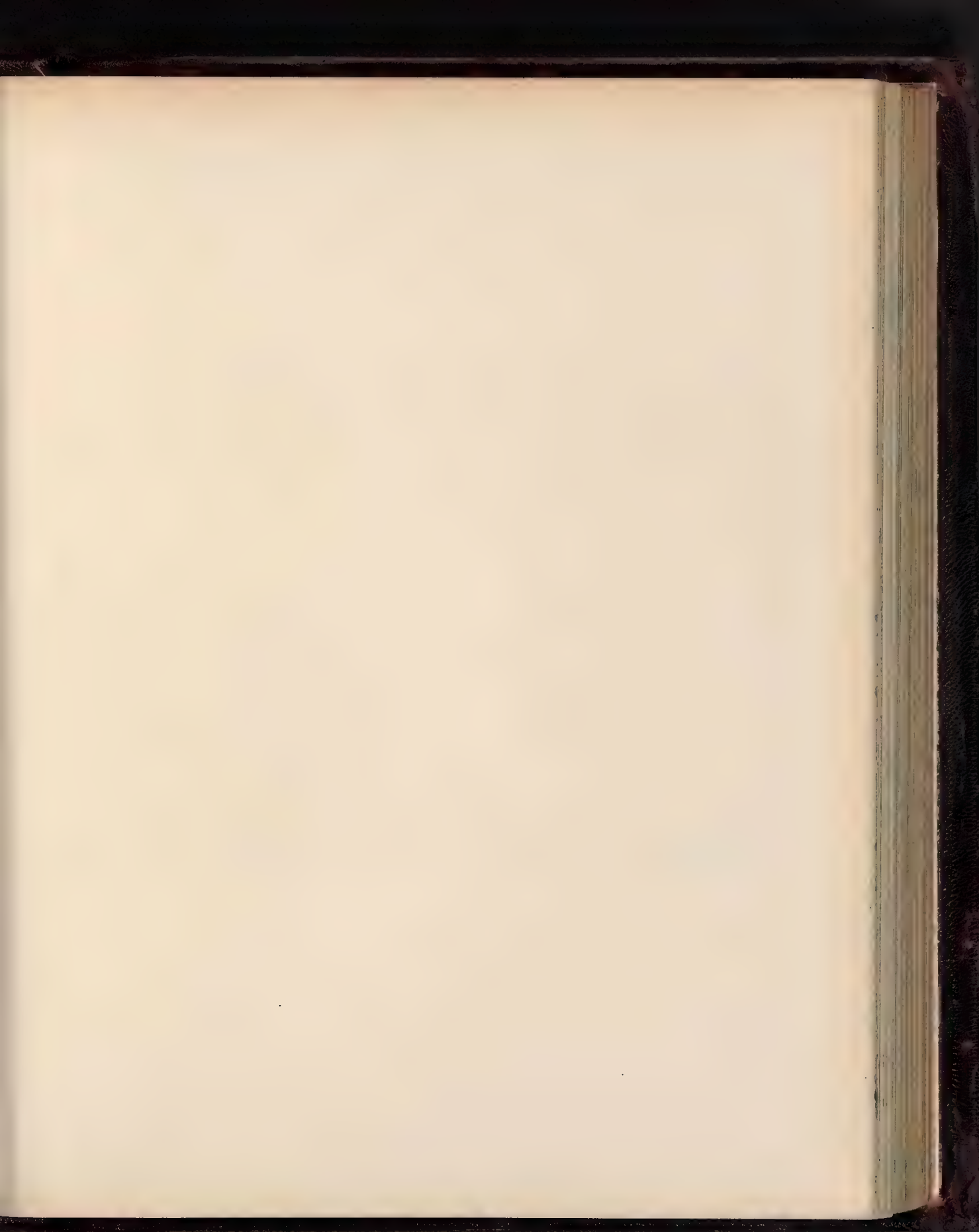
I. The dogs leaping upon Gabra Krěštôs to catch the pieces of meat and bones which the servants threw at him.



II. The women of the palace objected to the presence of Gabra Krěštôs in the courtyard on account of his evil smell.

III. Gabra Krěštôs standing in prayer.







Gabra Krěstôs standing and bowing in prayer.

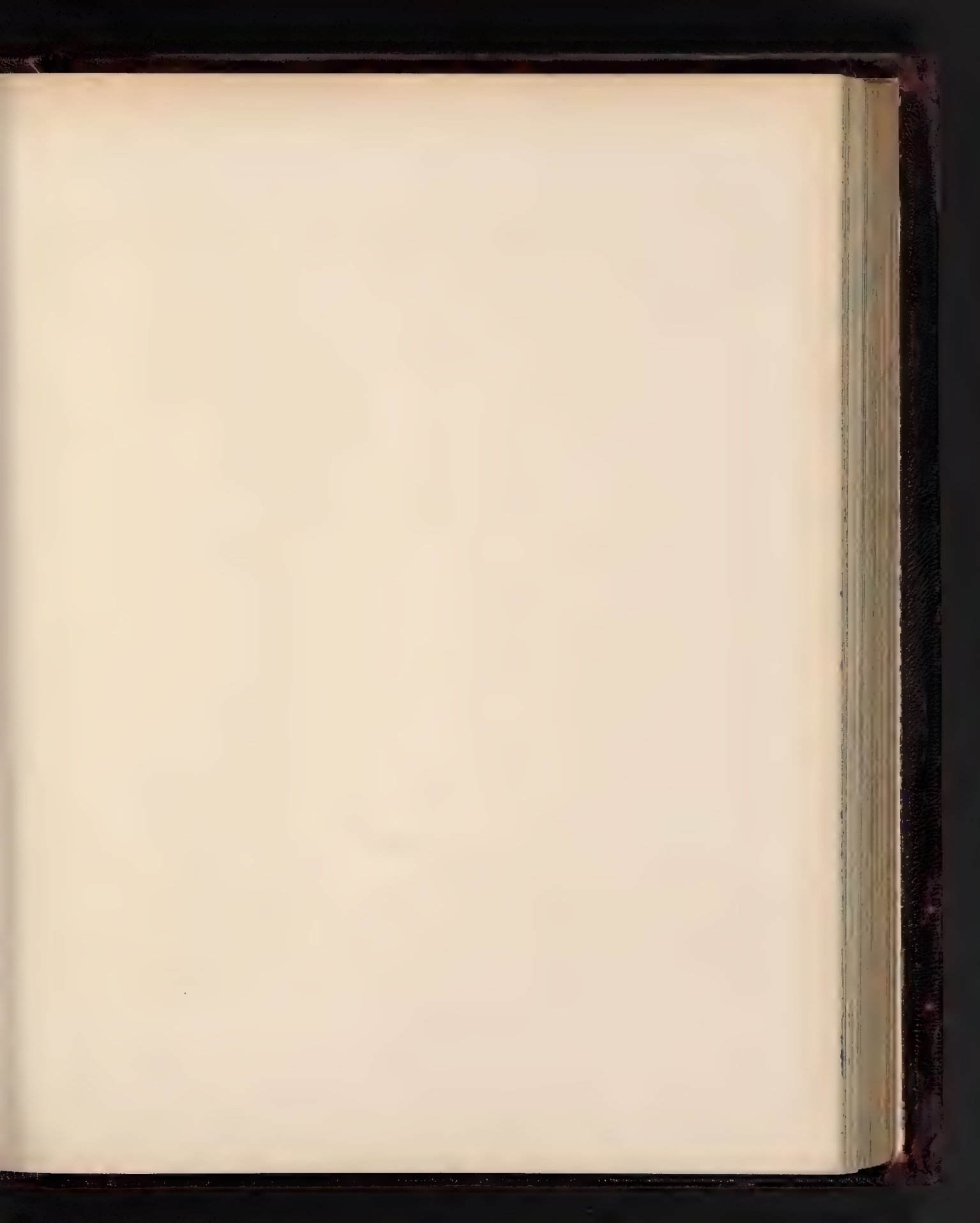
he knew that these evils arose through the hostility of Satan; for this reason he bore all these labours and afflictions, and he conquered Satan through Christ.

Now Gabra KrĚstôs dwelt in toil, and in suffering, and in affliction in the courtyard of his father's house for fifteen years; and he endured all things patiently, and did good the more, notwithstanding that the servants of his father continually added unto all the evils and sufferings which they heaped upon him. And moreover, the women, and the children, and the handmaidens of his father and mother cursed him, as they went out and came in, with abundant cursings, and they said [unto the servants], "Take away for us that filthy pilgrim, so that the smell of the dirt of this strange beggar, who is an outcast and rejected among men, may [Fol. 124*a*] not come nigh unto us."

Then the holy, and patient, and mighty man of God made supplication unto the Lord and said, "O my Lord and God, Jesus Christ, Thou Son of God Almighty, Thou Living One, let not those who live in my father's house be offended because of me, and let not sin be imputed unto them for my sake; I desire Thee to take my soul, which is more sinful and degraded than that of any other man, for I would come to Thee, where I shall neither be hated nor rejected." [Fol. 126*a*] Then our Lord and Redeemer Jesus Christ came to him, and with Him there were Michael, and Gabriel, and Rûphâêl¹, and Suryâêl², and Sadâkiêl³, and Saratiêl, and Ananiêl⁴, the seven Archangels, and ten thousand times ten thousand⁵ angels [in honour

¹ I. e., Raphael. ² I. e., צוריאל. ³ I. e., צדקיאל. ⁴ I. e., חנניאל. ⁵ The Ethiopians distinguish *nine* orders of angels: — (1) መላእክት : angels; (2) ሊዮነ : መላእክት : archangels; (3) አጋላክት : lords; (4) ስልጣናት : dominions; (5) መናበርት : thrones; (6) ገዳሳት : powers; (7) መካገገት : principalities; (8) ክሩቤል : Cherubim; and (9) ሱራልል : Seraphim.





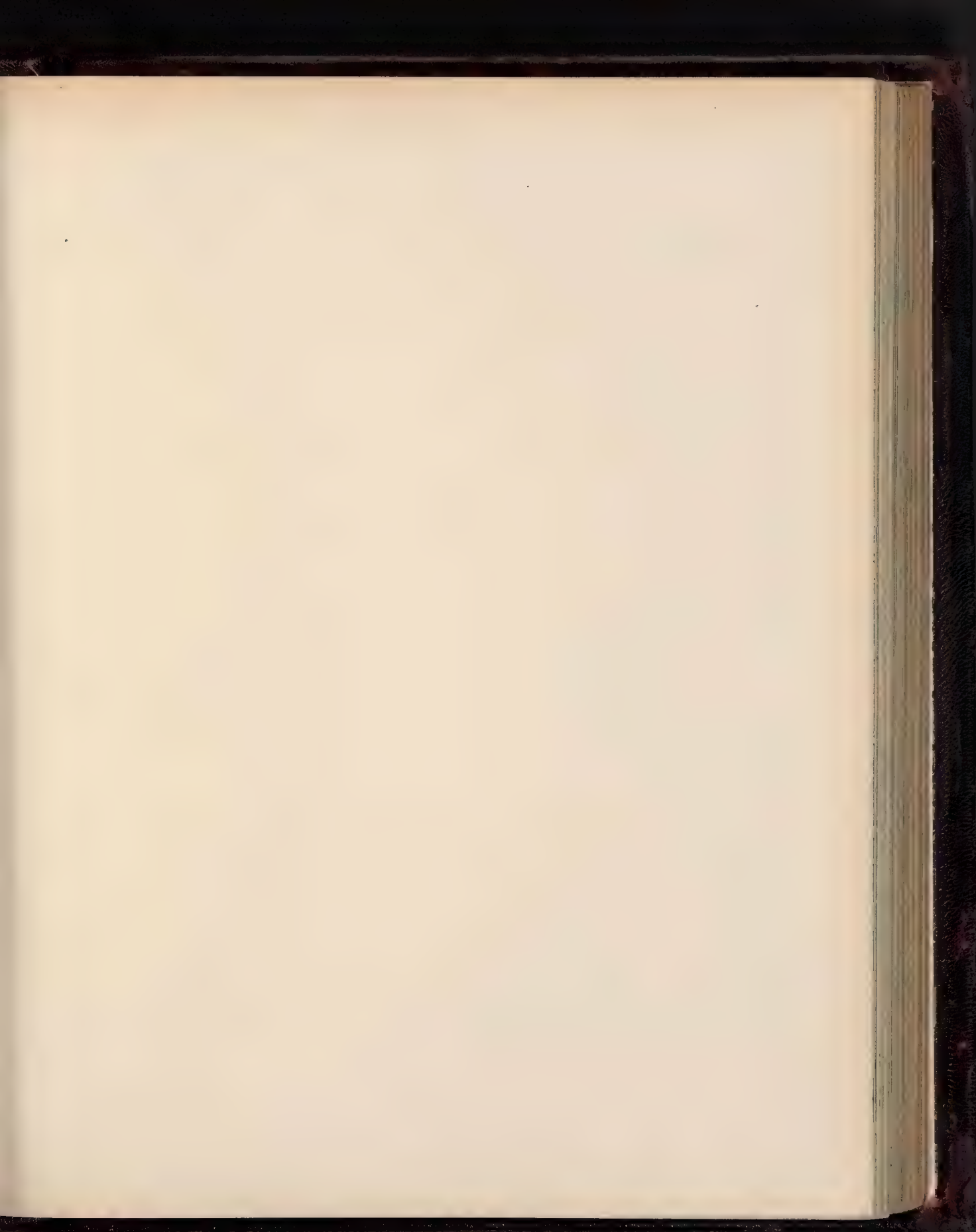


Christ and the Seven Archangels, and thousands of angels
come to visit Gabra Krěstôs.

of His] majesty and glory which cannot be described. And there came, moreover, our father Adam¹, and Seth², and Enos³, and Mahalaleel⁴, the exalted man, and Cainan⁵, and Jared⁶, and our father Enoch⁷ with his book⁸, and Methuselah⁹, and Lamech¹⁰, and our father Noah¹¹, and Japhet, and Shem¹². And after him came Abraham the "friend of God"¹³, and Isaac the pure one, the type of Christ, and Jacob the Israelite. And after him came Job the patient¹⁴ man; and Moses the meek¹⁵ man, and Aaron¹⁶ the priest, for whose priestly garb¹⁷ the whole world is insufficient; and among them were Melchisedek¹⁸, the son of Fălêk¹⁹, the priest of God, and Phinehas²⁰, and Eleazar²¹, and Joshua the judge who made the sun to stand still in Gibeon²². And, moreover, there came Samuel the prophet and high priest, and Solomon the wise man, the son of David, and Gad²³ the mighty prophet, and Elias²⁴ the prophet, the priest of Adonijah, and Elisha²⁵ his disciple. And there came the whole company of the prophets, that is to say, Isaiah and those who were with him. And there came Nathan²⁶ the prophet, and Sirach²⁷ the wise man; and

¹ See Genesis V. 1, 2. ² See Genesis V. 3; and the *Book of Adam and Eve*, (ed. Malan) II, 2. ³ See Genesis V. 6. ⁴ See Genesis V. 12. ⁵ See Genesis V. 13. ⁶ See Genesis V. 16. ⁷ See Genesis V. 18. ⁸ For the Ethiopic text see Dillmann, *Liber Henoch*, Leipzig, 1851; for a German translation of it see Dillmann, *Das Buch Henoch*, Leipzig, 1853; and for an English translation of Dillmann's text see Charles (R. H.), *The Book of Enoch*, Oxford, 1893. ⁹ See Genesis V. 21. ¹⁰ See Genesis V. 28. ¹¹ See Genesis V. 30. ¹² See Genesis V. 32. Ham's name is omitted probably on account of the incident recorded in Genesis IX. 22. ¹³ See 2 Chron. XX. 7; Isaiah XLI. 8; St. James II. 23. ¹⁴ See St. James V. 11. ¹⁵ See Numbers XII. 3. ¹⁶ See Exodus IV. 14. ¹⁷ Read **ጭረ**: ¹⁸ See Genesis XIV. 18. ¹⁹ In the "Cave of Treasures" he is said to have been the "son of Mălâkh, the son of Arphaxar, the son of Shem"; and another tradition says that his father was called Harklêim, and his mother Shêlâthêil. See my *Book of the Bee*, p. 34. ²⁰ See Exodus VI. 25. ²¹ See Exodus VI. 23. ²² See Joshua X. 12. ²³ See 2 Samuel XXIV. 11. ²⁴ I. e., Elijah; see 1 Kings XVII. 1. ²⁵ See 1 Kings XIX. 16. ²⁶ See 2 Samuel VII. ²⁷ He lived in the second half of the second century B. C.





I. David with his harp.

II. Enoch with his book.



III. The Virgin Mary with the Twelve Apostles and the Seventy-two Disciples.

Jeremiah the prophet, and Daniel, and Ezekiel, and Ezra the prophet and scribe of the ordinances of God Almighty, and Baruch¹ the priest, and Abimelech the Ethiopian. And all the children of the prophets came [Fol. 127*a*], Hosea, and Amos, and Haggai, and Zephaniah, and Nahum, and Joel, and Jonah, and Obadiah, and Habakkuk, and Micah, and Malachi, and Zachariah; and John the Baptist², and Simeon the old man³. And there came, moreover, the Twelve glorious Apostles, together with the Seventy-two disciples, and the Virgin Mary, the Lady who maketh supplication for mercy. And there came also the three hundred and eighteen⁴ orthodox men. And after these there came the company of the saints, Abbâ Paule⁵, and Abbâ Antony⁶, and Abbâ Macarius⁷, and the two Macarii⁸, and Abbâ Shenûdi⁹, and Abbâ Arsenius¹⁰, and Abbâ Bar-sauma¹¹, and Abbâ John the Little¹², and John of Kamâ¹³, and Abbâ Besa¹⁴, and Abbâ Sisoës¹⁵, and Abbâ Agathon¹⁶. And there came besides Abbâ Pachomius¹⁷, and Abbâ Tâwēmīn¹⁸, and Abbâ Aaron¹⁹, and Abbâ Cyrus²⁰ his father's

¹ See Jeremiah XXXII. 12.² See St. Luke I. 13, 16.³ See St. Luke

II. 25.

⁴ I. e., the 318 Bishops who were present at the Council of Nicaea A. D. 325.⁵ I. e., Paul the Theban. He was the first Egyptian monk. He worked miracles and died A. D. 342, aged 113 years; two lions are said to have dug his grave. He is commemorated on June 22.⁶ I. e., Antony the Great, born A. D. 251, died Jan. 17, A. D. 356, aged 105 years. His day is October 6.⁷ I. e., Macarius, the disciple of Antony, who died towards the end of the IVth century.⁸ I. e., Macarius the Alexandrian, and Macarius the Egyptian; the former died A. D. 394, and the latter A. D. 390.⁹ He was born A. D. 333, and died A. D. 451.¹⁰ He was born A. D. 354, and died A. D. 449 or 450.¹¹ I. e., Barsumas the Eutychian; he was present at the Council of Chalcedon A. D. 451, and he died seven years later.¹² His day is October 20.¹³ His day is December 25.¹⁴ The disciple of Shenûdi; he died towards the end of the Vth century.¹⁵ He died A. D. 429.¹⁶ See Rosweyde, *Vitae Patrum*, p. 499.¹⁷ He was born at Esneh A. D. 292, and died A. D. 351.¹⁸ Theomen (?). The variant text has Akhreyôs, i. e., Acronius, whose day is June 4.¹⁹ Probably the martyr whose day is July 9.²⁰ His day is, probably, July 8.

brother, and Abbâ Nabîydû¹, [Fol. 127^b] and Abbâ Ephraim², and Abbâ Maccabaeus³, and Simeon Stylites⁴, and Abbâ Isaac⁵ the Syrian, and Abbâ Abkarazûn⁶, and Abbâ Theodore⁷, and Abbâ Akâwêh⁸, and Abbâ Matthew⁹, and Abbâ Jacob¹⁰, and Abbâ Mark of Dabra Tôrmâk, and Abbâ Nathaniel¹¹, and Abbâ Samuel¹², and Abbâ Daniel¹³, and Honorius the Emperor¹⁴. And there came also Maximus and Domitius, the sons of the Emperor, and Abbâ Bachimus, and Abbâ Paphnuda¹⁵, and Abbâ Abu-nâph¹⁶, and Abbâ Poëmen¹⁷, and Abbâ Gregorius¹⁸ the worker of miracles, and Abbâ Hilarion¹⁹, and George the Younger²⁰, and Abraham²¹ the Younger, and Abbâ Severus²², and Abbâ Batšûn²³, and Abbâ Dârûdî²⁴, and Constantine the Emperor of Byzantium²⁵, and all the saints. And there came besides the holy martyrs [Fol. 128^a], the holy children who were slain in Bethlehem²⁶, and George²⁷, and Abbâ Wadhâbâ²⁸, and Anicetus²⁹, and Stephen

¹ His day is January 20.

² His day is July 15.

³ His day is November 15.

⁴ Born A. D. 388, died A. D. 460.

⁵ An Egyptian monk.

⁶ I. e., Abbâ Karzûn; his

day is July 25.

⁷ See Rosweyde, *Vitae Patrum*, p. 550.

⁸ His day is January 28.

⁹ See Rosweyde, *Vitae Patrum*, p. 574.

¹⁰ See Rosweyde, *Vitae Patrum*, p. 841.

¹¹ See Rosweyde, *Vitae Patrum*, p. 718, etc.

¹² Probably Abbâ Samuel of Kalamon,

whose life has been published by Pereira, *Vida do Abba Samuel do Mosteiro do Kalamon*, Lisbon, 1894 (Published by the Sociedade de Geographia de Lisboa).

¹³ For his life


see Pereira and Goldschmidt, *Vida do Abba Daniel do Mosteiro de Scete*, Lisbon, 1897.

(Published by the Sociedade de Geographia de Lisboa to commemorate the fourth centenary of the discovery of India).

¹⁴ Born 384, died 423 A. D.

¹⁵ Abbâ

Paphnutius (?), or Abbâ Babnûda.

¹⁶ Probably Abu-nafer, i. e., Onuphrius the hermit (Rosweyde, *Vitae Patrum*, p. 99); this name is a corruption of the ancient Egyptian *Un-nefer* , a name of Osiris.

¹⁷ He died in the Scete desert about

A. D. 460.

¹⁸ I. e., Gregory Thaumaturgus; his day is November 21.

¹⁹ His

day is October 24.

²⁰ George the Priest (?), whose day is July 7.

²¹ The

variant text has Ḥadarî.

²² His day is October 2.

²³ He is commemorated on

June 17.

²⁴ His day is December 25.

²⁵ He was born about A. D. 274, and

reigned from 306—337.

²⁶ Read ሰማዐት: See St. Matthew 11. 16.

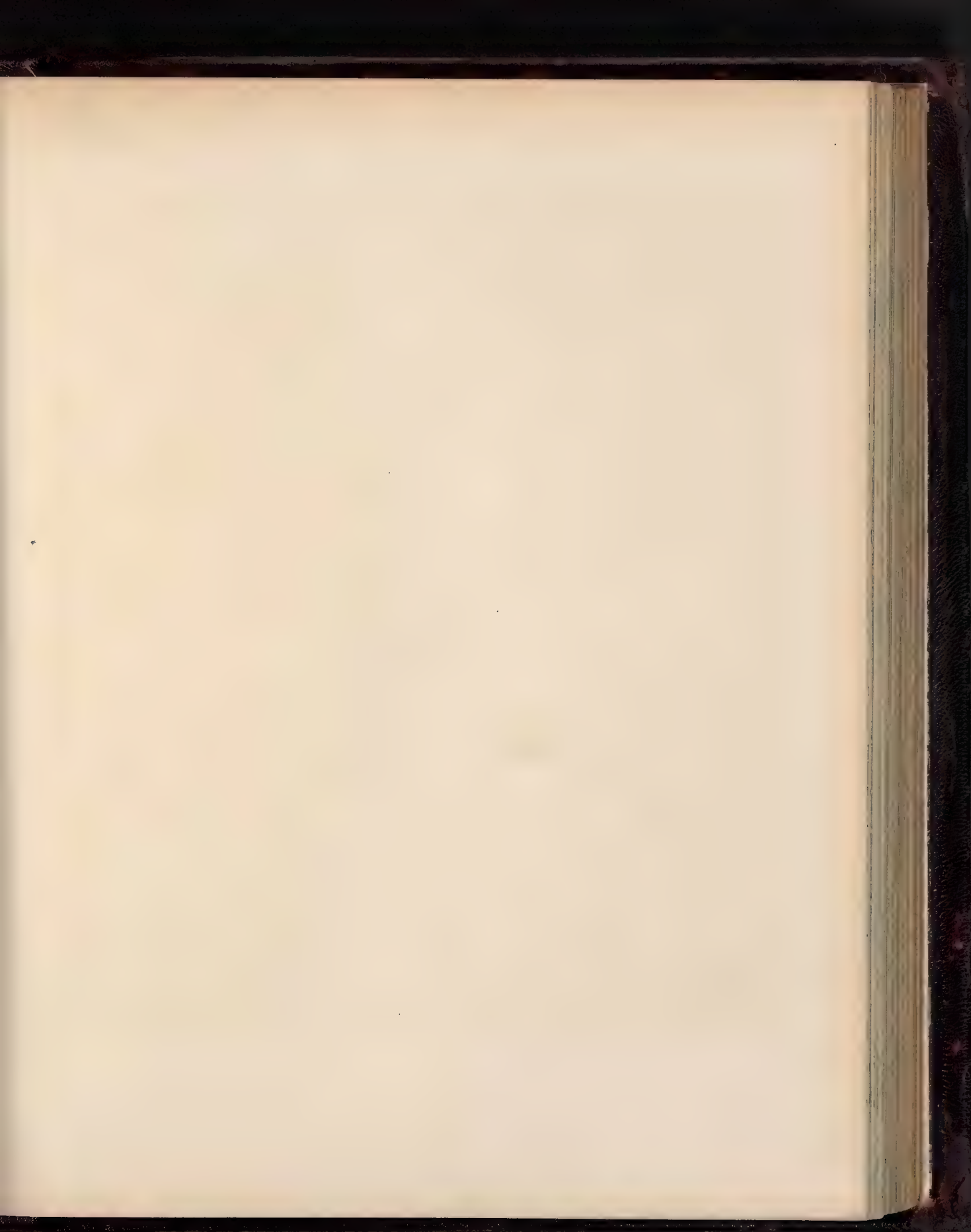
²⁷ Probably

George of Cappadocia.

²⁸ I. e., Abbâ Widhâ; his day is August 6.

²⁹ Pro-

bably the martyr who is commemorated in the Ethiopian Church on December 12.



I. Abbâ Basilicus (?) and his five soldiers.

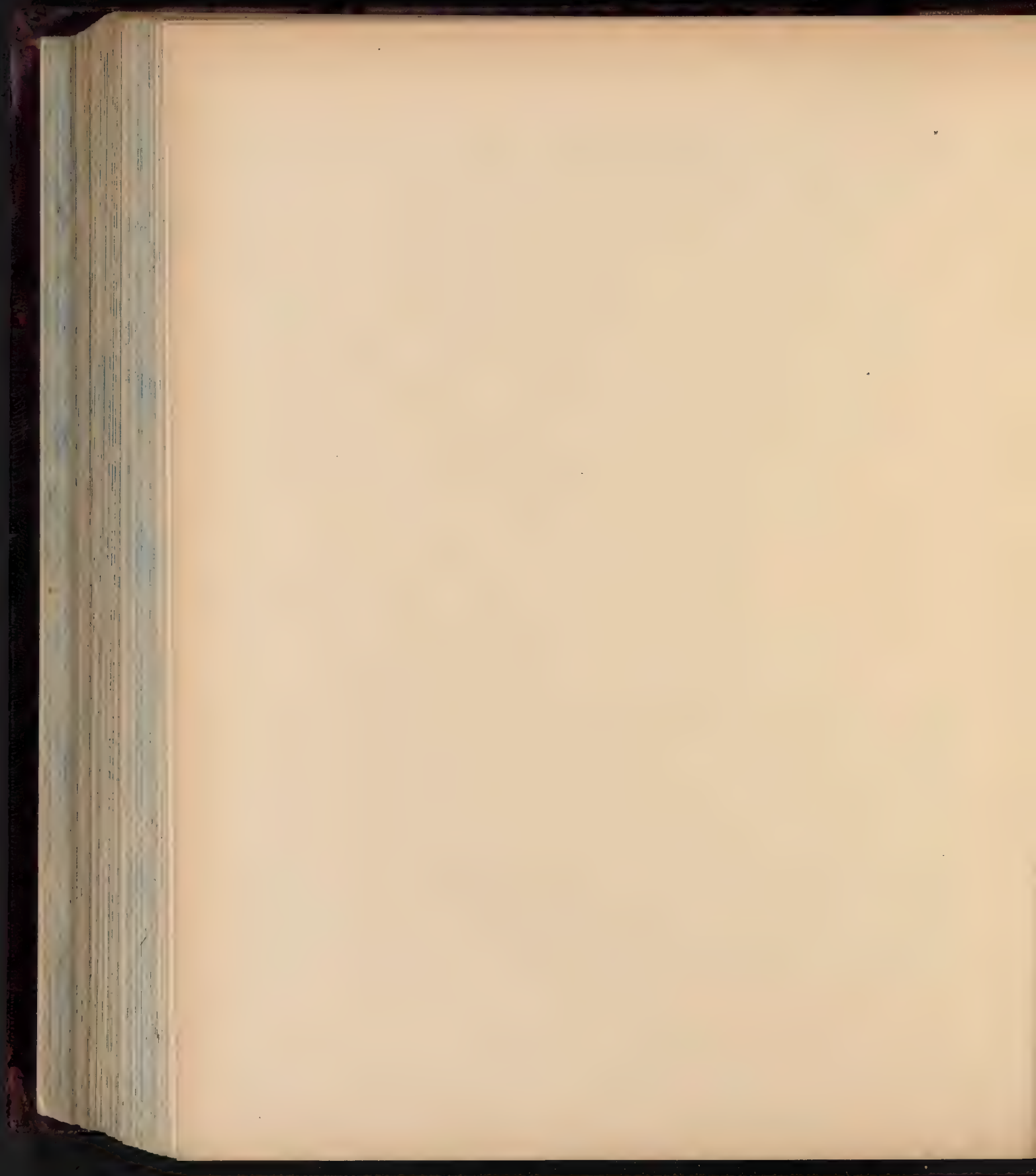


II. Quiricus and his mother Julitta.

Protomartyr¹, and Joseph², and Nicodemus³, and Pilate the judge⁴, and Joseph the blacksmith⁵, and Cyprian⁶, and Cosmas⁷, and Damianus⁸, and Abîmôs⁹, and Leontius¹⁰, and Abrânîus¹¹, and Theodota their mother.

And there came besides the whole company of the martyrs and the whole company of those who had laboured [in the ascetic life],—John Senhûtâya¹², and Theocritus¹³, and Philemon¹⁴, and Maanzer (?), and Arsalêdes the monk¹⁵, and Absâdî¹⁶, and Hellanicus¹⁷, and Paul the Teacher¹⁸, and Gamaliel¹⁹ the Teacher of the Law, and Theodore the Conqueror, and Claudius²⁰ the Pure, and Stephen of Antioch, and Theodore the captain of the host²¹, and Victor [Fol. 128b] the son of Mâryâ, and Justus²², and [his son] Obôlî, and his forty soldiers [who were] holy martyrs²³. And there came besides Athanasius²⁴ the martyr, and Abbâ Nôba the soldier of Christ²⁵, and Abbâ Cyriacus²⁶, and Abbâ Basilicus²⁷, and his five soldiers [who were] martyrs, and John the son of the blacksmith, and Quiricus²⁸ and his mother Julitta²⁹,

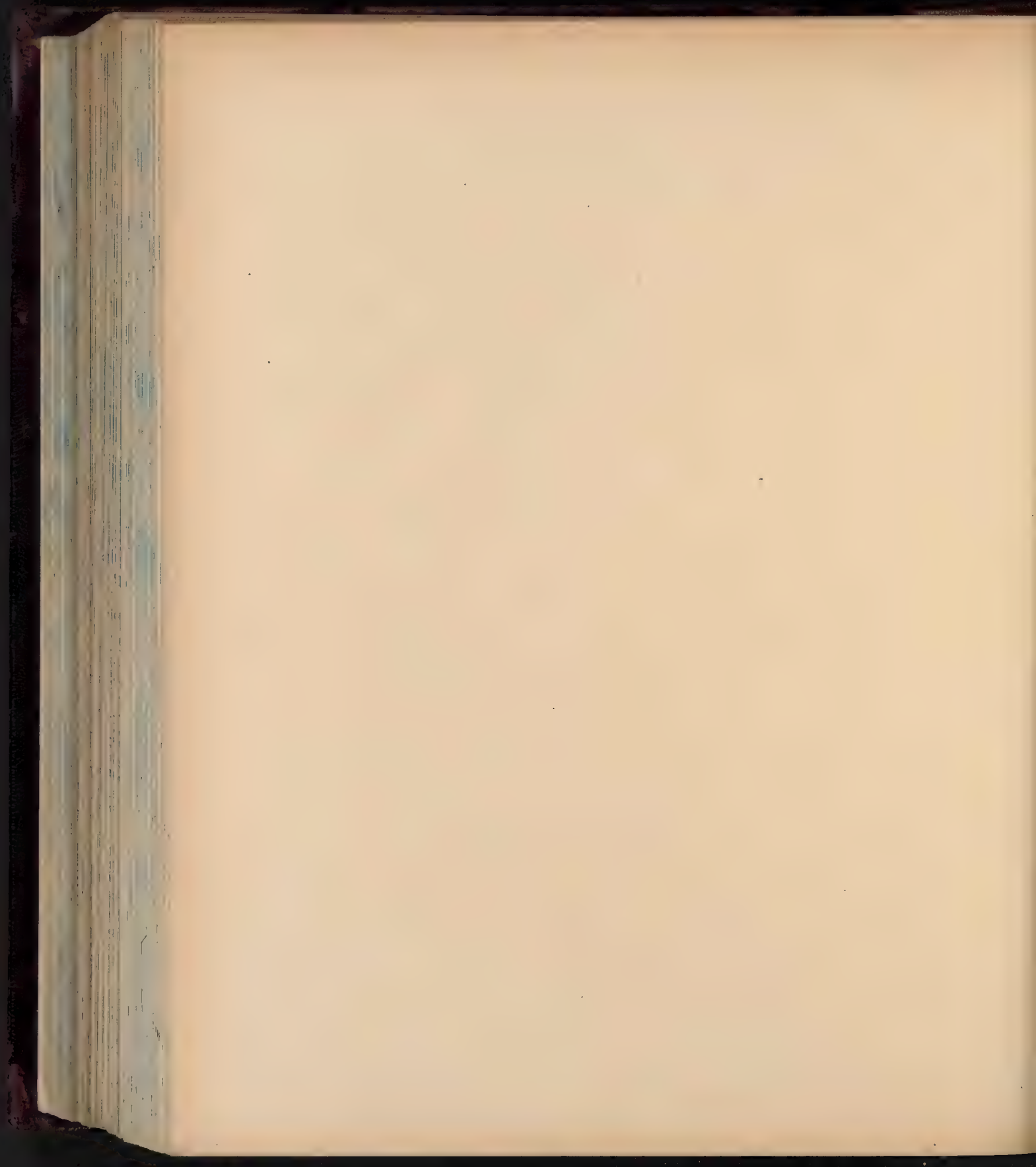
¹ See Acts of the Apostles, VI. 5, 8. ² Joseph, son of Heli (?) ³ See John III. 1. ⁴ Governor of Judea; see Luke III. 1. ⁵ He is referred to in the Gadla Hawâryât. ⁶ His days are October 7, and November 3. ⁷ His day is June 1. ⁸ His day is August 23. ⁹ Epimachus? His day is November 1. ¹⁰ His day is January 1. ¹¹ Abracius? His day is December 13. ¹² I. e., John Eleemosynarius; his day is May 8. ¹³ His day is March 17. ¹⁴ His day is November 27. ¹⁵ His day is December 14. ¹⁶ His day is September 20. ¹⁷ His day is December 27. ¹⁸ Paul of Tarsus? ¹⁹ See Acts XXII. 3. ²⁰ Probably Claudius the martyr. ²¹ He was a general of the emperor Licinius, who reigned A. D. 307—324. ²² He was a friend and companion of Obôlî, the captain of forty soldiers. ²³ They suffered martyrdom under the emperor Licinius at Sebaste in Armenia, about A. D. 320. The story of the finding of their relics is told by Sozomen *Hist. Eccles.*, lib. IX. cap. 2. ²⁴ He is commemorated on November 3. ²⁵ His day is June 23. ²⁶ His day is July 19. ²⁷ His day is August 14. ²⁸ His day is January 14. ²⁹ His day is January 16.

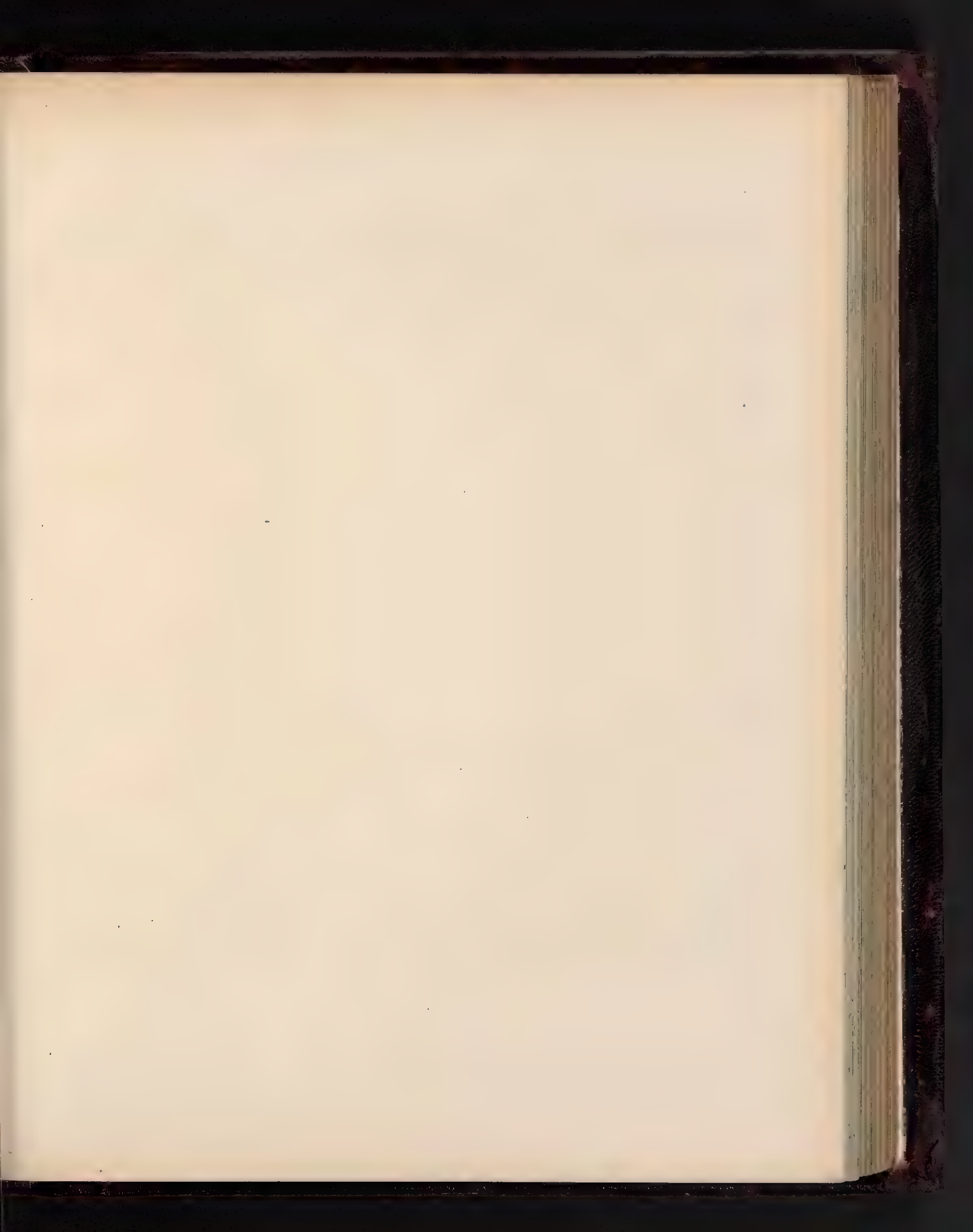


and the seven children who hid themselves with their dog¹. And there came, besides, the seven children who hid themselves in the cave², and the saints Mînâs³, and Mercurius, and Anicetus⁴, and Marmehnâm⁵.

And there came, besides, the whole company of the prophets, each one according to his tribe; and the company of the Apostles each in his proper order; and the company of the righteous each in his place; and the company of the martyrs⁶ each in his place; and the company of the priests each in his order. And David the king came with [Fol. 129a] his lyre, and he was singing a song so sweet and lovely that it made a man's bones to melt as he sang his beautiful music; for it was exceedingly beautiful to hear. And he said, "Hallelujah to the Father! Hallelujah to the Son! Hallelujah to the Holy Ghost! Adoration be to the Father! Adoration be to the Son! Adoration be to the Holy Ghost! Power, kingdom, and dominion be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost! Might, honour, compassion, and mercy be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost! Holiness, lowly thanksgiving, peace, and salutation be to the Holy Trinity, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost! Knowledge, and blessings, and sanctifications be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost!" And all celestial⁷, and all terrestrial beings bowed low, and worshipped, saying, "[This praise] is meet and right [Fol. 129a] for the Holy Trinity, and for Him Who hath made It to be pleased with man." And it came to pass

* Their names are:—Januarius, Felix, Philippus, Sylvanus, Alexander, Vitalis, and Martialis. They are said to have been martyred at Rome about A. D. 150. ² I. e., the Seven Sleepers of Ephesus; for the text of their history see Guidi, *Testi orientali inediti sopra i Sette dormienti di Efeso*, Rome, 1885. ³ His day is October 7. ⁴ The friend of Photinus. ⁵ His day is December 14. ⁶ Read ἁγῶνι: ⁷ Read ἁγῶνι:







Christ conversing with Gabra Krēstōs, and promising to grant him all his petitions.

that when the man of God saw all [these beings], he worshipped God Almighty, and he gave praise to Him and to all the saints, saying, "Hallelujah, Hallelujah, Hallelujah. Amen. May it be! May it be!" May His blessing be with His servant Takla Hāymânôt, and with his wife Walatta Šëyôn!

[Fol. 131^b] Then our Lord Jesus Christ spake unto Gabra KrĚstŏs in the sight of the people, saying, "O man of God, behold I have heard thy petition, [and I have seen] how great hath been thy patient endurance. And behold, I will now give thee rest from toil and affliction, and thou shalt enter into everlasting joy, and into never-ending gladness; and because thou hast rejected the things which are in [this] fleeting world, a kingdom of delight hath been prepared [for thee]. Behold now, I will give thee power to cast out devils, and to heal the sick, and those who are afflicted, and the blind and the halt, and the lunatics, and the deaf, and the dumb, and those who have withered members, and the paralytics, and those who are lepers, and those who have elephantiasis; and [all] men, whatsoever be the diseases from which each suffereth, shall live and be healed, O my beloved servant." And Gabra [Fol. 132^a] KrĚstŏs said, "O my Lord, hearken Thou unto the petition which I make unto Thee, and give me my reward." Then our Lord said unto him, "O my servant, I say unto thee, O my beloved one, that whosoever shall put his trust in thy prayer, or shall call upon thy name, or shall write a history of thee with his own hand, shall sit down with thee [as one of the] first at the feast of one thousand years which is prepared for the saints."

And Gabra KrĚstŏs said, "Do Thou this likewise for him who shall have the narrative of my faith written, and also for him



"who hath heard of my faith"; and the Lord said, "It shall be even so."

And Gabra Krěstôs said also, "Whosoever shall give wheat, or wine, or incense, or fuel, or oil, or anything which shall contribute towards the making gifts on the day of my commemoration, or who shall give to eat, or who shall eat that which falleth from the crumbs [thereof], do Thou exalt him in the land"; [and the Lord said], "It shall be even so." [Fol. 132^b].

And Gabra Krěstôs said also, "[Do thus also] even if he be not present at the celebration of the festival of my commemoration, and he come hither after the supper is ended and the board [be cleared]"; and the Lord said, "It shall be even so. If he but lick the platter and the cup with his tongue, he shall be at the feast of a thousand years."

And Gabra Krěstôs said also, "Bless those who brought me across the sea when I was returning hither"; and the Lord said, "They shall be blessed."

And Gabra Krěstôs said also, "[Bless] whosoever shall be of use [by giving] bread, or water, or salt, or a platter, or a cup, or wood, or straw, or a bed, or who shall give a wandering stranger a lodging in [his] house, and shall wash his feet on the day of the festival of my commemoration"; and the Lord said, "It shall be even so."

And Gabra Krěstôs said also, "Bless this house in which I have had my habitation, and these two servants who have ministered unto me." [Fol. 133^a] And the Lord said, "This house shall be blessed like Mount Sinai, and [like] Mount Tabor, and My praise shall never be wanting therein. In it shall be built a shrine to Me in thy name, and they shall offer up therein My Body and My Blood.



"until My second coming. And these young men shall be blessed, and they shall rest beneath thy shadow."

And Gabra KrĚstôs said also, "Bless my father, and my mother, and my bride, who have poured out their blood, and have shed burning tears by reason of my wanderings, and who have worn away their eyelashes, and torn into rags their hearts with crying, and sighing, and wailing"; and the Lord said, "They shall be blessed, and mercy shall be showered upon them. They shall suffer neither hunger nor thirst, and they shall not be separated [Fol. 133*δ*] from thee; and they shall sit down with thee at the feast of one thousand years."

And Gabra KrĚstôs said also, "Bless Thou the servants and the handmaidens of the house of my father who did evil unto me when I caused them trouble through my offences. It was not of their own will that they did it, but Bêlhôr¹ the Adversary made them to act thus, wishing to make their minds careless in respect of me, and so he cast the arrow of hatred [of me at them]; do Thou forgive their transgression." And the Lord said, "I have forgiven them."

And Gabra KrĚstôs said also, "Let it be, indeed; let it be!"

And Gabra KrĚstôs, the man of God, said, "Bless all my brethren, the poor, and the needy, and those who are in necessity, and the aged widows, and the wretched who are ready to die"—both men and women²—and old women, and children, and priests³, and deacons, and readers, and [Fol. 134*α*] singers, and doorkeepers, and the priest unto whom our Lady Mary appeared, and all the

¹ I. e., Βελίαρ, a name of Satan; see 2 Corinthians VI. 15.

² Read 𐌲𐌿𐌹𐌸𐌰𐌹 :

³ Read 𐌲𐌿𐌹𐌸𐌰𐌹 :



"poor and the needy who dwell in the courtyard of the Church of our Lady Mary in the city of Armenia; O Lord, forget them not." And the Lord said, "The mercy of My Father, and the compassion of the Holy Spirit shall keep them in memory."

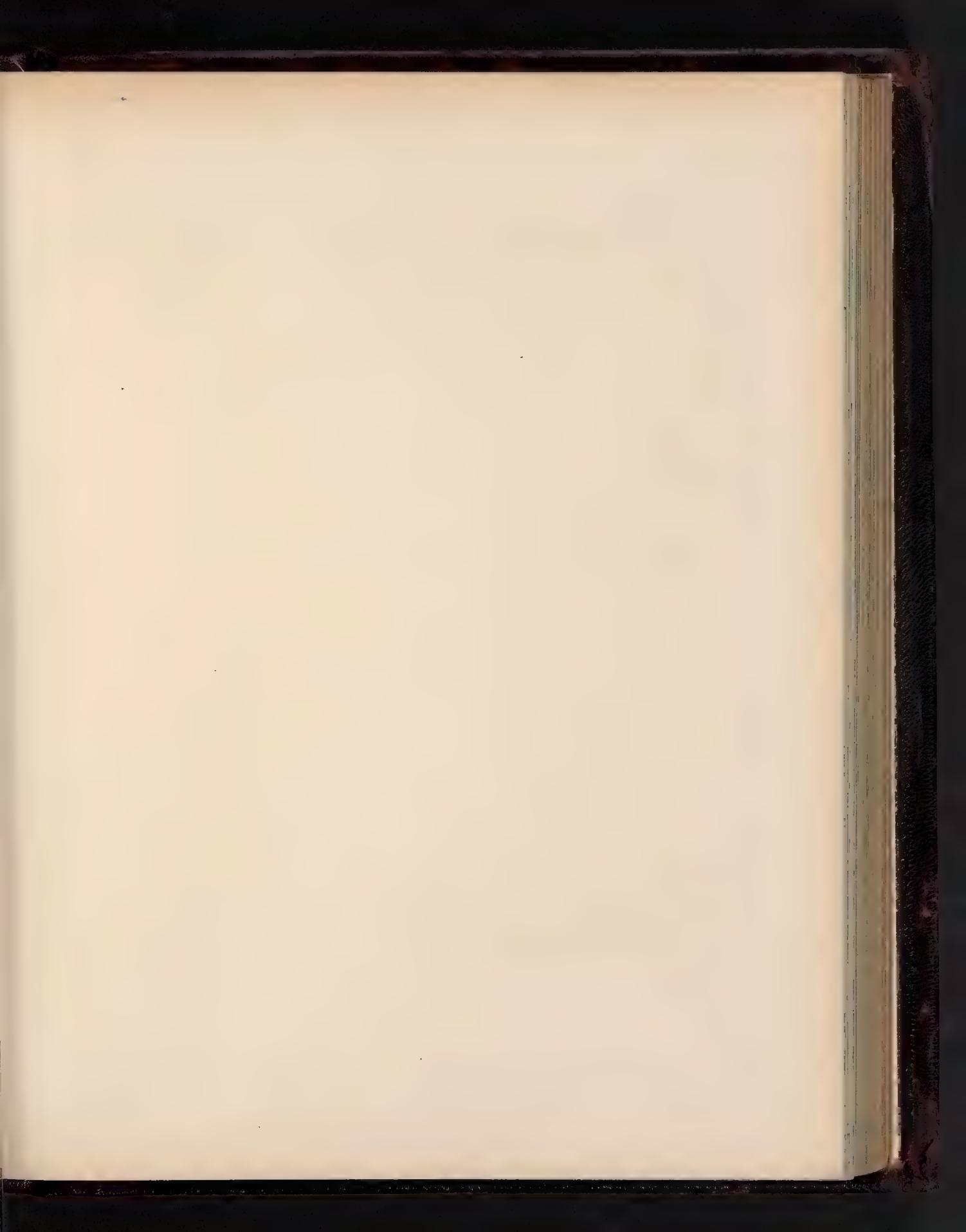
And Gabra KrĚstôs said also, "Bless, O Lord, the Empire of Byzantium and Constantinople, and the kingdom of Ethiopia, and the kingdom of Armenia." And the Lord said, "Their cities shall be blessed, and their countries, and their mountains, and their waters, and their rivers, and their abysses¹, and their rocks, and their trees, and their grass, and their growing crops, [Fol. 134 *b*] and their grain harvest, and their cattle, and their sheep, and all their possessions, and their [arch]bishops, and their patriarchs, and their bishops, and their priests, and their deacons, and their singers, and their ministrants, and their royal houses, and their young men, and their virgins, and their aged folk, and their children, and their poor men, and their rich men, and their handmaidens, and their vines, and their plantations, and their fruits, and everything which belongeth unto them." And the Lord said again, "The mercy of the Holy Trinity shall descend upon those who believe in Me."

And the man of God said [also], "Bless with Thy mercy all those who are gathered together on the day of the festival of my commemoration, having their belief [Fol. 135 *a*] in Thee, and those who shall weep and cry when they hear the book² of my history [read], whether it be in the churches, or whether it be in the cities, or whether it be in the open country." And the Lord said, "It shall be even as thou sayest. Where thy body shall be laid, and where thy bones shall be buried, and where the festival of thy commemoration

¹ Read ԵԳՐԵՆՈՒՆ : ՆՕՈՂԷՍՈՒՆ :

² Read ԹՈՒԽԻԼ :





I. Gabra Kręstós sending his two servants for the consecrated offerings,
and for pen and paper.



II. Gabra Kręstós writing his life by the aid of the Holy Ghost,
Who appears unto him.

"shall be celebrated, and where thy name shall be invoked, and where
"the book of thy strivings shall be read, there shall compassion, and
"mercy, and life, and redemption with thy love be for ever and for
"ever. Amen."

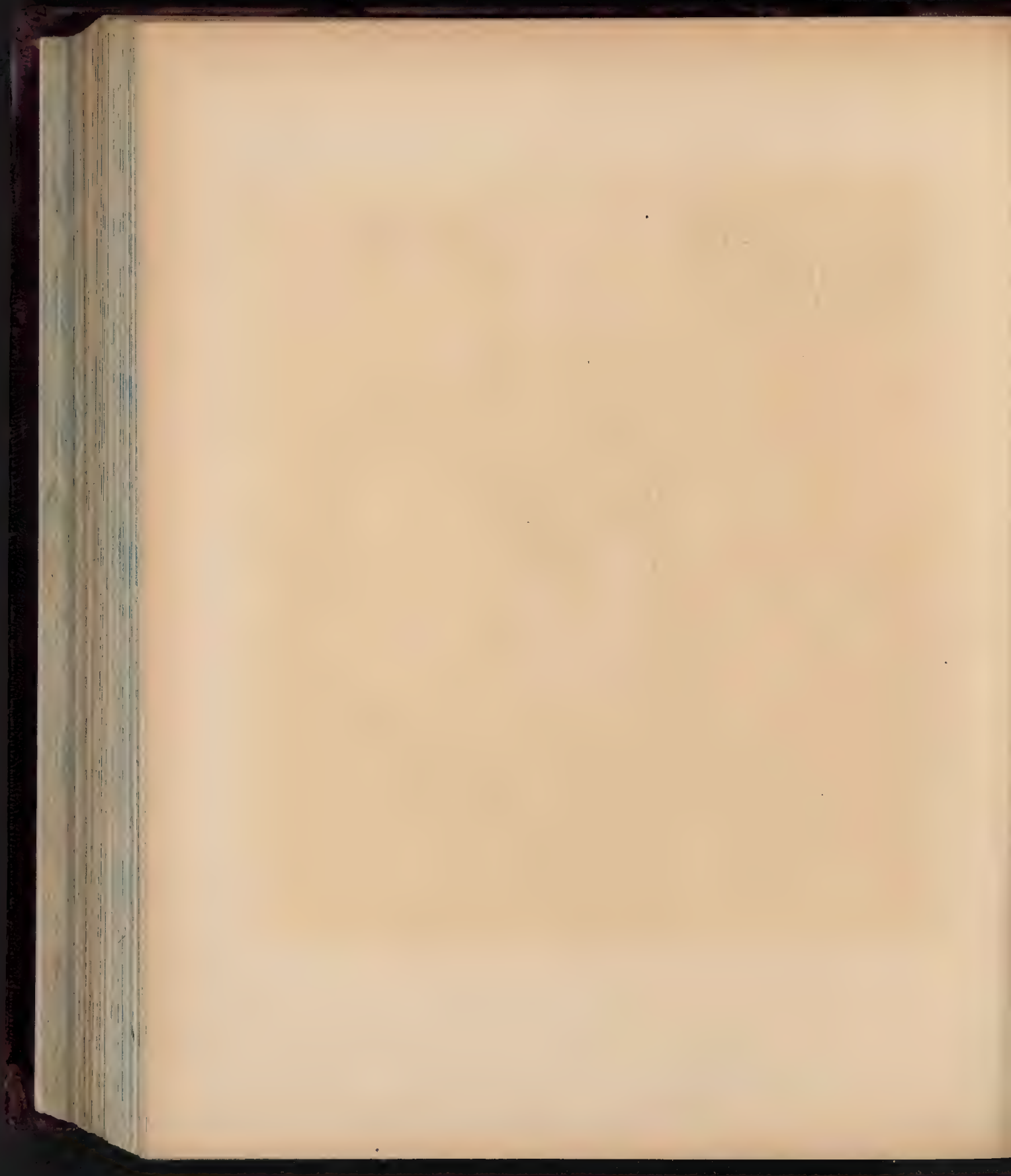
[Fol. 136 δ] And it came to pass when the man of God heard
these words he rejoiced. And he called the two servants who were
wont to minister unto him, and said unto them, "O my brethren, let
"one of you bring me some paper and a pen, and let the other of
"you go to the church and bring me the blessed, consecrated offerings";
and they made haste and went and brought them to him even as he
had told them. And Gabra Krěstŏs wrote the history of himself with
his own hand, and the Holy Ghost, Who had descended unto him
from heaven, gave him His help in writing it; and he wrote everything
of it, from the beginning thereof even unto the time of his death.
And he wrote also the account of his father and of his mother, how they
had reared him well with love, and honour, and joy, and how they
taught him the books^{*} of wisdom, and discipline, and the knowledge
[Fol. 137 a] which is in [the writings of] Nīṭār (?). And after he had
finished writing he received the blessed, consecrated offerings.

Then the man of God rose up, and prayed, and cried out
upon the names of God Almighty, according to the letters of the
alphabet²:—

- [א] *Aleph.* "Blessed are those whose ways are pure."
[ב] *Bēt.* "Wherewithal shall a young man make straight his way?"
[ג] *Guemēl.* "Reward Thy servant."
[ד] *Dālēt.* "My soul cleaveth unto the dust."
[ה] *Hē.* "Teach me, O Lord, the way of Thy righteousness."

^{*} Read מִסְכָּרִי :

² See the first verse of each section of Psalm CXIX.





Gabra Krěstôs holding the paten with the consecrated bread in it.





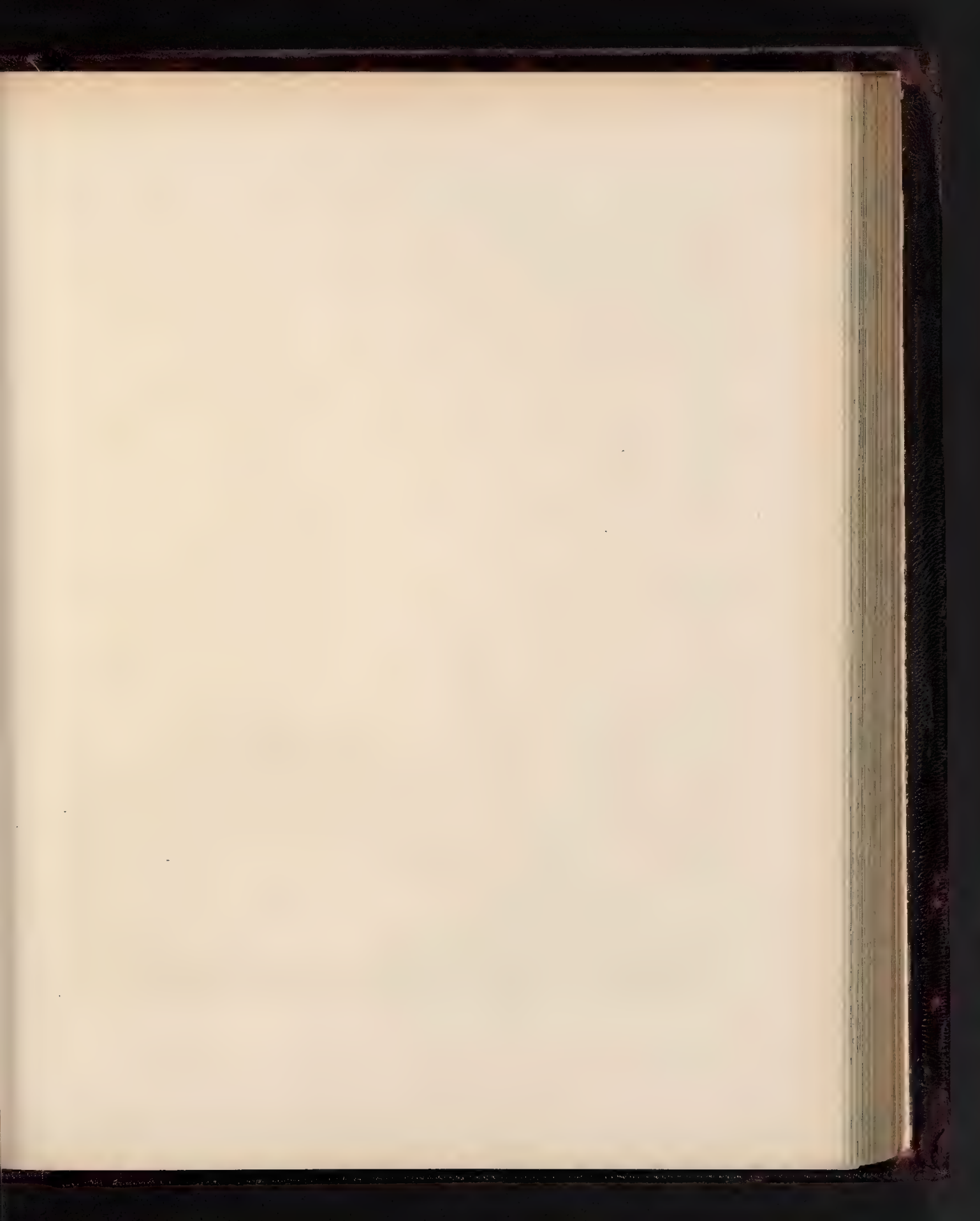


Gabra Krēstōs receiving the Eucharist from the hands of the Lord Christ.

- [ו] *Wāw.* "Let Thy mercy come upon me, O Lord."
 [ז] *Zāya.* "Remember Thou Thy word in which Thou hast made Thy servant to trust."
 [ח] *Hēt.* "God Almighty is my portion."
 [ט] *Tēt.* "Thou hast wrought good things for thy servant."
 [י] *Yōd.* "Thy hands have made me and fashioned me."
 [כ] *Kāph.* "My soul departeth in Thy salvation."
 [ל] *Lāméd.* "O Lord, Thy word abideth in heaven." [Fol. 137^δ].
 [מ] *Mēm.* "I have loved Thy law greatly, O Lord."
 [נ] *Nōn.* "Thy law is a lamp unto my feet."
 [ס] *Samketh.* "I have hated evil-doers, but Thy law have I loved."
 [ע] *Aén.* "Thou doest judgment and righteousness."
 [פ] *Pé.* "The report of Thee is wonderful."
 [צ] *Ṣādhé.* "Righteous art Thou, O Lord, and true are all Thy judgments."
 [ק] *Kōph.* "I have cried unto Thee with all my heart, hear me, O Lord."
 [ר] *Rés.* "Look upon my affliction, and redeem me."
 [ש] *Sān.* "Princes have persecuted me without a cause."
 [ת] *Tāw.* "Let my petition draw nigh unto Thee, O Lord."

[Fol. 139^δ] And again he said, "Blessed are those who are undefiled in their ways, and who walk in the law of God Almighty. "Blessed are those who seek after testimony." And he prayed this prayer unto the end, and other prayers also according to his wont; and then he received into his hand [from the Lord] the Eucharist of the Holy Ghost of the blessed and consecrated offerings. And he took the paper [which he had written], and turning his face towards the east, he made the sign of the cross on the right hand and on







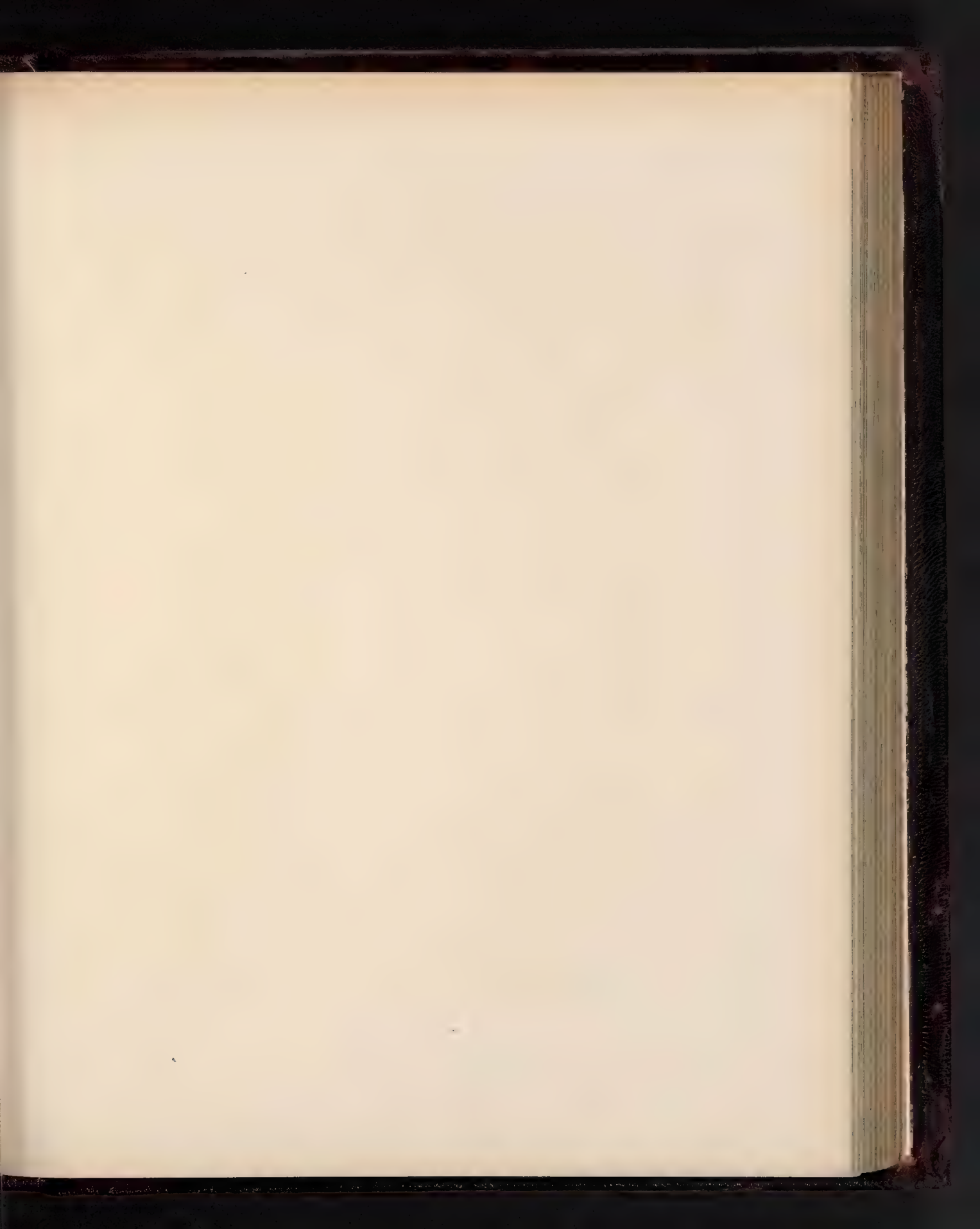
- I Gabra Krēstōs lying dead, clasping in his hands the roll
on which he had written the story of his life.
- II. Christ receiving his soul into His arms whilst the heavenly hosts
sound their trumpets, and the saints rejoice.

the left, and said, "In the Name of the Father and the Son, and the "Holy Ghost"; and he looked up to heaven, and he fell asleep straightway, and his soul departed [from his body]. Then the Lord took his soul, which was as white as snow, and embraced it with His hands and said unto it, "Come in peace, O my undefiled beloved one." And all the company [Fol. 140*a*] of the angels, and all the companies of the Prophets, and of the Apostles, and of the saints, and of the martyrs, and of the holy monks, said, "Hallelujah". And the angels received him with joy, and gladness, and hymns of praise, saying, "Hallelujah, Hallelujah; he who hath laboured in the world shall now "live for ever"; and they brought him into the heavenly Jerusalem. Now his death took place on the day of the Sabbath of the Christians, on the second hour of the twelfth day of the month *Ṭekemt*¹, which is the month *Bâbî* of the months of Byzantium; and a shouting of the angels was heard in the heights above. And God Almighty was sitting in a chariot with the pure soul [of Gabra KrĚstôs] in his hand, and thousands of thousands, and tens of thousands of tens of thousands of angels were saying, [Fol. 140*b*] "Holy, Holy, Holy." And the [angels of] *Sûreyâl* sounded [their] trumpets, and the seven archangels sang hymns of praise, and the holy prophets, and the righteous apostles and martyrs said, "Hallelujah", until Abbâ Theophilus the Archbishop heard the shoutings of the spiritual hosts as they cried "Hallelujah."

And it came to pass on that day when Abbâ Theophilus the Archbishop was present in the church in order to administer the Eucharist—now there were there both the priests, and the deacons, and all the people of Constantinople also—that the Archbishop heard

¹ I. e., October 9.







Theophilus, the Archbishop of Constantinople, whilst praying in his church, hears the sounds of the trumpets and of the angels rejoicing at the coming of the soul of Gabra Krĕstōs into heaven.

straightway a voice from heaven crying out and saying, "Theophilus, "hearken and perform that which I command thee [to do]. Go thou "into the house of Theodosius the Emperor, and [Fol. 141 a] bring "out hither the body of the saint, the man of God, so that thine "Offering may be sanctified." And it came to pass when the people heard these words which a voice cried out and spoke from heaven, that fear and trembling laid hold upon those who were standing there. Then straightway [Theophilus] the Archbishop sent unto the Emperor Theodosius, for the voice [from heaven] had told him that the body of the saint was in the Emperor's courtyard, and he sent a message, saying, "Hast thou in thy courtyard the man of God who "hath died this day and is fit for the kingdom of heaven? For we "have heard a voice from heaven concerning him." And Theodosius the Emperor spake unto his servants, [saying,] "Is there any one "among you who can inform us if there be in the courtyard [Fol. 141 b] "a man who hath died this day being fit for the kingdom of heaven?" And they said unto him, "We know not, O master." Then the Emperor said unto them, "Go ye then, and search and enquire diligently "for him."

[Fol. 143 b] And at this time two servants came and stood before the Emperor, and said unto him, "O master, the wandering pilgrim "whom thou didst confide to our charge is with us, and we are "witnesses that he is fit for the kingdom of heaven; for he hath "taken the food which thou didst send to him to eat both night and "morning, and hath given it unto the needy in secret, whilst he himself "hath fasted both day and night. And besides this, he hath borne "patiently the hatred which all thy menservants and maidservants have "shewn unto him, as well as the blows and evil things which they "have inflicted upon him, O king. And now, let us go and look for





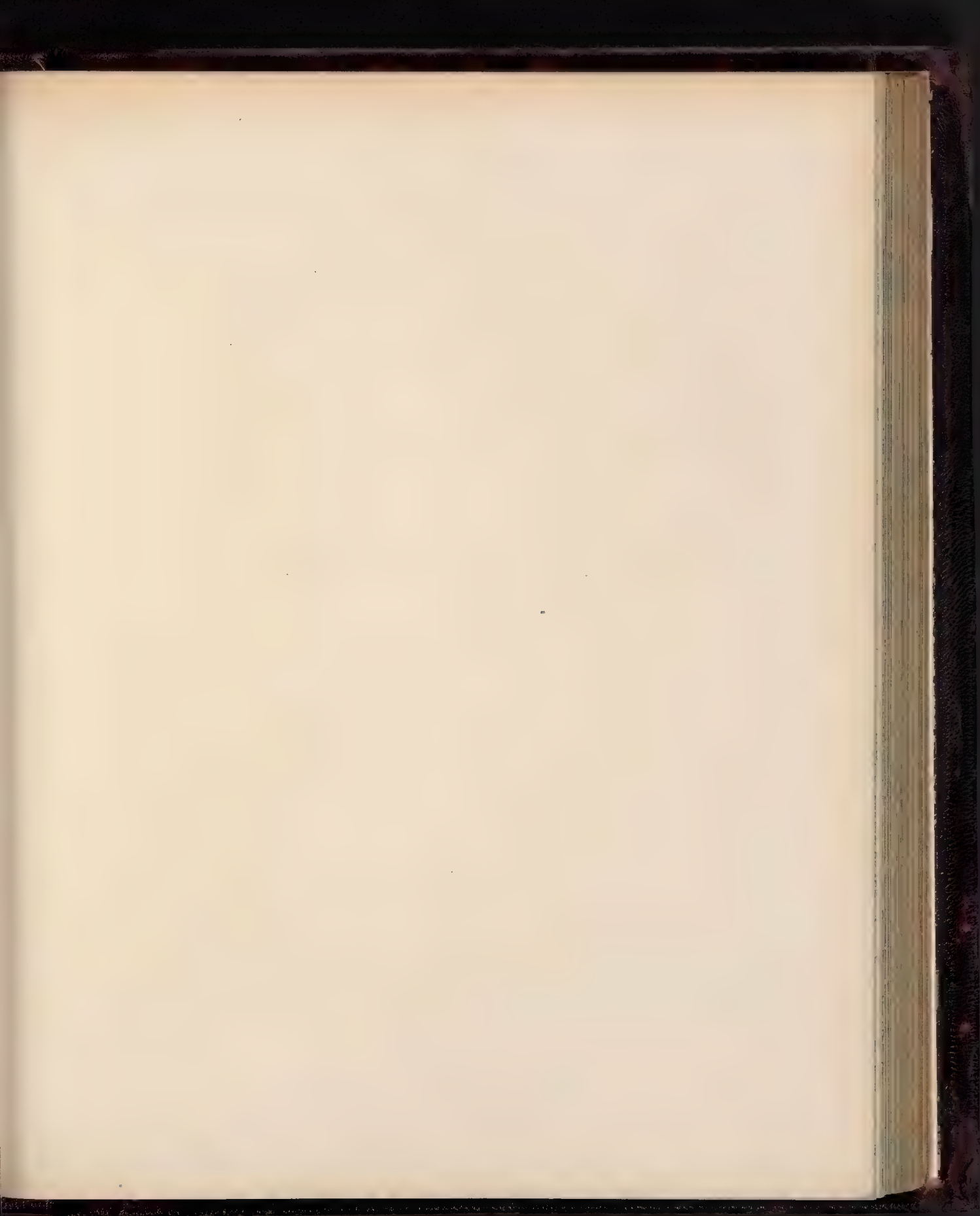
The two servants of the Emperor, who had ministered unto
Gabra Krëstôs, conversing with Theodosius in the presence
of Markhêzâ the Empress.



"him." Then the Emperor said unto them, "Go ye, then, quickly, and look for him"; and the servants went and found the wandering pilgrim, [Fol. 144a] the man of God, [lying] dead; and they told the Emperor [this thing]. And forthwith the Emperor sent unto the Archbishop, [saying,] "Behold now, [the man concerning whom] the voice from heaven spake unto thee hath been found in my courtyard." Then the Archbishop took the books, and the seals, and the crosses, and the censers, and a number of priests, and they went and took the body of the saint from the house of the Emperor. And the Emperor made ready thrones of gold and silver, whereupon the archbishops, and priests, and deacons might sit, and lamps, the number of which was so great that the light thereof was like unto that of the sun; and they brought the body of the saint into the royal palace. And the Archbishop, and the Emperor, and [Fol. 144b] the bishops came to see the body of the saint and to salute him; and they saw a paper grasped tightly in his hand. And they commanded that the paper should be taken from his hand, but they were not able so to do, neither the Emperor, nor the Archbishop. Then the Archbishop said, "Rise up and let us pray unto God Almighty, O my children, before the body of the saint"; so they prayed a prayer, and they made supplication unto God Almighty, and said, "O Lord Christ, have mercy upon us", three times. And straightway the hand of the saint was opened by the will of God Almighty, and the Archbishop drew nigh and took the paper [from it] and read it; and he wept bitterly.

[Fol. 146b] Then the Archbishop gave the paper to the Emperor; and when he had read it, he knew that the saint was, indeed, his beloved son. And straightway he fell upon his face on the ground, and rolled in the dust, and he buffeted his face with his hands, and





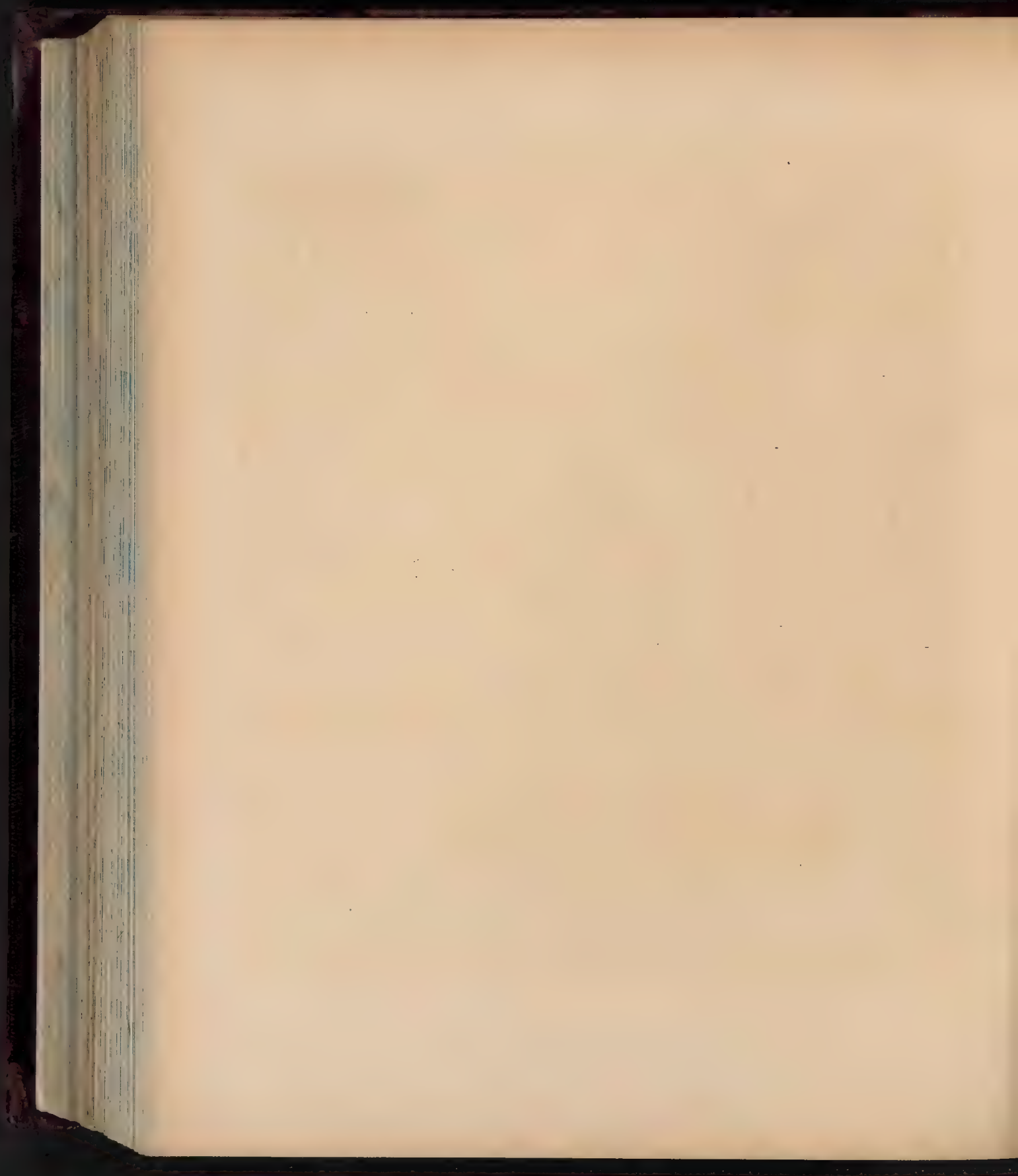
I. The Emperor Theodosius hearing the confession of his servants.



II. The Empress Markhêzâ and the bride of Gabra Krěstôs
hurrying out of the palace to see his dead body.

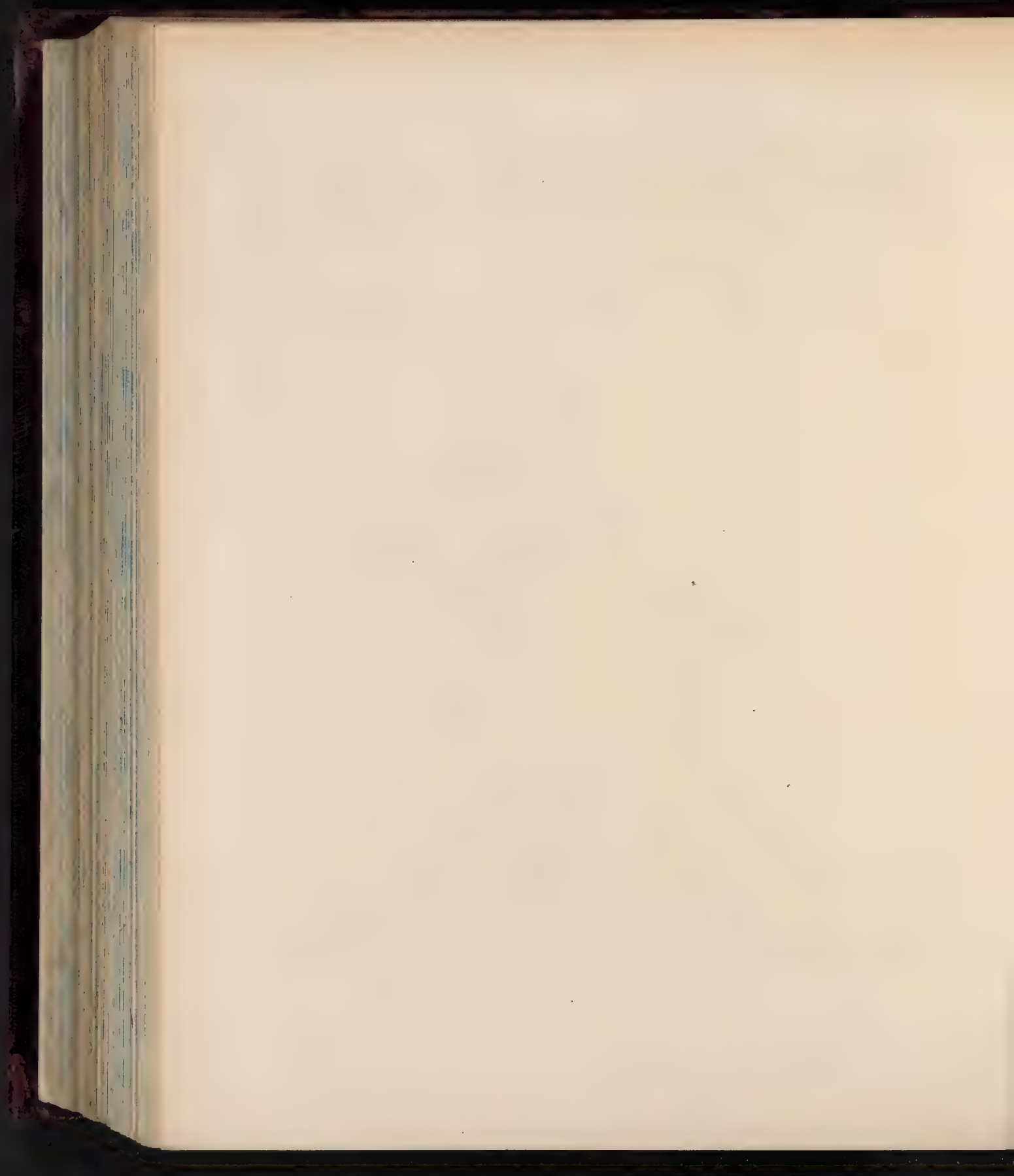
wept bitter tears, and he cried out, saying, "Alas, my beloved son, "whom I did call the light of mine eyes, thou heir to my kingdom! "When thou wast a child I reared thee in love, and honour, and joy; "and I taught thee both wisdom and discipline. In thy youth I did "rejoice in thee, but in thy later age thou hast caused me pain and "sorrow; at one time thou didst delight my heart, but afterwards thou "didst destroy my joy, and didst make my fair beauty to perish. "And thou, though knowing that I was thy father, didst endure "patiently the poverty which thou didst set upon thyself of thine own "freewill, and didst become a being who was despised in the court- "yard [Fol. 147*a*] of thy father for fifteen years, the servants of thy "father meanwhile showering blows upon thee and hating thee, and "pouring out upon thee the washings of the platters and dishes."

And it came to pass that when the Empress Markhêzâ his mother heard [these things] she came forth from the palace running like a mad woman, beating her head, and face, and breast. And she came to the saint and took hold of him, and cried out, saying, "O my son, my beloved one, thou light of mine eyes, whom God "Almighty did give unto me when I asked thee of Him! I had great "rejoicing in thee when I brought unto thee [thy] bride, but thou didst "turn my rejoicing into the sorrow which knoweth no consolation. "I have never ceased to hope that God Almighty would shew thee "unto me [once more]; and He hath regarded my hope [Fol. 147*b*] "and hath brought thee back unto me. And I was blind in the "matter of thee, and I did not recognize thee when thou wert a "being despised and rejected in the courtyard of thy father and "mother, and when thou wert lightly esteemed as a wandering beggar, "and wert, though my own son, one who was hated. Alas! for "fifteen years we made thee to dwell in all the labour, and affliction,





The Archbishop Theophilus reading to the Emperor the account of his son
Gabra Krēstōs, which he had taken from the dead man's hand.

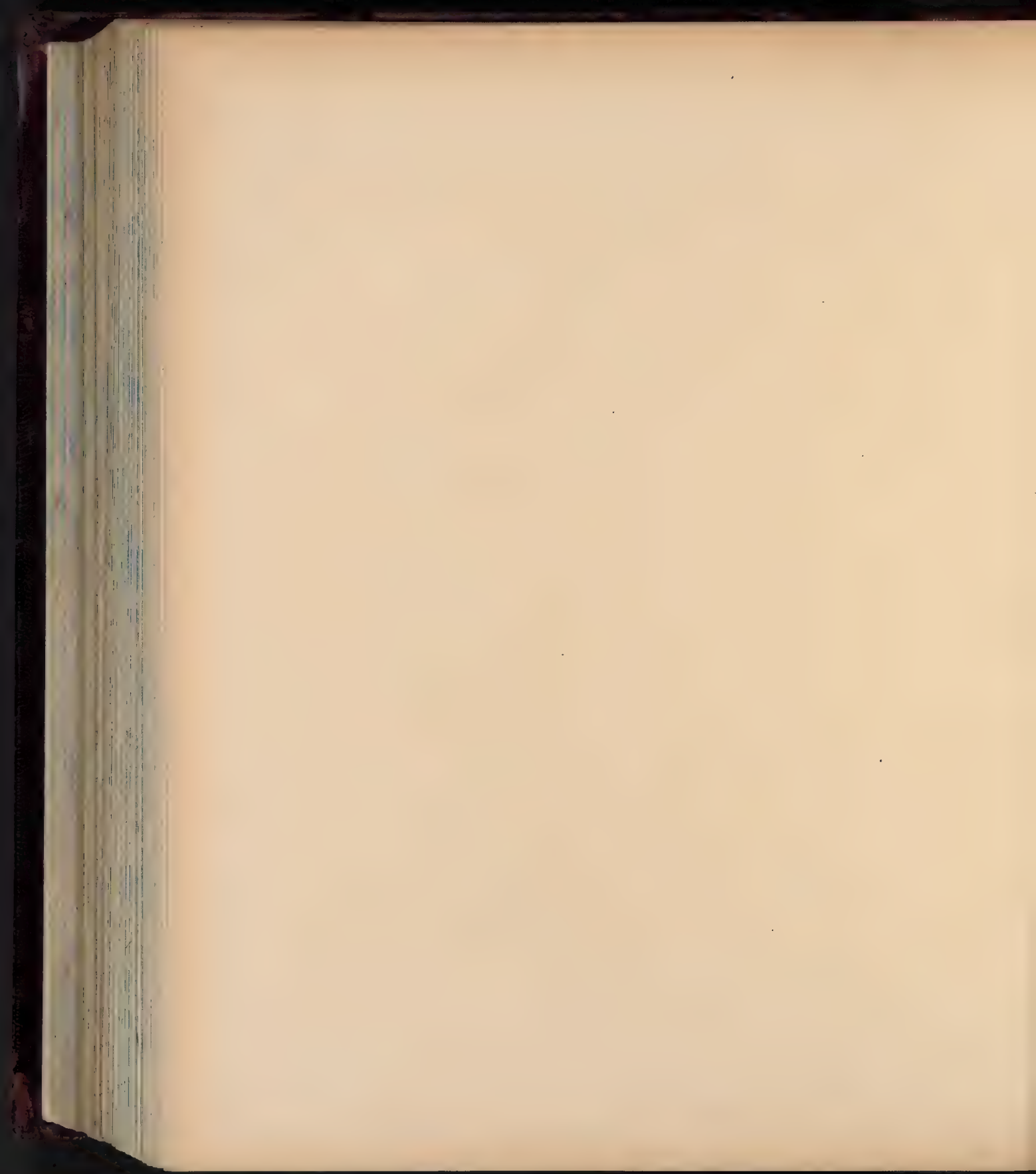


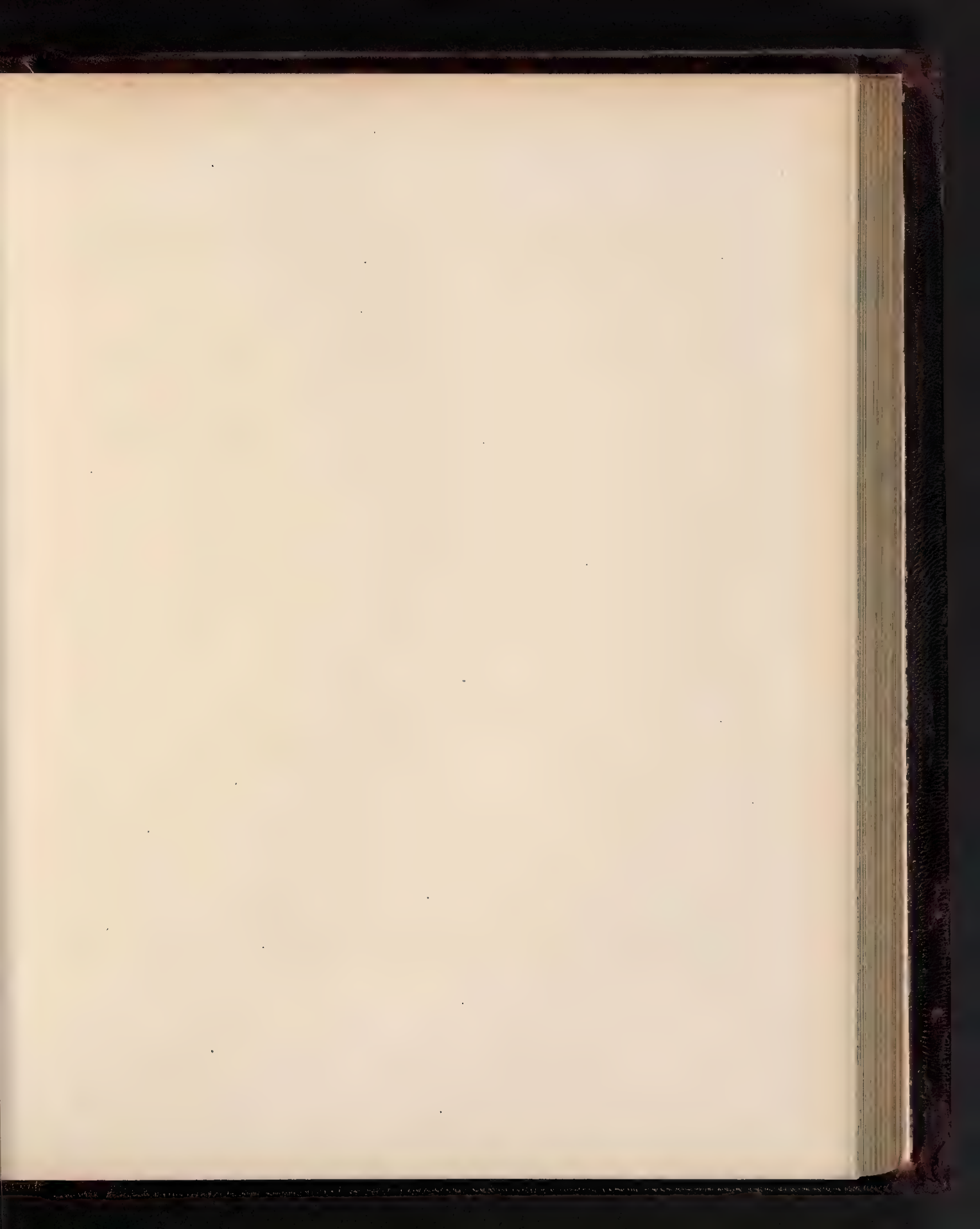
"and suffering which thou hast endured. But behold, O my son, "from now and henceforth, woe be unto my womb which bare thee "for nine months, and woe be unto my hands which clasped thee, "and woe be unto my breasts which suckled thee, and woe be unto "my heart which was smitten with love for thee, and woe be unto "my soul, even until the end of [my] days. Woe be unto me, woe "be unto me, because the sorrow, for which there is no consolation "for ever and for ever, hath smitten me down."

And the bride [of the saint] came forth also with her garments rent, and with her body torn¹ by her nails, [Fol. 148*a*] and she beat her face and cried out as she shed bitter tears, and made woeful lamentation, saying, "O my master and husband, I was crowned "with thee [in marriage] before the ark, but in the bridal chamber "thou didst cast me away [to live] by myself. Woe be unto me, "woe be unto me; I have lived a solitary life for thirty years be- "cause I made a covenant with thee for the working of that which "was good. Woe be unto² me, for sorrow hath filled me, and hath "burned me up like fire, for the death of my husband hath shut me "in on every side. I made supplication unto God Almighty that He "would shew thee unto me, and for this I have waited thirty years; "but He hath turned my petition into weeping and tears, and He "hath revealed me as a bride shut up and sorrowful. Woe be unto "me³, woe be unto me, for I am a poor and wretched widow, being "at the same time a blessed bride [Fol. 148*b*]. Come then, and weep "with me, O ye children of Byzantium and sorrow-stricken Con- "stantinople! I dwelt in hope in God Almighty, and I trusted [to "see] my husband: but now my hope hath perished, and my ex-

¹ Read **ወተከፍተ** :

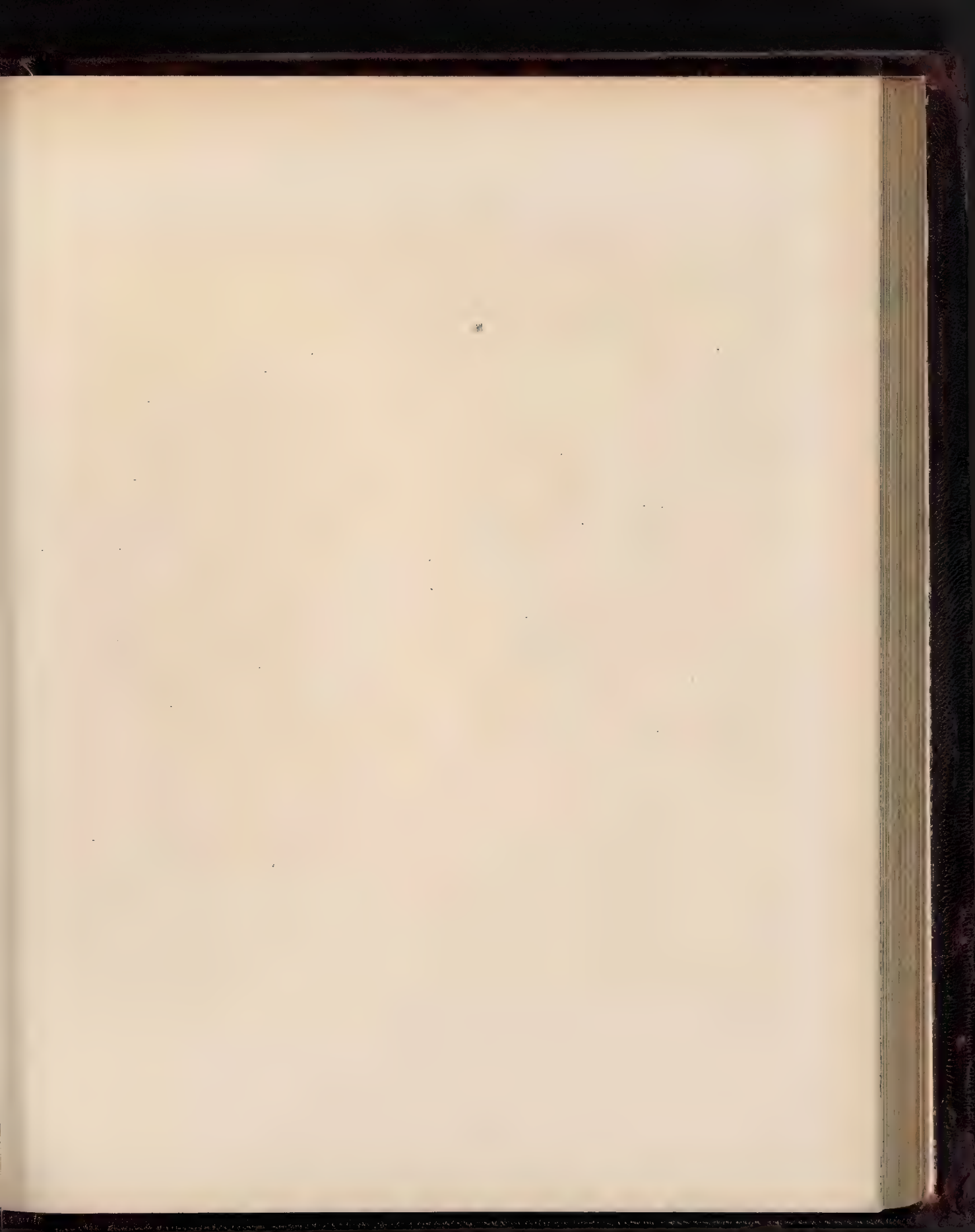
² Read **አሌ : ለተ : አሌ : ለተ :**







The Emperor Theodosius reading the life of his son Gabra Krěstós,
which he had written before he died.





The Emperor Theodosius and the Empress Markhêzâ mourning
the death of their son Gabra Krêstôs.

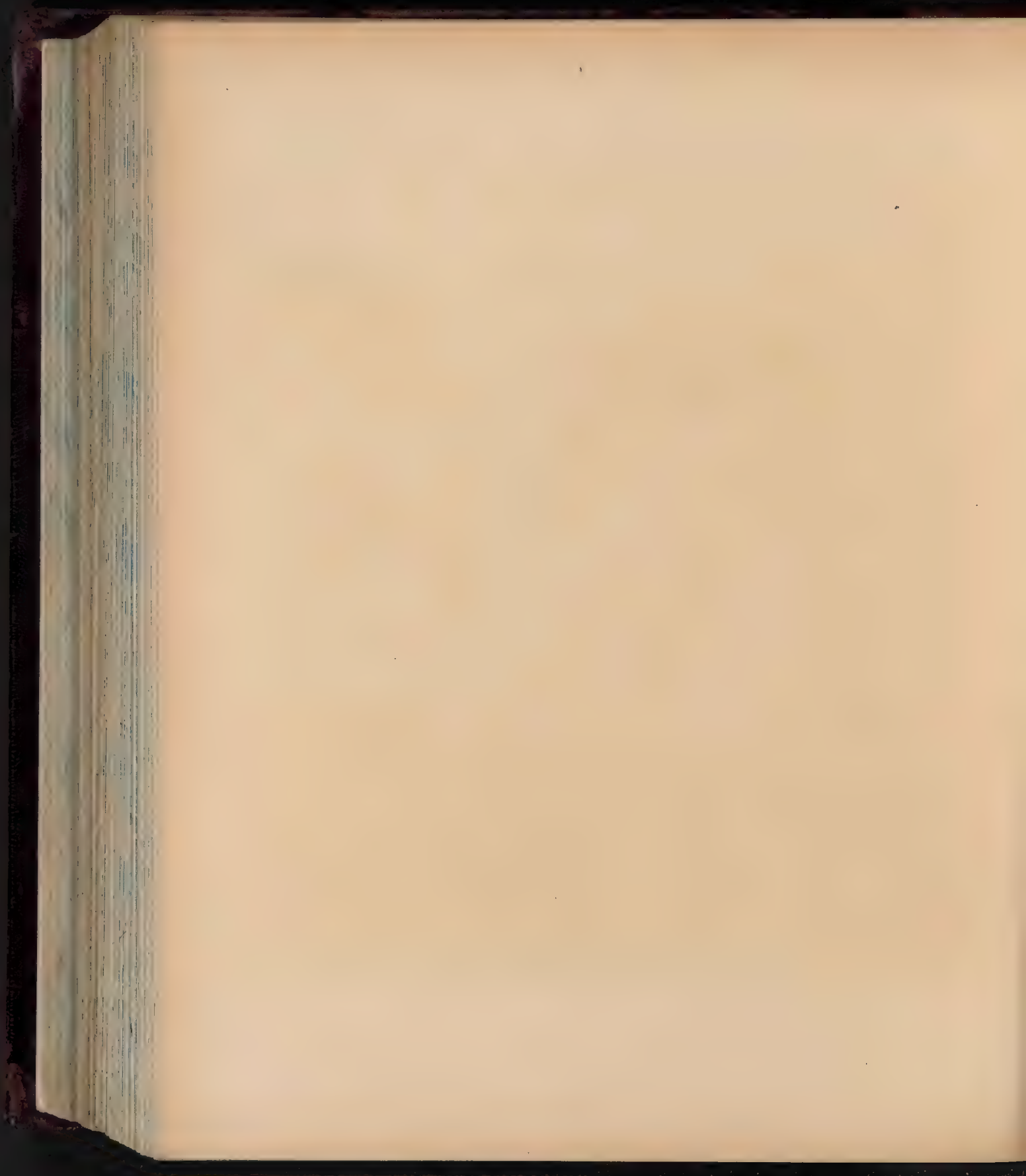
"pectation" is blotted out. And from now and henceforth, O ye children of Byzantium and Constantinople, I will make myself like unto the "turtle-dove, which bird on the death of her mate teareth her face, and slitteth her tongue, and paireth not again with any other bird after the death of her mate; but she goeth to the desert, and liveth in the mountains and hills therein by herself. And when another dove cometh to her to mate with her she crieth out, and when the male bird heareth the sound of her voice he knoweth that she is a widow, and that her tongue is slit, and he leaveth her and goeth away". [Fol. 149a] So likewise shall I be until I die."

[Fol. 151b] Then those servants of the Emperor who had evilly entreated the saint came forth, and they wept and cried out, saying, "Woe be unto us, woe be unto us, O our master, in that being thy servants we continued to treat thee with contempt, and to hate thee, and to work evil things against thee. Woe be unto us, woe be unto us, for there are none who were before us who have transgressed as we have done. When the people shall hear the story of us we shall be lightly esteemed and hated. For besides this the evil which we have worked upon thee hath never been wrought upon [any other] man; yet thou, knowing full well that we were thy servants, didst patiently endure our deeds."

And it came to pass that when the people who were in the country of Constantinople heard that the Emperor had found his son, and that a voice concerning him had come down from heaven, they all came to visit him. And on that day in [Fol. 152a] the house of the Emperor Theodosius there were bitter weepings, and cryings, and

¹ Read **†049** :

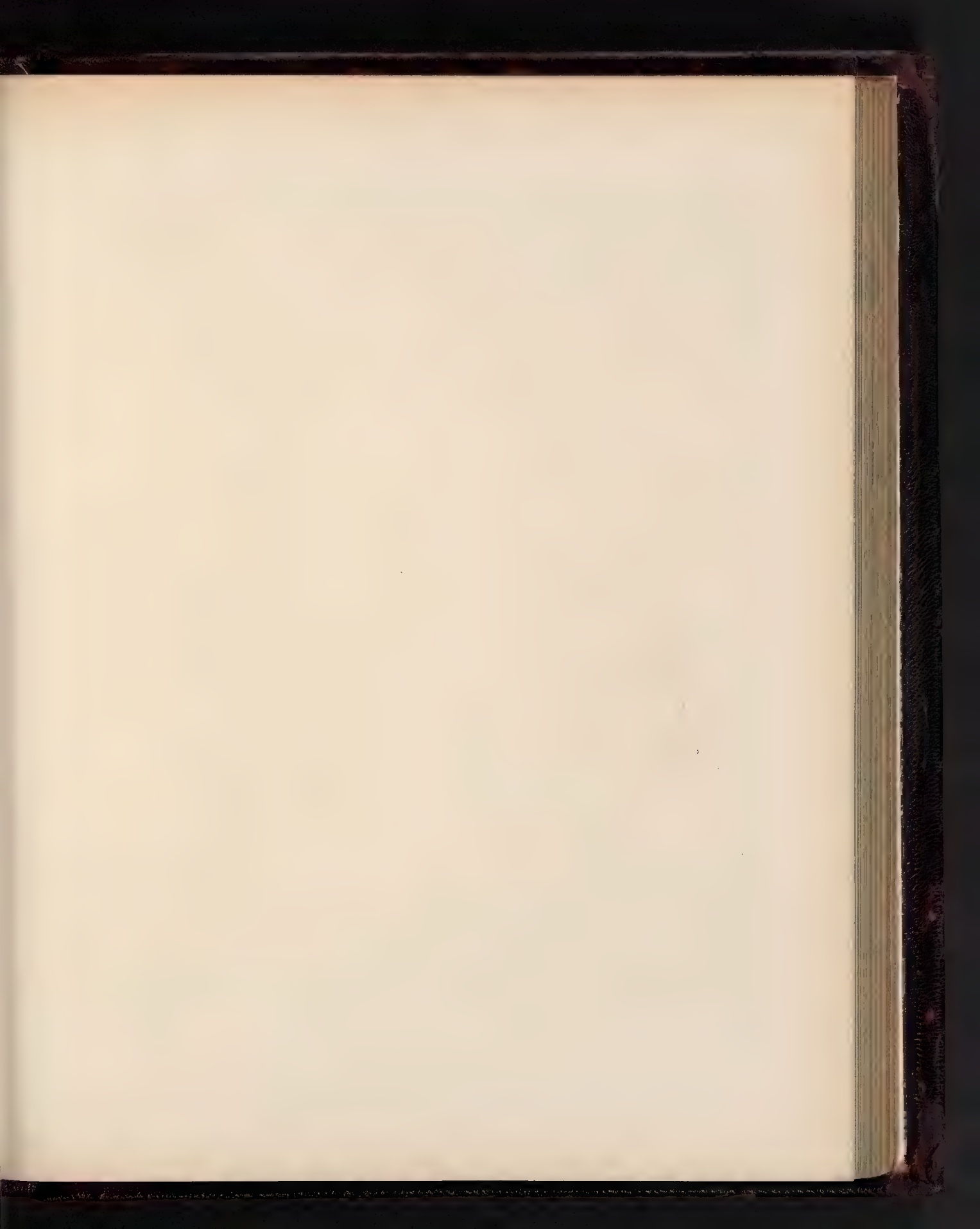
² See Lauchert, *Geschichte des Physiologus*, pp. 257, 258; and Hommel, *Physiologus*, p. 23.





The Emperor with the priests and deacons going to take
his son's body to the church.







The bride of Gabra Kręstôs bewailing her sad fate, and taking a
vow to lead a solitary life.

tears, because the Emperor's son had dwelt [therein] as one lightly esteemed, and because he had died without the Emperor knowing him. But there was, however, joy and gladness in the house of the Emperor Theodosius, because they had found the body of a saint which would become a means of salvation. And on that day there came multitudes of folk who were sick, and the diseased, and the blind, and the lame, and the dumb, and people with rotting limbs, and people with withered members, and the dumb, and they touched, and saluted the body of the saint, and they were all made whole straightway, and recovered from their sicknesses.

Now there was a mighty crowd gathered together there [on that day]. And the Archbishop commanded the priests and the deacons to take the body of the saint and to place it in the church; but by reason of the great crowd there assembled they were not able to [Fol. 152^b] deposit the body of the saint therein. Then the Archbishop said unto the Emperor, "Give orders that [thy servants] "bring out from thy treasury much gold and silver, and let them "scatter it before the gate[s of thy palace], so that the people may "depart from here and go and pick up the gold and the silver; for "when all the poor, and the needy, and the multitudes of the people "have departed the press shall be lessened, and we shall be able to "lay the body of the saint" [in the church]. Then the Emperor straightway brought forth much money, and did even as the Archbishop had said; but there was none who departed to pick up the gold or the silver, for they thought that the body of the saint, which would become a means of life and of salvation for them, was much better than the money. And amid great thronging and outcry they brought along the body, and took it into the church; [Fol. 153^a] and they made ready the Eucharist, and the Archbishop consecrated it, and



The Archbishop, and the Emperor and his servants trying to take the body of his son to the church, but are prevented from so doing by the multitude.





The Emperor Theodosius casting gold and silver coins broadcast before the gates of his palace, with the view of drawing away the crowds from the road leading to the church; the people, however, will not pick them up, but prefer to stay near the body of the saint.



I. The funeral chest in which the body of Gabra Krěstós is to be laid, and the church in which it is to be buried.

PLATE XCII.



II The body of Gabra Krěstós being swathed in fine linen by the Emperor and Empress, and being laid in its coffin.

administered [it] to them. And when the Eucharist was ended they wrapped the dead body of the saint, the man of God, in purple raiment, and they buried it in a chest in the church; and light descended upon his grave which gave life unto all those who were sick and diseased. May the prayer, and the blessing, and the gift of help, and the perfection of the patient endurance of Gabra Krěstôs be with his beloved Takla Hăymânôt, and with his beloved [wife] Walatta Šĕyôn, for ever and for ever! Amen, and Amen; may it be! may it be!

Whosoever shall steal or shall carry away [this book], by the power of Peter and of Paul let him be accursed!



THE HISTORY OF TAKLA-MÂRYÂM WHO WAS
SURNAMED MABÂ' ŞĖYÔN.

(Fol. 2a.) በስመ : አብ : ወወልድ : ወመን
ፈስ : ቅዱስ : ፩አምላክ : ንጽሕፍ : እንክ :
መጽሐፈ : ለተዝካረ : መድኅን : ዘይትነብ
ብ : ለለወርት : በገጸ : ቅድስት : ቤተ :
ክርስቲያን : ዘከሠተ : ሎቱ : ለብፁዕ : መባ
አ : ጽዮን : ምክንያተ : ድኅን : ዘተውህበ :
ለአማንያን : ወዕብን : ዕቅድት : ለመናፍቃ
ን : ዘያክብር : ለዝንቱ : በዓል : በኃይለ :
መስቀሉ : ዕቁብ : ለይኩን ። ዘሰ : ያሰትቶ :
ወዘይጸዕል : ርሒቀ : ለይኩን : እምክፍለ :
ቅዱሳን : ዘያፈቅር : ለመድኃኒን : ረድኤቱ :
የሃሉ : ምስለ : ነፍሰ : ኃጥእ : ገብሩ : ተክ
ለ : ሃይማኖት : ወምስለ : ፍቅርቱ : ወለተ :
ጽዮን : ለዓለመ : ዓለም : አሜን ።

ስምዑኬ : ኩልክሙ : ማኅበረ : ክርስቲ
ያን : በአእዛነ : ልብ : ወግበሩ : ተዝካረ : ሞ
ቱ : ለመድኃኒን : ኢየሱስ : ክርስቶስ : በእ

ንቲአነ : ተሰቅለ : ሐመ : ወሞተ ። ከመ : ያ
ድኅነን : እምቅ (Fol. 2b.) ንየተ : ሰይጣን :
ኢሰሚዕክሙት : ዘገብረ : ተዝካሮሙ : ለ
ኩሎሙ : ቅዱሳን : ዘክመ : ይነግሥ : ምስ
ሌሆሙ : በደብረ : ጽዮን ። እፎ : ዘገብረ :
ተዝካሮ : ለመድኃኒን : ይረክብ : ሞገሰ : በ
መንግሥተ : ሰማያት ። ወዓሥራተሂ : ዘለለ
ወርት : ፶፪ኛሳት : ዘይትወሀቦ : ዘለለዕለ
ተ : ዓርብ : ፫፻ወጃበእንተ : ስቅለትየ : ሠር
ጐ : ዕንቅ፡ ወወርቅ ። ወአክሊላት ። ወአ
ልባሰ : ብርሃን : ያሠረግውዎ ። ወኅብስት
ሂ : ዘተገብረ : ለተዝካሩ : ይከውን : ከመ :
ሥጋሁ : ቅዱስ ። ወጽዋዕኒ : ከመ : ክቡር :
ደሙ : ዘሰምዓ : ዘኒ : እመርትቅ : ዜና ። እ
ንዘ : ይብሉ : ሀሎአ : ብእሲ : ዘይገብር : ተ
ዝካረ : መድኅን ። ወሶብ : አደሞ : ዝነገር :
ወአፍቀር ። ወለእመ : ኢተክህሎ : ይሒር :



መሐርከዎ፡ ይቤ፡ እግዚእ፡ ሎቱ፡ ስብሐ
ት፡ ዘከሠተ፡ ሎቱ፡ ለመባዓ፡ ጽዮን፡ አኮ፡
በጉሥዓተ፡ (Fol. 3a.) ሕሊና፡ ወአኮ፡ በድ
ርሳን፡ ሐላ፡ ለሊሁ፡ ተናገረ፡ በቃለ፡ ስ
ብሐት፡ ለእግዚአብሔር፡ ዘያመልከዎ፡ መ
ላእክት፡ ወሰብእ፡ ወይሴብሕዎ፡ ሙሴ፡ ወ
አርገ፡ ወተናገርዎ፡ ሐመ፡ ተናገርሙ፡ ወ
ተሠጥውዎ፡ ቅሩብ፡ ውእቱ፡ ለእለ፡ ይጼ
ውዕዎ፡ ወይገብር፡ ፈቃደሙ፡ ለእለ፡ ይፈ
ርህዎ፡ ዘያፈትዎሙ፡ ለመላእክት፡ ከመ፡
የሐውጽዎ፡ ሐመ፡ መጽኢ፡ ውስተ፡ ዓለ
ም፡ ከመ፡ ያእምርዎ፡ እምድንግል፡ ነሥ
እ፡ ተሠጊዎ፡ ሥጋሃ፡ ለቅድስት፡ ድንግ
ል፡ ማርያም፡ ለቤሶ፡ ሶበ፡ ርእይዎ፡ ወአ
መ፡ አጥመቆ፡ ዮሐንስ፡ ዘይብልዎ፡ በርእ
የተ፡ ርግብ፡ ዘሥጋ፡ ለመንፈስ፡ ቅዱስ፡ ነ
ጸርዎ፡ ወአቡሁኒ፡ ሥመርከዎ፡ እንዘ፡ ይ
ብል፡ ዝንቱ፡ ውእቱ፡ ወልድየ፡ ዘአረቅር፡
ኪያሁ፡ ሰምዕዎ፡ ወብዙኃ፡ ተአምረ፡ ወ
መንክረ፡ ይገብር፡ ወንጌላውያን፡ ከመ፡ ጸ
ሐፍዎ፡ ወሰገራተ፡ (Fol. 3b.) ሰጷራ፡ አመ፡
አኅዝዎ፡ ወቅድመ፡ ጲላሙስ፡ አብጽሕዎ፡
አይሁድ፡ እኩያን፡ ሰቀልዎ፡ ወዲበ፡ ርእ
ሱ፡ አክሊለ፡ ዘሦክ፡ አስተቀጽልዎ፡ በበት
ረ፡ ሕለት፡ ርእሶ፡ ኩርዕዎ፡ ብሂእ፡ ዘምስ
ለ፡ ሐሞት፡ አስተይዎ፡ ወኢጸአሎሙ፡
እንዘ፡ ይጼእልዎ፡ ወሞት፡ በዕለተ፡ ዓር
ብ፡ ኪያነ፡ ለቤዝዎ፡ ውስተ፡ ገራህተ፡ ለብ
ሐዊ፡ ቀበርዎ፡ ወበዕለተ፡ እኅድ፡ ተንሥ
አ፡ ሕያዎ፡ ወአንሥአ፡ አሕይዎ፡ ለእለ፡
አምንዎ፡ ወከዕበ፡ ይምጽእ፡ ይሣቅዮሙ፡

ለእለ፡ ወግዕዎ፡ ለዘከመዝ፡ አምላክ፡ ሰብ
ሕዎ፡ ወአእዙትዎ፡ ቀድስዎ፡ ወባርከዎ፡
እስመ፡ ቅዱስ፡ ወቡሩክ፡ ውእቱ፡ ስሙ፡ ረ
ድኤቱ፡ የሃሉ፡ ምስለ፡ ነፍስ፡ ኃጥእ፡ ተ
ክለ፡ ሃይማኖት፡ ምስለ፡ ፍቅርቱ፡ ወለተ፡
ጽዮን፡ ለዓለመ፡ ዓለም፡ አሜን፡

(Fol. 5a.) ስምዑ፡ አበውየ፡ ወአኃውየ፡
ቅዱሳን፡ ደቂቀ፡ ቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡ እድ፡ ወ
አንስት፡ ገቡአን፡ እነግረከሙ፡ ገድለ፡ ብ
ዑዕ፡ ተክለ፡ ማርያም፡ ዘይሰመደ፡ መባእ፡
ጽዮን፡ በረከቱ፡ ተሃሉ፡ ምስለ፡ ነፍስ፡ ኃ
ጥእ፡ ገብሩ፡ ተክለ፡ ሃይማኖት፡ ወምስለ፡
ፍቅርቱ፡ ወለተ፡ ጽዮን፡ ለዓለመ፡ ዓለም፡
አሜን፡ ወአምዝ፡ ንነግረከሙ፡ እምዘ፡ ገ
ብረ፡ ንስቲተ፡ ተአምረ፡ ዘአስተርአዮ፡ እ
ግዚእን፡ ኢያሱስ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ጸጋ፡ ወሀብ
ተ፡ ወረድኤተ፡ ወአፍቅሮተ፡ ወየውሃተ፡
ውኒሩተ፡ ወምሕረተ፡ ላዕለ፡ ገብሩ፡ ወገ
ባሬ፡ ሥምረቱ፡ መባእ፡ ጽዮን፡ ይትከህ
ል፡ በኅበ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ወአልቦ፡ ዘይ
ሰአኖ፡ መንክረ፡ ዘይርኢ፡ በላዕለ፡ ቅዱሳ
ኒህ፡ ወሀሎ፡ ጿ፡ ብእሲ፡ ዘስሙ፡ ሀብተ፡
ጽዮን፡ ወሐረ፡ በፍኖት፡ ንጹሕ፡ ወኢቆ
መ፡ ውስተ፡ ፍኖተ፡ ኃጥእን፡ ዘሠረፀ፡ እ
ምዘመደ፡ ሳሙኤል፡ ረባን፡ ንቡረ፡ እድ፡
ኮከበ፡ (Fol. 5b.) ብርሃን፡ ቀዳማዊ፡ ዘብሔረ፡
አንደገብጣን፡ እምዘመደ፡ ክቡራን፡ ውእ
ቱ፡ ወእምሠናያን፡ ልደቱ፡ ጌር፡ በኩሉ፡
ፍኖቱ፡ ወምዑዝ፡ በከመ፡ ከህነቱ፡ ወም
ስለ፡ ኩሉ፡ ሕዝብ፡ ስንዕው፡ በተየውሆ
ቱ፡ መፍቀሬ፡ ጸሎት፡ ምስለ፡ ትዕግሥት፡

ወብእሲቱሂ፡ ሂርት፡ ይእቲ፡ ወስማ፡ ጽዮን፡ ትኩና፡ ወታሠምሮ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር፡ በኩሉ፡ ፍኖታ፡ ወነበሩ፡ በፍቅር፡ ወበሰላም፡ ወበሰብሳብ፡ ንጹሕ፡ በከመ፡ ሥርዓት፡ እምቅድም፡ ወይስእሉ፡ ኀበ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ከመ፡ የሀበሙ፡ ወልደ፡ ሠናየ፡ ወይትሜነዩ፡ እንዘ፡ ይብሉ፡ ለእመ፡ ንረከብ፡ ወልደ፡ እምሰመይኖ፡ መበእ፡ ጽዮን፡ ወእምድጎረ፡ ኀዳጥ፡ መዋዕል፡ ሰምዓ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ጸሎቶሙ፡ ወጸገምሙ፡ ወልደ፡ ሠናየ፡ ላህየ፡ ቀይሕ፡ አርአያሁ፡ ወብሩህ፡ ከለንታሁ፡ ወተፈሥሁ፡ አዝማዲሁ፡ (Fol. 6a.) ወሰመይም፡ በከመ፡ በዕዑ፡ ቀዳሚ፡ ወሶበ፡ ልህቀ፡ ንስቲተ፡ ተአንገደ፡ ፩ካህን፡ ኀበ፡ ውእቱ፡ ሀገር፡ ወተወክሮ፡ ኀቤሁ፡ አቡሁ፡ ለውእቱ፡ ሕፃን፡ በከመ፡ ጽሑፍ፡ አጎደሮ፡ ወስተ፡ ቤቱ፡ ወሀለም፡ ለውእቱ፡ እንግዳ፡ ሥዕል፡ እግዝእትነ፡ ማርያም፡ ምስለ፡ ፍቅር፡ ወልዳ፡ ወሶበ፡ ይነውም፡ አንበራ፡ ለይእቲ፡ ሥዕል፡ መልዕልተ፡ ርእሱ፡ ወበጽባሕ፡ ተንሥኦ፡ ወሐረ፡ ወረሰዒ፡ ለይእቲ፡ ሥዕል፡ ወረከባ፡ ዝኩ፡ ሕፃን፡ ሐቀፋ፡ ወሰዓማ፡ ወተፈሥሐ፡ ባቲ፡ ፈድፋደ፡ ወዓበየ፡ ውሂበ፡ ለካልአን፡ ወአንቃ፡ በካሳዱ፡ ወነጸሮ፡ አቡሁ፡ ኀዘነ፡ ወይቤ፡ ምንተ፡ እገብር፡ ለእመ፡ አንበርኩ፡ ምስሌየ፡ ይከውነኒ፡ ኃጢአተ፡ ዘኢኮነ፡ ዘዚአየ፡ በአይቱ፡ እረከባ፡ ከመ፡ አህቦ፡ ወአሐተ፡ ዕለተ፡ ተራከበ፡ ምስለ፡ ውእቱ፡ ብእሲ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ ለምንት፡ ኃደገ፡ ሥዕልከ፡ ውስተ፡ ቤትየ፡ ወጸናሕኩከ፡

እስከ፡ ትትመደጥ (Fol. 6b.) ኀቤየ፡ ለምንት፡ ጐንደይክ፡ ወዮጊኬ፡ ንሣእ፡ ሥዕልከ፡ በሥምረተ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ረከብኩ፡ ለከ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ ውእቱ፡ ብእሲ፡ መኑ፡ ዘረከባ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ ዘረከባሰ፡ ሕፃን፡ ንዑስ፡ ውእቱ፡ ወአፍቀራ፡ ፈድፋደ፡ ወእመእመ፡ ረከባ፡ አደሀባ፡ ለካልእ፡ እስከ፡ ይእዜ፡ ወነሣእየ፡ እምኔሁ፡ በግዳድ፡ አሁበከ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ በዓለ፡ ሥዕል፡ ይእቲ፡ ሠምረት፡ ሎቱ፡ ለእመ፡ ከያየሰ፡ ትፈቱ፡ እምኢተረስዓተኒ፡ ትኩሮ፡ ለውእቱ፡ ሕፃን፡ ዘሠምረት፡ ወሎቱ፡ ወኩን፡ ፍቱሐ፡ በእንቲአሃ፡ ወተአምኑ፡ በበደናቲሆሙ፡ ወገብኡ፡ በበብሔሮሙ፡ ወአንከረ፡ አቡሁ፡ በእንተ፡ ዘኮነ፡ ጸጋ፡ በላዕለ፡ ወልዱ፡ ወሶበ፡ በጽሐ፡ መጠነ፡ ትምህርት፡ አኀዘ፡ ይምሐሮ፡ መዝሙረ፡ ዳዊት፡ ወመጸሐፍተ፡ ሕግ፡ ወተሠይመ፡ ዲያቆነ፡ ወሶበ፡ ርእሮ፡ ከመ፡ ለባዊ፡ ወጠቢብ፡ በኩሉ፡ ፍናዊሁ፡ ወ (Fol. 7a.) ጥዑም፡ መዓዝ፡ ዜማሁ፡ ወሰደ፡ ውስተ፡ ቤተ፡ ማርያም፡ ኀበ፡ ደብር፡ ቅዱስ፡ ዘዮሐንስ፡ ከመ፡ ይትመሀር፡ መዝሙረ፡ ወቅኔ፡ ወነበረ፡ ህየ፡ መምህር፡ ወመስፍን፡ በኩሉ፡ አድያመ፡ አንገብጣን፡ ለተክለ፡ ማርያም፡ አማኀ፡ ኀቤሁ፡ ወኀበ፡ ከሎሙ፡ መነኮሳት፡ ለውእቱ፡ ሕፃን፡ ወአፍቀሮም፡ ከሎሙ፡ ወተሰእልም፡ አቡነ፡ ሰምዖን፡ ወአቡነ፡ አቡቂር፡ ወይቤልም፡ መኑ፡ ስምክ፡ ወይቤሎሙ፡ መበእ፡ ጽዮን፡ ወይቤልም፡ ከመዝሰ፡ አይደሉ፡ እምኩሉ፡ መምህር፡ አላ፡ ይኩን፡ ስምክ፡ ትክለ፡

ማርያም : እስመ : አንተ : ሕፃን ። ወከመ
ዝ : ይጸውዕም : እመንገለ : መምህራኒህ :
መባእ : ጽዮን : ወእምአዝማዲህ : ተክለ :
ማርያም : ወኮነ : ከመ : መንታ : ወተምህ
ረ : ቅኔ ። ወኹሎ : መጸሐፍተ : ጥበብ : ወ
ተግሣዳ : ጸመ : ወጸሎተ : ሥራለ : ወጽሒ
ፈ ። ወኮ (Fol. 7b.) ነ : ፍጹመ : በኹሎ : ግብ
ሩ : መንፈሳዊ ። ረድኤቱ : የሃሎ : ምስለ : ነፍ
ሰ : ኃጥእ : ተክለ : ሃይማኖተ : ወምስለ : ፍቅ
ርቱ : ወለተ : ጽዮን : ለዓለመ : ዓለመ : ዓለ
ም : አሜን ።

(Fol. 9a.) ወአሐተ : ዕለተ : እንዘ : ይወፅ
ኡ : እምቤተ : ክርስቲያን : ተዓቀፈ : እግሮ :
ጀወልድ : እምድጎረ : ተመይጠ : ቅርባነ : ወ
ውኅዘ : ደሙ : ዲብ : ምድር ። ወነጸሮ : ሕ
ፃን : ምሉአ : ልቡና : ጐድዓ : ልቦ : ወይ
ቤ : ይትከዓው : ደምየ : ህየንቲህ ። ወተለ
ዎ : ለወልድ : ድጎሬህ : እስከ : ቦአ : ቤቶ :
እንዘ : ይበልፅ : ደሞ : እምዘ : ነጠበ : ወበ
ጸሐ : አፅባቢ : ጠበወ : እስከ : ይነጽፍ :
ደሙ : በእንተ : ክብረ : ሥጋህ : ወደሙ :
ለእግዚእነ ። ወሶበ : ርእዩ : አብያዲህ : እን
ዘ : ይበልፅ : ደሙ : ምስለ : መሬት ። ቦ : እ
ለ : ሰሐቱ : ወቦ : እለ : አንከሩ : በእንተ :
ልቡናህ ። ወካዕበ : አሐተ : ዕለተ : ቂዓ : ጀ
ወልድ : ኹሎ : ዘበልዓ : ወዘሰጎየ : እምድ
ጎረ : ነሥእ : ቅርባነ ። ወብፁዓዊሰ : ተመ
ጠዎ : በፃሕል : በልዓ : ወሰትየ : ውእተ :
ቂዓተ ። ወኢያትረፈ : ምንተኒ : እስከ : ሐ
ፀበ : በማይ : በእንተ : ፍቅሩ : ለእግዚእነ :
ኢየሱስ : ክር (Fol. 9b.) ስቶስ ።

(Fol. 10a is blank.)

(Fol. 10b.) ወሶበ : ርእዩ : አዝማዲህ : ከመ :
አብጽሐ : አካለ : ሐፀዩ : ሎቱ : ብእሲተ : በ
ከመ : ሥሩዕ ። ወሶቤሃ : ዓበዮሙ : ውእቱ :
ወይቤሎሙ : ኢይፈቅድ : ዘንተ : ግብረ :
ወኢያገብእ : ውስተ : ዓለም ። አንሰ : በጸ
ዕኩ : ድንግልናየ : ለእግዚእትየ : ቅድስት :
ድንግል : ማርያም : ወለእግዚእየ : ኢየሱ
ስ : ክርስቶስ : ከመ : እኩን : ገብሮሙ ። ወ
ምንተ : እረብሕ : በዝዓለም : ዘእንበለ : ኃ
ጢአት ። በከመ : ይቤ : ጳውሎስ : ዘሰ : አ
ውሰበ : ይሔሊ : በዘያምራ : ለብእሲቱ ።
ወዘሰ : ኢያውሰበ : ይሔሊ : በዘያምሮ :
ለእግዚአብሔር ። ወሰማያሙ : ነገሮ : ለሕ
ፃን : ኃያግዎ : ወኢያገብርዎ : እሙንቱኒ :
መፍቀርያነ : ጽድቅ ። ይቤልዎ : ኩን : በከ
መ : ፈቅድክ : ለነኒ : ትኩነን : መርሐ : ለ
መንግሥተ : ሰማያት ። ወሶቤሃ : አእኩት
ዎ : ለአምላክ : ጽድቅ : በእንተ : ዘወህበሙ :
ኪያህ : ወልደ : ሠናየ ። (Fol. 11a.) ወመፍቀ
ሬ : ክርስቶስ : ወጥቡዓ : በሃይማኖት : ወእ
ምዝ : መባዓ : ጽዮን : ተነበየ : በእንቲአህ :
ወይቤ : ከመ : ይከውን : ማኅደረ : ለመን
ፈስ : ቅዱስ ። ወኢተሐሰወ : ቃለ : ጽድቅ :
ወኮነ : ከማህ ። ወአኅዘ : ይፀመዶ : ለእግ
ዚአብሔር : በጸም : ወበጸሎት ። ወትጋህ :
ወበፍቅር : በየውሃት : ወትሕትና : ወበትዕ
ግሥት ። ወበዓቂበ : ከናፍር : እምነገረ : ከ
ንቱ : ዘወርቅ ። ወሐሜት : ወእምሐሰት ።
በከመ : ይቤ : በትንቢት : ከናፍረ : ካህናት :
የዓቅባ : ሕገ : ወሥርዓተ ። ወዳዊት : ይቤ ።

ክላእ : ልሳነክ : እምእኩይ : ወከናፍረክ : ከ
 መ : ኢይንብባ : ጥሕሉተ ። ወእመአመ : ጸ
 ረ : አርዑተ : ምንኩስና : ኢተፅዕነ : ፈረ
 ሰ : አው : አድገ : አው : በቅለ : ወኢሰክ
 በ : ውስተ : ዓራት ። ወኢውስተ : መንጸፍ :
 ዘእንበለ : በምድር : ላዕለ : ሐመድ : እንዘ :
 ይጸውር : በእን (Fol. 11 b.) ግድዓሁ : እብነ ።
 አሐተ : ሌሊተ : ይገብር : በክሳዱ ። ወአሐ
 ተ : ዕለተ : ያነብር : ዲበ : ርእሱ ። ወሶበ :
 ይቀውም : ይጸውር : በርእሱ ። ወሶበ : ይሰ
 ግድ : የገዝሎ : በዘባኑ : ውእቱኒ : እብን :
 መጠነ : ጸረ : ብእሲ : ወከመዝ : ይገብር :
 ወትረ : ዘእንበለ : በሰንብታት : ወበዓላት ።
 ወበወእቶሙ : ይዜምር : ከመ : ኢይጥዓ
 ይ : ሥጋሁ : እስከ : ፍጻሜ : በዓል ። ወአሐ
 ተ : ዕለተ : ተፈነወ : ኅቤሁ : ብእሲ : እም
 ኅበ : ብፀፅ : ወቅዱስ : ገብረ : ክርስቶስ :
 ባሕታዊ ። ዘሀገረ : ዳሞት : ዘይሔውጸ : እ
 ግዚአብሔር ። ወያእምር : ኩሎ : በኃይለ :
 መንፈስ : ቅዱስ ። ወነገሮ : ዘለአኮ : ወይቤ
 ሎ : ነዓ : ንትራከብ : እስመ : ሀለወኒ : ነገ
 ር : ዘመንፈስ : ዘርኢኩ : በኅቤክ ። ወይቤ
 ሎ : ለላእክ : በአይቱ : የአምረኒ : ወይቤ ሎ :
 ለእክ : እንዳሂ : የአምረክ ። ወይቤ : ብፀ-
 ፅ : ፈቃደ : እግዚአብሔር : ለይኩን : ወያ
 (Fol. 12 a.) ብጽሐኒ : ኅቤሁ ። ወበጊዜሃ : ተ
 ንሥኦ : ወሐረ : ወበጽሐ : ኅቤሁ : በይእቲ :
 ዕለት : ምሕዋረ : ሠሉሰ ። ወሶበ : ርእዮ : በ
 ሕታዊ : ተፈሥሐ : ወተአምኖ : በአምኃ :
 መንፈሳዊት ። ወይቤ ሎ : እፎ : ሀሎክ : አ
 ወልድዮ : ወይቤ ሎ : ውእቱኒ : ዳኅነ : ሀሎ

ኩ : አአቡዮ : በጸሎትክ : ቅድስት : ወተናገ
 ሩ : ነገራተ : ጽድቅ ። ወይቤ ሎ : ለምንት :
 ጸዋዕከኒ : ሊተ : ለኃጥእ : ዘኢተአምረኒ ።
 ወይቤ ሎ : አአምረክ : ወርኢኩክ : ወይቤ
 ሎ : በአይቱ : ተአምረኒ : ንግረኒ : በእንተ :
 ክርስቶስ : በኅበ : ርኢከኒ : ወነገሮ : እንዘ :
 ይብል : ልማድዮ : ይመጽእ : ደመና : ብሩ
 ህ : ወይጸውረኒ : ወያበጽሐኒ : ኢየሩሳሌ
 ም : ኅበ : መቃብረ : እግዚእነ ። ወእቱርብ :
 ምስለ : ቅዱሳን ። እምድኅረ : ተመጠነ : ቀ
 ርባነ : ነሐውር : ለለብሔርነ ። ቦተፅዒኖ :
 ደመና : ወቦ : በክነፈ : ነፋስ ። ወለከኒ : ር
 ኢኩክ : ኅበ : አስተጋ (Fol. 12 b.) ብእነ : እግ
 ዚአብሔር : ከመ : ይጸግወነ : ሠናይቶ ፤ ወ
 ይቤ ሎ : አባ : ለእመ : ኮነ : ከመዝ : ለምን
 ት : ኢያእመርኩክ : አነ : ወሶበ : ኮንኩ : ህ
 ዮ ። ወአውሥኦ : እንዘ : ይብል : አወልድ
 ዮ : ለብዙኃን : ይመይጥምሙ : ዘእንበለ :
 ያእምሩ : ሶበ : ይቱርብ ። ወሀለወክ : በጊዜ
 ሁ : ዘእንበለ : ዕድሜሁ : ኢይከውን ። ስማ
 ዕኬ : እነግረክ : ኅድግስ : በዝ : ወእምሕዝ
 ብኒ : እድ : ወአንስት : ሶበ : ይደልምሙ :
 ቀዲሙ : ቀርባን : እመነኮሳት : በከመ : ስ
 ኒ : መግባረሆሙ : ይከውን ። ወሶቤሃ : ኅ
 ዘነ : ለቅዱሳን : በእንተ : ዘይቀድምምሙ :
 ዓለማውያን ። ወሰማሪ : ቅዱስ : መባዓ : ጽ
 ዮን : ዘንተ : አንከረ : ወተደመ ። ወእምዝ :
 ተሰአሎ : ትምህርታተ : ወምግባራተ : ጽድ
 ቅ : ወሥርዓተ : ምንኩስና : በከመ : ጽሑ
 ፍ ። ዘይቤ : ተሰአሎ : ለአቡክ : ወይንግረ
 ክ ። ወውእቱኒ : መሐሮ : ወመዓዶ : ኩሎ :

መ (Fol. 13a.) ግባረ : ጽድቅ ። ወተነበየ : እን
ዘ : ይብል : ሀለወክ : ትኩን : ቀሲስ : ወይ
ድኅነ : ብዙኃን : በቡራኬክ : ወይትቁደሱ :
በቃልክ ። መቅድመ : ጽናዕ : በአፍቅርቱ :
ለእግዚእነ : ኢየሱስ : ክርስቶስ ። ወእምዝ :
ባረከ : ወፈነዎ : በሰላም : ወተመደጠ : ሀገ
ሮ : እንዘ : ይሴብሉ : ለእግዚአብሔር : ስቡ
ሕ ። ወእምዝ : ሖረ : ኀበ : አባ : ገብርኤል :
ጳጳስ : ምስለ : ብዙኃን : አኃው ። ወነሥኡ :
ሢመተ : ክህነት : ወኮነ : ቀሲስ : ወተክህነ :
ላዕለ : ሥጋሁ : ወደሙ : ለእግዚእነ : ውእ
ቱ : ወአዕረገ : ቍርባነ : ንጹሐ : በከመ : ያዓ
ርጉ : ካህናት ። ረድኤቱ : የሃሉ : ምስለ :
ነፍስ : ኃዋእ : ገብሩ : ተክለ : ሃይማኖት :
ወምስለ : ፍቅርቱ : ወለተ : ጽዮን : ለዓለ
መ : ዓለም : አሜን ።

(Fol. 15a.) ወእሐተ : ዕለተ : ተከሥተ :
ዓቢይ : ተአምር : ወርእየ : ወይቤ : እንዘ :
የዓጥን : በቅድመ : ምሥዋዕ ። ወሶበ : ወዕ
እ : ካህን : ለአንብቦ : ወንጌል : ርኢኩ :
ቍርባነ : እንዘ : ያንሰሐስሕ : በዲበ : ሃሕ
ል ። ወሶበ : አንሣእኩ : ክዳኖ : በእዴየ : ከ
መ : አእምር : ዘኮነ ። ወነጸርኩ : ከዊኖ : በ
ግዓ : ፀዓጳ : ወደንገዕኩ : ወከደንክዎ : በከ
መ : ቀዳሚ ። ወፈጸሞ : ካህን : አንብቦ :
ወንጌል : እንዘ : ይቁድስ : ወተመደጠ : ለ
ከዊነ : ኀብስት ። ወተመጠውነ : ኩልነ : እ
ድ : ወአንስት : በከመዝ : ተርእየ : ፫ዕለ
ተ ። ወካዕበ : ይትለአክ : ምስለ : ቀሲስ :
አሐተ : ዕለተ : በጊዜ : ተመጥዎ : ቍርባ
ን : ኮነ : ዓቢይ : ግርማ : ወርኢኩ : ብእሲ

ተ : ግርምተ : ወብርሀተ ። ወታውኀዝ : አ
ንብዓ : እምአዕይንቲሃ : ፈራህኩ : ጥቀ : ወ
አውሥኦተኒ : እንዘ : ትብል ። ትሬኢት : ዘ
ከመ : የሐይክዎ : ለሥጋ : ፍ (Fol. 15b.) ቁር :
ወልድየ : በአስናኒሆመ ። ወሶበ : ነጸርክዎ :
ይትሐወክ : አማውትየ : ይመስለሙት : ዘ
ሞተ : ወልድየ : ወኢየአምሩት : ከመ : ሕ
ያው : ውእቱ ። ወከመዝ : ተናገረቶ : እግዝ
እትነ : ማርያም ። ወበከየ : ውእቱኒ : በእን
ተ : ብካያ ። ወይቤሎሙ : ለካህናት : ወለዲ
ያቆናት : ለእድ : ወለአንስት ፤ ኢትሒኩ :
በአስናኒክሙ : ወበጥረሲክሙ : ዘእንበለ :
በልሳንክሙ : ወበትሕናግክሙ : ወይብልዕ
ዎ : በፍርሃት : በእንተዝ : ሶ : እለ : ተአኅ
ዝዎ ። ወሶ : እለ : ተሳለቅዎ : እንዘ : ይብ
ሉ : እግዚእ : በወንጌል : ብልዑ : ሥጋየ :
ይብል ። ወዝንቱኒ : ኢትብልዑ : ይብልነ ።
ወሰማዎ : ከመ : ተሣለቁ : ላዕሌሁ : ይቤ :
ከመ : ኢይብልዑኒ : ዘአዘዝኩ : ዘእንበለ :
ዳእሙ : በመጥባሕት : ኢያስተማዕሉ : ለእ
መ : ኢነገርክዎሙ : እምተኩነንኩ ፤ አነ :
እምይእዜሰ : አድኃንኩ (Fol. 16a) ርእስየ :
ለሊሆሙ : ያአምሩ : ኩሎ ።

(Fol. 17a.) ወእምዝ : ተንሢኦ : ሖረ : ኀበ :
ደብረ : ሊባኖስ : ከመ : ይንሣእ : በረከተ :
እምቃብረ : አቡነ : ተክለ : ሃይማኖት ። ወይ
ቤሎ : ጅእምቅዱሳን : እንዘ : ይጼሊ : በቤተ :
ክርስቲያን : በዕለተ : እኅድ ፤ ወእንዘ : ይትቀ
ነዩ : ካህናት : ቅጼ : በለዓለ : ጧመ : ዕለተ :
በዓሉ : ለክብረ : ተዝካሩ : ነጸርኩ : ብእሴ :
ሥርግወ : ወግሩመ ። ዝውእቱ : አቡነ : ቅ



ወልድ፡ ያቀድም፡ ጸሎተ፡ ብራኬ፡ ወእመ
ዝ፡ ይከፍል፡ ሥልሰ፡ እማዕድ፡ ወይሁብ
ሙ፡ ለነዳያን፡ ወለምስኪናን፡ ለእድ፡ ወለ
አንስት፡ ለአዕሩግ፡ ወለሕፃናት፡ ለዕቤራት፡
ወለእንለ፡ ማውታ፡ ወእምድኅረ፡ አብል
ምሙ፡ ወአስተሞሙ፡ የአኩቱ፡ ኩሎሙ፡
ወይብሉ፡ ስብሕት፡ ለእግዚአብሔር፤ ከያ
ነ፡ ለዘፈጠረ፡ ከመ፡ ናምልኮ፡ ወእምዝ፡
ይገብር፡ ማዕደ፡ ለእሊአሁ፡ ወበዓለ፡ ልደ
ታሂ፡ ለእግዝእትነ፡ ማርያም፡ ወላዲተ፡ አ
ምላክ፡ ይዴውዕ፡ ከህናተ፡ ወዲያቆናተ፡
ወይገብር፡ በዓለ፡ ወያረፍቆሙ፡ ወይትላኦ
ክ፡ ማእከሎ (Fol. 20b.) ሙ፡ ወበጊዜሃ፡ ብ
ዙኃን፡ ቅዱሳን፡ ይብሉ፡ ርኢናሃ፡ ለእግዚ
እትነ፡ ቅድስት፡ ድንግል፡ ማርያም፡ እንዘ፡
ታንሰሱ፡ ምስሌሁ፡ ኅበ፡ ሐረ፡ ለተልእኮ፡
ወጸዊን፡ ትቤሎ፡ ለቅዱስ፡ ጊዮርጊስ፡ ኮከ
በ፡ ክብር፤ ሐረ፡ የዓሥሮሙ፡ ለቅዱሳን፡
እለ፡ ውስተ፡ ሰማይ፡ ወምድር፡ እምነ፡ ጸ
ማዕት፡ ወበዓታት፤ ከመ፡ ይትጋብኡ፡ ለክ
ብረ፡ ልደትየ፡ ኅበ፡ ፍቅርየ፡ መበኦ፡ ጽዮ
ን፤ አነሂ፡ ወልድየ፡ ናብዕል፡ ዝየ፡ ወተፅ
ዕነ፡ በጊዜሃ፡ ቅዱስ፡ ጊዮርጊስ፡ ፈረሶ፡
ወገብረ፡ በከመ፡ አዘዘቶ፡ ወተጋብኡ፡ ቅ
ዱሳን፡ ወወረደ፡ እግዚእነ፡ ወኮነ፡ ዓቢይ፡
ወመንክር፡ ስብሐት፡ ውስተ፡ ውእቱ፡ መካ
ን፡ ወፎከህናት፡ የዓውድዎ፡ ወየዓጥኑ፡
በማዕጠንታት፡ ወሕዝብስ፡ እለ፡ ተጋብ
ኡ፡ አልቦ፡ ዘየአምር፡ ጉልቆቶሙ፡ ዘእን
በለ፡ ውእቱ፡ ባሕቲቱ፡ እግዚአብሔር፤
ወተሠርዓ፡ ሥርዓተ፡ ምሥጢር፡ ዘመለ

(Fol. 21a.) ከት፡ ሰማያዊ፡ ወተውህቦሙ፡ ለ
ጉብአን፡ ወኮነ፡ ዓቢይ፡ ፍሥሐ፡ ለኩሉ፡
እምድኅረ፡ ኃለፈ፡ በዓል፡ ነበረት፡ ህየ፡ ሠ
ሉሰ፡ መዋዕለ፡ ወካዕበ፡ ይቤ፡ ፩ሥርግው፡
በድንግልና፡ እንዘ፡ አሐውር፡ ቤተ፡ ማ
ርያም፡ በበዓለ፡ ልደታ፡ ተራከብኩ፡ ምስ
ለ፡ ፩ብእሲ፡ አገበረኒ፡ ዘእንበለ፡ ፈቃድየ፡
ወወሰደኒ፡ ውስተ፡ ቤቱ፡ ወኃደርኩ፡ ህየ፡
ወጊዜ፡ መንፈቅ፡ ሌሊት፡ ነጸርኩ፡ ስፍሐ
ተ፡ ሀገረ፤ ወምልዕተ፡ ውስቲታ፡ ቅዱሳን፡
ወሥርግዋነ፡ ነጸሕ፡ ወቆምኩ፡ አነሂ፡ ም
ስሌሆሙ፡ ወሶቤሃ፡ ተሠጠ፡ ሰማይ፡ ወኮ
ነ፡ ዓቢይ፡ ግርማ፡ ወወረደ፡ ደመና፡ ብሩህ፡
ከመ፡ ፀሐይ፤ ወማእከሌሆሙ፡ ወዕኦ፡ ሕ
ፃን፡ ግሩም፡ ዘይወዕኦ፡ መብረቅ፡ ማእከለ፡
እሉ፡ ቅዱሳን፡ ቀነጸ፡ ዝኩ፡ መባኦ፡ ጽዮ
ን፡ ወተሠጥዎ፡ ለሕፃን፡ ወተሐቅቶ፡ ክሳ
ውዲሆሙ፡ ወተሰዓሙ፡ ወእንከሩ፡ ወተበ
ሀሉ፤ በእንተ፡ ምንት፡ ተውህቦ፡ መጠነዝ፡
(Fol. 21b.) ጸጋ፡ ወቦ፡ እለ፡ ይቤሉ፡ እስመ፡
ይገብር፡ በዓለ፡ ልደታ፡ ለእሙ፡ ወሠምረ፡
ቦቱ፤ ወዘንተ፡ ነጸርየ፡ ኅዘንኩ፡ በእንተ፡
ዘኢመጻእኩኦ፡ ኅቤከ፤ ወከመዝ፡ ነገሮ፡
ወሰሚዎ፡ መባኦ፡ ጽዮን፡ ተፈሥሐ፡ ወአ
ፈድፈደ፡ ገበረ፡ በዓል፡ ወአክበረ፡ ላለወ
ርኑ፡ በእንተ፡ ዕቦየ፡ ልደታ፡ ወአመ፡
ወጂበእንተ፡ ክብረ፡ ዕርገታ፡ ወብዙኅ፡ ተ
አምራት፡ ወመንክራት፡ ይትገበር፡ በእደ
ዊሁ፡ አመ፡ በዓላቲሃ፡ ለእግዝእትነ፡ ማርያ
ም፡ ወይብል፡ ወትረ፡ ነጸርኒ፡ ወኢታስኃ
ፍርኒ፡ ለገብርኩ፡ መባዓ፡ ጽዮን፤ ወወጠነ፡

ያዳመ፡ ሥጋሁ፡ በጥቡቅ፡ ልብ፡ ከመ፡ ይ
 ፀመዶ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር፡ ወገብረ፡ መዋቅ
 ሕተ፡ ለአቀዳጸሁ፡ ወሰናስለ፡ ለአዕዳዊ
 ሁ፡ ወለገበዋቲሁ፡ ወለሐቋሁ፡ ገብረ፡ ከ
 መዝ፡ ወበመዋዕለ፡ አጽዋም፡ ይለብስ፡ ሰ
 ቀ፡ መትሕተ፡ አልባሲሁ፡ ከመ፡ ኢያእም
 ሮ፡ ሰብእ፡ ወይበል (Fol. 22a.) ፅ፡ በሠሉስ፡
 ዕለት፡ አቅማሐ፡ ገዳም፡ ወደኃድር፡ በባሕ
 ር፡ እምብዝኃ፡ ሕማመ፡ ሞ፡ እስከ፡ መ
 ጽለው፡ ሥጋሁ፡ ወተስእሎ፡ ለ፩አሐተ፡ ዕ
 ለተ፡ እምእለ፡ ሀለው፡ ምስሌሁ፡ ምንተ፡
 ትኔጽር፡ ቅድሚክ፡ ሶበ፡ ትወርድ፡ ውስ
 ተ፡ ባሕር፡ ሌሊተ፡ ወይቤሎሙ፡ ምንተ
 ኒ፡ ኢይኔጽር፡ ቅድሚክ፡ ወቅድሚክሙ፡
 ወሰብሐ፡ አቡነ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር፡ ወይቤ፡
 ሶበ፡ እወፅእ፡ እማኅደርደ፡ ይወፅእ፡ ኮከብ፡
 ብሩህ፡ ወይመርሐኒ፡ እንዝ፡ እኔጽር፡ እ
 ስከ፡ ባሕር፡ ወዘንተ፡ ሰሚዳነ፡ አንከርነ፡
 ጸጋሁ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር፡ ወዘይገብር፡ ለቅ
 ዱሳኒሁ፡ ወእንዝ፡ ሀለው፡ ቀዊሞሙ፡ ው
 ስተ፡ ባሕር፡ መጽእ፡ ሰይጣን፡ ማእከለ፡
 ጽልመት፡ እንዝ፡ ይነቁ፡ ከመ፡ አርፎ፡ ም
 ድር፡ ያደነግጸሙ፡ በመዓቱ፡ ዘኢይትዓወ
 ቅ፡ ንባቡ፡ ወይቤ፡ አቡነ፡ ጸንዑ፡ በኃይ
 ለ፡ እግዚእየ፡ ኢየሱስ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ወዓተ
 በ፡ በትእምርተ፡ መስቀል፡ ላ (Fol. 22b.) ፅ
 ሌሁ፡ ወግብተ፡ ወረደ፡ በግዕ፡ እምሰማይ፡
 በዓቢይ፡ ግርማ፡ ዘኅብሩ፡ ቅድሕ፡ ከመ፡
 አንበሳ፡ ወአቅርንት፡ ቦቱ፡ ወቆመ፡ በድን
 ጋገ፡ ባሕር፡ ቅድምሁ፡ ለጻድቅ፡ ወተመይ
 ጠ፡ ለፌ፡ ወለፌ፡ እምግርማ፡ ርእዮቱ፡ ተ

ኃጥእ፡ ውእቱ፡ መስሕት፡ ስብሐት፡ ወእ
 ከቱት፡ ለበግዓ፡ ሕይወት፡ ዘወረደ፡ እም
 ሰማያት፡ ዘአድኃኖሙ፡ ለአግብርቲሁ፡ በ
 ቅጸበት፡ እምተቃርኖቱ፡ ለጸላኤ፡ ሠናያ
 ት፡ ወከማሁ፡ ያድኅና፡ ለነፍሰ፡ ኃጥእ፡
 ተክለ፡ ሃይማኖት፡ ወምስለ፡ ፍቅርቱ፡ ወለተ፡
 ጽዮን፡ ለዓለመ፡ ዓለም፡ ዓለም፡ አሜን፡

(Fol. 25a.) ወካዕበ፡ እነግረክሙ፡ ጊሩቶ፡

ለአቡነ፡ መበእ፡ ጽዮን፡ ይቤ፡ መጽእ፡ ኅ
 ቤየ፡ መዓዛ፡ ሕይወት፡ ሠናይ፡ ዊናሁ፡ እ
 ምዊና፡ ስሒን፡ ወከሎ፡ ጊዜ፡ እመሂ፡ ቆ
 ምኩ፡ ወእመሂ፡ ነበርኩ፡ ወእመሂ፡ ከንኩ፡
 ምስለ፡ ሰብእ፡ ወእመሂ፡ ባሕቲትየ፡ ኢየ
 ኃድገኒ፡ ወሐለየኩ፡ ምንተ፡ ኮነ፡ ላዕሌየ፡
 ወሐርኩ፡ ኅበ፡ ቅዱሳን፡ እመ፡ አርአዮሙ፡
 እግዚአብሔር፡ ይንግሩኒ፡ ወበጸሕየ፡ ነገ
 ርክዎሙ፡ ከሎ፡ ዘኮነ፡ ላዕሌየ፡ ወሰሚዎ
 ሠ፡ አንከሩ፡ ወበረክዎ፡ ለአምላክ፡ ምሕ
 ረት፡ ወይቤልዎ፡ ለቅዱስ፡ ወብፀቅ፡ አን
 ተ፡ ወዝኒ፡ ዊና፡ መዓዛክ፡ ውእቱ፡ ኢየሱ
 ስ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ወከመዝ፡ ልማዱ፡ ሶበ፡ ይ
 መጽእ፡ ኅበ፡ ኅሩያኒሁ፡ መቅድመ፡ ያጸግ
 በሙ፡ እመዓዛሁ፡ ወእምዝ፡ ይትረዓዮሙ፡
 ወለከኒ፡ ሀለወክ፡ ትርአይ፡ ተደለው፡ ለነጽ
 ሮቱ፡ ወሶበ፡ ይዊንወክ፡ እምይእዜሰ፡ ስግ
 ድ፡ ሎቱ፡ ወአእምር፡ ከ (Fol. 25b.) መ፡ በ
 ጽሐ፡ ኅቤከ፡ ወሰሚዎ፡ ደንገፀ፡ ወይቤ፡
 ምንተ፡ እብሎ፡ አነ፡ ኃጥእ፡ ዳእሙ፡ ውእ
 ቱ፡ አስተዳለወኒ፡ ከመ፡ በሥምረቱ፡ ወይ
 ቤሎ፡ እሙንቱ፡ ቅዱሳን፡ አሜን፡ ወእም
 ዝ፡ ነበረ፡ ኅዳጠ፡ መዋዕለ፡ ወዊና፡ መዓዛ

ሁ፡ እምኔሁ፡ ኢሰሰለ ። ወአሐተ፡ ዕለተ፡
አመ፡ ፳፬፻፲፯፡ ባእንተ፡ ልደቱ፡
ለእግዚእነ፡ ኢየሱስ፡ ክርስቶስ ። ሶበ፡ ወዕ
አ፡ እማኅደሩ፡ ለገበ፡ በዓል ። አሜሃ፡ ሀ
ሎ፡ ብርሃነ፡ ወርሃ፡ እንቃዕዲዎ፡ ሰማየ፡
ጸለየ፡ ኀበ፡ እግዚአብሔር ። ወበጊዜሃ፡
ርእየ፡ ኃዋኅወ፡ ሰማይ፡ ርኅወ ። ወወረደ፡
ከመ፡ እንተ፡ መብረቅ፡ ብሩህ፡ በእንፃርየ ።
ወቀሪበ፡ ኀቤየ፡ ኮነ፡ ሕዓነ፡ ወነበረ፡ ዲበ፡
እንግድዓየ፡ ወሐቀ፡ ከሳድየ ። ወበጊዜ
ሃ፡ አኀዘ፡ ፍርሃት፡ ወረዓድ፡ ወተመሰው
ኩ፡ ከመ፡ ሰምዕ ። ወአውሥኦ፡ ወይቤለ
ኒ፡ ኢትፍራህ፡ አነ፡ ውእቱ፡ ሕዓነ፡ ማር
ያም፡ ዘተወለድኩ፡ ዮም፡ (Fol. 26a.) ወዘን
ተ፡ ብሂሎ፡ እምኃኒ፡ አፋየ፡ ወእምብዝኃ፡
ጣዕመ፡ ቃሉ፡ ወሳዕሳዓ፡ አፋሁ፡ ኢያእመ
ርኩ፡ እስመ፡ አንበዘ፡ ልብየ፡ ወአቈርክ
ዎ፡ በልብስየ፡ አሐተ፡ ሰዓተ፡ ወሶበ፡ ፈ
ቀደ፡ ይትኅሃእ፡ እምላዕሌየ ፤ እቤሎ፡ ተሐ
ውርኑ፡ ኦእግዚእየ፡ ዘእንበለ፡ እጽግብክ ።
ወሶቤሃ፡ ተፍዓ፡ ምራቅ፡ ዲበ፡ ልብስየ፡
ወይቤለኒ፡ ንሃእ፡ ይኩንክ፡ ተስፋ፡ ወተ
ናዘዝ፡ ቦቱ ። ወአነሂ፡ ኢየኃድገክ፡ ወእሄ
ሉ፡ ወትረ፡ ምስሌክ ። ወዘንተ፡ ብሂሎ፡
ተመሥጦ፡ ሰማየ ፤ ወነበርኩ፡ እስዕም፡ ው
እተ፡ ምራቅ፡ ዘወዕኦ፡ እምአፋሁ፡ ቅዱስ ።
ወበዕለተ፡ ኢቈረብኩ፡ እልሕስ፡ ከያሁ፡
ህየንተ፡ ቀርባን ፤ ወአሐተ፡ ዕለተ፡ መጽ
እ፡ ፪ብእሲ ። ወይቤለኒ፡ አውሕሰኒ፡ ልብ
ሰክ ። ወአውሐስክዎ፡ ረሢዕየ፡ ዘኮነ፡ በል
ብስየ ። ወሶቤሃ፡ በጽሐ፡ ኀቤየ፡ ፪መንኮስ፡

እምርኑቅ ፤ ወይቤለኒ፡ ዕፁብ፡ ራእየ፡ ር
(Fol. 26b.) ኢኩ፡ በእንተኦክ፡ ወእቤሎ፡ ም
ንትኑ፡ ውእቱ፡ ወይቤለኒ፡ መጽእ፡ ኀቤየ፡
፪ወሬዘ፡ ዘሠናይ፡ ራእየ፡ ወቆመ፡ መልዕ
ልተ፡ ርእስየ ። ወተናገረኒ፡ በሕልም፡ እን
ዘ፡ ይብል፡ ስማዕ፡ ሊተ፡ በመባዓ፡ ጽዮን፡
ወመጸእኩ፡ ኀቤሁ ፤ ወተሐቀፍኩ፡ ዲቤ
ሁ፡ ወወደይኩ፡ ምራቅ፡ በልብስ፡ ዘኢዙ ።
ወአማኀ፡ ቦቱ፡ ወውእቱ፡ አውሐሶ፡
ለካልእ፡ ወእቤሎ፡ መኑ፡ እንተ፡ ወይቤለ
ኒ፡ ውእቱ፡ የእምረኒ፡ ዳእሙ፡ ንግር፡ ዘእ
ቤለክ ። ወሰሚዎ፡ አቡነ፡ መባእ፡ ጽዮን፡
ወድቀ፡ በገጹ፡ ወበከየ፡ ዓቢየ፡ ብከየ፡ ወ
ሐረ፡ ኀበ፡ ቤተ፡ ማርያም፡ ወበጽሐ፡ ኀበ፡
አቡነ፡ ጢሞና፡ ምሉአ፡ መንፈስ፡ እስመ፡
አበ፡ መንፈሱ፡ ውእቱ ። ወይቤሎ፡ ስም
ዓኒ፡ ኦአቡየ፡ ዘኮነ፡ በላዕሌየ፡ ወነገር፡ ኩ
ሎ፡ ዘኮነ፡ ወሰሚዎ፡ እምቃሉ፡ ዘንተ፡ አ
ባ፡ ጢሞና፡ ተፈሥሐ፡ ወይቤ፡ በአማን፡
ወልድየ፡ እን (Fol. 27a.) ተ፡ ዘሠምረ፡ ብክ፡
ወልደ፡ ማርያም፡ ዋሕድ፡ ኢትኅዝን፡ እ
ንበይነ፡ ምሕረቱ፡ ውእቱ፡ ከሠተ፡ ለክ ፤
ወእመሰ፡ ተበቀለክ፡ ወእምተምዕዓክ፡ በ
ኀቡእ ። ወይቤሎ፡ ሀበኒ፡ ንስሐ፡ ኦአቡየ፡
በእንተ፡ ዘረሳዕኩ፡ ቦቱ፡ ወአውሐስኩ፡
ውእተ፡ ልብስ፡ ወውእቱኒ፡ ወሀዕ፡ ንስሐ፡
በክመ፡ ይደሉ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ ኢትሕዕብ፡ ው
እቲ፡ ልብስ፡ ለዝሉፋ፡ ዘተሐቅፈ፡ ቦቱ፡
ወወደየ፡ ምራቅ፡ ወልደ፡ እግዚአብሔር ፤
ወተዓፀፍ፡ በገጹ፡ ወበዑቃቤ፡ ምንተ፡
ይሴኒ፡ ብክ፡ እምአፋሁ፡ ለሕዓነ፡ ድንግል ፤

ዘኮነከ፡ግልባበ፡ ወተናገሩ፡ ዕበያቲሁ፡ ለእ
ግዚአብሔር ። ወይቤሎ፡ ጢሞና፡ ለብፁ-
ዕ፡ መባኦ፡ ጽዮን፡ ስማዕ፡ እንግርክ፡ እንዘ ፤
አሐውር፡ በምሥራቀ፡ ቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡
በጊዜ፡ ፫ሰዓት፡ ዘመዓልት፡ ረከብክዎሙ፡
ለሕፃን፡ ወለእሙ፡ እንዘ፡ ያንጸበርቅ፡ ስ-
ኖሙ፡ ወሶ (Fol. 27b.) ቤሃ፡ ደንገፅኩ፡ ወ
እቤሎሙ፡ ሰላም፡ ለክሙ፡ ወይቤሉኒ ፤ ሰ-
ላመ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ይኩን፡ ላዕሌከ፡ ወእቤሎ-
ሙ፡ እለ፡ መኑ፡ አንትሙ፡ ወአፍርሃኒ፡ ነ-
ጽሮትክሙ፡ ወአውሥኦተኒ፡ ድንግል፡ ወ
ትቤ፡ አነ፡ ጽጌ፡ ደንገላት፡ ዘቁላት ። ወ
ካዕበ፡ ይቤለኒ፡ አነ፡ ኢየሱስ፡ ዘገሊላ፡ ወ
ሰሚዕየ፡ ሰገድኩ፡ ታሕተ፡ እገሪሁ፡ ለሕ-
ፃን ፤ ወአንሥኦተኒ፡ ድንግል፡ ወአምኃተ-
ኒ ፤ ወሕፃንኒ፡ አኅዘ፡ አፋየ፡ ወሰዓመኒ፡
እንዘ፡ ይብል፡ ምዑዝ፡ ክህነቱ፡ ለጢሞና፡
ወተሰወሩ፡ እምኔየ፡ ወሰሚያ ፤ ዘንተ፡ ነገ-
ረ፡ ዘይጥዕም፡ እመዓር፡ ወምከር፡ አንከረ፡
መባኦ፡ ጽዮን ፤ ፍትወ፡ ምግባር፡ ዘምስለ፡
ጢሞና፡ ሠናየ፡ ዝክር፡ እምተየውሆቱ፡
ለወልደ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ወእምነ፡ ኒሩታ፡
ለመንፈሳዊት፡ ሐመር ፤ እግዝእትነ፡ ማርያ-
ም፡ ወእምዝ፡ ተባረከ፡ ወልድ፡ እምአ
(Fol. 28a.) ቡሁ፡ ወአተወ፡ በሰላም፡ ብሔር ።
ወእምድኅረ፡ ታዳጥ፡ መዋዕል፡ ጸውዖ፡ ብ-
ፁዕ፡ መባዓ፡ ጽዮን፡ ለ፩ዲያቆን፡ ምስኪ-
ን ። ወይቤሎ፡ ትክልኑ፡ ተዓቅብ፡ ነገረ፡
እንግርክ ፤ ወይቤሎ፡ እወ፡ አባ፡ ወይቤ፡
ትትአሠርኑ፡ በሥልጣነ፡ ጴጥሮስ፡ ወጳው-
ሎስ፡ ከመ፡ ኢትንግር፡ ለካልእ፡ በመዋዕ

ለ፡ ሕይወትየ ። ወእምድኅረ፡ ሞትየሰ፡ በ
ከመ፡ ፈቀድክ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ እወ፡ በል፡ አ-
ባ ። ወይቤሎ፡ ስማዕ፡ ወአሐተ፡ ዕለተ፡ ሶ-
በ፡ እጼሊ፡ በጊዜ፡ ፫ሰዓት፡ በከይኩ፡ ተ-
ዘኪርየ፡ ሕማማተ፡ ሞቱ፡ ለእግዚእነ፡ ኢ-
የሱስ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ወሰቆቃወ፡ እሙ፡ ድን-
ግል፡ እንዘ፡ እብል ። ኦእግዚእትየ፡ ከመ፡
ምንት፡ ተንተንኪ፡ በይእቲ፡ ሰዓት፡ ነጸ-
ረኪ ፤ ስቅለቶ፡ ለዋሕድኪ፡ ዕሩቀ፡ ወቅሥ-
ፈቶ፡ ቅንዋቶ ። ወርግዘቶ፡ ለፍቁርኪ፡ እ-
ስመ፡ ፩ውእቱ፡ ለኪ፡ ዘእንበለ ፤ እኑ ፤ ወ
እኅት፡ ኦእግዚእትየ ፤ ወእም (Fol. 28b.) ተ-
መነይኩ፡ አሚሃ፡ አሃሉ፡ እኒዝየ፡ ጥን-
ደ፡ መስቀሉ፡ ለፍቁርኪ፡ እሙት፡ እምቅ-
ድመ፡ ትፃእ፡ ነፍሱ፡ እምሥጋሁ፡ ለእግ-
ዚእነ፡ እንዘ፡ እበኪ ፤ ከመዝ፡ ኮነ፡ ፀዳለ፡
ብርሃን፡ በየማንየ ። ወሶቤሃ፡ ርኢክዋ፡ ለ-
እግዚእትነ፡ ቅድስት፡ ድንግል፡ ማርያም፡
ወአውሥኦተኒ፡ እንዘ፡ ትብል፡ አመባዓ፡
ጽዮን፡ ለምንት፡ ታበክየኒ፡ ብካየ፡ በይእ-
ቲ፡ ሰዓት ፤ ሊተሰ፡ ገዓርኩ፡ ነጸርየ፡ ዕር-
ቃኖ፡ ለፍቁርየ፡ ወቅሥፈቶ፡ ለሕፃንየ ።
ቅንዋቶ፡ ለቦኩርየ፡ ወስቅለተ፡ ሞቱ፡ ለ-
ዋሕድየ ። አንተሰ፡ ኢነጸረከ፡ ዘትበኪ፡
ወዘንተ፡ እንዘ፡ ትብል፡ በከይኩ፡ አነሂ፡
ምስሌሃ ። ወፈጸመኒ፡ ብካየ፡ አማኅፀንኩ፡
ነፍስየ፡ ኅቤሃ፡ ወኃሠሠት፡ አንብዕየ፡ በ-
አልባሲሃ ። ወእምዝ፡ ተሰውረት፡ እምኔየ፡
ወዘንተ፡ ከመዝ፡ ገብረት ።

(Fol. 31a.) ወካዕበ፡ እንዘ፡ ሀሎ፡ ቀዊሞ፡
ውስተ፡ ቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡ በጊዜ፡ ፫ሰዓት፡



ወእንዘ : ይጼሊ ። እንዘ : ይብል : እግዚእ
 ዩ : ወአምላኪዩ : ወመድኃንዩ : ኢየሱስ :
 ክርስቶስ ። ቅሩብ : አንተ : ለእለ : ይጼው
 ዑከ : እስከለክ ፤ ወአስተበቀኝከ : ኢትርኃ
 ቅ : እምኔዩ : በእንተ : እለ : ተባረኩ : በእ
 ዴዩ ። ወተናዘዙ : በቃልዩ : ወተማኝ፡፡
 ኅቤዩ : እንበለ : ያእምሩ : ጊጋዩ : ተመሲ
 ልዩ ። ጸድቀ : ከመ : ትስረዩ : ሎሙ : ኃጢ
 አቶሙ ። ወአልቦ : ንጹሕ : በቅድሚክ : ዘ
 እንበለ : ቡርክት : ማርያም : ወላዲትክ : እ
 ስመ : መሐሪ : አንተ : ወመስተሣህል : እስ
 ከ : ለዓለም : አሜን ። ወሶቤሃ : ቆመ : ቅ
 ድሜሁ : ወሬዛ : ዘሠናይ : ላህዩ : ወትእ
 ምርተ : መስቀል : ልብሱ : ወአክሊል : ንጹ
 ሕ : ዲቦ : ርእሱ : ወይቤሎ : ነዩ : መጻእኩ :
 ኅቤክ : ከመ : እፈጽም : ስእለተክ : ወእጸ
 ጉከ : ይኩን ፤ በከመ : ቃልክ : ነሉ : ዘተ
 ማኝ፡፡ በከ : ዘተጠምቀ ፤ ወዘ (Fol. 31b.) ተ
 ባረከ : በእደክ : ወዘሐረ : በትእዛዝክ ። ወ
 ዘንተ : ዜና : ሰሚዖ : እምርኑቅ : ዘተማኝ
 ፡፡ በስምክ : ከመ : እምሕሮ ፤ ወአሠረግ
 ፡፡ መሐልኩ : ለከ : በርእስዩ : አነ : ወል
 ዱ : ለእግዚአብሔር : ወበኩራ : ለቡርክት :
 ማርያም : በዘኢይትሔሰው : ቃልዩ : ወኢ
 ይዲም፡፡ ከዳንዩ ። መሐልክ : ለከ : ወሀለ
 ወከ : ካዕቦ : ዘትስእለኒ : ነሉ : ዘፈቀድክ ።
 ወአነሂ : እስምዓክ : ስእለተክ : ወእሁበክ ፤
 በከመ : ፈቅድክ : ወዘንተ : ብሂሎ : አው
 ፡፡ እምአባሉ ። ወይቤሎ : ነዓ : ቅረብ :
 ኅቤዩ : ወአጥበዎ : አምላክን : ከመ : ይትቀ
 ላም : አፋሁ : ወነሉንታሁ ፤ በዚው : መለኮ

ት : ወእምዝ : ተሠወረ : እምኔሁ ። ወተነድ
 ፈ : ልቡ : በፍቅረ : ዚአሁ : ወበሐልዮ : ስነ :
 ዚአሁ : ተዓወወ : ሕሊናሁ : ዘቀዳሚ : መ
 ዓዛሁ ። ኢሰሰለ : እምኔሁ : ለመባእ : ጽዮ
 ን : ገብሩ : ይምሐ (Fol. 32a.) ረነ : እግዚአ
 ብሔር : በጸጋሁ ። ወለኃጥእ : ፍቁሩ : ተ
 ክለ : ሃይማኖት : ወምስለ : ፍቅርቱ : ወለ
 ተ : ጽዮን : ለዓለመ : ዓለም : አሜን ።

(Fol. 33a.) በስመ : ሥሉስ : ቅዱስ : ናጢይ

ት : ወንንግር : ለዚየነብዮ : ወለይስምዖ : በ
 ለብዎ ፤ ወሶቤ : ፈድፈድ : ፍቁሩ : ለእግዚአ
 ብሔር : ኅብ : ተክለ : ማርያም : ሶብ : ሐወ
 ጸ : ከመ : የሀቦ : ኪዳነ : ምሕረት : ወከመ :
 ያጥብዎ : ጥቦ : ሐለዩ : በልቡ ። ወይቤ : ም
 ንተ : አዓሥዮ : ለእግዚአብሔር : አምላኪ
 ዩ : ኢየሱስ : ክርስቶስ ፤ ዘመጠነዝ : አፍቅ
 ሮትዩ : በኢተዘክሮ : ኃጣውዕዩ : ወምንተ :
 በዓለ : እገብር : እምአፍቅሮቱ ። ልደቶ :
 ጥምቀቶ : ሕማማቲሁ : ወትንሣኤሁ : በከ
 ሞ : ተክህለኒ : ምስለ : ሰብእ : አክበርኩ :
 በባሕቲትዩ : ምንተ : እገብር : በዓለ ። ወም
 ንተኑ : ዘያሠምሮ : ለእግዚአብሔር : ወዘን
 ተ : ብሂሎ : ሰአለ : ወይቤ : እግዚእዩ : ወ
 አምላኪዩ : ክሥት : ሊተ : ዘታፈቅሮ : ወ
 ዘታሠምሮ : ከመ : እግብር : በዓለ ። ወሰም
 ዓ : እግዚአብሔር : ስእለቶ ፤ ወሐልዮቶ :
 (Fol. 33b.) ወአመረ : ሎቱ : በመንፈስ : ቅዱ
 ስ : ከመ : ያክብር : ዕለተ : ክብርቱ : ወቅድ
 ስተ : ወኅራተ ። እንተ : ባቲ : ሰቀልዎ : ለ
 እግዚእነ : ኢየሱስ : ክርስቶስ : ለቤዛ : ነሉ
 ሉ : ዓለም ። ወተስእለሙ : ለካህናት : ወ

ይቤሎሙ፡ በአይ፡ ዕለት፡ ተሦዓ ። ወበአ
ይ፡ ዕለት፡ ተንሥኡ፡ እግዚእን፡ ወአምላ
ክን፡ ወመድኃኒን፡ ኢየሱስ፡ ክርስቶስ ። ወ
ቦ፡ እለ፡ ይቤሎ፡ አመ፡ ጼወፀለመጋቢት፡
ወቦ፡ እለ፡ ይቤሎ፡ በመጽሐፈ፡ ስንክሳር፡
አመ፡ ጼወጊተሦዓ፡ ወአመ፡ ጼወፀተንሥ
አ፡ ወበመጽሐፈ፡ ኀዳርኒ፡ ፫፻፲፱፡ ወጽርቱዓን፡
ሃይማኖት፡ ከመ፡ ይብሉ፡ ወመጽሐፈ፡ ዕ
ርገታኒ፡ ድርሳን፡ ዘእግዝእትን፡ ማርያም፡
ክማሁ፡ ይብል፡ ወጠየቀ፡ ዘንተ፡ ተፈሥሐ፡
በእንተ፡ ዘረከበ፡ ቀዘተመነየ፡ ዕለተ፡ ሠናየ፤
ዘኢያጥረይዎ፡ ቀደምት፡ አጥረየ፡ እምተዝ
ካረ፡ ጻድቃን፡ (Fol. 34a.) ወሰማዕት ። ከያ
ሃ፡ ኃረየ፡ ወአፍቀረ፡ ወአሠነየ፡ ወአልዓ
ለ፡ ወአዕበየ፡ መባእ፡ ጽዮን፡ ወአስተጋብ
አ፡ አኃዊሁ፡ ወአኃቲሁ፡ ወከሎ፡ ደቂቆ፡
ወአሊዓሁ፡ ወይቤሎሙ፡ ስምዑኒ፡ እንግ
ርክሙ፡ ዘመከርኩ፡ አን፡ በዘንረክብ፡ ሕ
ይወተ፡ ዘለዓለም፡ በመንግሥተ፡ ሰማያ
ት ። እስመ፡ ከሎሙ፡ ቅዱሳን፡ አጥረዩ፡
በቀዳሲተ፡ ለነፍሶሙ፡ ቦ፡ በጸዊም፡ ወቦ፡
በትኀርምት፡ ወቦ፡ በፃማ፡ ወቦ፡ በጸሎት፡
ወቦ፡ በሰጊድ፡ ወቦ፡ በትጋህ ። ወንሕነሰ፡
ከሐድያን፡ ንዑ፡ ንፀመድ፡ ወንግበር፡ ተ
ዝካረ፡ ሞቱ፡ ለእግዚእን፡ ወመድኃኒን፡ ኢ
የሱስ፡ ክርስቶስ፤ በዝንቱ፡ ንሬኢ፡ ገጸ፡
ለእግዚአብሔር፡ በከመ፡ ይቤ፡ ለሊሁ፡ ለ
አርዳኢሁ፡ አመ፡ ወሀቦሙ፡ ምሥጢረ፡
ዚአሁ፡ ዘንተ፡ እንዘ፡ ትገብሩ፡ ተዝካረ፡
ሞትየ፡ ግበሩ፤ ወተዝካረ፡ ትንሣኤየ፡
ትዜንወ፡ መፍትሔ፡ ንግበር፡ ተዝካረ፡

(Fol. 34b.) ወናስተሐይጽ፡ በእንተ፡ ዘሠም
ረ፡ ብን፡ ወኮን፡ በከረ፡ ለሕይወተ፡ ዚእን ።
ወለአበዊነሂ፡ ሐዋርያት፡ ይትገበር፡ ተዝ
ካረ፡ ሞቶሙ፡ ለለዕለተ፡ በዓሎሙ፡ ወለ
እሉሂ፡ ውእቱ፡ ፈጠሮሙ፡ ወውእቱ፡ ቀ
ደሶሙ፤ ወውእቱ፡ ኃረዮሙ፡ ወውእቱ፡
አልዓሎሙ፡ ወለእግዚእን፡ ኢየሱስ፡ ክር
ስቶስ፡ ኢይትገበር፡ ተዝካረ፡ ሞቱ፡ ዘእ
ንበለ፡ ትንሣኤሁ፡ ማኅየዊ፡ ወለእመ፡ ኢ
ሞተ፡ በእንቲእን ። መኑ፡ እምተንሥኡ፡ ለ
እለ፡ ያሐይወን፡ ለምንት፡ ይቀልል፡ ኀዝ
ካረ፡ ሞቱ፡ ለእግዚእን፡ እመተዝካረ፡ ት
ንሣኤሁ፡ በከመ፡ ይደሉ፤ አንሰኬ፡ እም
ፈተውኩ፡ ኢይግበሩ፡ ግብረ፡ ማሕረስ፡
ወኢምሥያጠ፡ ወኢግብረ፡ ከሎ፡ ዘሥ
ጋ፡ በዕለተ፡ በዓሉ፡ ለእግዚእን፡ ወመድ
ኃኒን፡ ኢየሱስ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ አላ፤ ከመ፡
ንግበር፡ በዓለ፡ በብካይ፡ ወላህ፡ ወሰ (Fol. 35a.)
ቆታው፡ ብዙኀ፡ በእንተ፡ ስቅለቱ፡ ለመ
ድኃኒን፡ ስቡሕ ። ወይእዜኒ፡ ስምዑ፡ አ
ሆ፡ በሉኒ፡ እለ፡ ኮንክሙ፡ ምስሌየ፡ ከ
መ፡ ንትወከፍ፡ ወንፀወን፡ ቦቱ፡ እመሂ፡
በሞትን፡ አው፡ በሕይወትን ። ወይቤሎ፡
አሆ፡ ይኩን፡ ሥምረቱ፡ ለአምላክን፡ በከ
መ፡ አዘዝክን፡ አንተ፡ ወወሀበን፡ ከያክ፡
መርሀ፡ ለመንግሥተ፡ ሰማያት፡ እንተ፡
ይእቲ፡ ፍኖተ፡ ጽድቀ፡ ውእቱሂ፡ ይቤሎ
ሙ፡ ሰአሉ፡ ኬ፡ ኀበ፡ እግዚእን፡ ከመ፡ ያ
ጽንዓን ። ወሀለው፡ ሰብእ፡ ዘይጸልኑ፡ ወ
ይጸእሉን፡ እንዘ፡ ይብሉ፡ ዘኢተሠርዓ፡ ሠ
ርዑ፡ በፈቃደሙ፡ ወያብዕሉ፡ ኢትፍርህ





ወይእዚኒ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ባርክ፡ ሊተ፡ ከመ፡ እ
ግበር፡ ተገዛረ፡ ሞትክ፡ በከመ፡ ክህልክ፡ ፤
አነ፡ ገብርክ፡ መባእ፡ ጽዮን፡ ፤ ሥመር፡ እ
ግዚአብሔር፡ ዘአቁርብ፡ ለክ፡ ንስቲተ፡ መባዓ፡
ወዕጠነ፡ ወመሥዋዕተ፡ በእንተ፡ ጽፍዓተ፡
መላትሒክ፡ ወክርዓተ፡ ርእሰክ፡ ወቅሥ
ፈተ፡ ዘባንክ፡ ወበእንተ፡ ቅንዋተ፡ እደዊ
ክ፡ ወእገሪክ፡ ወርግዘተ፡ ገቦክ፡ ወበእንተ፡
ጥብሐ፡ ሥጋክ፡ ወክዕወተ፡ ደምክ፡ ክቡር፡
ሥመር፡ ሊተ፡ ወአፍቅር፡ ወሶበ፡ ይቤሎ፡
አቡን፡ ለመፍቀሬ፡ ሰብእ፡ ይቤሎ፡ ይኩን፡
ለክ፡ ቅዱሳ፡ ወ (Fol. 38b.) በሩክ፡ ወበዕለተ፡
ትገብር፡ ተገዛሪዮ፡ አነሂ፡ ኢይትፈለጥ፡
እምኔክ፡ አኮ፡ በዕለተ፡ ትገብር፡ ተገዛሪዮ፡
ባሕቲቶ፡ አላ፡ በኩሎ፡ ጊዜ፡ ኢየሁድያንክ፡
ወለለ፡ ዘክርክ፡ ስምዮ፡ ኢይሴልል፡ እምኔ
ክ፡ በከመ፡ አፍቀርከኒ፡ አፈቅረክ፡ ወባሕ
ቱ፡ ኅረይ፡ በምንትኑ፡ እምሳል፡ እትረአ
ይክ፡ ወሕፃነኑ፡ ከዊንዮ፡ ወሚመ፡ ወሬዛ፡
አው፡ ከመ፡ ዮም፡ ኑ፡ በሕማመ፡ ሞትዮ፡
ወእቤሎ፡ በከመ፡ ሥምረትክ፡ እግዚእዮ፡
ይኩን፡ ወደገመ፡ ወይቤ፡ አንተ፡ ኅረይ፡
ዘከመ፡ ይዔድሞ፡ ለልብክ፡ ወእቤሎ፡ እ
ምድኅረ፡ አባሕከኒ፡ እኅረይ፡ ወሠመርክ፡
ሊተ፡ ለኃጥእ፡ ገብርክ፡ መባዓ፡ ጽዮን፡ ፤
እፈቅድ፡ ትትረአዮኒ፡ በከዊን፡ ሕፃን፡ እን
ዘ፡ ትትዩዋህ፡ አሆ፡ ይቤሎ፡ እግዚእ፡ ወ
ሶቤሃ፡ ሰገደ፡ ሎቱ፡ ብፁዓዊ፡ ታሕተ፡ እ
ገሪሁ፡ ወእእኩቶ፡ ወእምዝ፡ ጸሮ፡ ሰረገ
ላ፡ ብርሃን፡ ወአብጽሖ፡ ብሔሮ፡ ወእግ
(Fol. 39a.) ዘእነ፡ ተሠወሮ፡ ሎቱ፡ ስብሐት፡ ፤

ዘኢይትሐዩይ፡ ተግባሮ፡ ይዕቀብ፡ ለገብሩ፡
ተክለ፡ ሃይማኖት፡ ወምስለ፡ ፍቁርቱ፡ ወ
ለተ፡ ጽዮን፡ ለዓለመ፡ ዓለም፡ አሜን፡ ።

(Fol. 40a.) ወእምዝ፡ ከነ፡ ያጠብዕ፡ ፈድፋ
ደ፡ ወይጽሕቅ፡ ለገብረ፡ ተገዛረ፡ ሞቱ፡
ለእግዚእነ፡ ወምድኃኒነ፡ ኢየሱስ፡ ክርስቶ
ስ፡ ወዩሐር፡ በእዲሁ፡ ወይመዝር፡ ምዝ
ረ፡ ወያበስል፡ ትብስተ፡ ወዩአቱ፡ ማየ፡ ቀ
ዲሆ፡ ወዩሐጥብ፡ ዕፅወ፡ ወይጸውር፡ መል
ዕልተ፡ ርእሱ፡ ወዲበ፡ መትከፍቱ፡ እንዘ፡
ያነከሮ፡ ለእግዚእነ፡ ኢየሱስ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ፤
ለዕፅ፡ መስቀሉ፡ ዘጸሮ፡ ከመ፡ ይቤዙ፡ ተ
ግባሮ፡ ወአነሂ፡ እጸውር፡ ከመ፡ እግበር፡
ተገዛሪ፡ ወከመ፡ እኩን፡ ገብሮ፡ እስመ፡
ለትሒት፡ ውእቱ፡ ያከብሮ፡ ወበመቅድ
መ፡ ደቂቁ፡ ያነድድ፡ እሳተ፡ አስተብሪከ፡
እንዘ፡ ቀሲስ፡ ውእቱ፡ ወመምህር፡ ኢፈ
ተወ፡ ተከብሮ፡ በወይነ፡ ፍቅሩ፡ ለወልደ፡
ማርያም፡ ሰኪሮ፡ ኢተመይጠ፡ ለተድኅሮ፡ ።
ወገብረ፡ በዓለ፡ አመ፡ ጄወጂለወርኃ፡ መጋ
ቢት፡ በስብሐት፡ ወበጸም፡ ምስለ፡ ካህና
ት፡ (Fol. 40b.) ወዲያቆናት፡ በንጹሕ፡ ዕጣ
ን፡ ወበአዕርጎ፡ ጸሎት፡ ወአጽግቦ፡ ርኅብ
ን፡ ወአርውሞ፡ ጽሙዓን፡ ለተገዛረ፡ ሞ
ቱ፡ ለመድኅን፡ ወዓዲ፡ ሠርዓ፡ ማኅበረ፡
ለለወርኑ፡ ወከፈሎሙ፡ ለእሊአሁ፡ በዕፃ፡
ወይቤሎሙ፡ ተገብሩ፡ ወጸምው፡ በእንተ፡
ተገዛረ፡ ሞቱ፡ ለአምላክክመ፡ እስከ፡ ይ
ደክም፡ ኃይልክመ፡ ወያንጸፈጽፍ፡ ሐፍክ
መ፡ ወእስከ፡ ይትቀጠቀጥ፡ ዓዕምክመ፡ ፤
ወይትከዓው፡ ደምክመ፡ ስምዑ፡ በወንጌ





ገበረ : በእደ : ገብሩ : መባእ : ጽዮን : ምሉ-
አ : መንፈስ : ጸሎቱ : ወበረከቱ : ይዕቀቦ :
ለኃጥእ : ገብሩ : ተክል : ሃይማኖት : ምስለ :
ፍቅርቱ : ወለተ : ጽዮን : ለዓለመ : ዓለም :
አሜን ። ወመጽአት : አሐቲ : ብእሲት : ጸ-
ዊራ : ሕፃን : ሕሙመ : ዘሐብጠ : ጐርዒሁ :
ዘኢይክል : ጠቢው : ጥባ : ለእሙ ። ወትቤ
ሎ : ለአቡነ : ነጽር : አባ : እስመ : ይመው-
ት : ወልድዮ : ወፈውሶ : ሊተ : ተማኅፀን
ኩ : በአምላክክ ። ወይቤላ : ለእመ : ተፈው
ሰ : ዝንቱ : ሕፃን : ትሁቢዮት : ብዕዓት : ከ-
መ : ይግበር : ተዝካሮ : ለመድኅን ። ወትቤ
ሎ : እው : ይኩን : በከመ : ትቤ ። ወሶቤሃ :
አምጽአ : ትብስተ : ንስቲተ : ወአፍዓሞ :
በአፋሁ ። ወቂዓ : ውእቱ : ሕፃንን : ዕብነ :
ጸሊ (Fol. 45a.) መ : ዘይመስል : ሕመተ : ወ
በጊዜሃ : ሐይወ : ውእቱ : ሕፃን ፤ ወጠበወ :
ሐሊበ : እሙ : ወነጸሮ : አቡነ : ተክለ : ማ-
ርያም ። አእኩቶ : ለእግዚአብሔር : በእን-
ተ : ዘገብረ : በእደዊሁ ። ወይእቲ : ብእሲ-
ት : አንከረት : ነጸራ : ዘከመ : ሐይወ : ወ
ልዳ ። ወአተወት : ብሔራ : በፍሥሐ : ወበ
ኃሜት ፤ ለነኒ : ያሕይወን : ወኃይለ : ጸሎቱ :
ይዕቀቦ : ለኃጥእ : ገብሩ : ተክል : ሃይማኖ-
ት : ምስለ : ፍቅርቱ : ወለተ : ጽዮን : ለዓለ-
መ : ዓለም : አሜን ።

(Fol. 46a.) ተአምር : ዘገብረ : እግዚእነ :
ወመድኃኒን : ኢየሱስ : ክርስቶስ : በእደ :
ገብሩ : መባዓ : ጽዮን ። ሐመረ : ሥጋሁ :
ያድኅነን : እምአሥራም : ለዓለመ : ዓለም :
አሜን ። ወካዕበ : መጽአት : አሐቲ : ብእሲ-

ት : ጸዊራ : ሕፃን : ሕሙመ : ዘአልጸቀ : ለ-
መዊት ። ወገደፈቶ : ታሕተ : እገሪሁ ። ወ
ትቤሎ : ንሣእ : ዘንተ : ሕፃን : ለእመ : ፈ-
ወስኮ : በጸሎትክ : ቅድስት : ይኩንክ : ገብ-
ረ ። ወይቤላ : ሊተሰ : ኢይኩነኒ : አላ : ይ-
ኩን : ገብሮ : ለእግዚእነ : ኢየሱስ : ክርስ-
ቶስ ። ወዘንተ : ብሂሎ : መጠዎ : ለሕፃን :
እምውእቱ : ትብስት ። ወበጊዜሃ : ሐይወ :
ውእቱ : ሕፃን : ወይቤላ : ለእሙ ፤ ወሶበ :
ልህቀ : ንስቲተ : አምጽአዮ : ዝዩ : ይንበ-
ር : በቤተ : ክርስቲያን ፤ ወይግበር : ተዝካ-
ሮ : ለመድኅን : በከመ : በዓዕኪዮ ። ወትቤ
ሎ : አሆ : ወሐረት : እንዘ : ትትፈሣሕ : ወ
አተወት : ቤታ ፤ ወእምዝ : በአሐቲ : ሌሊ-
(Fol. 46b.) ት : እንዘ : ትነውም : ምስለ : ብእ-
ሲሃ : ወፎውሉዳ : ወተንሥኦ : እሳት : ወአ-
ውዓዩ : ቤታ ፤ ወወዕአት : ምስለ : ምታ :
ወተረፋ : ፪ደቂቃ : ወ፪ወዕኦ : እስመ : ወሬ-
ዛ : ውእቱ : ዘይልሕቆሙ ። ወሶበ : ትወዕ-
እ : ይእቲ : ብእሲት : አውዓያ : ገበዋቲሃ :
ወአእጋሪሃ ። ወኮነ : ዓቢዩ : ክላሃ : ወአው-
ያተ : በእንተ : እሉ : ፪ሕፃናት : እለ : ኮነ :
ማእከለ : እሳት ፤ ወእምድኅረ : ቄረ : እሳት :
ኃሠሥዎሙ : ለእመ : ረከቡ : እዕዕምቲሆ-
ሙ ፤ ከመ : ይቅብሩ ። ወረከብዎ : ለውእቱ :
ሕፃን : ዘተበዕዓ : ለተዝካረ : መድኅን : ሕ-
ያዎ : እንዘ : ኢያውዒ : ስእርተ : ርእሱ ።
ወኢአልባሲሁ : ከመ : ይትዓወቅ : ዕበዩ :
ለተዝካረ : ምድኅን : እኅሁሰ : ውዕዩ ፤ ወ
ኮነ : ሐመደ : ወነገርዎ : ለብዑሶ : መፍቀ-
ሬ : መድኅን ። ወአእኩቶ : ለእግዚአብሔ-

ር : በእንተ : ዝንቱ : ተአምረ : ዘኮነ : በኃ
ይሉ : ለእግዚአብሔር ፤ ወከማሁ : ለነኒ :
ያድኅነነ : እሞተ : ኃሣር : ወእምኃጢአት :
መሪር ፤ ወይባ (Fol. 47a.) ርከነ : በፍቅር ። ሣ
ህሉኒ : ወምሕረቱ : የሃሉ : ምስለ : ገብሩ :
ትክለ : ሃይማኖት : [ወ]ምስለ : ፍቅርቱ : ውለ
ተ : ጽዮን : ለዓለመ : ዓለም : አሜን ።

(Fol. 48a.) ተአምረ : ዘገብረ : እግዚእነ :
ወመድኃኒን : ኢየሱስ : ክርስቶስ : በእዶ :
ገብሩ : መባዓ : ጽዮን ። በረከቱ : ትኩን :
ምስለ : ኃጥእ : ገብሩ : ተክል : ሃይማኖት :
ለዓለመ : ዓለም : አሜን ። ወሀሎ : በአስፈ
ሬዳ : ምሉእ : ሐሪቅ : ዘይትገበር : ለኅብስ
ተ : ተዝካሩ : ለወልድ : እግዚአብሔር ፤ እ
ግዚእነ : ኢየሱስ : ክርስቶስ ፤ ኮነ : በላዕሌ
ሁ : ለሐሪቅ : ጸቃውዓ : መዓር : በዓዳ ። ወላ
ዕለ : ጸቃውዕኒ : ይነድድ : እሳት : ዘያንጸበ
ርቅ : ፈድፋድ ። ወሶበ : ተጽዓቱ : ሰብእ : ለ
ነጽሮቱ : ተሠወረ : ንጥረ : መብረቅ : ዘኅ
ብረ : እሳት : ወተረፈ : ጸቃውዕ : በዲቤሁ ፤
ለሐሪቅ : ወጣፅሙ : መንክር : እምጸቃው
ዓ : መዓር ። ወተፈሥሐ : መባዓ : ጽዮን :
ወሰብሐ : እንዘ : ይብል : ይትባረክ : እግዚ
አብሔር : ዘሠምረ ፤ መባዕየ : ዘንተ : መን
ክረ : ዘአርአየ : ወኢተዘክረ : ኃጢአትየ :
ወደመሮ : ለውእቱ : ጸቃውዕ : ምስለ : ሐ
ሪቅ ። ወኮነ : ከመዝ : ዕፁብ : ለነኒ : የሀበነ :
(Fol. 48b.) መዊእ : ወያስብጠነ : መና : ኅቡ
እ : በእንተ : ጸሎቱ : ይዕቀቦ : ለኃጥእ : ገ
ብሩ : ተክለ : ሃይማኖት : ምስለ : ብእሲተ :
ወለተ : ጽዮን : ለዓለመ : ዓለም : አሜን ።

(Fol. 49b.) ተአምረ : ዘገብረ : እግዚእነ :
ኢየሱስ : ክርስቶስ : በእዴሁ : ለመባዓ : ጽ
ዮን ፤ ኃይለ : ጸሎቱ : ይዕቀቦ : ለገብሩ : ተ
ክለ : ሃይማኖት : ምስለ : ፍቅርቱ : ወለተ :
[ጽዮን] ለዓለመ : ዓለም : አሜን ። ወመጽ
አት : አሐቲ : ብእሲት : ወትቤሎ : ለአቡነ :
ተክለ : ማርያም : ተዘክረኒ : በጸሎትክ : ቅ
ድስት ፤ እስመ : በጸሕኩ : ኅበ : ብዙኃን :
ቅዱሳን : ወኢፈጸምኩ : ጸሕቅየ ። ወሶበ :
ሰማዕኩ : ዜናክ : መጻእኩ : ከመ : ትርድአ
ኒ : በጸሎትክ ። ወይቤላ : አንሰ : ኃጥእ : ዘ
ኢይከውን : ፀበለ : እገሪሆመ : ለቅዱሳን ።
ወስዕንኪ : በኅቤሆመ : ረኪበ : በኅቤየኑ :
ትረክቢ : ንግርኒኪ : ምንትኑ : ጸሕቅኪ ፤
ወትቤሎ : መክን : አነ : ወኢወላድኩ : ለግ
ሙራ : ወነበርኩ : ብዙኃ : መዋዕለ : ምስ
ለ : ምትየ ። ወይቤላ : ለእመ : ወሀበኪ : እ
ግዚአብሔር : ውሉደ : ትሁቢየኑ : ለተዝ
ካረ : መድኅን : ብፅዓተ ። ወትቤሎ : እወ :
ይኩን : በከመ : (Fol. 50a.) ትቤለኒ ። ወአጥ
ዓማ : እምውእቱ : ኅብስተ : ተዝካሩ : ለ
መድኅን ። ወይእቲ : በልዓት : ወተባረክት :
እምኅቤሁ : እንዘ : ትትአመን : ዘመሐራ :
አተወት : ብሔራ ፤ ወእምድኅረ : ጀዓመት :
መጽአት : ኅቤሁ : ጸዊራ : ጀሕዓናት ፤ ወት
ቤሎ : ነጽር : ነዮሙ : እሉ : ሕዓናት : ዘወ
ለድክምሙ : በጸሎትክ : ኦአባ : ወነጸሮ :
አባ : ትክለ : ማርያም : አክሞሰሰ : ወሰሐ
ቀ : ወተፈሥሐ : ወሰብሐ : ለእግዚአብሔ
ር : ወተመጠዎሙ : በእዴሁ ፤ ወባረክ : ላ
ዕሌሆሙ : ወነፍሐ : ውስተ : ገጸሙ : ለሕ

ገናት ። ወይቤላ ፡ ለእሞሙ ፡ እመ ፡ ሀሎኩ ፡
 አነ ፡ አምጽኢዮሙ ፡ ጎቤዩ ፡ ሶበ ፡ ልሀቄ ፡
 እሉ ፡ ሕፃናት ፤ ወለእመ ፡ ሞትኩሂ ፡ ሀቢዮ
 ሙ ፡ ለተዝካረ ፡ መድኅን ፡ በከመ ፡ ብፅዓት
 ኪ ፡ አይትመዓዕኪ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ። ወእ
 ምዝ ፡ መጠዋ ፡ ወነሥኦት ፡ ደቂቃ ፡ ወሐረ
 ት ፡ እንዘ ፡ ትትፌሣሕ ። ከማሃ ፡ ያስተፍ
 ሥሐ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ፡ ለኃጥእ ፡ ገብሩ ፡
 (Fol. 50b.) ተክለ ፡ ሃይማኖት ፡ ምስለ ፡ ፍቅር
 ቱ ፡ ወለተ ፡ ጽዮን ፡ ለዓለመ ፡ ዓለም ፡ አ
 ሜን ።

(Fol. 51a.) ተአምር ፡ ዘገብረ ፡ እግዚእነ ፡
 ወመድኃኒን ፡ ኢየሱስ ፡ ክርስቶስ ፡ በእድሁ ፡
 ለገብሩ ፡ መባዓ ፡ ጽዮን ። ጸሎቱ ፡ ይፅቀቦ ፡
 ለኃጥእ ፡ ገብሩ ፡ ተክለ ፡ ሃይማኖት ፡ ምስለ ፡
 ፍቅርቱ ፡ ወለተ ፡ [ጽዮን] ፡ ለዓለመ ፡ ዓለ
 ም ፡ አሜን ። ወሀለወት ፡ አሐቲ ፡ ብእሲት ፡
 እምነ ፡ አሐቲሁ ፡ ለአቡነ ፡ ተክለ ፡ ማርያም ፡
 ወሰአለቶ ፡ ከመ ፡ የሀባ ፡ እምኅብስተ ፡ ተ
 ዝካሩ ፡ ለመድኃኒን ። ወወሀባ ፡ ቪፍርፋራተ ፡
 ወነሣሕ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ተሐውር ፡ ረከባ ፡ ጅመነኮ
 ስ ፡ ወሰአላ ፡ ከመ ፡ ተሀቦ ፡ ውእተ ፡ ፍርፋ
 ሬተ ፡ ይእቲኒ ፡ ወሀባ ፡ ወተመጠዎ ፡ ወደ
 ዮን ፡ ሶቤሃ ፡ ውስተ ፡ መሶብ ፡ እስከ ፡ ጊዜ ፡
 ድራር ። ወመሲዮ ፡ አርኃው ፡ ይርአይ ፡ ከ
 መ ፡ ይብላዕ ፡ ወረከበ ፡ ከዊኖ ፡ ሥዕለ ፡ እግ
 ዝእትነ ፡ ማርያም ፡ ምስለ ፡ ፍቅር ፡ ወልዳ ።
 ወሶቤሃ ፡ ደንገዖ ፡ ወከደነ ፡ መሶበ ፡ ከመ ፡
 ቀዳሚ ፡ ወአንበረ ፡ ወጐንደዮ ፡ ካዕበ ፡ ሐ
 ወጸ ። ወአርኃው ፡ ወረከበ ፡ ከዊኖ ፡ ኅብስተ ።
 ወበጊዜሃ ፡ በልዓ ፡ ወጸግበ ፡ እምበረከቱ ።

ወበጽባሕ (Fol. 51b.) ተንሥኦ ፡ ውእቱ ፡ መ
 ነኮስ ። ወሐረ ፡ ጎበ ፡ አቡነ ፡ ተክለ ፡ ማርያ
 ም ፡ መፍቀሬ ፡ መድኅን ። ወነገሮ ፡ ከሎ ፡
 ዘኮነ ። ወአቡነ ፡ አንከረ ፡ ወተደመ ፡ ወእእ
 ከቶ ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር ፡ ወይቤ ፡ እግዚእየ ፡
 ወአምላኪየ ፤ ሠመርከኑ ፡ ከመ ፡ ታርኢ ፡
 መንክራተክ ፡ በዳበ ፡ ኅብስት ፡ ዘተገብረ ፡
 ለተዝካርክ ። ይትባረክ ፡ መንግሥትክ ፡ ለ
 ዓለመ ፡ ዓለም ። ሣህሉ ፡ ወምሕረቱ ፡ የሃ
 ሉ ፡ ምስለ ፡ ኃጥእ ፡ ገብሩ ፡ ተክለ ፡ ሃይማኖ
 ት ፡ [ወ]ምስለ ፡ ፍቅርቱ ፡ ወለተ ፡ [ጽዮን] ፡
 ለዓለመ ፡ ዓለም ፡ አሜን ።

(Fol. 52b.) ተአምረ ፡ ዘገብረ ፡ እግዚእነ ፡
 ወመድኃኒን ፡ ኢየሱስ ፡ ክርስቶስ ፡ በእድዊ
 ሁ ፡ ለአቡነ ፡ ተክለ ፡ ማርያም ፡ ጸሎቱ ፡ ወ
 በረከቱ ፡ የሃሉ ፡ ምስለ ፡ ኃጥእ ፡ ገብሩ ፡ ተ
 ክለ ፡ ሃይማኖት ፡ [ወ]ምስለ ፡ ፍቅርቱ ፡ ወለ
 ተ ፡ [ጽዮን] ፡ ለዓለመ ፡ ዓለም ፡ አሜን ። ወ
 አሐተ ፡ ዕለተ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይሁቦሙ ፡ በእደዊ
 ሁ ፡ እምውእቱ ፡ ኅብስት ፡ በከመ ፡ ይሁቦ
 ሙ ፡ ዘልፈ ፡ እምድኅረ ፡ ቅርባን ፡ አቡነ ፡
 ተክለ ፡ ማርያም ፡ ወተመጠወ ፡ ጅብእሲ ፡ እ
 ምድኅረ ፡ በልዓ ፡ ከልኦ ፡ ኅብስተ ፡ በረከ
 ት ። ወኢያእመሮ ፡ መኑሂ ፡ ዘከመ ፡ ገብረ ፡
 ዘንተ ። ወሐመ ፡ ውእቱ ፡ ብእሲ ፡ ወየብሰ ፡
 ሥጋሁ ፡ ወኮነ ፡ አዕፅምተ ። ወተስእልዎ ፡
 በእንተ ፡ ደዊሁ ፡ ወይቤሎሙ ፡ ሶበ ፡ ተመ
 ጠውኩ ፡ እምኅብስት ፤ ዘተገብረ ፡ ለተዝካ
 ረ ፡ መድኅን ፡ በእደዊሁ ፡ ለመባዓ ፡ ጽዮን ።
 እምድኅረ ፡ በላዕኩ ፡ ከላኦ ፡ ኅብስተ ፡ ከመ
 ዝ ፡ ኮንኩ ። ወሶበ ፡ ውኅጥክም ፡ ነደ ፡ ልብ



የ : ከመ : እሳት : እንዘ : ዕርእድ : በእኩ :
 ውስተ : ማኅ (Fol. 53a.) ያርዮ : ወኖምኩ : ወ
 ርኢኩ : በሕልምየ : ከመ : ወረዱ : ሰናስ
 ል : እምሰማይ ፤ ወዋቅሑኒ : ነሉንታየ :
 ቦዝ : ግብር : ሐመምኩ : ወይውሏ : ውሥ
 ጥየ : ከመ : እሳት ፤ ወዘንተ : ብሂሎ : ነገሮ
 መ : እምድኅረ : አዕረፈ : አቡነ : ተክለ :
 ማርያም : ወእለ : ሰምዑ : አንከሩ : ዕብዮ :
 ለመድኅን ፤ ወይቤልዎ : ሐር : ኀበ : መቃ
 ብሩ : ለመባዓ : ጽዮን ፤ ወሰኦል : ቦቱ : ከ
 መ : ይፈውስ : ከ : እግዚአብሔር : በጸሎ
 ቱ ፤ ወሐረ : ወተማኅለለ : ቦቱ : ወአፍተነ :
 ርእሶ : ለክህን ፤ ወሐይወ : ሶቤሃ : እምደዌ
 ሁ : ወተፈትሐ : መዋቅሕቲሁ : ወኮነ : ነሉ
 ላንቲሁ : ጥዑየ : እንተ : ዘየብሰ : ሥጋሁ :
 ወበዕዓ ፤ ወይቤ : ኢይወዕኦ : እመቃብሩ :
 ወመንከሰ : ህየ : ወተደመረ : ምስለ : ደቂ
 ቁ : ሣህሉ : ወምሕረቱ : የሃሉ : ምስለ : ነ
 ፍሰ : ኃጥእ : ገብሩ : ተክለ : ሃይማኖት : ም
 ስለ : ፍቅርቱ : ወለተ : ጽዮን : ለዓለመ : ዓ
 ለም : አሜን ።

(Fol. 54b.) ስምዑ : አበውየ : ወአኃውየ :
 እለ : ታፈቅርዎ : ለክርስቶስ : ዕብየ : ተኦ
 ምሪሁ : ዘተገብረ : ሶበ : ተጽሕፈ : ነሉ :
 ይነውኅ : ነገር ፤ ወባሕቱ : የአክለነ : ወዒ
 ወ : ዘይከውን : ኀዳጠ : በከመ : ይቤ : መ
 ጽሐፍ : ለጠቢብሰ : አሐቲ : ቃል : ትበቀሩ
 ዎ : ወብፁዕ : አቡነ : ተክለ : ማርያም : ያፈ
 ቅሮ : ለመድኃኒ : ወኢይዴምር : ምስለ :
 ካልአት : በዓላት : መባዓ ፤ ዕጣነ ፤ ወይነ ፤
 ወቅብዓ ፤ ወእክለ ፤ ወዒወ : ዘይከውን : ለተ

ዝክረ : መድኅን ፤ ወያነብሮን : በባሕቲቶ
 ን : እስከ : ይመውት : በረኅብ : ነሉ : ዕለ
 ተ : ኢይጥዕም : ምንተኒ : እምእክለ : ተዝ
 ካሩ : ለመድኅን ፤ ወዓዲ : በዕዓ : ከመ : የ
 ሀብ : ነሉ : ዘአጥረየ : ለተዝክረ : ምድኅ
 ን : ወለበዓለ : ልደት : ወለትንሣኤ : ቅድስ
 ት : ወለወላዲቱ : ድንግል ፤ ወዓዲ : በዕዓ :
 ወይቤ : እምነሉ : ዘበላዕኩ : ወተሰሰይ
 ኩ : ይኩን : መንፈቆ : ለነዳያን : ወለምስ
 ኪናን : ክፍሎ : ለአምላኪየ : በከመ : ይሁ
 ብም : ለንጉ (Fol. 55a.) ሥ : አህጉረ : መንግ
 ሥቱ : አምኃ ፤ ወከማሁ : አነኒ : እሁብ :
 ለንጉሥየ : ወአምላኪየ : ኢየሱስ : ክርስ
 ቶስ ፤ ወዚመ : ዘንተ : ውስተ : ማዕዳ : ወ
 ትረ : ወሰመየ : ክፍለ : መድኅን ፤ እምኒ :
 በንብረቱ : ወእመኒ : በንግደቱ : ውስተ :
 ካልእ : መካን ፤ ኢይበልዕ : ዘእንበለ : ያቅ
 ድም : ውሂበ : ለነዳያን : ዘኢያጸርዕ : ለለ
 ዕለቱ : እንዘ : ይጸንሕ : ዕዲተ : ተስፋሁ ።
 ወሶበ : ቀርቦ : በዓለ : መድኅን : ለለወርኑ ፤
 ይትመሐለል : ሰቡዓ : መዋዕለ : በጸመ : ወ
 በጸሎት : ዘእንበለ : ያጽግብ : ክርሦ ፤ ወኢ
 ያነውም : ርእሶ : በብክይ : ብዙኅ : ወገዓር :
 እስከ : ያርኅስ : ምድረ : በአንብዑ : ዘውኅ
 ዘ : እምአዕይንቲሁ ፤ ወወረደ : ዲበ : ሰኩ
 ናሁ : ወእምብዝኃ : አንብዕ : ሐመ : እስከ :
 ጠፍዓ : አዕይንቲሁ ፤ ወመጽአት : አሐተ :
 ዕለተ : እግዚእትነ : ማርያም : እንዘ : ትእ
 ኅዝ : በእዴሃ : ጽዋዓ : ዘይመስል : ማኅ
 ወ ፤ ወትቤ : ሰላም : ለከ : አፍቱርየ : ተክ
 (Fol. 55b.) ለ : ማርያም : ነየ : መጻእኩ : ከመ :

አሁብክ ፡ ፈውስ ፡ ለአዕይንቲክ ፡ ዘሐማ ፡ ከ
መ ፡ ሕማማት ፡ ፍቱር ፡ ወልድዮ ፡ ወሶቤሃ ፡
ጠምዓት ፡ በአፃብዓሃ ፡ እምውእቱ ፡ ጽዋዕ ፡
አምሳለ ፡ ሚሮን ፡ ቀብዓቶ ፡ አዕይንቲሁ ፡
ወተፈወሰ ፡ እምደዊሁ ፡ ወኮነ ፡ ከመ ፡ ቀዳ
ሚ ፡ ወእመአሚሃ ፡ ዕለት ፡ አረከበ ፡ ሕማ
ም ፡ ወለዝንቱሰ ፡ ነገር ፡ ሰምዓ ፡ ኮነት ፡ አ
ሐቲ ፡ ብእሲት ፡ ሔርት ፡ ዘትሐውጻ ፡ እግ
ዝእትነ ፡ ማርያም ፡ ወትነብር ፡ ሮነቀተ ፡ እ
ምኔሁ ፡ ወአሐተ ፡ ዕለተ ፡ መጽአት ፡ ወት
ቤሎ ፡ ርኢከኑ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ትኩሕል ፡ ፈውስ ፡
ለአዕይንቲክ ፡ እግዝእትነ ፡ ማርያም ፡ ወይ
ቤላ ፡ እው ፡ ርኢኩ ፡ ዘከመ ፡ ነጻርኪ ፡ አንቲ ፡
ወአእኩትም ፡ ኀቡረ ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር ፡ ወ
ለእግዝእትነ ፡ ቅድስት ፡ ድንግል ፡ ማርያም ፡
ወእምዝ ፡ ተቀንዮ ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር ፡ ወእ
ፈድፈዶ ፡ ጸመ ፡ ወጸሎት ፤ በተጻፍዎ ፡ መ
ላትሕ ፡ ወበተቀሥፎ ፡ ዘባን ፡ በእሥዋጥ ፡
ዘልፈ ፡ ወይረከብ ፡ ረድኤተ ፡ እም (Fol. 56a.)
ኔሁ ፡ ወበጸመ ፡ ጃቅድስት ፡ ይትቀሠፍ ፡ ፻
ጊዜ ፡ ጥብጣቤ ፡ ወአሐተ ፡ ዕለተ ፡ በሕማ
ማት ፡ ተቀሥፈ ፡ እመጠነ ፡ ፱ ፡ ዘይበዝኀ ፡
እስከ ፡ ውኀዘ ፡ ደም ፡ እምቀሥለ ፡ ዘባኑ ፡
ወኃጥእ ፡ ልበ ፡ ወወድቀ ፡ ዲበ ፡ ምድር ፡
ወኮነ ፡ ምውተ ፡ ወሶቤሃ ፡ መጽአ ፡ ሕፃን ፡
ድንግል ፡ ወአንቅሆ ፡ በኃይለ ፡ ቃሉ ፤ ወጸ
ውዖ ፡ ወይቤሎ ፡ ተክለ ፡ ማርያም ፡ ንቃህ ፡
ወሐቀፎ ፡ ክሳዶ ፡ ወአልዓሎ ፡ ሶቤሃ ፡ ተክ
ሥተ ፡ አዕይንቲሁ ፤ ወእእመረ ፡ ልቡ ፡ ወ
እመኒ ፡ ቅድስት ፡ ድንግል ፡ ማርያም ፡ ህለ
ወት ፡ ህዩ ፡ ወገሠሠት ፡ ቀሥለ ፡ ዘባኑ ፡ ወ

በጊዜሃ ፡ ሐይወ ፡ ወኮነ ፡ ከመ ፡ ዘኢለክሮ ፡
ምንትኒ ፡ ወይቤሎ ፡ ቡሩክ ፡ ሕፃን ፡ ትትቀ
ተልኑ ፤ በዘዚአክ ፡ እድ ፡ እንሰኪ ፡ ተቀተ
ልኩ ፡ በእደ ፡ አማፅያን ፡ አይሁድ ፡ ወሶቤ
ሃ ፡ አኀዘ ፡ ከናፍሪሁ ፡ ወከሠተ ፡ አፋሁ ፡
ወነፍሐ ፡ ሥልሰ ፤ ወይቤሎ ፡ ይሠወጥ ፡ እ
ስትንፋስዩ ፡ ቅዱስ ፡ ውስተ ፡ እስትንፋስክ ፤
ወይኩን ፡ ነፍስክ ፡ ወሥጋክ ፡ ቅዱስ ፡ ወቡ
(Fol. 56b.) ሩክ ፡ ወአንተኒ ፡ ዘነፋሕክ ፡ ይኩ
ን ፡ ቅዱስ ፡ ወቡሩክ ፡ ወዘንተ ፡ ብሂሎ ፡ ተ
ሐቀፈ ፡ ሕፃን ፡ ኀበ ፡ እመ ፡ ድንግል ፡ ወ
እንዘ ፡ ይጠቡ ፡ የማናዩ ፡ ጥበ ፡ ለውእቱኒ ፡
አጥበም ፡ ጸጋማዩ ፡ ጥበ ፡ ነጻር ፡ ለብፁዕ ፡
ተክለ ፡ ማርያም ፡ ወተናገሮ ፡ መድምመ ፡
ወግሩመ ፡ ለሰብእ ፡ ወሶቤሃ ፡ አክሞሰሰት ፡
ድንግል ፡ ወተፈሥሐት ፡ በእንተ ፡ ዕባዩ ፡
ፈቅሩ ፡ ለወልዳ ፡ ወይቤሎ ፡ ቡሩክ ፡ ሕፃን ፡
ለመባእ ፡ ጽዮን ፡ እስመ ፡ ሐመምክ ፡ በእን
ተ ፡ ሕማምዩ ፡ ወሞትክ ፡ ወከዓውካ ፡ ደመ
ክ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ክዕውተ ፡ ደምዩ ፡ ክቡር ፡ አነ
ኒ ፡ በከመ ፡ አፍቀርከኒ ፡ አፈቅረክ ፡ ወኢይ
ትፈለጥ ፡ እምኔክ ፡ ዘአፍቀረ ፡ ኪያክ ፡ አፍ
ቀረ ፡ ኪያዩ ፡ ወዘአምኃ ፡ ኪያክ ፡ አምኃ ፡
ኪያዩ ፡ ወዘጸልእ ፡ ኪያክ ፡ ጸልእ ፡ ኪያዩ ፡
ጸልእ ፡ ለዘፈነወኒ ፡ ወከመ ፡ አይሁድ ፡ እ
ለ ፡ ጸልኡ ፡ ኪያዩ ፡ አመ ፡ ይሰቅሉኒ ፡ ከመ
ሁ ፡ ይኩኑ ፡ በዕለት ፡ እንተ ፡ ትወዕእ ፡ ነፍ
ስክ ፡ ላባዕድ ፡ ኢይሁብክ ፡ አላ ፡ አነ ፡ እት
ሚጠወክ ፡ (Fol. 57a.) ወኩሉ ፡ ዘበጽሐ ፡ ኀ
ቤክ ፡ ወተማኀፀነ ፡ በጸሎትክ ፡ ዘተባረክ ፡
በእደክ ፡ ወዘጸውዓ ፡ ስምክ ፡ ዘቅሩብ ፡ ወዘ

ርትቅ ፤ ከመ ፡ እምሕሮ ፡ እምሕል ፡ ለከ ፡
አነ ፡ ኢየሱስ ፡ በርእስዩ ፡ ወበማርያም ፡ እ
ምዩ ፡ ወእትካዩደከ ፡ በዘኢይኤሱ ፡ ቃልዩ ፡
ወኢይዔምፅ ፡ ከዳንዩ ፡ ወዘንተ ፡ ሰሚዖ ፡
አቡነ ፡ መባዓ ፡ ጽዮን ፡ ተፈሥሐ ፡ ፈድፋ
ደ ፡ ወይቤ ፡ ምንተ ፡ አንሥዮ ፡ ለእግዚአ
ብሔር ፡ በእንተ ፡ ነሉ ፡ ዘገብረ ፡ ሊተ ፡ ለ
ኃጥእ ፡ ወባሕቱ ፡ ይትባረክ ፡ ስሙ ፡ ለዓለ
መ ፡ ዓለም ፡ አሜን ።

(Fol. 59a.) ስምዑኤ ፡ ዘይቤ ፡ መድኅን ፡ ዘ
ገብረ ፡ ተዝካርዩ ፡ በተባሰት ፡ አው ፡ በጽዋ
ፅ ፡ አው ፡ ዘይሁብ ፡ ማኅቶተ ፡ ለቤተ ፡ ክር
ስቲያን ፡ እማዕምቀ ፡ ልቡ ፡ ጽሒቆ ፡ ተዘኪ
ሮ ፡ ስቅለትዩ ፡ አማን ፡ እብለክሙ ፡ በዘኢ
ይኤሱ ፡ ቃልዩ ፡ እስከ ፡ ፲ወጀትውልድ ፡ እ
ምሕር ፡ ሎቱ ፡ ወዓዲ ፡ ለዘኃጥእ ፡ እክለ ፡
ለገብረ ፡ ተዝካርዩ ፡ ዘወሀቦ ፡ ዘእለቅሖ ፡ እ
ስከ ፡ ጌትውልድ ፡ እምሕር ፡ ሎቱ ፡ ወነሉ
ንኬ ፡ በአሚን ፡ ዩሐዩ ፡ ዘእንበለ ፡ አሚንሰ ፡
አልቦ ፡ ዘድኅነ ፡ እምነቢያት ፡ ወእምሐዋርያ
ት ፡ ወእምሰማዕታት ፡ ኢጸድቁ ፡ ዘእንበለ ፡
በአሚን ፡ ይእዜኒ ፡ ተአሚዮ ፡ ዘገብረ ፡ ተ
ዝካርዩ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይርከብ ፡ ዘንተ ፡ ነሉ ፡ ዘጸ
ዋዕኩ ፡ መሐልኩ ፡ በአቡዩ ፡ ወበወልዱ ፡
ብዩ ፡ ወበመንፈሱ ፡ መንፈስዩ ፡ ወበማርያ
ም ፡ እምዩ ፡ አከ ፡ በእንተ ፡ መባዓ ፡ ጽዮን ፡
አላ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ስቅለትዩ ፡ ዘወረድኩ ፡ እም
ሰማይ ፡ ወአብዓልኩ ፡ ምስሌሁ ፡ ወይእዜ
ኒ ፡ አብዕሉ ፡ ተዝካረ ፡ ምድኅን ፡ ለ (Fol. 59b.)
ለወርኩ ፡ አመ ፡ ፳ወ፳ ፡ ለዓለመ ፡ ዓለም ፡ አ
ሜን ፡ ወካዕበ ፡ በዕለተ ፡ ኤጲፋንያ ፡ ወረ

ደ ፡ ባሕረ ፡ ከመ ፡ ያጥምቅ ፡ ሕዝበ ፡ በከመ ፡
ሥሩዕ ፡ አቡነ ፡ መባዓ ፡ ጽዮን ፡ ዕለቱሂ ፡ ዕ
ለተ ፡ እኅድ ፡ አሜሃ ፡ መጽአ ፡ እግዚእነ ፡
በዕበይ ፡ ምስለ ፡ መላእክቲሁ ፡ ቅዱሳን ፡
ውስተ ፡ ውእቱ ፡ ባሕር ፡ ወአስተጋብኦ
ሙ ፡ ለነሉሙ ፡ ቅዱሳን ፡ እምገዳም ፡ ወ
እምጸማዕት ፡ እምአድባር ፡ ወእምበዓታት ፡
ወቦ ፡ እምኔሆሙ ፡ ዘመጽአ ፡ በደመና ፡ ወ
ቦ ፡ በክነፈ ፡ ነፋስ ፡ ወቦ ፡ በኣሳዕነ ፡ ወርቅ ፡
ወለነሉሙ ፡ ዘዘ ፡ ዚአሁ ፡ መዓዛሆሙ ፡
ወኮነ ፡ ዓቢይ ፡ እንግልጋ ፡ ወዓቢይ ፡ ጸጋ ፡
ባሕርኒ ፡ ኮነት ፡ ፪ክፍለ ፡ ፩እሳተ ፡ ወ፩ማዩ ፡
ወውስተ ፡ ውእቱ ፡ እሳት ፡ ቦኦ ፡ እግዚእነ ፡
ኢየሱስ ፡ ወተጠምቀ ፡ ለሊሁ ፡ ወእምዝ ፡
አጥመቆሙ ፡ ለመባዓ ፡ ጽዮን ፡ ተክለ ፡ ማ
ርያም ፡ ወለጀቅዱሳን ፡ እምአለ ፡ መጽኢ ፡
ህዩ ፡ ወወዓኦ ፡ አንበረ ፡ እደሁ ፡ በርእስ ፡
አቡነ ፡ ተክለ ፡ ማርያም ፡ ወአዘዘ ፡ ከመ ፡ ያ
ጥምቆሙ ፡ (Fol. 60a.) ለቅዱሳን ፡ እለ ፡ መጽ
ኢ ፡ ወተፈጸመ ፡ በክሂሎቱ ፡ ለእግዚአብሔ
ር ፡ ወካዕበ ፡ አዘዘ ፡ ለ፩ካህን ፡ ከመ ፡ ያጥም
ቆሙ ፡ ለሕዝብ ፡ እደ ፡ ወአንስተ ፡ በውእ
ቱ ፡ ማዩ ፡ ባሕር ፡ ወአሠርገምሙ ፡ በማዩ ፡
ጥምቀት ፡ ክቡር ፡ ወአተው ፡ ለለብሔር
ሙ ፡ ወእሉሂ ፡ ቅዱሳን ፡ በከመ ፡ ይደልዎ
ሙ ፡ ገብኦ ፡ ማኅደሪሆሙ ፡ ወእግዚእነሰ ፡
ምስለ ፡ መላእክቲሁ ፡ ቆመ ፡ ወተስእሎ ፡
ለውእቱ ፡ ዘይሴአሎ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይብሎ ፡ ተአ
ምሮሙኑ ፡ ለእሉ ፡ ቅዱሳን ፡ ወይቤሎ ፡ እ
ስፍንተ ፡ አአምር ፡ እግዚአ ፡ ቦ ፡ ሀለው ፡
ዘእእመሮሙ ፡ ወቦ ፡ ዘኢየአምሮሙ ፡ ወጸ

ውዓ፡ አስማቲሆሙ፡ ዘየአምሮሙ፡ ወካዕ
በ፡ ተስእሎሙ፡ መድኅን፡ ወይቤሎሙ፡
ተውሀበሙ፡ ጸጋ፡ ጥምቀት፡ ለእለ፡ ተጠ
ምቁ፡ ዮም፡ በዝየ፡ በሕር፤ ወይቤሎ፡ እው፡
እግዚአ፡ ተውሀበሙ፡ ጸጋ፡ ጥምቀት፡ መ
ንጽሔ፡ ወነጽሔ፡ እምኃጢአቶሙ፡ ሕዝ
ብከ፡ ወወሀቦ፡ ዓሥራት፡ ኪያሆሙ፡ ለው
እቱ፡ ነዳይ፡ ዘአዘዘ፡ ከመ፡ ያጥምቅ፡ ቅዱ
ሳነ፡ ይት (Fol. 56b.) በረከ፡ መንግሥቱ፡ ለ
አምላክነ፤ ለዓለመ፡ ለዓለም፡ አሜን።

(Fol. 62a.) ወካዕበ፡ በአሐቲ፡ ዕለት፡ እን

ዘ፡ ይጼሊ፡ ቀዊም፡ በጽሔቅ፡ አቡነ፡ ተ
ክለ፡ ማርያም፡ ርእየ፡ ሕዝን፡ እምሮትቅ፡
እንዘ፡ ይትዋነይ፡ አምሳለ፡ ሕዋናት፡ እኒ
ዘ፡ በትረ፡ ወርቅ፡ ወሶቤሃ፡ ሐለየ፡ ወይቤ፡
ወልደ፡ መኑ፡ ዝሕፃን፡ ዘሠናይ፡ ላህዩ፡ ወ
ልደ፡ ንጉሥ፡ ይመስል፡ ወበትረ፡ ወርቅ፡
እኑዝ፡ ውስተ፡ እደሁ፤ ወእንዘ፡ ይሔሊ፡
ከመዝ፡ ተመደጠ፡ ሕፃን፡ ኅቤሁ፡ ወይቤ
ሎ፡ ንሣእ፡ ወፈኒው፡ ውእተ፡ በትረ፡ በእ
ደሁ፡ ወአእማሮ፡ እምቃሉ፡ ከመ፡ እግዚ
እ፡ ኢየሱስ፡ ውእቱ፡ ተመደጠ፡ በትረ፤
ወጸረ፡ በእደሁ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ ሕፃን፡ አግብ
እ፡ ሊተ፡ ወሰገደ፡ ሎቱ፡ ለሕፃን፡ አቡነ፡
መባዓ፡ ጽዮን፡ ይቤ፡ ኢይደልወኒ፡ ከመ
ዝ፡ እግዚአ፡ ለኃጥእ፡ ገብርክ፡ እስመ፡ ን
ጉሠ፡ ሰማያት፡ ወምድር፡ አንተ፡ ወይቤ
ሎ፤ እምድኅረ፡ ተበዋሕከ፡ እምኔየ፡ ምን
ት፡ ሀሎ፡ ብከ፡ ወእምዝ፡ ነበረ፡ ምስሌሁ፡
ወተለሐየ፡ ከመ፡ ሕዋናት፡ ወተሐቅ፡ ወ
ተሐዝለ፡ ላዕሌሁ፡ ወሶ (Fol. 62b.) በ፡ ርእየ፡

አፍቅሮቶ፡ ወተየውሆቶ፡ ሰአሎ፡ ለሕፃን፡
ወይቤሎ፡ ተዘከር፡ ኪዳነከ፡ እግዚአ፡ ወ
መሐር፡ ሊተ፡ እለ፡ ተጠምቁ፡ ነፍሳተ፡ በ
ስምከ፡ ወተወድዩ፡ ውስተ፡ ሲኦል፡ ወይ
ቤሎ፡ መድኅን፡ ጥዑም፡ ቃልከ፡ ናሁ፡ ረ
ድ፡ አንተ፡ ውስተ፡ ሲኦል፡ ወአውዕእ፡
ነፍሳተ፡ በከመ፡ ትክል፡ ጸዊረ፡ ወይቤሎ፡
አቡነ፡ ተክለ፡ ማርያም፡ በምንት፡ እክል፡
አነ፡ ነዳይ፡ ወምስከን፡ ወሪደ፡ ውስተ፡ ሲ
ኦል፡ ወይቤሎ፡ አነ፡ እፌንወከ፡ ወወሀቦ፡
በትረ፡ ወርቅ፡ በእደሁ፡ ወሶቤሃ፡ ነሥከ፡
ኃይለ፡ እግዚአብሔር፤ ከመ፡ ክንፍ፡ ወቦ
አ፡ ውስተ፡ ሲኦል፡ ወተሠጥቀ፡ ሲኦል፡
ለፌ፡ ወለፌ፡ ወሰምዓ፡ በህየ፡ ገዓረ፡ ወ
ብካየ፡ አውያት፡ ወክላሐ፡ ዓቢየ፡ ወሶቦ፡
ርእይዎ፡ ነፍሳት፡ እለ፡ ውስተ፡ ሲኦል፡ ሰ
ረሩ፡ ላዕሌሁ፡ በአምሳለ፡ ንህብ፡ ወተዕዕነ፡
ነፍሰ፡ በዲቦ፡ ነፍስ፡ እስከ፡ ከብደ፡ ጥቀ፡
ወባሕቱ፡ ኃይለ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ አጽንዖ፡
ወሰረረ፡ በኃይለ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ በከመ፡
ከ (Fol. 63a.) ነ፡ ቀዳሚ፡ ወበጽሐ፡ ኅቤሁ፡
እንዘ፡ ይጸውር፡ ነፍሳተ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ መድ
ኅን፡ እንዘ፡ ያክሞስስ፡ ወይስሕቅ፡ ዘመጠ
ነዝ፡ ነፍሳት፡ እለ፡ ውስተ፡ ሲኦል፡ መኑ፡
አውዕእ፡ ይቤለከ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ በምንት፡ ኃ
ይል፡ አውዓዕኩ፡ አነ፡ ዘእንበለ፡ በኃይል
ከ፡ ወበጸጋከ፡ እግዚእየ፡ ሊተሰ፡ መሬት፡
ወሐመድ፡ ዘእንበለ፡ ፈቃድከ፤ በምንት፡
እምክህልኩ፡ ከመ፡ አውዕእ፡ ዘመጠነዝ፡
ነፍሳቱ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ መድኅን፡ ንሣእ፡ ይኩ
ነከ፡ እሉ፡ ነፍሳት፡ ዓሥራት፡ ለከ፡ ወአ

ብሐሙ፡ ውስተ፡ ገነተ፡ ትፍሥሕት፡ ወእ
ምዝ፡ ተሠወረ፡ እምኒሁ፡ ሕያው፡ ዘኢይ
መውት፡ ዘለዓለመ፡ ዓለም፡ ሣህሉ፡ ወም
ሕረቱ፡ የሃሉ፡ ምስለ፡ ነፍሰ፡ ኃጥእ፡ ተክ
ለ፡ ሃይማኖት፡ ምስለ፡ ፍቅርቱ፡ ወለተ፡ [ጽ
ዮን]፡ ለዓለመ፡ ዓለም፡ አሜን።

(Fol. 64a.) ወእምዝ፡ ሖረ፡ አቡነ፡ ተክለ፡
ማርያም፡ ሀገረ፡ ጻምት፡ ኅበ፡ ተዝካረ፡
መስቀል፡ ክብሩ፡ ብዕዕት፤ በቃሉ፡ ይቤ፡
ለሊሁ፡ እንዘ፡ አሐውር፡ በፍኖት፡ ርኢኩ፡
ሰብአ፡ ብዙኃን፡ በምሥያጥ፡ ዘወርወር፡
ወበጻሕኩ፡ ህየ፡ ወአንከርኩ፡ እንበይነ፡
ብዝኖሙ፡ ወሰባሕዎ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር፡
ወነበርኩ፡ በአፍኡ፡ ውስተ፡ ምሥያጥ፡ ከ
መ፡ አዕርፍ፡ ንስተተ፡ ወሶቤሃ፡ መጽኡ፡
ኅቤየ፡ ንዋም፡ ወርኢኩ፡ በህልምየ፡ ከመ፡
መጽኡ፡ ሕፃነ፡ ድንግል፡ እግዚእየ፡ ወነበ
ረ፡ ዲቤየ፡ ወሐቀፈኒ፡ ክሳድየ፡ በከመ፡
ልማዱ፡ ወሶቤሃ፡ ሰአልክዎ፡ ወእቤሉ፡ እ
መሰ፡ ፍጹመ፡ ታፈቅረኒ፡ እግዚእየ፡ እሎ
ንተ፡ ሰብአ፡ መሐር፡ ሊተ፡ ወሀበኒ፡ ኪዳ
ነ፤ ወኢያውሥኦኒ፡ ወኢምንተኒ፡ ሊተኒ፡
ነቃህኩ፡ ወሐርኩ፡ እንዘ፡ ሀሎ፡ ሕፃን፡
ዲበ፡ እንግድዓየ፤ ወበጸሕኩ፡ መካነ፡ ይ
ክድና፡ ወበህየ፡ ርኢኩ፡ በይእተ፡ ሌሊት፡
ወኮነ፡ ዓቢይ፡ ጸጋ፡ ወስብሐት፡ ለተዝካረ፡
መ (Fol. 65a.) ስቀል፡ ክብሩ፡ ወነገዱ፡ መላ
እክት፡ እምሰማያት፡ ወነበረ፡ እግዚእነ፡
ማእከለ፡ ቅዱሳኒሁ፡ ወዓቀመኒ፡ ቅሩበ፡
ኅቤሁ፡ ወእምዝ፡ መጽኡት፡ አሐቲ፡ ብእ
ሲት፡ በአምሳለ፡ ፀሐይ፡ ብርሃና፡ ወቆመ

ት፡ ቅድሚሁ፡ ወተስእልኩ፡ አነ፡ ከመ፡
መኩ፡ ይእተ፡ ወይቤሉኒ፡ መስቀል፡ ክብ
ሩ፡ መጽኡት፡ ለክብረ፡ በዓለ፡ ዮም፡ ይእ
ተኒ፡ ሰገደት፡ ሎቱ፡ ወሰአለቶ፡ እንዘ፡ ት
ብል፡ እግዚእየ፡ ወአምላኪየ፡ ዘመጽኡ፡
ለተዝካርየ፡ ወወሀቦ፡ ዕጣነ፡ ወመባዓ፡ በ
ስምየ፡ እንዘ፡ ይትአመን፡ በአመትከ፡ ወ
እንዘ፡ ይሴፎ፡ ኪያከ፡ ወሀበኒ፡ ዓሥራተ፡
በከመ፡ ኪዳን፡ ዘወሀብከኒ፡ ቅድመ፡ ወይ
ቤ፡ እግዚእ፡ አማን፡ እብለኪ፡ ኢይኢስወ
ኪ፡ እወ፡ ወሀብኩኪ፡ ኪዳነ፡ ይእዜኒ፡ ይ
ኩኅኪ፡ በከመ፡ ትቤልኒ፡ ዘእንበለ፡ ዘወዓ
ሉ፡ ትማልም፡ በምሥያጥ፡ ዘወርወር፡ ወ
እምዝ፡ ተመይጠ፡ ኅቤየ፡ ወይቤልኒ፡ ን
ሣእ፡ ይኩኅከ፡ ዓሥራተ፡ ኹሎ፡ ዘሰአ
ልከኒ፡ ትማልም፡ ዘእንበለ፡ ጀሰብእ፡ ኢ
(Fol. 65b.) ያስተኃፍረከ፡ ወይእተ፡ ጊዜ፡
ሰገድኩ፡ ሎቱ፡ ወአእኩትክዎ፡ ወይእተ፡
ኮነት፡ አእኩትት፤ ወአስተብዕዓት፡ በእን
ተአየ፡ ስብሐት፡ ወክብር፡ ይደሉ፡ ለመን
ግሥቱ፡ ለዘይሁብ፡ ጸጋ፡ በከንቱ፡ ለነኒ፡
ይክፍለነ፡ እምሕረቱ፡ ለዓለመ፡ ዓለም፡
ሣህሉ፡ ወምሕረቱ፡ የሃሉ፡ ምስለ፡ ነፍሰ፡
ኃጥእ፡ ገብሩ፡ ተክለ፡ ሃይማኖት፡ [ወ]ምስ
ለ፡ ነፍሰ፡ ፍቅርቱ፡ ወለተ፡ [ጽዮን]፡ ለዓ
ለመ፡ ዓለም፡ አሜን።

(Fol. 67a.) ወበውእቱ፡ ዕለት፡ ተወልዱ፡
ብዙኃን፡ ሰብእ፡ ኅቤሁ፡ ወኮኖሙ፡ አበ፡
ዘመንፈስ፡ ወኃሠሦ፡ በጸሐቅ፡ ጀመነኮስ፡
ወሰአሎሙ፡ ለሰብእ፡ እንዘ፡ ይብል፡ ንግ
ሩኒ፡ በእንተ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ እለ፡ ተአም

ርዎ፡ ዘይብልዎ፡ ተክለ፡ ማርያም፡ እምሀገ
 ረ፡ ሲዋ፡ ዘመጽአ፡ ወእለ፡ የአምርዎ፡ አ
 ብጽሕዋ፡ ጎቤሁ፡ ወተፈሥሐ፡ ፈድፋድ፡
 ወተራከቦ፡ ወይቤ፡ አቡነ፡ መባዓ፡ ጽዮን፡
 በእንተ፡ ምንት፡ ኃሠሥከኒ፡ ዘኢተአምረኒ፡
 አንተ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ እስመ፡ አነ፡ መጻእኩ፡
 እምሀገረ፡ አብገርጋይ፡ ምሕዋረ፡ ፫ዕለት፡
 ወሶበ፡ ሰአልኩ፡ ጎበ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ በእ
 ንተ፡ ብዝኃ፡ ጌጋይየ፡ ሰማዕኩ፡ ቃለ፡ እ
 ምሰማይ፡ ዘይብል፡ ሐር፡ ጎበ፡ ተዝካረ፡
 መስቀል፡ ክብራ፡ ወበህየ፡ ትረክብ፡ ከህነ፡
 ዘስሙ፡ ተክለ፡ ማርያም፡ ወይናዝዘክ፡ ው
 እቱ፡ በእንተ፡ ዝነቱ፡ ኃሠሥኩክ፡ አቅዱ
 ስ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ በአማን፡ ዘኢይትሄሰ
 ው፡ ቃሉ፡ ይትባረክ፡ ስሙ፡ ለአምላክነ፡
 ወሰሚዎ፡ ነገሮ፡ ቅዱስ፡ መባዓ፡ ጽ (Fol. 67b.)
 ዮን፡ ወይቤሎ፡ በልኪ፡ ንግረኒ፡ በከመ፡
 አዘዘክ፡ ወውእቱ፡ የኃድማ፡ ለክ፡ ወነገሮ፡
 ነሎ፡ ኃጢአቶ፡ ወውእቱሂ፡ ወሀቦ፡ ንስ
 ሐ፡ ወተባረክ፡ እምኔሁ፡ ወሐረ፡ ሀገሮ፡
 ወአቡነ፡ ተመይጦ፡ ወአተው፡ ብሔሮ፡ እ
 ንዘ፡ ይነግር፡ ግብሮ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር፡ ወ
 እምዝ፡ ሐለየ፡ ወይቤ፡ ነሎ፡ ዘሰአልኩ፡
 ጎቤሁ፡ ይሁበኒ፡ ወኢያስተኃፍረኒ፡ አምላ
 ኪየ፡ ለምንትኬ፡ እትሐከይ፡ ስኢለ፡ አነ፡
 ወአኀዘ፡ ይስአሎ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር፡ እንዘ፡
 ይበኪ፡ ወይላሁ፡ ወይብል፡ ተዘከር፡ እግ
 ዘኢ፡ ኪዳነክ፡ ዘተካየድክ፡ ከመ፡ ተሀበኒ፡
 ተምኔትየ፡ ወኢታስተኃፍረኒ፡ ዘሰአልኩ
 ክ፡ ወመሐር፡ ሊት፡ በእንተ፡ ተዝካረ፡ ሞ
 ትክ፡ ወጸውዓ፡ አስማቲሆሙ፡ ለአህጉር፡

ወሰአለ፡ በእንተ፡ ሰብእ፡ ወሰምዓ፡ እግዚ
 አብሔር፡ ስኢለቶ፡ ወትጋሆ፡ ወመጽአ፡
 ጎቤሁ፡ ምስለ፡ ወላዲቱ፡ ድንግል፡ እንዘ፡
 የዓውዶ፡ ስብሐት፡ ወይቤሎ፡ ሰላም፡ ጎ
 ሩይየ፡ ነየ፡ መጻእኩ፡ ጎቤክ፡ ከመ፡ እፈ
 ጽም፡ ስኢለተክ፡ ለሰብ (Fol. 68a.) አ፡ እገሌ፡
 ሀገር፡ መሐርኩ፡ ለክ፡ ወይኩንክ፡ ዓሥራ
 ተ፡ በእንተ፡ ተዝካረ፡ ሞትየ፡ ወለሰብአ፡
 እገሌኒ፡ ሀገር፡ መሐርኩ፡ ለክ፡ በእንተ፡
 አፍቅሮታ፡ ለእምየ፡ ወሀለወክ፡ ካዕበ፡ ዘ
 ታድሃን፡ እምሰብአ፡ ጋፋት፡ ወእሁበክ፡
 ዓሥራተ፡ አነ፡ ኪያሆሙ፡ ወሰሚዓ፡ እ
 ሙ፡ አእኩተቶ፡ መላእክትኒ፡ ሰገዱ፡ ሎ
 ቱ፡ እንዘ፡ ይብሉ፡ ስብሐት፡ ለእግዚአብ
 ሔር፡ በሰማያት፡ ወሰላም፡ በምድር፡ ለዘ
 ሠምሮ፡ ለሰብእ፡ ወአስማተ፡ እሉሰ፡ አህ
 ጉር፡ ኢንጼውዕ፡ ከመ፡ ኢይኩን፡ ተመክ
 ሆ፡ በጎቤሆሙ፡ በከመ፡ ተብህለ፡ በነበይ፡
 ቦ፡ ዘትከሥት፡ ወቦ፡ ዘተኃብእ፡ ወብፀዕሰ፡
 ተክለ፡ ማርያም፡ ኮነ፡ ያነከር፡ በእንተ፡ ጋ
 ፋት፡ ዘአሰፈዎ፡ እንዘ፡ ይብል፡ ማእዜኑ፡
 የአምኑ፡ ወይጠቁ፡ በሕይወትየኑ፡ አው፡
 በሞትየ፡ ወእምዝ፡ ተንሥኦ፡ ወሐረ፡ መ
 ንገለ፡ ጋዕዝእ፡ አመ፡ ጄወጀለወርኃ፡ የካቲ
 ት፡ በዕለተ፡ ሰኑይ፡ ወተራከብዎ፡ በፍኖ
 ት፡ ብዙኃን፡ ጋፋት፡ በሥምረቱ፡ ለእግዚ
 አብሔር፡ እንዘ፡ ይ (Fol. 98b.) ወዕኡ፡ ጎበ፡
 ንጉሥ፡ ዘርኦ፡ ያዕቆብ፡ ከመ፡ ይትመዝገ
 ኑ፡ በጎቤሁ፡ በእንተ፡ ዘተጠምቁ፡ ወአም
 ኑ፡ በስመ፡ ሥላሴ፡ በውእቱ፡ መዋዕል፡
 ወሶበ፡ ርእይዎ፡ ለቅዱስ፡ ሮጼ፡ ወተባደሩ፡

ኅቤሁ፡ ወበጸሐሙ፡ ይቤልዎ፡ ባርክነ፤ ወ
ይቤሎሙ፡ አመንክሙት፡ በክርስቶስ፡ አ
ምላኪያ፡ ከመ፡ አባርከሙ፡ ወይቤልዎ፡
እው፡ አመነ፡ ወእምዝ፡ ባረከሙ፡ ለለጅኪ
ያሆሙ፡ ወይቤልዎ፡ ካዕበ፡ ይሰመይ፡ ላዕ
ሌነ፡ ስመ፡ ወኃጣእነ፡ በይሰሚ፡ ላዕሌነ፡
ካህነ፡ አጥምቀነ፡ ወኩነነ፡ አበ፡ ናዛዜ፡ ወ
ይቤሎሙ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ይኩንክሙ፡ አበ፡
ወናሁ፡ ወለድኩክሙ፡ እምድኅረ፡ ባረከኩ
ክሙ፡ በእዴያ፡ ወዘንተ፡ ዘይቤ፡ ተዘኪሮ፡
ኪዳነ፡ ዘወሀቦ፡ እግዚእነ፡ ወይቤልዎ፡ አ
ርእየነኬ፡ ሀገረከ፡ ከመ፡ ንብጻሕ፡ ወትረ፡
ኅቤከ፡ ወተሠውጠ፡ ፍቅርከ፡ ውስተ፡ ል
ብነ፡ ወአርአዮሙ፡ ሀገሮ፡ ወሐሩ፡ ወተፈ
ሥሐ፡ ፈድፋድ፡ ወብፀሶስ፡ አእመረ፡ ከ
መ፡ ኮኑ፡ እሙንቱ፡ ዘይቤሎ፡ እግዚእነ፡
ሎቱ፡ ስብሐት፡ ወእምዝ፡ አመ፡ ፲ወ፪
(Fol. 69a.) ለወርኃ፡ ኅዳር፡ በበዓለ፡ ሢመቱ፡
ለሚካኤል፡ ጸለየ፡ ከመ፡ ያእምር፡ ርስቶ፡
ለአቡሁ፡ ወአሚሃስ፡ ዕለተ፡ ሐሙስ፡ ዘው
እቱ፡ ሊቀ፡ መላእክት፡ ሚካኤል፡ ዘይሐሌ
ውጸ፡ ወትረ፡ በይእቲ፡ ዕለት፡ መጽኢ፡ ኅ
ቤሁ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ ሰላም፡ ለከ፡ አመፍቀሬ፡
መድኅን፡ ወይቤሎ፡ ሰላም፡ ለከ፡ ይብጽ
ሐኒ፡ ኦሊቀ፡ መላእክት፡ ወመሰሎ፡ ዘመ
ጽኢ፡ የሐውዖ፡ በከመ፡ ልማዱ፡ ወይቤሎ፡
ነዓ፡ ይቤለከ፡ መድኅን፡ ወሶቤሃ፡ ደንገፀ፡
ወይቤ፡ አይቲ፡ እግዚእየ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ ከ
መ፡ ትርአይ፡ ዘሰክልከ፡ ኅብ፡ ሀሎ፡ እግ
ዚእ፡ ምስለ፡ አቡከ፡ ወነሥኦ፡ በክነፈሁ፡
ወመሠጦ፡ ውስተ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም፡ ሰማያዊ

ት፡ ዘኢይትከህል፡ ለነገር፡ ነጽሮታ፡ ወን
ቡር፡ ውስቲታ፡ እግዚእነ፡ ኢየሱስ፡ ክር
ስቶስ፡ ምስለ፡ ወላዲቱ፡ ድንግል፡ ወሰገ
ደ፡ ቅድመ፡ እግዚእነ፡ በፍርሃት፡ ወርእየ፡
በህየ፡ ለቅዱሳን፡ አበዊነ፡ ወለአቡሁ፡ ነጻ
ሮ፡ እንዘ፡ ይቅውም፡ ደርገ፡ ምስለ፡ ካህና
ት፡ ሰማያውያን፡ ወተፈሥሐ፡ ጥቀ፡ ወከነ፡
ዓቢይ፡ ስብሐት፡ ወ (Fol. 69b.) መድምም፡
ዘኢይትከህል፡ ለተነግሮ፡ በጊዜ፡ ቍርባን፡
ሰማያዊ፡ ወአዘዞ፡ እግዚእ፡ ከመ፡ ይትከህ
ን፡ በማእከላዊ፡ ምሥዋዕ፡ አቡነ፡ አኖሬ
ዎስ፡ ወውእቱስ፡ አቡሁ፡ እንዘ፡ በለፌ፡
ወእንዘ፡ በለፌ፡ ጅይትከህን፡ ወለጅስ፡ ኢን
ጺውዕ፡ ስሞ፡ ዘእንበለ፡ ይፍልስ፡ እምዓ
ለም፡ ኃላፊ፡ ወካልእስ፡ ነገር፡ ዘከነ፡ ላዕ
ለ፡ አቡሁ፡ መባዓ፡ ጽዮን፡ ኢይትከህል፡
ተናግሮቶ፡ ወፈጽሞቶ፡ ወእምድኅረ፡ ተ
ፈጸመ፡ ቍርባን፡ ጸውዓኒ፡ ይቤ፡ መድኅ
ን፡ ወደመረኒ፡ ምስለ፡ ፳ወ፪ካህናተ፡ ሰማ
ይ፡ ወይቤለኒ፡ ኩን፡ ደርገ፡ እምየም፡ ም
ስሌሆመ፡ ለዓለመ፡ ዓለም፡ ወእም፡ ጡብ
ዓ፡ ፈድፋድ፡ በፍቅረ፡ እግዚእነ፡ ወሐለየ፡
ይሕምም፡ በእንተ፡ ሕማሙ፡ ወይትቀነ
ው፡ በእንተ፡ ቅንዋቲሁ፡ ወይቤ፡ ሶበ፡ እ
ገብር፡ በእራኝ፡ እደውየ፡ ወእገርየ፡ የትረ
ዓይ፡ ወየአምረኒ፡ ሰብእ፡ ወይኄይስ፡ እግ
በር፡ በኦብራክየ፡ ወጸምጽኦ፡ ሐፃውንተ፡
በሊሐተ፡ ከመ፡ መስፌ፡ ወለክዓ፡ በእብ
ን፡ ውስተ፡ አብ (Fol. 70a.) ራኩሁ፡ ወእም
ብዝኃ፡ ሕማሙ፡ በከየ፡ ወሰብሐ፡ ለእግዚ
አብሔር፡ ወበጊዜሃ፡ መጽኢ፡ ኅቤሁ፡ እን

ዘ : ያክሞስስ : ከመዝኦ : እቤ : ሶበ : ተቀኝ
 ውኩ : ለምንት : ዘኢትጸንዕ : ታስቆቱ ። ወ
 ይቤሎ : አንተሰ : እግዚአ : በጽንዓ : ኃይል
 ከ ፤ ጸርከ : ትዕግሥተ : ወአነ : ድኩም : ወ
 ስሱዕ : በምንት : እክል : ተዓግሦ ። ወሶቤሃ :
 አውዕአ : እምኔሁ : ቅንዋቶ : ወገሰሰ : ቀሩ
 ስሎ : በእዴሁ : ወአሕይዎ ። ወይቤሎ : ዘ
 ሰ : ዘሰዓመ : ወዘገሰሰ : እሎንተ : አብራከ
 ከ : ለቤዛ : ወለመድኃኒት ። ወለስርያት : ኃ
 ጦአት : ወለአድኅኖ : ነፍሳት : ብዙኃን ።
 ኀበ : ቆማ : ይክድና : ሣህል : ወምሕረት ።
 ውኀበ : አንሶሰዋ : ይትቀደሳ : አህጉራት :
 ወአዕፃፃት ። ወናሁ : እነ : ገሰስክምን : በእ
 ዴዎ : ከመ : ይኩና : ሱታፌ : ሕማምዩ ። ወ
 እምዝ : ነሥአ : እግዚእነ : ኢየሱስ : ክርስ
 ቶስ : መሠጦ : ሰማየ : ወአብጽሖ : ቅድመ :
 መንበሩ : ወርእየ : በዓውደ : መንበሩ : ካ
 ህናተ : ወመላእክተ ፤ ወይወፅእ : ፍትሕ :
 በዓውደ : መንበረ : መ (Fol. 70b.) ንግሥቱ :
 ወሶበ : ይብል : ካህን : ስብሐት : ለአብ : ወ
 ወልድ : ወመንፈስ : ቅዱስ : ዘኢይቤ : አ
 ሜን ። ወካዕበ : ሶበ : ይቤ : ካህን : ቅዱስ :
 ዘኢይትመጠው : ብሂል : እግዚአብሔር :
 ኃያል ። ወዓዲ : ሶበ : ይብል : ንስግድ : ዘ
 ኢይቤ : ለአብ : ወወልድ : ወመንፈስ : ቅ
 ዱስ ። ወሶበ : ይቤ : ስብሐት : ለእግዚአብ
 ሔር : ዘኢይቤ : ርቱዕ : ይደልዎ : ይከውን :
 ዓማፂ : ለእግዚአብሔር ። ወዓዲ : ርእየ :
 መንከራተ : ወመድምመ : ወሀገረ : ስፍሕ
 ተ : ወብርሀተ : ወርእየ : ጽልመተ : ካዕበ :
 ውስተ : ጸድፍ : ወብዙኃን : ሰብእ : ይወድ

ቁ : ውስቴቱ ። ወተስእሎ : ለዘሀሎ : ምስ
 ሌሁ : ወይቤሎ : እለ : ሐመይዎ : ለዘርአ :
 ያዕቆብ : ንጉሥ ። ወዓዲ : ርእየ : ደመና :
 ጀበአምሳለ : አፍራስ : ዕዕድዋን : ወይቤሎ :
 ጀዘዚአክ : ወጀዘዘርአ : ያዕቆብ : ዘትዒዓን :
 በመ : ወትቀርቡ : ኢየሩሳሌም ። ወይቤሎ :
 በምንትነ : አስተዓረይከኒ : ሊተ : ለኃጥእ :
 ምስለ : ፀሐየ : ሃይማኖት : ወንጉሥ : ራት
 ዕ : ዘርአ : ያዕቆብ ። ወ (Fol. 71a.) ይቤሎ : በ
 እንተ : ንግደተ : ሕሊናክመ : ለፍቅረ : አ
 ምላክክመ : ወሰሚዶ : ዘንተ : አንከረ : ወ
 አእኩቶ : እምጸጋሁ : ለብዑለ : ጸጋ ። ወካ
 ዕበ : ይቤ : አቡነ : መበዓ : ጽዮን : መጽአ :
 ኀቤየ : እግዚእየ : ኢየሱስ : ክርስቶስ : አ
 መ : ፲ወ፱ለወርኃ : የካቲት : እኒዘ : ሐብ
 ለ : በዝንቱ : ተዓሠርኩ : ወሐመዩኒ : አይ
 ሁድ : እኩያን : አምጸእኩ : ለክ : ከመ : ት
 ርእየ ። ወሶቤሃ : ተመጠውክዎ : ወሰዓም
 ክዎ : ወአነቅዎ : በክሳድየ : ወበክይኩ : ተ
 ዛኪርየ : ዘሐመይዎ : ቦቱ : ለእግዚእየ : ከ
 መ : ይኩነኒ : ማዕተበ : ዲበ : ክሳድየ : ወ
 ቅናተ : ውስተ : ሐቋየ ። ወይቤለኒ : ኢይ
 ትከህለክ : ታንብር : በኀቤክ ፤ ወባሕቱ : ከ
 መ : ትርአይ : አምጸእኩ : ለክ ። ወእምዝ :
 ነሥአኒ : እምእዴየ : ወተለዓለ : ሰማየ : ሎ
 ቱ : ስብሐት : ለዓለመ : ዓለም ። ወእምዝ :
 አመ : ፳ወ፱ለወርኃ : መጋቢት : መጽአ :
 እግዚእነ : ኢየሱስ : ክርስቶስ : ምስለ : ወ
 ላዲቱ : ድንግል ። ወምስለ : መላእክቲሁ :
 ቅዱሳን : በ (Fol. 71b.) ሌሊተ : እኑድ : በዕ
 ለተ : ሆሳዕና : ቅድስት : በእንተ : ተዝካረ :



ወይቤሎ : ርኢኩ : በዓየር : እንዘ : ይትዋነ
 ዩ : ፫ወርኅ : ወወሪዶሙ : ኀቤየ : ኩኑ : ቅ
 ዱሳነ ። ወይቤሎኒ : በሎ : ለተክለ : ማርያ
 ም : ተደለውክ : እስመ : ቀርቦ : ዕለተ : ፍ
 ልሰትከ : እምዝንቱ : ዓለም ። ወሰሚያ : ይ
 ቤ : ይኩን : ፈቃ (Fol. 73a.) ዱ : ለአምላኪያ :
 ምንት : ተስፋ : ሀለወኒ : በዲቢ : ምድር : ዘ
 እንበለ : ተዝክረ : ሞቱ : ለመድኅን ። ሊተ
 ኒ : እፈቅድ : ህየ : ሐዊረ : ሀገረ : ብርሃን :
 ውስተ : ርስቶሙ : ለቅዱሳን ። ወእምዝ :
 ሐረ : ኀብ : ድብረ : ማርያም : ወተአምኖ
 ሙ : ለኩሎሙ : ቀዱሳን : ወነገሮሙ : ኩ
 ሎ : ዘኮነ ። ወተናዘዘ : እምኔሆሙ : ወተፈ
 ነው : በሰላም : ወእምአመ : ኮነ : ዝነገር ፣
 ወ፫ወርኅ : እለ : ተመሰሉ : በቅዱሳን ። በ፩
 ወርኅ : በ፳ወጀዕለት : ኮነ : ዕረፍቱ ፤ ወእም
 ድኅረ : ኮነ : በ፯ዕለት : አስተጋብአሙ : ለ
 ኩሎሙ : ደቂቄ : ወይቤሎሙ : ንበሩ : በ
 ተፋቅሮ : ወበትእዛዘ : እግዚአብሔር ፤ ወ
 እምድኅረ : መዓዶሙ : ብዙኃ : ነገራት : ጽ
 ድቅ : አንቃዕደወ : ወነጸረ : ሰማየ ። ወይቤ
 ልም : ምንተ : ትፈኢ : ወይቤሎሙ : ዕፁ
 በ : ወመንክረ : ተድባባተ ። ወማኅቶተ : ወ
 ቅዱሳነ : ብርሃናውያነ : ይጸዓቱ : በዝየ ። ወ
 ሶበ : ይቤሎሙ : ወከመዝ : በክዩ : እመንገ
 ለ : ሥጋሁ : ወተፈሥሐ : እመንገለ : ነፍ
 ሱ : ወአዕመሩ : ከመ : ወረዱ : ለቀበላሁ ።
 ወካዕበ : ይቤ : ዘሀሎ : በውሣጤ : ተድባብ :
 ይበርኅ : እምፀሐይ : ወእንዘ : ይትናገር : በ
 ርሃ : ገጹ : ወኩለንታሁ : ወመጠ (Fol. 73b.)
 ወ : ነፍስ : ለእግዚእነ : ኢየሱስ : ክርስቶስ :

አመ : ፳ወጀለወርኃ : ጥቅምት : ወኮነ : መ
 ዋዕሊሁ : ፫ወጀዓመት ። ወእምዝ : ፵ወጊዓ
 መተ : ኮነ : ዲያቆነ ። ወእምዝ : በ፱ዓመት :
 ነሥኦ : ምንኩስና ። ወእምዝ : ካዕበ : በ፱
 ሰዓት : ኮነ : ቀሲሰ ። ወእምዝ : በ፱ዓመት :
 አዕረፈ : በሰላም : ጸሎቱ : ወበረከቱ : የሃ
 ሉ : ምስለ : ኃጥኦ : ገብሩ : ተክለ : ሃይማ
 ኖት : [ወ]ምስለ : ፍቅርቱ : ወለተ : [ጽዮን] ፤
 ለዓለመ : ዓለም : አሜን ።

አኦኃው : ኢይምስልክሙ : ሐሰተ : ገ
 ድለ : ዝንቱ : ጸድቅ : አቡነ : ከመ : ኢይኩ
 ን : ዝንጋዓ : ኢጸሐፍነ : ኩሎ : ዘሰማዕነ :
 ወዘርኢነ ። ወእሙራተሰ : ነገረ : ኃደግነ :
 ለሊሁ : የአምር : እግዚአብሔር : ምንት :
 የሐዕዖ : ለጸድቅ : ለዘእግዚአብሔር : ምሕ
 ሮ : ብፁዕ : ብእሲ : ዘእግዚአብሔር : አፍ
 ቀሮ : ወአልአለ : እምድር : ዝክሮ ። ኦኦኃ
 ውየ : ይሥመር : ለክሙ : ዘሥምሮ : ለዓለ
 መ : ዓለም : አሜን ።

(Fol. 81a.) ራእየ : ነገር : እንበይነ : ተክለ :
 ማርያም : ዘከሥተ : ሎቱ : እግዚአብሔር :
 በከመ : አምጣነ : ከፈሎሙ : አብያተ : ለ
 ኩሎሙ : ቅዱሳን : ፩በግዕ : በከመ : አዘዘ :
 እግዚአኡ : በበእበያተሆሙ : ዘዘዘአሁ : መ
 አዛሆሙ : ወረዳኢሆሙ : ለኩሎሙ : መ
 ንፈስ : ቅዱስ : አዚዝ : ዘሎቱ : ስብሐት :
 ለዓለመ : ዓለም : አሜን ። ወርእየ : በመል
 ዕልተ : ሰማያት : ፲አብያተ : ዘተሐንጸ : በ
 ወርቅ : ወበአንቀሩ : ወስነ : ክዋኔሆሙ : ፈ
 ድፋደ : ያንጸበርቅ : ለማእከላዊት : ቤት :
 ኮነ : መልዕልቲሃ : ተድባብ ፤ ወይጼልላ : በ



ቱ : በርእስ : ውእቱ : ተድባብ : ትእምርተ : መስቀል : ነዊሳ : ውብሩህ : ከመ : ፀሐይ ። ወእምጽንፈ : ውእቱ : ተድባብ : ይወርድ : ብዙሳ : አዝፋረ : ወርቅ : እንዘ : ይትላጸቅ : ወይርነቅ : ወሰኩዕ : ዲቤሁ : አዕናቀሩ : ወ ይጼልላሃ : እማንቱ : አዕናቀሩ : ለይእቲ : ቤት : ከለንታሃ ። ወዓዲ : ወረዲ : ቪአሕባል : ዘወርቅ : መንጸረ : ቪአናቅጺሐ : ለይእቲ : ቤት : ወይስሕባ : ጉንደ : መስቀል : ዘሀሎ : መልዕልት : መስቀለ : ወአርጋወ : አናቅ ጸሐ : ቅዱስ : ሚካኤል : ወንቡር : በውስ ቲታ : መንበር : ዘኢይትአወቅ : ግብረቱ ፤ ወዘ (Fol. 81b.) ይኬልሎ : ደመና : ብሩህ ። ወይነብር : ዲቤሁ : ሕፃን : ንዑስ : መነኮስ ። ወይቤሎ : ለመልአክ : መኑ : ዝንቱ : ዘይነ ብር ። ወይቤሎ : ነፍስ : መባዓ : ጽዮን : ወ ያንብራ : ዝዩ : እግዚእን : ወረሰዩ : ማንደ ራ : ወበዕለተ : ፈቀደ : ይጼውዓ : ለነፍሱ : ወይትናገራ ። ወዘንተ : ነጺራ : መልአክ : ዘተናገሮ : አንከረ : ለጥበበ : አምላክ : ከመ : አልቦ : ዘዩአምሮ : ወይቀውሙ : ዓዲ : በ ውስተ : ቤት : ቪአስዋር : ፅዕድዋን : ነቡር : ህላዌሆሙ : ለውእቶሙስ : ኢፈከረ : ሎቱ : ውእቱ : መልአክ : ጠበባንስ : ቅዱሳን : ተርጉሙ : በዝዩ : ወይቤሎ : ሥላሴ : ቦ : አካሎሙ ። ወካዕበ : አመ : ፩ለጳክሜን : ወነሥኦኒ : መንፈስ : ቅዱስ : ወአዕረገ ሂ : መንገለ : ሰማይ ። ወበህዩ : ርኢኩ : ርቡብ : ከመ : ደመና : ወፀዓዳ : ከመ : በረድ : ወዲቤሁ : ብዙኃን : ቅዱሳን : ተፅዒኖሙ : አፍራስ : ይትዋነዩ : በበይናቲሆሙ ፤ ወአዕ

ረገኒ : ካዕበ : መልዕልቲሆሙ : ወርኢኩ : በህዩ : ከማሁ : ይትዋነዩ : ብዙኃን : ቅዱሳን ፤ ወሥርግዋን : (Fol. 82a.) ወአፍራሲሆሙ : ጸዓድዒዳን : ወከዕነቲሳን : ጥቀ : ዩሄንዩ : እምቀዳማውያን : ወበህዩ : ርኢክዎ : ለአቡዩ ። ወአእምርኩ : እምኒ : ለተዝካረ : መድኅን : ርኢክዎ : ለአቡዩ : ቅድመ ። ወይእዜኒ : ተሳተፍኩ : ምስሌሁ : ወወሀቦ : ልብስ : ብርሃን : ለሊሁ : እግዚእ ፤ ወእምዝ : አዕረገኒ : ውስተ : ሣልስ : መዐርግ : ዘሀሎ : ደመና : ርቡብ : ወነዊሳ : ወይርነብ : እምቀዳማውያን : ወዘይበርህ : እምፀሐይ ፤ ወበላዕሌሁ : ርኢክዎ : ለእግዚእን : ምስለ : ወላዲቱ : ድንግል : ወምሉእ : ተዓይን : መላእክት : ወሰብእ ። ወርኢኩ : ካዕበ : ብእሴ : ፍውሐ : ዘይበርህ : እምፀሐይ : ወወሀቦ : እግዚእን : ዕባዩ : ወአልቦ : ክብረ : ወአልቦስ : ብዙኃን : እንዘ : ይብል : ለዘፈቀድክ : ሀቦ ። ወሶቤሃ : ሰዓመ : አብራክሁ : ለእግዚእን : ውእቱ : ብእሴ : ወወሀቦ : ለሕፃን : ፈርሃ : ወኢነሥኦ : እምኒሁ : በእንተ : ዘነሥኦ : ቅድመ : እምእግዚእን : አፍራስ : ወአልቦስ : ብርሃን ፤ ወተመይጠ : መንገሌሁ : ወርኢዩ : ወእግዚእንሂ : መጠዎ : መስቀ (Fol. 82b.) ለ : ብርሃን ። ወይቤሎ : እምውእቱ : ተመጠው ። ወሶቤሃ : ተመጠው : በከመ : ተመጠው : እምእግዚእን : ወዝንቱ : መጣዊ : ዓርክዩ : ዘይቤሎ : እግዚእን : ለዮሐንስ : ሰንኮሪስ ። ወእምዝ : ርኢኩ : ጸሊም : አርዌ : እንዘ : ይስሕብዎ : ጸሊማን ። ወይተሉ : ድነሬሁ : ሦር : ዓቢይ : ወፍሡ



ሕ : ገጸ : ወኅብሩ : ጸሊም : ወጸዓዓ : ወእ
ምድኅሬሁ : ለውእቱ : ሦር : ይተልውዎ :
ሥራዊተ : ጽልሙታን : እንዘ : ይአኅዙ :
ቀስታመ : ወአኅዓ :: ወይቤሎ : እግዚእ : ለ
ሊቀ : መላእክት : ሚካኤል : ተንሥእ : ወ
አዝዝ : በግዓ : ከመ : ይረድ : ኅበ : ነሎ
ሙ : መላእክት : እለ : ውስተ : ዓለም : ወ
እለ : ሰብአ : እገሌስ : ሀገር : ቅዱሳንዩ :: ኢ
ትልክፍ : ርአሶሙ : ወኢውሎዶሙ : ወኢ
ትብጻሕ : ሀገርሙ : ወባሕቱ : ኅበ : ሐረ :
በግዕ : ትሎ : ውእተ : ሦረ : ወሠራዊተ :
ጸሊማን :: ወእምዝ : በጸሐ : ኅበ : ሚካኤ
ል : ፩መነኮስ : ዘይትቃረኖ : ለሕፃን :: ወይ
ቤሎ : ፈንወኒ : አብእ : በግዓ : ወጸሊማን ::
ወአዘዘ : ኅበ : መ (Fol. 83a.) ነኮሳት : ዘእገ
ሌ : ሀገር : ዘእንበለ : ጁዶብር :: ወሐረ : ኅ
በ : ዳብሩ : ወሀገሩ : ለሕፃን : ውእቱ : ቀና
ዒ : ወተምዓ : ላዕሌሁ : እግዚእን : ወአብጽ
ጽሐ : ለቀናዒ : ወይቤሎ : ለምንት : አባእ
ከ : እንዘ : ተአምር : ወትጤይቅ : ኅበ : ይ
ትገበር : ተገዝረ : ሞትዩ :: ወአእተተ : እግ
ዚእ : እምውእቱ : ሀገር : ወአዘዘ : ይስልብ
ዎ : ሠርጓቲሁ : ወይቅሥፍዎ : በጥብጣቤ :
እስከ : ይትመሰው : ነሎንታሁ : ወአስርዎ :
ድኅሪተ : በሰናስል : ወሐመይዎ : ዘባኖ :
ወወሰድዎ : እንዘ : ይስልብዎ : ወነጺርሙ :
ኪያሁ : በከዩ : ደቂቁ : ወዝንቱ : ኮነ : አ
መ : ፩ለመስከረም : ወበሳኒታ : ካዕበ : ነጺ
ሮ : እንዘ : ያለብስዎ : ለሕፃን : ልብሰ : ወር
ቅ : ተሠጥመ : በመዓት :: ወሚጥዎ : ውስ
ተ : ማእሠሩ :: ወእምዝ : በ፲ዕለት : ሰአለ

ት : ሎቱ : እግዝእትን : ማርያም : ወአም
ሐለቶ : ከመ : ኢይድግም : ወለአመ : ደገ
መ : ዘንተ : ይኩኖ : ለሕፃን : ነሎ : ርስቶ ::
ወደ (Fol. 83b.) ቂቀ : ዚአሁ : ወከመዝ : ፈ
ትሐቶ : እማእሰሪሁ : ወእምዝ : ወድቀ : ሕ
ፃን : ቅድመ : መንበሩ : ለእግዚእን : ወሰአ
ሎ : ከመ : ይእትት : እምሀገሩ : ነሎ : በ
ግዓ : ወጸሊማን : ወሦረ : እንዘ : ይብል : መ
ሐር : ተግባረከ : እግዚአ :: ወእግዚእን : ይ
ቤሎ : መሐርኩ : ለከ : በእንተ : ተገዝረ :
ሞትዩ : ዘገባርከ : አንተ :: ወአዘዘ : እግዚ
እ : ይፃኡ : ወሶቤሃ : ወዕኡ : ሠራዊተ : ጸ
ሊማን : ዘምስለ : በግዕ : ወሦር : ወኢያእ
መርኩ : ኅበ : ወሰድዎሙ : እንዘ : ያጐጐ
ዕዎ :: ወእምዝ : በሳኒታ : አስተርከበ : ሕፃ
ን : ከመ : ያሠኒ : ተገዝረ : ዓርብ : በከመ :
ሕማዱ : ወመጽኦ : እግዚእን : ወሐቀፈ :
ክሳዶ : በአርአያ : ሕፃን : ወሥርግው : ነሎ
ላንታሁ : ወአኅዘ : ርእሶ : ወገሠሠ : ገጸ :
ወመላትሒሁ : ወተዋነዩ : ወሶበ : ርእዩት :
ርኅራኄሁ : ትቤሎ : ወላዒቱ : ተረፈተከን :
ኪያን : ዘኢወሀብኮ : ወይቤላ : እው : ወተ
ረፈኒ : ናሁ : አፌጽ (Fol. 84a.) ም : ወእምሕ
ል : ሎቱ : በቅድሚኳ :: አእምዩ : በእንቲ
ኪ : ወበእንተ : ሕማመ : ሞትዩ : ወክዕው
ተ : ይምዩ : ወመሐለ : ብዙኃ : ነገረ : ሶቤ
ሃ : ወይቤ : እምይእዜ : ለአመ : ሐለዩ : ከ
መ : ያሠኒ : ኅብስተ : ለክሎ : ተገዝረ : ሞ
ትዩ : ወይገብር : ፍጹመ : ኢይትፈለጥ : እ
ምኔሁ : እስከ : ይትፈጸም : ወበዊኦ : ቅር
ባን : እስከ : ይወፅእ : አጥብግ : ለተመጥዎ :



ሥጋዩ : ወደምዩ : መሐልኩ : ሎቱ : ከመ :
 ያውፅኦ : ፫፻፶፫ ሳተ : እምሲኦል : ወበእን
 ተ : ተገካረ : ሞትዩ : በእንቲኦኪ : ኦእም
 ዩ : ዘንተ : ዓሥራተ : ወሀብከም : እስከ : እ
 ነሥኦ : ጎቤዩ : ወተንጊኦ : እመ : ሰዓመ
 ት : አብራኪሁ : ወአእኩተቶ : ወአመጀለ
 ቲቶ : እንዘ : ይትናገር : ምስለ : እግዚእን :
 በከመ : ልማዱ : ወረደ : ወርጎ : ንጹሕ :
 እምሰማይ : ወነበረ : ዲበ : ምቅዋሙ : ለሕ
 ፃን : በአፍኦ : ሀገር : ወእምዝ : ወርጎ : ነበ
 ረ : ዲበ : ሕፃን : ወእግዚእንሂ : አክሞሰሰ :
 ወኮነ : ሰብኦ : ወውእተ : ጊዜ : አእመርኩ :
 ከመ : እግ (Fol. 84b.) ዝእትዩ : ማርያም : ይ
 እቲ : ወርጎ : ወትቤሎ : ታረምምኩ : አፍ
 ቁርዩ : ሠራዊተ : ጽልመት : እንዘ : የዓግ
 ትዋ : ለቤተ : ተገካርዩ : ወአርመመ : እግ
 ዘእ : እንዘ : ያስተፈሥሖ : ለሕፃን : በቃ
 ሉ : ጥዑም : ወለሠራዊት : ብድብድ : ርኢ
 ክምሙ : በአፍኦ : ዘኢይትአመር : ጎልቆ
 ሙ : ወውሱቅ : አቅስስቲሆሙ : ወሲሩይ :
 አሕፃሆሙ : በጎምዝ : ወከበብዋ : ለይእቲ :
 ቤት : ወመሰለኒ : ዘኢያትረፈኒ : ወእንዘ :
 እሑሊ : መጽኦ : ጥብተ : መብረቅ : ወአው
 ዓዮሙ : ወተመስው : ነሎሙ : ወተረፈ
 ት : ይእቲ : ቤት : ባሕቲታ : ባታሕት : ኦ
 ም : ወነበረ : መልኦኩ : ለቤት : ወፈቀደ :
 ይፅፁ : እንቀጻ : ወአጎደጎ : ቅዱስ : ሚካ
 ኤል : ወይቤሎ : ጎድግ : ይታታተል : ሕፃ
 ን : በከመ : ፈቀደ : ወሀለው : ምስሌሁ : ፪
 መላእክት : ወሠጠቁ : ምድረ : ለጀኤ : ወ
 አውፅኦ : ርእሶ : ዓቢይ : ከይሲ : ወጸሊም :

ጎብሩ : ወጸጉረ : ርእሱ : ከመ : ሰብኦ : ወ
 ዝዚፍ : ውእቱ : ወመንፈቁሰ : ኢወፅኦ :
 እምድር : ወኮነ : ይነብብ : (Fol. 85a.) ወይኬ
 ልሕ : ወይላጺ : ፀጉር : እመንገለ : ቅጽረ :
 ቤቱ : ለሕፃን : ይትረክይ : ወሕፃንኒ : ወፅ
 ኦ : እምነበ : እግዚአብሔር : እንዘ : ይእጎ
 ዝ : ቀስተ : ወወሀቦ : መድኃኒን : ሥርግወ :
 በወርቅ : ወብብሩር : ነሎንታሁ : ወሥፀ-
 ል : ግብረቱ : በጎብረ : ነድ : ወጽጌ : ፀዓዳ :
 ወበሐመልሚል : ወትእምርቱ : መስቀል :
 ቦቱ : ወተበቀለ : ከደሀ : ወነዳፎ : ለውእ
 ቱ : አሕፃ : ትእምርተ : መስቀል : ወውእ
 ተ : ጊዜ : ተሠጥቆ : ምድር : ወተመልሐ :
 ከመ : ቅጽበት : ዓይን : ወሰረረ : ከመ : እ
 ንተ : ዖፍ : ወበጽሐ : ሀገረ : አቡሁ : ለሕፃ
 ን : ወወድቀ : ህዩ : ውእቲኒ : ዱገኖ : ወነደ
 ፎ : ዳግመ : ወተነጽሐ : ሶቤሃ : ወተሐጉለ :
 ከመዝ : በኃይለ : መለኮቱ : ለእግዚአብሔ
 ር : ሎቱ : ስብሐት : ለዓለመ : ዓለም : ወእ
 ምዝ : ርእዮ : ለእግዚእን : እንዘ : ይነብር :
 ዲበ : መንበሩ : ልዑል : ወትነብር : እመ :
 በየማኑ : ወይዜምሩ : ቅድሚሁ : ሐራ : ሰ
 ማይ : ወይቀውም : ሕፃን : ታሕተ : እገሪ
 ሁ : ወእዘዘ : ይምጽኦ : ነሎሙ : እለ :
 (Fol. 85b.) መሐሮሙ : እንበይነ : ተገካረ :
 ሞቱ : ወበጽሐ : ከመ : ቅጽበት : ዓይን :
 ወቆሙ : ታሕተ : ሠረገላቲሁ : ወመልኦ :
 ስፍሕት : ሀገረ : እግዚአብሔር : የእምር :
 ጎልቆሙ : ወአሠገዎሙ : በአክሊላት : ወ
 በቀጸላ : ስን : ዘዘዘኦሁ : ጎብሩ : ይመስል :
 ጽጌ : ወቦ : በረድ : ፀዓዳ : ወቦ : ቀይሕ : ወ



ርቅ፡ ወሐመልግል፡ ወሰገዱ፡ ነሎሙ፡
 እንዘ፡ ይኬልሉ፡ ወይብሉ፡ እግዚእ፡ እግ
 ዚእ፡ ይትባረክ፡ መንግሥትከ፤ ዘመሐርከ
 ነ፡ በእንተ፡ ተዝካረ፡ ሞትከ፡ ወይእዜኒ፡
 አስምዓነ፡ ቃለከ፡ ወሀበነ፡ አበ፡ ዘይከው
 ነነ፡ እግዚእ፡ ወሶበ፡ ይቤልዎ፡ ከመዝ፡ አ
 ምጽአ፡ ሥርጋዊ፡ መንክረ፡ ወአሠርገዎ፡
 ለሕፃን፡ እግዚእነ፡ ወአንበረ፡ ዲበ፡ ርእ
 ሱ፡ ዘኅብረ፡ በረድ፡ ቀጸላ፡ በመልዕልተ፡
 ቀጸላ፡ አንበረ፡ አክሊለ፡ ዘይበርሀ፡ እምፀ
 ሐይ፤ ወስኩዕ፡ ዲበ፡ ከተማሁ፡ አዝፋረ፡
 ወርቅ፡ ወዕንቀ፡ ዘየሐይድ፡ አዕይንተ፤ ወ
 አንሥአ፡ እግዚእ፡ ለይአቲ፡ ቀጸላ፡ እኒዞ፡
 እንተ፡ ክልኤሆን፡ ገበዋቲሃ፤ ወይቤ (Fol. 86a.)
 ሎሙ፡ ንሥኡ፡ አበ፡ ሀየንተ፡ አቡካሙ፤
 ወተዘከሩ፡ ሞትየ፡ ዘተጸገውክሙ፡ በኅቤ
 ሁ፡ ወይኩንክሙ፡ ዝክረ፡ እስከ፡ ለዓለም፡
 ወተፈሥሉ፡ ሶቤሃ፡ ወሰብሕዎ፡ እንዘ፡ ይ
 ሰግዱ፡ ሎቱ፡ ወፈነዎሙ፡ ወአተው፡ በሰ
 ላም፡ ወመጽኡ፡ ብዙኃን፡ ቅዱሳን፡ ወቆ
 ሙ፡ ቅድሚሁ፡ ወይቤሉ፡ ኦእግዚእ፡ ለ
 ሊከ፡ ተአምር፡ እስመ፡ ብዙኃ፡ ድካመ፡
 ዘጸርነ፡ በእንተኦክ፡ ይእዜኒ፡ ዘንተ፡ ነሱ
 ሎ፡ ሀብታተ፡ ጸንከ፡ ለዘሞአ፡ እምድኅሬ
 ነ፡ ወይቤሎሙ፡ እግዚእ፡ አልቦኑ፡ ዘይንዕ
 ስ፡ እምኔክሙ፤ ወዘየዓብዩክሙ፡ ወነሱል
 ክሙ፡ በበገድልክሙ፡ ንበሩ፡ ወኢትትዓ
 ደው፡ ክፍለ፡ እምዘ፡ ወሀብኩክሙ፡ አን
 ትሙኒ፡ ነበርክሙ፡ በምግባሪክሙ፡ ሠናይ፡
 ወዝኒ፡ አፍቀረኒ፡ ገብረ፡ ተዝካረ፡ ሞትየ፡
 በእንተ፡ ዘኮነ፡ ስምዓ፡ አርጻአየ፡ ወሶቤሃ፡

ተንሥአ፡ አበ፡ መነከሳት፡ እንወንዮስ፡ ወይ
 ቤ፡ እግዚእየ፡ ይደልዎ፡ ሀበ፡ በከመ፡ ፈቀ
 ድካ፡ ወውአተ፡ ጊዜ፡ ተምዑ፡ ላዕሌሁ፡
 ቅዱሳን፡ በእንተ፡ ዘተናገረ፤ ከመዝ፡ ወ
 (Fol. 86b.) ተመይጦ፡ እግዚእ፡ ኅበ፡ ሀፃን፡
 ወይቤሎ፡ መሐልኩ፡ ለከ፡ በጽፍአትየ፡
 ወበቅሥፈታትየ፡ በሕማምየ፡ ወበስቅለት
 የ፡ ዓዲ፡ በነጸፍጸፈ፡ አንብዓ፡ ለእምየ፤ ወ
 በእንተ፡ ዘገበርከ፡ ተዝካርየ፡ ወጸመውከ፡
 በእንተኦሃ፡ ከመ፡ አሀብከ፡ ስብሐተ፤ ወካ
 ዕበ፡ እዊስከከ፡ ዓሥራተ፡ እምእለ፡ ሞቱ፡
 ኃጥአን፡ እምእለ፡ ሀለው፤ ከዕበ፡ በሕይወ
 ዮሙ፡ መንፈቅ፡ እምሕር፡ ለከ፡ በእንተ፡
 ተዝካረ፡ ሞትየ፡ አሜን፤ እብለከ፡ ከመ፡
 ኢይኄስወከ፡ ወአጽፍዕኩከ፡ ወወደይኩ፡
 ፍቅርየ፡ ውስተ፡ ልብከ፡ ከመ፡ እትቤዘዎ
 ሙ፤ ወእማሎሙ፡ ለኃጥአን፡ በእንተኦ
 ከ፡ ከመዝ፡ ይቤሎ፡ በቃሉ፡ እግዚእነ፡ ኢ
 ዩሱስ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ በከመ፡ አሰፈዎ፡ ቀዳማ፡
 ሎቱ፡ ስብሐት፤ ወላዕሌነ፡ ይኩን፡ ሣህል፡
 ወምሕረት፡ በምድር፡ ወበሰማያት፡ ወበእ
 ንተ፡ ጸሎቱ፡ ለአቡነ፡ መባኦ፡ ጽዮን፡ ለባ
 ሴ፡ ትዕግሥት፤ ወበእንተ፡ እግዚእትነ፡
 ማርያም፡ እመ፡ ጸባኦት፤ በእንተ፡ ተዝካ
 ረ፡ ሞቱ፡ ለንጉሠ፡ ስብሐት፡ ያድኅነነ፡ ለ
 (Fol. 87a.) ሊሁ፡ እሞት፡ ወይባልከነ፡ እመን
 ሱት፡ ወይክለነ፡ በዊኦ፡ በደብረ፡ ጽዮን፡ ቅድ
 ስት፡ ምስለ፡ ቅዱሳን፡ ወሰማዕት፡ ለዓለመ፡ ዓ
 ለም፡ አሜን፡ ወአሜን፡ ለይኩን፡ ለይኩን፡
 ተፈጸመ፡ በዝየ፡ ተአምሪሁ፡ ለመድኅ
 ን፡ ዘተገብረ፡ በእደ፡ መባዓ፡ ጽዮን፡ ጸሎ



ቱ : ወበረከቱ : የሃሉ : ምስለ : ነፍስ : ኃጥ
 እ : ፍቅሩ : ተክለ : ሃይማኖት : ምስለ : ፍ
 ቅርቱ : ወለተ : [ጽዮን] : ወምስለ : ክፍሉ :
 ደቂቅ : ጥምቀት : ለዓለመ : ዓለም : አሜ
 ን : አአምላክ : አቡነ : መባዓ : ጽዮን : ዋ
 ሕድ : በመለኮት : ወበአካላት : ሥላሴ : ጸ

ሐፍ : ስምዖ : ለኃጥእ : ገብርክ : አግናጥዮ
 ስ : ምስለ : ፍቅርቱ : ወለተ : ወምስ
 ለ : ጸሐፊሁ : ምክሉ : ጊዮርጊስ : በክብር :
 ወበውሳኔ : ኀበ : ዓምደ : ወርቅ : እንተ :
 አልቦቱ : ድምሳሴ : ውኀበ : ሀለው : አሮን :
 ወሙሴ : ለዓለመ : ዓለም : አሜን ።



THE HISTORY OF GABRA KRESTÔS, SON OF THE EMPEROR THEODOSIUS.

(A. fol. 94 a.) (B. fol. 96 a.) በስመ¹፡ አብ፡ ወ
ወልድ፡ ወመንፈስ፡ ቅዱስ፡ ፩አምላክ፡ ፤ ፤
ጽሕፍ፡ በረድኤተ²፡ እግዚእነ፡ ኢየሱስ፡
ክርስቶስ፡ ዜናሁ፡ ለቅዱስ፡ ወብፀ-ፅ፡ ብእ
ሴ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ገብረ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ወል
ደ፡ ቴዎዶስዮስ፡ ንጉሠ፡ ቀስተንጥንጥን፡ ወ
ውእቱኒ³፡ ንጉሥ፡ ቴዎዶስዮስ፡ መፍቀሬ፡
እግዚአብሔር፡ ወመፍቀሬ፡ እንግዳ፡ ውእ
ቱ፡ ወይገብር፡ ምጽዋተ⁴፡ ለነዳያን፡ ወለ
ምስኪናን፡ ለዕቤራት⁵፡ ወለእጓለ፡ ማው
ታ፡ ወሐነጸ፡ አብያተ፡ ክርስቲያናት፡ ወ
አብአ፡ መሥዋዕተ⁶፡ ወቀረባነ፡ ወአሥመ

ሮ⁷፡ ለእግዚአብሔር፡ ወብእሲቱ⁸፡ ሠናይ
ት፡ ወፈራሂተ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ወለይእቲ፡
ስማ⁹፡ መርኬዛ፡ ቴዎዶስደስኒ፡ ወብእሲ
ቱ፡ ነበሩ¹⁰፡ በመንግሥቶሙ፡ እ (A. fol. 94 b.)
ንዘ፡ የኅዝቡ¹¹፡ በእንተ፡ ዘአልበሙ፡ ውሉ
ድ፡ ወትቤሎ፡ ብእሲቱ፡ መርኬዛ፡ ተንሢ
አ¹²፡ አሊቅየ፡ ንስአሎ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር፡
ከመ፡ የሀበነ፡ ውሉደ፡ ዘያስተፈሥሐነ፡
ወዘይወርስ፡ መንግሥተነ፡ ወይሰመይ፡ ለነ፡
ዘርአ፡ እምድነሬነ፡ ወይእዜኒ፡ ተንሥእ፡
ንሐር¹³፡ ውስተ፡ ኢየሩሳሌም፡ ንስአሎ¹⁴፡
ወንብግዕ¹⁵፡ ብፅዓተ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር፡ እ

¹ In the following list of variants B. = Brit. Mus. Ms. 16. 198. ² B. adds
እግዚአብሔር፡ ³ መፍቀሬ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ውእቱ፡ ወመፍቀሬ፡ እንግዳ፡ ⁴ B. ም
ጽዋተ፡ ብዚኅ፡ ለነዳያን፡ ⁵ B. omits ለዕቤራት፡ ⁶ B. ወአባአ፡ መባዓ፡ መሥዋዕተ፡
⁷ B. omits this word. ⁸ B. ወብእሲቱሂ፡ ⁹ B. ይእቲ፡ ወስማ፡ ¹⁰ B. ወነበሩ፡
¹¹ B. የሐዝቡ፡ ወይቲዝቡ፡ ¹² B. ተንስእ፡ ¹³ ንሐር፡ and omits ውስተ፡ ¹⁴ B. omits
this word. ¹⁵ B. ወንበጸዕ፡ ብፅዓተ፡



ምላክነት¹፡ እስመ፡ ሰማዒ፡ ወከሃሊ፡ ውእ
ቱ፡ ። ወተንሥኡ²፡ ንጉሥ፡ (B. fol. 96 b.) ወ
ብኣሲቱ፡ መርኬዛ፡ ወበጽሑ፡ ኢየሩሳሌ
ም³፡ ወቦኡ፡ ውስተ⁴፡ ቤተ፡ መቅደስ፡
መካነ፡ ቀራንዮ፡ እንተ፡ ይኣቲ፡ መካነ፡ ጎ
ልጎታ፡ ። ዘተሰቀል⁵፡ ውስቲታ፡ እግዚእነ⁶፡
ኢየሱስ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ዳግማይ፡ አዳም፡ መ
ድኅነ፡ ። ሃለም፡ ወበህ (A. fol. 95 a.) ዮ፡ ሰገ
ዱ፡ በብረከሆሙ፡ ጎቡረ⁷፡ ። ወአንቃዕደ
ወ፡ አዕይንቲሆሙ፡ ላዕለ⁸፡ ውስተ፡ ሰማ
ይ፡ ወገድኡ፡ እንግዲዳቲሆሙ፡ ወበብዙ
ጎ፡ ገንር፡ ሰአሉ፡ ወበዕዕ⁹፡ ለእግዚአብሔ
ር፡ ወሰምዓ¹⁰፡ ስእለቶሙ፡ ወዓውያተ¹¹፡
ልቦሙ፡ ወኢተአንተለ፡ ጸሎቶሙ፡ ወኢ
ገደፈ፡ ተስፋሆሙ¹²፡ በከመ፡ ጽሑፍ፡ ፤ ዘይ
ብል፡ ኢይገድፍ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ተስፋሆ
ሙ፡ ለጸድቃን፡ ወወሀቦሙ፡ በመዋዕለ፡ ፄ
ርስዓኖሙ¹³፡ ውልደ፡ ፍሡሐ፡ ዘሠናይ፡ ፄ
ናሁ¹⁴፡ ከመ፡ ፄና¹⁵፡ ገዳም፡ ዘባረከ፡ እግዚ
አብሔር¹⁶፡ እግዚእ፡ ወሰመዮ፡ ንጉሥ፡ ቲ
ዎደስዮስ፡ ለውእቱ፡ ወልድ፡ አብደ፡ ለመ

ሲሕ¹⁷፡ ዘበትርጓሚሁ፡ ገብረ፡ ክርስቶስ፡
ወተፈሥሐ¹⁸፡ ንጉሥ፡ ወብእሲቱ፡ መር
ኬዛ፡ ንግሥት፡ ወአእኩትዎ፡ ለእግዚአ
ብሔር፡ (A. fol. 95 b.)፡ ዘወሀቦሙ፡ ወልደ፡
ሠናዩ፡ ወሰምዮሙ፡ ስእለቶሙ፡ ወሶበ፡
ልህቀ፡ ውእቱ፡ ወልድ፡ ወበጽሑ፡ ለአም
ጣን፡ ትምሕርት፡ ተማከሩ፡ አቡሁ፡ ወእ
ሙ፡ ይስደዎ፡ ጎበ፡ መምሕር፡ ወ (B. fol. 97 a.)
ተምሕረ፡ ነሎ፡ መጻሕፍተ፡ ነቢያት፡ ወ
ትርጓሚሆሙ፡ ወካዕበ፡ ተምሕረ፡ ቃላተ፡
ወንጌል¹⁹፡ ቅዱስ፡ ወመጻሕፍቲሆሙ፡ ለ
አበው፡ ቀደምት፡ ሐዋርያት፡ ወትርጓሚ
ሆሙ²⁰፡ ወፈከረ፡ ነሎ፡ ዘበእንተ፡ ክርስ
ቶስ፡ ወዓዲ፡ ተምሕረ፡ ጥበበ፡ ወተግሣጸ፡
ወሐሳበ፡ ከዋክብት፡ ዘበኒሮር፡ ወልደ፡ ኖ
ጎ፡ ወእምድኅረ²¹፡ ተምሕረ፡ ፈረስ፡ ወን
ዒወ፡ አራዊት፡ ተምሕረ²²፡ ወልታ፡ ወነተ
ናተ²³፡ ወደርብዮ፡ ሐፀ፡ ወቀስት፡ ወወጸ
ፈ፡ ሞጸፍ²⁴፡ በከመ፡ ዳዊት፡ ንጉሥ፡ እ
ስራኤል፡ ወአልቦ፡ ዘኢተምሕረ²⁵፡ እም
(A. fol. 96 a.) ዘ፡ ይገብር፡ ሰብእ፡ ዘእንበለ፡

¹ B. omits this word. ² B. ወተንሥኡ፡ ³ B. ኢየሩሳሌም፡ ⁴ B. omits this word. ⁵ B. ዘተጸልበ፡ ⁶ B. omits this word. ⁷ B. መድኅነ፡ ⁸ B. omits this word. ⁹ B. ውስተ፡ ሰማይ፡ ላዕለ፡ ¹⁰ B. በእንብእ፡ ወበገእር፡ ብዙኃ፡ ወሰዓሉ፡ ወበዕዕ፡ ¹¹ B. adds እግዚአብሔር፡ ¹² B. ወአውያተ፡ ¹³ B. ተስፋሆሙ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ለጸድቃን፡ ¹⁴ B. ርስእኖሙ፡ ¹⁵ B. ጼና፡ ¹⁶ B. ጽጌያተ፡ ¹⁷ B. እግዚእ፡ ¹⁸ B. አብደል፡ መሲሕ፡ ¹⁹ B. ወተፈሰሐ፡ በእንቲአሁ፡ አቢዮ፡ ፍሥሕ፡ ²⁰ B. ወአእኩትዎ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር፡ በእንተ፡ ዘሰምዮሙ፡ ጸሎቶሙ፡ ወወሀቦሙ፡ ውልድ፡ ወሶበ፡ ልህቀ፡ ውእቱ፡ ወልድ፡ ወበጽሑ፡ አምጣን፡ ትምሕርት፡ ወተምህረ፡ ቃላተ፡ ወንጌል፡ ²¹ B. ዘአበው፡ ሐዋርያት፡ ²² B. ወእምዛ፡ ድኅረ፡ ተምህረ፡ ንዒወ፡ አራዊት፡ ²³ B. ወተምህረ፡ ²⁴ B. ወቀስት፡ ²⁵ B. ወወጽፍ፡ መጻፍ፡ ²⁶ B. ዘኢተምህረ፡



ኃጢአት፡ ባሕቲቱ፡ ። እስመ፡ ይሕቲ፡ ታር
ኅቆ፡ ለሰብእ፡ እምፈጣሪሁ፡፡ ወሶበ፡ አእ
መሩ፡ አቡሁ፡ ወእመ፡ ዘከመ፡፡ ፈጸመ፡፡
ክሎ፡ ትምህርተ፡ ተፈሥሐ፡ ዓቢየ፡፡ ፍ
ሥሐ፡ ወአእኩትዎ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር፡፡ [ወ
ተማከሩ፡ አቡሁ፡ ወእመ፡፡]⁵ ወይቤሉ፡
ንሕጺ፡፡ ሎቱ፡ ብእሲተ፡ ለወልድነ፡ በመ
ዋዕለ፡ ሕይወትነ፡⁷ ንእቱ፡ ውስተ፡ ቤተ፡
መዛግብት፡ ወነሀቦ፡ ንዋየ፡ ብዙኃ፡ ወንት
ፈሣሕ፡ ባመዋዕለ፡ መርዓሁ፡ ለወልድነ፡፡፡

(A. fol. 98a.) [ወእመ፡ በጽሐ፡ ፤ ፲ወጽዓመ

ት፡ እምዘ፡ ተወልደ፡]⁸ ሐጸዩ፡፡ ሎቱ፡ ወ
ለተ፡ ንጉሠ፡ ሮምያ፡ ወእምዝ፡ አስተዳለ
ዉ፡ ለካከካብ፡ በከመ፡ ዕባየ፡ ክብሮሙ፡
ወምንግሥቶሙ፡ ወእኢተዉ፡¹⁰ ሎቱ፡ [መ
ርዓተ፡] በከመ፡ ሕገ፡ ክርስቲያን፡ ወአብ
እዎሙ፡ ለመርዓዊ፡ ወለመርዓት፡ ውስተ፡
ቤተ፡ መቅደስ፡ ዘቅድስት፡ ማርያም፡ ወመ
ጽሕ፡ ቱዎፍሎስ፡ (B. fol. 97b.) ጳጳስ፡ ዘቀሩስ
ጥንጥንያ፡¹² ምስለ፡ ቀሳውስት፡ ወዲያቆና
ት፡ ወወሎ፡ ውስተ፡ ቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡ ወ
ሠርዑ፡¹³ በከመ፡ ሕገ፡ ሰብሳብ፡ ላዕለ፡ መ

ርዓዊ፡ ወመርዓት፡ ወቱዎፍሎስ፡ ሊቀ፡
ጳጳሳት፡ አንበረ፡ እዴሁ፡ ዲበ፡ ርእሰ፡ ክ
ልኤሆሙ፡ ወጸለየ፡¹⁴ ጸሎተ፡ ሰብሳብ፡ ወ
ባረከ፡¹⁵ እንዘ፡ ይብል፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ያ
ብዝነ፡ ዘርእከሙ፡¹⁶ በከመ፡ አብ (A. fol. 98b.)
ዝኃ፡ ዘርእ፡ ለያዕቆብ፡ እም፡ ራሂል፡¹⁷ ወል
ያ፡፡ እለ፡ አጽንዓሁ፡¹⁸ ለቤተ፡ እስራኤል፡፡
ይባርክ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ከያክሙ፡¹⁹ ወም
ስከቢክሙ፡፡ በከመ፡ ባረከ፡ ምስካቢሁ፡ ለ
ኖህ፡ ወልደ፡ ላሚን፡²⁰ በመዋዕለ፡ አይነ፡፡
ይባርክ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ቤተክሙ፡²¹ በከ
መ፡ ባረከ፡ ቤቶ፡ ለአቢዳራ፡ በእንተ፡ ጽ
ዮን፡ ወኩት፡ አእላፈ፡ አእላፋት፡ ፤ ኢትር
ኅቡ፡ ወኢትጽምዑ፡²² ወሶበ፡ ይቤ፡ ከመ
ዝ፡ ቱዎፍሎስ፡ ሊቀ፡ ጳጳሳት፡ ይቤሉ፡ ሰ
ማዕያን፡²³ አሚን፡ አሚን፡ ለይኩን፡ ለ
ይኩን፡²⁴ ወወጽኡ፡ እምቤተ፡ ክርስቲ
ያን፡ ወአብእዎሙ፡ ውስተ፡ ቤተ፡ መር
ዓ²⁵፡፡፡፡፡፡

(A. fol. 101a.) ወሶበ፡ ኮነ፡ መንፈቀ፡²⁵ ሌ

ሊት፡ ቦክ፡ ገብረ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ኅብ፡ መርዓ
ት፡ ዘእኢተዉ፡²⁶ ሎቱ፡ ወአኅዛ፡ (B. fol. 98a.)

¹ B. እምነ፡ ፈጣሪሁ፡ ² B. ከመ፡ ³ B. ፈጸመ፡ ⁴ B. አቢየ፡ ⁵ B. omits the words in brackets. ⁶ B. ንሕሂ፡ ⁷ B. ሕይወትነ፡ ወነሀቦ፡ ወንት፡ ፈሣሕ፡ በመ

ርዓሁ፡፡ ⁸ B. omits the words in brackets. ⁹ B. ወሐፀዩ፡ ¹⁰ B. ወአዕተዉ፡

¹¹ B. ውስተ፡ ቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡፡ ¹² B. ሊቀ፡ ጳጳሳት፡ ዘቅስጥንያ፡ ወምስሌሁ፡ ¹³ B. ወ

ሰርኡ፡ ¹⁴ B. ላዕሌሆሙ፡ ወጸለየ፡ ¹⁵ B. ወባረከሙ፡ ¹⁶ B. ዘርዕከሙ፡ ¹⁷ B. እ

መነ፡ ራሒል፡ ¹⁸ B. አጽንዓሁ፡ ¹⁹ B. omits this word. ²⁰ B. ላሚሕ፡ ²¹ B. ወ

ኢትጽምኡ፡ ²² B. ሰማያዊያን፡ ²³ B. አሚ (sic)፡ ወአሚን፡ ለይኩን፡፡ ²⁴ B. ወሶበ፡

ወጽኡ፡ እቤ፡ ክርስቲያን፡ አዕተወዎሙ፡ ውስተ፡ ቤት፡ በብዙኃ፡ ትፍሥሕት፡ ወአብእዎሙ፡

ውስተ፡ ቤተ፡ መርዓ፡፡ ²⁵ B. ጊዜ፡ መንፈቀ፡ ²⁶ B. ዘአዕተዉ፡



እዴሃ ። ወይቤላ ፡ ንዲ ፡ ንትካየድ ፡ ኪዳነ ፡
 ወግበሪ፣ ፡ ዘእቤለኪ ። ወተካየድት ፡ ምስሌ
 ሁ ፡ ከመ፣ ፡ ትስማዕ ፡ ዘይቤላ ፡ ወትግበር ።
 ተንሥኡ ፡ ወጸለዩ ፡ ኅቡረ ፡ ወሰገዱ ፡ በገጸ
 ሙ ፡ ዲበ፣ ፡ ምድር ። ወኣንቃዕደዉ ፡ ሰማ
 ዩ ። ወይቤላ፣ ፡ ንኣምን ፡ በጅኣምላክ ፡ እግ
 ዚኣብሔር ፡ ኣብ ፡ ኣኅዜ ፡ ነሉ ፡ ገባሬ ፡ ሰ
 ማያት ፡ ወምድር] ፡ ዘያስተርኢ ፡ ወዘኢያ
 ስተርኢ ፡ እስከ ፡ ተፍጻሚተ ፡ ጸሎት ። ወሰ
 ገደ ፡ ሥልዕ ፡ ወኣውጽኦ ፡ እምላዕሌሁ ፡ ኣ
 ልባስ ፡ መርዓ ፡ ዘእምቤተ ፡ መንግሥት ።
 ወለብሰ፣ ፡ ፀምር ፡ ወነሥኦ ፡ እምውስተ ፡ ሣ
 ፅኑ፣ ፡ ብዙኃ ፡ ወርቀ ፡ ወብረ ፡ በኣምጣነ ፡
 ይክል ፡ ሖረ ፡ ፀዊር፣ ፡ ኅበ ፡ መርዓት ። ወ
 ሰዓማ ፡ ርእሳ ። ወይ (A. fol. 101b.) ቤላ ፡ እግ
 ዚኣብሔር ፡ የሁሉ ፡ ምስሌኪ ፡ ወያድኅንኪ ፡
 እምግብር ፡ ለዲያብሎስ ፡ ቀናዒ፣ ። ወበከየ
 ት ፡ ወትቤሎ ፡ ኣይቲ ፡ ተሐውር ፡ እግዚእ
 ዩ ፡ ወለመኑ ፡ ተኅድገኒ፣ ። ወይቤላ ፡ ኣኅድ
 ገኪ፣ ፡ ኅበ ፡ እግዚኣብሔር ። ወኣንሰ፣ ፡ እተ
 ልዎ ፡ ለክርስቶስ ፡ [እግዝእየ ፡ ወኣምላኪየ ፡
 ወመድኅንየ ።]፡፡ እስመ ፡ መንግሥት፣፡ ዘኣ

ቡየ ፡ [ወነሉ ፡ ዘበምድር ፡]፡፡ ኃላፊ ፡ ውእ
 ቱ ፡ ወኣንተኒ፣፡ ተዘክሪ ፡ ኪዳነ፣፡ ዘተካየ
 ድነ ፡ ይእዜ ። ወይእተ፣፡ ጊዜ ፡ እ (B fol. 98b.)
 ርመመት ፡ ወኢክህለት ፡ ትክልኦ ፡ ወኢተ
 ናገረት ፡ እስመ ፡ ተዘክረት ፡ መሐላሃ፣፡ ወ
 ይእተ ፡ ጊዜ ፡ ወጽኦ፣፡ በሌሊት ፡ እንዘ ፡
 ይነውሙ ፡ ኣዝማዲሁ ፡ ወኣዕርክቲሁ፣፡ ወ
 ኣግብርቲሁ ፡ ወኣልቦ ፡ ዘርእየ፣፡ ወኣእመ
 ሮ፣፡ ዘእንበለ ፡ መ (A. fol. 102a.) ርዓት ፡ ይ
 እቲ፣፡ [ወይቤ ፡ ኣርትዕ ፡ ፍኖትየ ፡ ወሐረ
 ትየ ። ምርሐኒ ፡ እግዚእየ ፡ ፍኖተ ፡ እንተ ፡
 ባቲ ፡ ኣሐውር ። እስመ ፡ ኅቤክ ፡ ተማኅፀን
 ኩ ፡ ምርሐኒ ፡ እግዚኦ ፡ ለገበረ ፡ ፈቃድክ ፡
 እስመ ፡ ኣምላኪየ ፡ ኣንተ ። ወመንፈስክ ፡
 ቅዱስ ፡ ይምርሐኒ ፡ በምድረ ፡ ጽድቅ ። ወይ
 ቤ ፡ ኣሜን ፡]፡፡ ወሐረ ፡ ወበጽሐ ፡ ኅበ ፡ ጽ
 ንፈ ፡ ባሕር ። ወረከበ፣፡ ሐመረ ፡ ዘይፈቅ
 ዱ ፡ ይንግዱ ፡ ባቲ ። ወኢያእመኑ ፡ ኖትያ
 ት ፡ ከመ ፡ ወልደ ፡ ንጉሥ ፡ ውእቲ ። = = =

(A. fol. 104a.) ወይቤሎሙ ፡ ንሥኡኒ ፡ ም
 ስሌክሙ ፡ ከመ ፡ ኣንግድ፣፡ ወእሁበክሙ ፡
 ዓስበክሙ ። ወነሥኡ ፡ ዓስበሙ ፡ ወኣዕደ

- ¹ B. ወገባሪ ፡ ² B. ከመ ፡ ትግበር ፡ ነሉ ፡ ዘከመ ፡ ይቤላ ፡ ወተንሥኡ ። ሕቡረ ፡
³ B. ውስተ ፡ ምድር ፡ ወሰፍሕ ፡ እዴሁ ። ⁴ B. ወይቤ ፡ ጅእግዚኣብሔር ፡ ኣኃዜ ፡ ነሉ ፡
 እስከ ፡ ተፍጻሚቱ ፡ ወእምድኅረ ፡ ጸለየ ፡ ሰገደ ፡ ወኣውጽኦ ፡ እምላዕሌሁ ፡ ኣልባስ ፡ መርዓ ፡
⁵ B. ወገደፈ ፡ ወለብሰ ፡ ልብሰ ፡ ፀምር ፡ ⁶ B. ሣፁን ፡ ወኣውጽኦ ፡ ⁷ B. ጸዊረ ፡
 ወሐረ ፡ ⁸ B. እምግብር ፡ ሰይጣን ፡ ⁹ B. ተሐድገኒ ፡ ¹⁰ B. ኣሐድገኪ ፡ ኃበ ፡ ¹¹ B. ኣ
 ንሰ ፡ ኣሓውር ፡ እትልዎ ፡ ¹² B. omits the words in brackets. ¹³ B. መንግሥት ፡
¹⁴ B. ወኣንተኒ ፡ ¹⁵ B. ማኃላኪ ፡ ¹⁶ B. ወውእተ ፡ ¹⁷ B. ማኃላሃ ። ወውእተ ፡
¹⁸ B. ወጽኦ ፡ ¹⁹ B. omits this word. ²⁰ B. ዘርእየ ፡ ²¹ B. ይእቲ ፡ መርዓት ፡
²² B. omits the words in brackets, i. e. from ወይቤ ፡ to ኣሜን ፡ ²³ B. adds በህየ ፡
²⁴ B. omits ከመ ፡ እንግድ ፡



ውዎ፡ ምስሌሆሙ፡ [በሐመር፡ አሙንቱ፡
ነጋድያን ።]¹ ። (A. fol. 105 a.) ወሶበ፡ ጸብ
ሐ፡ አቡሁ፡² ፡ ሐረ፡ ምስለ፡ መኳንንቲሁ፡³
እንዘ፡ ይትፈሳሕ፡ ወቦኦ፡ ውስተ፡ ቤተ፡
መርዓዊ፡ ወመርዓት፡ ከመ፡ ይርአዮ፡ ለወ
ልዱ፡ ወይትፈሳሕ፡ ምስሌሁ፡ ። ወመጽአ
ት፡ እሙ፡⁴ መርኬዛ፡ ምስለ፡ ብዙኃት፡
አንስት፡ ወአዋልድ፡ ከመ፡ ትትፈሳሕ፡
በወልዳ፡ መርዓዊ፡ ወመርዓት፡ ። ወበዊአ
ሙ፡ ቤተ፡ ኢረከቡ፡ መርዓዊ፡ ዘእንበለ፡
መርዓት፡ ባሕቲታ፡ ። ወበዊአሙ፡ ይቤልዋ፡
አይቲ፡⁵ ሀሎ፡ ወልድነ፡⁶ ። መትቤሎሙ፡
(B. fol. 99 a.) መርዓት፡ እንዘ፡ ትበኪ፡ ቦኦ፡
ኅቤየ፡ በሌሊት፡⁷ ወአኅዘኒ፡ እዴየ፡ ወይ
ቤለኒ፡ ተንሥኢ፡ ንጸሊ፡ ወአነሂ፡ ተንሣ
እኩ፡⁸ ወጸለየኩ፡ ምስሌሁ፡⁹ ወእምድኅረ፡
ፈጸመ፡ ጸልዮ፡¹⁰ አምሐለኒ፡ ከያየ፡ ። ወአ
ዘዘኒ፡¹¹ ገቢረ፡ ሠናይ፡ ። ው (A. fol. 105 b.) እ
ቱስ፡¹² ገደፈ፡ እምላዕሌሁ፡ አልባስ፡¹³ ወር
ቅ፡ ። ወለብስ፡ ልብስ፡ ። ፀምር፡ ወሰዓመኒ፡

ርእስየ፡ ወይቤለኒ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ የሀሎ፡
ምስሌኪ፡ ። ወይቤለኒ፡¹⁴ ተዘከረ፡ መሐላኪ፡
ወአርመምኩ፡ ሶቤሃ፡ ወኢክህልቡ፡ እክል
አ፡ ። ወወጽአ፡¹⁵ በሌሊት፡ ወሐረ፡ ወቤት
ኩ፡ እንዘ፡ እበኪ፡ እስከ፡ ይእዜ፡ ። ወሶበ፡
ሰምው፡ ነገራ፡ ለመርዓት፡ አቡሁ፡ ቲዎዶ
ስዮስ፡ ንጉሥ፡ ወእሙ፡ መርኬዛ፡ ንግሥ
ት፡ ። ወድቁ፡¹⁶ (B. fol. 99 b.) በገጸሙ፡ ወሠጠ
ጡ፡¹⁷ አልባሲሆሙ፡ ወወደዮ፡ ሐመደ፡ ዲ
በ፡ ርአሶሙ፡ [ወሰጸሩ፡ ገጸሙ፡ በአጽፋሪ
ሆሙ፡]¹⁸ ። ወተመይጠ፡ ፍሥሐሆሙ፡¹⁹ ው
ስተ፡ ኅዘን፡²⁰ ወማኅሌተ፡ ከብካቦሙ፡ ው
ስተ፡ ብካይ፡ ወላህ፡²¹ ወአዘዘ፡ ቲዎዶስዮስ፡
ጅተ፡ ጀተ፡ እምአግብርቲሁ፡²² ወአልባስ
ሙ፡ አልባስ፡ ዘ (A. fol. 106 a.) ዲባጋት፡²³
ወርቅ፡ ። ወአቅነቶሙ፡ ቅናተ፡ ዘወርቅ፡ ። ወ
ወሀቦሙ፡ ለለጅ፡ ብዙኃ፡ ወርቅ፡ ውብሩረ፡
ወአልባስ፡ ክቡራተ፡ ። ወኹሎ፡ ንዋየ፡ ዘይ
ትፈቀድ፡ ለፍኖት፡ ወይቤሎሙ፡ ንጉሥ፡
ለጅ፡²⁴ አግብርቲሁ፡ ንሥኢ፡²⁵ በበጀ፡ ውስ

¹ B. omits the words in brackets. ² B. ሐረ፡ አቡሁ፡ ³ B. adds ወሕዝቡ፡
ወአግብርቲሁ፡ ⁴ B. እሙኒ፡ ⁵ B. ወይቤልዋ፡ አይቲ፡ ⁶ B. adds መርዓዊኪ፡
⁷ B. ኃቤየ፡ ⁸ B. በሌሊት፡ ወገጸ፡ እንዘ፡ ይበርህ፡ ከመ፡ ፀሐይ፡ ወደንገጽኩ፡ ወወዳቁ፡
በገጽየ፡ ዲበ፡ ምድር፡ ወአሐዘኒ፡ እዴየ፡ ወዓንሥኢኒ፡ ወይቤለኒ፡ ኢትፍርሂ፡ ተንሥንኢ፡
⁹ B. ወተንሣእኩ፡ ¹⁰ B. ምስሌሁ፡ ርአኩ፡ ዓሥሮ፡ አጽብኢሁ፡ እንዘ፡ ይበርህ፡ ከመ፡
እግረ፡ ፀሐይ፡ ዘመርሞዳ፡ ወአዕይንቲህኒ፡ ከመ፡ ወርሕ፡ ሐዚራ፡ ዘዕለተ፡ ገሃህ፡ ¹¹ B. ጸለዮ፡
¹² B. ወዘዘኒ፡ ¹³ B. ወውኢተ፡ ጊዜ፡ ¹⁴ B. ልብስ፡ ¹⁵ B. ወእቤሎ፡ አይቲ፡ ተሐውር፡
እግዚእየ፡ ወይቤለኒ፡ ¹⁶ B. ወወፅዐ፡ እምኔየ፡ ወሐረ፡ ¹⁷ B. ወደቁ፡ በገጸሙ፡ ውስተ፡ ምድር፡
¹⁸ B. ወተጠጡ፡ ¹⁹ B. omits the words in brackets. ²⁰ B. ፍሥሐሙ፡ ²¹ B. ሐ
ዘን፡ ወማኅሌተ፡ ²² B. ወከላሕ፡ ²³ B. ለጅ፡ አግብርቲሁ፡ ²⁴ B. ዲባጋት፡
and omits ወርቅ፡ ²⁵ B. ንሥኢ፡ ዘንተ፡ ኹሎ፡ ንዋየ፡ ። ወሕሩ፡ በበጀ፡

ተ፡ ነሉ፡ አህጉረ፡ ዓለም¹፡ ወኅበ፡ በጸ
ሕክሙ፡ ውስተ፡ ነሉ፡ ብሔር፡ ሀቡ፡ መ
ጽዋተ፡ ለነዳያን፡ ወለምስኪናን፡ ለዕቤራ
ት²፡ ወለእገለ፡ ማውታ፡ ፡ ኀሡ፡ በሀየኒ³፡
ወሕትቱ፡ (B. fol. 100a.) ዜናሁ፡ ለወልድየ⁴፡
ፍቁርየ፡ ወብርሃነ፡ አዕይንትየ፡ ወእመቦ፡
ዘረኮቦ፡ ለወልድየ፡ እሙንየ⁵፡ እብለክ
ሙ፡ አነ፡ እሁቦ፡ እስከ፡ መንፈቀ፡ መንግ
ሥትየ፡ ወዘአይድዓኒ፡ ዜኔሁ፡ ለወልድየ⁶፡
እሁቦ፡ ሚመተ⁷፡ እምታሕቲየ፡ ወበዙታ፡
ንዋየ፡ እሁቦ፡ እምይእዜሰ፡ ናሁ፡ እስ
(A. fol. 106b.) ከ፡ ሶቦ፡ እስምዕ፡ ዜናሁ፡ ለወ
ልድየ፡ ኢየዓርግ⁸፡ ውስተ፡ ዓራተ⁹፡ ምስ
ካብየ፡ ወኢይላብስ፡ አልባሳ፡ መንግሥት
የ፡ ወኢይነውማ፡ አዕይንትየ፡ ወኢየዓር
ፍ፡ ሕሊናየ፡ እምኀዘን¹⁰፡ እስከ፡ አመ፡ ያ
ስተፌሥሐኒ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ በርእየተ፡
ወልድየ፡ ወፍቁርየ፡ ወብርሃነ፡ አዕይንት

የ፡ ወለብሰት፡ መርኬዛ፡ እሙ¹¹፡ ልብስ፡
ኀዘን፡ ወነበረት፡ ዲቦ፡ ሐመድ፡ እንዘ፡
ትብል፡ ይኩነኒ፡ መንጸፍየ¹²፡ በሕይወትየ፡
ወእመ¹³፡ ሞትኩ፡ ምግባእየ፡ ውእቱ¹⁴፡
እስከ፡ ይሬኢ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ኀዘና¹⁵፡ ለ
ልብየ፡ ወያገብእ¹⁶፡ ለወልድየ፡ ኀቤየ¹⁷፡
ወይእቲኒ፡ መርዓት፡ ገደፈት፡ እምላዕሌሃ፡
አልባሰ፡ መርዓት¹⁸፡ ክቡራተ፡ ወለብሰት፡
ልብስ፡ ኀዘን¹⁹፡ ወቀረጸት፡ ሥዕርተ፡ ርእ
ሳ²⁰፡ ወትቤ፡ ኢይወ (A. fol. 107a.) ጽእ፡ እ
ም (B. fol. 100b.) ዝንቱ²¹፡ ቤት፡ ኀብ፡ ኀደገ
ኒ፡ ወተካየድኩ፡ ምስሌሁ፡ ኪዳነ፡ ወእጸ
ንሐ²²፡ ለክርስቶስ፡ ከመ፡ ያርእየኒ²³፡ ኪየ
ሁ፡ ዘተመርዓውኩ፡ ምስሌሁ፡ በሕገ፡ ክር
ስቶስ፡ ወዓቀሙ²⁴፡ ቅድመ፡ ታቦት፡ ወከ
ለሉ²⁵፡ ኀብረ፡ በሕገ፡ ሰብሳብ፡ ምስለ፡
ውእቱ፡ ዘረሰየ፡ ሊተ²⁶፡ እግዚእየ፡ ወመፃ
ምርትየ²⁷፡ = = =

¹ B. ዓለም፡ ወኡዱ፡ በሕረ፡ ወየብሰ፡ ከመ፡ ኖትያዊ፡ ኄር፡ ወኡዱ፡ ጽጐ፡ ወአዕጸ
ዳት፡ ወመራኅብተ፡ ከመ፡ ኒጋዲ፡ ክቡር፡ ወእምዝ፡ ዕርገ፡ አንሀስተ፡ ወስር፡ አድባር፡ ወ
አውግር፡ ወደስያተ፡ ከመ፡ ወሬዛ፡ ሀየል፡ ወአፍጠኑ፡ ረዊጸ፡ ከመ፡ ንስር፡ ስራሪ፡ ወኢት
ትመየጡ፡ ድኅሬክሙ፡ ከመ፡ አቀባማ፡ ብእሲት፡ ዘኮነት፡ ሐወልተ፡ ወኀብ፡ በጸሕክሙ፡ አ
ህጉረ፡ ኀብ፡ ምጽዋተ፡ ለነዳያን፡ ፡ ² B. ወለግድራን፡ ³ B. omits ኀሡ፡ በሀየኒ፡
⁴ B. ወልድየ፡ ወፍቁርየ፡ ⁵ B. እምኒክሙ፡ እሁቦ፡ ⁶ B. omits this word.
⁷ B. ሲመተ፡ ዘእምታሕቲየ፡ ወናሁ፡ አነ፡ ይእዜ፡ እስከ፡ አመ፡ እስምዕ፡ ⁸ B. ኢይአርግ፡
⁹ B. omits this word. ¹⁰ B. እምሐዘን፡ ¹¹ B. እሙኒ፡ መርኬዛ፡ ልብስ፡ ሐዘን፡
¹² B. ሐመድ፡ መንጸፍየ፡ ¹³ B. ወእመኒ፡ ¹⁴ B. omits this word. ¹⁵ B. ሐዘና፡
¹⁶ B. ወያገብእ፡ ¹⁷ B. ኃቤየ፡ ¹⁸ B. መርዓ፡ ¹⁹ B. ሐዘን፡ ²⁰ B. ርእስ፡
²¹ B. ዘቲ፡ ቤት፡ ዘሐደገኒ፡ ²² B. ወእጸንሕ፡ ²³ B. ያርእየነ፡ ²⁴ B. ወአቀመኒ፡
²⁵ B. ወከለሉነ፡ ምቡረ፡ ²⁶ B. ረሰየኒ፡ ሊተ፡ ²⁷ B. ወመጻምርትየ፡



(A. fol. 109 a.) ወእምዝ : ወጽኡ : አግብር
ት¹ : ወሐሩ² : ከመ : ይኅሥሥዎ³ : ለወ
ልድ : ንጉሥ : ዘከመ⁴ : ገብረ : ክርስቶስ :
ወይኅሥሥ : ውስተ : ነሉ : አህጉር : ወበ
ሐውርት⁵ : ወገብረ : ክርስቶስ : ሐረ : ር
ኅቅተ⁶ : ምድረ : መጠነ : ምሕዋረ : ጃግመ
ት⁷ : ወበጽሐ : ኅበ⁸ : ሀገር : እንተ : ስማ :
አርማንያ : ወሀለወት : ህየ : ቤተ⁹ : ክርስ
ቲያን : ውስተ : ይእቲ : ሀገር : በስማ : ለእ
ግዝእት¹⁰ : ማርያም : ወሀለወ : ህየ : ው
ስተ¹¹ : ዴዴ : ቤተ¹² : ክርስቲያን : ብዙኃን :
ነዳያን : ወምስኪናን : ዕቤራት¹³ : ወእንለ :
ማውታ : ወበለታትሂ¹⁴ : ወመግስባት : እስ
መ : ዓባይ : ሀገራ¹⁵ : ወባቲ : ሥርዓት¹⁶ : ዘ
ተሠርዓ : ከመ : ይኅድሩ : ባቲ¹⁷ : ውስተ :
ዴዴ : ቤተ : ክርስቲያን¹⁸ : እለ : ይፈቅዱ :
ምጽዋት¹⁹ : ውእቱሰ²⁰ : ገብረ : ክርስቶስ :
ኢኅደ (A. fol. 109 b.) (B. fol. 101 a.) ገ²¹ : ውሂ
በ : ምጽዋት : እምአመ : አደወ : ባሕረ : እ

ስከ²² : በጽሐ : ውስተ : ይእቲ : ሀገር : ወ
ወሀበ²³ : ለክሎሙ : ዕኑሳን²⁴ : ነሉ : ዘነ
ሥኦ²⁵ : ምስሌሁ : እምቤተ²⁶ : መርዓሁ :
ወአልቦ : ዘእትረፈ : እምኔሁ : ወኢአሐተ
ኒ²⁷ : ወወሀበ : ልብሶሂ : ዘላዕሌሁ : ወለብ
ሰ : አዕርቅተ²⁸ : ወረሰየ : ማኅደሮ²⁹ : ምስ
ለ : ነዳያን : ወምስኪናን : ውስተ : ቤተ³⁰ :
ክርስቲያን : እንዘ : ይጸውም³¹ : መዓልተ :
ወሌሊተ : ወኢይጥዕም³² : እክል : ዘእንበ
ለ : በሰናብት³³ : ወይተግህ : ነሉ³⁴ : ሌሊ
ተ : እንዘ³⁵ : ይጼሊ : ውስተ : ማኅደሩ : ወ
ኢጸርዕ : እንዘ : ይቀውም : እስከ : ጎህ³⁶ :
ወሶበ : ጠቅዓ³⁷ : ለቅኔ : ጽባሕ : ይበውእ :
ምስለ : ሕዝብ³⁸ : ይትቀነይ : ወሶበ : ወጽ
ኦ : እምቤተ : ክርስቲያን : ይበውእ : ውስተ :
ማኅደሩ : ወይውዕል : እንዘ : ይ (A. fol. 110 a.)
ጼሊ : ወኢጸርዕ³⁹ : ሰዓታተ : መዓልተ : ወ
ሌሊተ :

(A. fol. 111 b.) ወነበረ : ጃግመተ⁴⁰ : እንዘ :

¹ B. እሙንቱ : አግብርት :

² B. omits this word.

³ B. ይሕሥሥዎ :

⁴ B. ዘከመ (sic) :

⁵ B. ወሐተቱ : ከያሁ : ውስተ : ነሉ : በሐውርት :

⁶ B. ርሐቀ :

⁷ B. አሐቲ : ዓመት : ⁸ B. ኃበ : ⁹ B. ወሀለወት : አሐቲ : ¹⁰ B. omits this word.

¹¹ B. ወይኅብሩ : ውስተ :

¹² B. ይእቲ :

¹³ B. ወእቤራት :

¹⁴ B. omits this word.

¹⁵ B. ይእቲ : ሀገር : ¹⁶ B. ስርአት : ከመ : ይሕድሩ : ¹⁷ B. omits this word.

¹⁸ B. adds ነሉሙ : ቅዱሳን : ጸኑሳን : ¹⁹ B. ለምጽዋት : ²⁰ B. ወውእቱ : ²¹ B. ኢ

ሐደገ : ²² B. ወእስከ : አመ : ²³ B. ወበጼሐ : ውስተ : ሀገር : ወወሀበ : ²⁴ B. ጽኑሳን :

²⁵ B. ዘነሰአ : ²⁶ B. ቤተ : ²⁷ B. ወኢምንተኒ : ²⁸ B. አጽርቀተ : ²⁹ B. ማሕደረ :

³⁰ B. ዴዴ : ቤተ : ³¹ B. ወይጸውም : ³² B. ወኢይጥእም : ³³ B. በሰንቦታት :

³⁴ B. omits this word. ³⁵ B. ወእንዘ : ይዜምር : ³⁶ B. ወይቀውም : እስከ : ጎሕ :

³⁷ B. ጠቅዐ : ³⁸ B. adds ኅበ : ቤተ : ክርስቲያን : ይትቀነይ : ³⁹ B. ወኢጸርዕ :

⁴⁰ B. ሸወጅ :



ኢየአምሩ¹፡ ሰቱ፡ ሰብእ፡ ትጋሁ²። ወእ
ምድኅረ፡ ፎዓመት³፡ በጽሑ፡ ህየ፡ ክልኤ
ቱ፡ አግብተ⁴፡ አቡሁ፡ ወሐተቱ፡ ኪየሁ⁵፡
ኃ (B. fol. 101b.) ጥኡ፡ ወኢረከቡ፡ ዜናሁ⁶።
ወወሐ፡ ውስተ፡ ደዴ፡ ቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡
ወምስኪናን ፤ ወርእዮሙ፡ ገብረ፡ ክርስቶ
ስ፡ ወኢእመሮሙ፡ ለአግብርተ፡ አቡሁ።
እሙንቱሰ⁷፡ ኢያአመሮም፡ እስመ፡ ተወ
ለጠ፡ ሰኝ⁸፡ ራዕዩ⁹፡ እምብዝኃ፡ ትጋህ፡
ወጸም¹⁰። ወወህቡ፡ ምጽዋተ¹¹፡ ለነዳያን፡
ወለምስኪናን፡ እሙንቱ፡ አግብርተ¹²፡ ል
ዑካን፡ ወለኩሎሙ፡ ፅኑሳን፡ እለ፡ ሀለዉ፡
ውስተ¹³፡ ደዴ፡ ቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡ በከመ፡
አዘዘሙ፡ ንጉሥ፡ ቲዎዶሶዩስ፡ ወውእቱ
ኒ¹⁴፡ ገብረ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ሶበ፡ ይሁብም¹⁵፡ ምጽ
ዋተ፡ አግብርተ፡ አቡሁ¹⁶፡ ም (A. fol. 112a.)
ስለ፡ ነዳያን፡ ወምስኪናን፡ ተመጠወ፡ ው
እተ፡ ምጽዋተ፡ በእዴሁ፡ ወወሐ¹⁷፡ ውስተ፡
ማኅደሩ፡ እንዘ፡ ይበክ፡ ወሰገደ፡ ውስተ፡
ምድር፡ በገጸ፡ ወአንቃዕደወ¹⁸፡ ሰማየ፡ ወ

ይቤ፡ አካተተከ፡ እግዚአ፡ እግዚአብሔ
ር¹⁹፡ አካዜ፡ ነሉ፡ አምላክ፡ እስራኤል፡
ቅዱስ ፤ ወንጉሥ²⁰፡ ዘኢትትመዋእ፡ ለፀር፡
ወትገብር፡ ዓቢየ፡ መንክረ፡ ባሕቲትከ። ወ
ሊተኒ²¹ ፤ ዘወሀብከኒ፡ ዘንተ፡ ምጽዋተ፡ እ
ምእደ፡ አግብርተ²²፡ አቡየ። ወእምድኅረ፡
ወህቡ፡ ምጽዋተ፡ ለኩሎሙ²³፡ ጽኑሳን፡
እሙንቱ²⁴፡ አግብርተ፡ ልዑካን²⁵፡ አቡሁ።
ወሐሩ፡ እንዘ፡ ኢየአምሮም፡ ወሰምዑ²⁶፡
ዜናሁ። ወእምድኅረ፡ (B. fol. 102a.) ወጽኡ፡
እሙንቱ፡ አግብርተ፡ ወህቡ²⁷፡ ዘንተ²⁸፡ ም
ጽዋተ፡ ለካልአን፡ ነዳያን፡ ዘነሥክ፡ እም
አግብርተ፡ አቡሁ። ወእምድ (A. fol. 112b.)
ኅሬሁ²⁹፡ ነበረ፡ ውእቱሂ³⁰፡ ቅዱስ፡ ውስ
ተ፡ ይእቲ፡ ሀገር፡ ፲ዓመት³¹ ፤ ምስለ፡ ብዙ
ኅ³²፡ ሞግ፡ ወሰጊድ፡ ወትጋህ፡ ዘእንበለ፡
ፅርዓት³³፡ እንዘ፡ ኢየአምሩ³⁴፡ ሰቱ፡ ትጋ
ሁ፡ ወግብር፡ በእንተ፡ እግዚአብሔር።

(A. fol. 114a.) ወእምድኅረ፡ ፲ወፎዓመት፡

አስተርአዩቶ፡ ቅድስት፡ ድንግል³⁵፡ ማርያ

¹ B. ኢያአምሮ፡ ሰብእ፡ ² B. ትጋህ፡ ³ B. ፲ወፎ፡ ⁴ B. ላእካን፡ እምአግብርተ፡
⁵ B. ኪየሁ፡ ውስተ፡ ሀገር፡ ወሐተኡ፡ ⁶ B. ወኢረከቡ፡ ውስተ፡ ደዴ፡ ቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡
⁷ B. omits this word. ⁸ B. ራዕዩ፡ እምብዝኃን፡ ⁹ B. ወጸሙ፡ ¹⁰ B. ምጽዋተ፡
እሙንቱ፡ ¹¹ B. አግብርተ፡ ለካልአን፡ ለኩሎሙ፡ ¹² B. ኃበ፡ ¹³ B. ወውእቱሰ፡
¹⁴ B. ወህሉም፡ ¹⁵ B. አቡሁ፡ ተመጠወ፡ ውእቱ፡ በእዴሁ፡ ¹⁶ B. ወወሐ፡ ¹⁷ B. ወአ
ንቃእደወ፡ ሰማየ፡ ¹⁸ B. እግዚእየ፡ አምላክ፡ ¹⁹ B. ንጉሥ፡ ዘኢይመውት፡ ዘትገብር፡
ዐቢየ፡ ባሕቲትከ፡ ²⁰ B. ወሊተኒ፡ ለገብርክ፡ ²¹ B. እምአግብርተ፡ ²² B. ምስለ፡
ኩሎሙ፡ ²³ B. ወወጽኡ፡ እሙንቱ፡ ²⁴ B. ላእካን፡ and omits አቡሁ፡ ²⁵ B. ወኢ
ሰምዑ፡ ²⁶ B. ሐረ፡ ገብረ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ወወህቡ፡ ²⁷ B. omits ዘንተ፡ ²⁸ B. ወሶበ፡
²⁹ B. omits ውእቱሂ፡ ³⁰ B. ፲ወፎዓመት፡ ³¹ B. ብዙኃ፡ ጸም፡ ³² B. ጽርዓት፡
³³ B. ኢያአምሮ፡ ሰብእ፡ ትጋሁ፡ ወምግብር፡ ዘእንበለ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ³⁴ B. omits this word.

ም፡ ወላዲተ፡ አምላክ፡ ለ፩ኛ፡ ቀሲስ፡
 ንቃቤ፡ ቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡ ወትቤሎ፡ ጌ
 ሠም፡ ነግሃ፡ ሐር፡ ኅበ፡ ይዴ፡ ቤተ፡
 ክርስቲያን፡ ኅበ፡ ማኅደረ፡ ነዳያን፡ ወባእ፡
 ኅበ፡ ሀሎ፡ ጀዘባሕቲቱ፡ ማኅደሩ፡ ወነገ
 ረቶ፡ ትእምርተ፡ ቤቱሂ፡ ወትቤሎ፡ ን
 ሥአ፡ ለብእሴ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ወአምጽ
 አ፡ ኅበ፡ ቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡ ወአምዝ፡ ዳ
 ግመ፡ ይኩን፡ ማኅደሩ፡ ውሥጠ፡ ወአ
 ትኅድኅ፡ ይኅድር፡ ምስለ፡ ነዳያን፡ ወም
 ስኪናን፡ ወስምዮ፡ ስም፡ ብእሴ፡ እግዚ
 አብሔር፡ ወሶበ፡ ጸብሐ፡ ሐረ፡ ቀሲስ፡
 በከመ፡ አዘዘቶ፡ እግዚእትነ፡ ማርያም፡ በ
 ትእምርተ፡ (B. fol. 102 b.) ቤተ፡ ወቦእ፡ ኅ
 ቤሁ፡ ወረከቦ፡ ቀዊ (A. fol. 115 a.) ሞ፡ እን
 ዘ፡ ይጸሊ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ ኦብእሴ፡ እግዚአ
 ብሔር፡ ጸውዓተክ፡ እግዚእትነ፡ ማርያም፡
 ውስተ፡ ቤታ፡ ነሥአ፡ ወአብአ፡ ውስተ፡
 ቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡ ወረሰየ፡ ህየ፡ ማኅደሩ፡
 ወይቤሎ፡ ውእቱ፡ ቀሲስ፡ ለብእሴ፡ እግ

ዚአብሔር፡ አምሕለክ፡ በማርያም፡ ወላዲ
 ተ፡ አምላክ፡ እሙ፡ ለብርሃን፡ እግዚእ
 ትነ፡ ንጹሕት፡ በአብኒ፡ ወወልድ፡ ወመ
 ንፈስ፡ ቅዱስ፡ ከመ፡ ትንግረኒ፡ መኑ፡ አ
 ንተ፡ ወአይቱ፡ ብሔርክ፡ ወመኑ፡ አቡክ፡
 ወበምንት፡ ግብር፡ መጸእክ፡ ዝየ፡ ወሰ
 ሚያ፡ ዘንተ፡ ብእሴ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ዐበ
 የ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ ለቀሲስ፡ ምንት፡ ብከ፡ እ
 ምኒየ፡ አቡየ፡ ወለምንት፡ ትግሙ፡ ከመ፡
 ትሕትተኒ፡ ለኃጥእ፡ ወታምሕለኒ፡ በዝን
 ቱ፡ መሐላ፡ ዓበይ፡ ወክቡር፡ (A. fol. 115 b.)
 ዘዕፁብ፡ ለሰሚዕ፡ ወአነሂ፡ አምሕለክ፡ በ
 ውእቱ፡ መሐላ፡ ከመ፡ ትንግረኒ፡ መኑ፡
 ዜነወክ፡ ታእምር፡ ከያየ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ ቀሲ
 ስ፡ አንሰ፡ ኢያእመርኩ፡ አላ፡ ባሕቱ፡
 አስተርአየተኒ፡ እግዚእትነ፡ (B. fol. 103 a.)
 ማርያም፡ ወአዘዘተኒ፡ ከመ፡ አምጽእክ፡
 ዝየ፡ ወትቤለኒ፡ አምጽአ፡ ለብእሴ፡ እግ
 ዚአብሔር፡ እምውስተ፡ ማኅደሩ፡ ወአ
 ብአ፡ ውስተ፡ ቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡ ወይኩን፡

- 1 B. ማርያም፡ ለ፩ኛ፡ 2 B. ዐቃቤ፡ አንቀጸ፡ 3 B. ነግሀ፡ ሐር፡ ኃበ፡ ቤተ፡
 4 B. ወቦእ፡ 5 B. ባሕቲቱ፡ ማኅደረ፡ ወቦእ፡ ወነገረቶ፡ 6 B. ትእምርቶሂ፡ ወትእ
 ምርተ፡ ቤቱ፡ 7 B. ንስኦ፡ 8 B. ወአምጽአ፡ 9 B. ዝየ፡ ውስጠ፡ ወኢትሕድኅ፡
 ይሕደር፡ 10 B. ነዳይ፡ and omits the next word. 11 B. ወሰመዮ፡ ብእሴ፡
 12 B. ወሶበሃ፡ ሐረ፡ ኅበ፡ ብእሴ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ውእቱ፡ 13 B. omits this word.
 14 B. በትእምርት፡ ወቦእ፡ 15 B. እንዘ፡ ይጸሊ፡ ቀዊም፡ 16 B. ኦብእሴ፡
 17 B. omits this word. 18 B. ወትቤ፡ ንስኦ፡ 19 B. ወይረሲ፡ ማኅደሩ፡ 20 B. adds
 ዳግም፡ 21 B. omits እሙ፡ ለብርሃን፡ 22 B. በአብ፡ 23 B. ወምንት፡
 መጸእክ፡ ወምንት፡ ግብርክ፡ and omits ዝየ፡ 24 B. omits ዘንተ፡ 25 B. ብከ፡ አአ
 ቡዮ፡ ወምንት፡ ትጹሙ፡ ወምንት፡ ሕማምክ፡ ከመ፡ 26 B. ለኃጥእ፡ 27 B. ማሕላ፡
 28 B. ማኅላ፡ 29 B. ኢያአምረክ፡ 30 B. አላ፡ አስተርአየተኒ፡ በሌሊት፡ ማርያም፡
 እግዚእትነ፡ ወዘንተኒ፡ ከመ፡ 31 B. ንስኦ፡ 32 B. ውስተ፡ ማኅደርክ፡

ማኅደሩ ፡ ዝዩ ፡ ውሥጠ¹ ፡ ወአነሂ ፡ መጻእ ኩ ፡ ኅቤከ² ፡ ወአባእኩከ ፡ ዝዩ ፤ ወአይዳዕ ኩከ ፡ ዘንተ ። ውበእሴ ፡ እግዚአብሔርሂ³ ፡ ሰምዓ ፡ ነገሮ ፡ ለቀሲስ ፡ እስመ ፡ ፈርሃ ፡ መሐላ⁴ ፡ ዘአምሐሎ ፡ ወገነሮ ፡ ነሎ ፡ ዘኮነ ፡ እምአመ ፡ ንዕሱ ፡ እስከ ፡ ዛቲ ፡ ዕለት⁵ ። ወሶቦ ፡ ሰምዓ⁶ ፡ ውእቱ ፡ ቀሲስ ፡ በከዩ ፡ ወአንብዓ⁷ ፡ (A. fol. 116 a.) ወሰገደ ፡ ሎቱ ፡ ወተበረከ ፡ እምኔህ ፡ ቡራኬ ። ወነበረ ፡ ብእሴ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ፡ ሕዳጣ ፡ መዋዕለ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ቤተ ፡ ክርስቲያን ። ወሶቦ ፡ አእመረ ፡ ከመ ፡ ሰምዑ ፡ ሰብእ⁸ ፡ ሀገር ፡ ዜናህ ፡ መሐለ ፡ ብእሴ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይብል ፡ ለእመ⁹ ፡ ነበርኩ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ሀገር¹⁰ ፡ ያመጽኡ ፡ ላዕሌዩ ፡ ዕበዩ¹¹ ፡ ክብር ። ወእመ ፡ አከ ፡ ይበጽሕ ፡ ዜና ፡ ኅብ ፡ አቡዩ ፡ ወይመጽእ ፡ ይንሥአኒ¹² ፡ ኪያዩ ። ወተንሥአ ፡ ይጸሊ¹³ ፡ እስከ ፡ መንፈቀ ፡ ሌሊተ ፡ ወተሳላመ¹⁴ ፡ ሥዕላ ፡ ለእግዝእትነ ፡ ማርያም ፡ ወይቤ¹⁵ ፡ ናህ ፡ አንቲ ፡ ከሠትኪ ፡ ኅቡአትዩ ፡ ውስተዝ ፡ ሀገር ። ወአንቲ ፡ ተአምሪ ፡ ዘእ

ፈርህ ፡ አነ ። ወይእዚኒ ፡ (B. fol. 103 b.) ይኒ ይሰኝ¹⁶ ፡ እሑር¹⁷ ፡ ኅብ ፡ ኢዩአምረኒ¹⁸ ፡ ሰብእ ። ወአንቲኒ ፡ ኦእግዝእትዩ ፡ ማርያም¹⁹ ፡ ምርሕኒ ፡ ኅብ ፡ ዘይኒይሰኒ ። (A. fol. 118 a.) ወዘንተ ፡ ብሂሎ ፡ ወጽኦ ፡ በሌሊት ፡ ወሐረ ፡ ወአልቦ ፡ ዘርእዩ ፡ እምሰብኦ ፡ ውእቱ ፡ ሀገር ። ወበጽሐ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ጽንፈ ፡ ባሕር ። ወረከበ ፡ ሰብኦ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይፈቅዱ ፡ በሐመር²⁰ ፡ ይንግዱ ፡ ብሔረ ፡ በርበር ፡ መንገለ ፡ ዓረብ²¹ ። ወይቤሎ ፡ ብእሴ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ፡ ለበዕለ ፡ ሐመር ፡ ንሥአኒ²² ፡ ምስሌከ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ክርስቶስ ፡ ወይቤሎ ፡ ኖትያት²³ ፡ ንንሥአ ፡ ለዝነጻይ²⁴ ፡ በእንተ ፡ ክርስቶስ ፡ ወነሥእዎ ፡ ወሐሩ²⁵ ፡ ወእምድኅረ ፡ ርኅቁ ፡ ህቀ ፡ እምውስተ ፡ ባሕር ፡ ፈነወ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ፡ ላዕሌሆሙ ፡ ነፋሰ ፡ ጽኑዓ ፡ ወወሰደሙ²⁶ ፡ ፍኖተ ፡ ኅብ ፡ ኢፈቀዱ ፡ ወአብጽሐሙ²⁷ ፡ ቀኅጥንጥንያ ። እስመ ፡ ርእዩ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ፡ ኅዘኖሙ²⁸ ፡ ወሰምዓ ፡ ገዓሮሙ ፡ ለቲዎደስዮስ ፡ ንጉሥ ፡ ወ (A. fol. 118 b.) ለመርኬዛ ፡ ንግሥት ። በእንተ ፡ ወልደሙ ፡

¹ B. ውስጠ ፡² B. omits ኅቤከ ፡³ B. እግዚአብሔር ፡ ነገሮ ፡ ለቀሲስ ፡⁴ B. ማኅላ ፡⁵ B. ዘኮነ ፡ እምንእሱ ፡ እስከ ፡ ዛቲ ፡ ዕለት ።⁶ B. ሰምዐ ፡⁷ B. አንብዓ ፡ and omits መሪር ፡⁸ B. ዜናህ ፡⁹ B. ሰብኦ ፡¹⁰ B. ሀገር ፡¹¹ B. ሐለዩ ፡¹² B. ወይነሥአ ፡¹³ B. ወጸለዩ ፡¹⁴ B. ወተሣለመ ፡ ሰዕለ ። ለማርያም ፡¹⁵ B. ወይቤላ ፡ ኦእግዝእትዩ ፡ ማርያም ፡ አንቲ ፡ ታአምሪ ፡¹⁶ B. ይሰኝ ፡¹⁷ B. አነ ፡ እሑር ፡¹⁸ B. እለ ፡ ኢዩአምረኒ ፡ and omits ሰብኦ ፡¹⁹ B. omits ኦእግዝእትዩ ፡ ማርያም ፡²⁰ B. ወረከበ ፡ ሐመር ፡ ዘይፈቅዱ ፡ ይንግዱ ፡ ይንግዱ ፡ ባቲ ፡²¹ B. አረብ ፡²² B. ንስኡኒ ፡ ምስሌከሙ ፡²³ B. ኖትያትዩ ፡ ለበደጁ ፡²⁴ B. ለዝነጻይ ፡ ነጻይ ፡ እንግዳ ፡²⁵ B. ወሐረ ፡ ወምድኅረ ፡ ረሐቁ ፡ ሕቀ ፡ በውስተ ፡²⁶ B. ወወሰደሙ ፡²⁷ B. adds ብሔረ ፡²⁸ B. ሐዘኖሙ ፡ ወገዓሮሙ ፡ ወስእለቶሙ ፡



ብእሴ : እግዚአብሔር ። ወሶበ : አእመረ :
 ብእሴ : እግዚአብሔር : ከመ¹ : በጽሐ : ብ
 ሔር : አቡሁ ። አእከቡቶ ። ለእግዚአብሔር : ወ
 ሰገደ : በገጹ : ውስተ : ምድር : ወ (B. fol. 104a.)
 ሰፍሐ : እደዊሁ² : ወአንቃዕደወ³ : ሰማ
 ዩ ። ወይቤ : አኣኩተከ : ወእሴብሐከ⁴ : ወ
 አሌዕለከ : አንተ : ኃያል : ንጉሥ : አምላ
 ከ : እስራኤል : ቅዱስ : ቅዱሳን ፤ ወገባሬ⁵ :
 መንከር : ዘአምጸእከኒ : በፈቃድከ : ኅበ :
 ኢፈቀድኩ : አነ : ወአብጻሕከኒ : ብሔረ :
 አቡዩ ። ወይእዜኒ : እግዚእዩ⁶ : ኢየሱስ :
 ክርስቶስ : ኢትክሥት : ለሰብእ : ኅቡአት
 ዩ⁷ : እስከ : አመ : ትንሥኦ : ምስሌከ : ለነ
 ፍስዩ ። አንሰ : አሐውር : ኅበ : አንቀጸ :
 ቤ (A. fol. 119a.) ተ⁸ : አቡዩ ። ወኢይፈቅድ :
 እንሣእ⁹ : ምጽዋተ : እምካልአን : አላ : እ
 ምተረፈ : ማዕደ¹⁰ : ቤተ : አቡዩ : ኅበ : አም
 ጸእከኒ : አንተ : እግዚእዩ ። ወዘንተ : ብሂ
 ሎ : ሐረ : ወበጽሐ : ኅበ : አንቀጸ¹¹ : ዴዴ :
 አቡሁ ። ወርእዩ¹² : ለአቡሁ : እንዘ : ይወጽ

እ : እምቤቱ¹³ : ወዩኃልፍ¹⁴ : ወሰገደ : ሎቱ ።
 ወይቤሎ¹⁵ : ኦሊቅ : አንሰ : ነዳይ¹⁶ : ወምስ
 ኪን : አነ¹⁷ : ወእንግዳ ፤ ወአብጽሐኒ : እግ
 ዚአብሔር : ኅበከ ። ወይእዜኒ : እፈቅድ :
 ትግበር : ላዕሌዩ : ሠናደተ¹⁸ : በእንተ : ክር
 ስቶስ : ወአኅድረኒ¹⁹ : ውስተ : ጽላሎት²⁰ :
 ወአፍዕመኒ : እፍርፋሬት : ዘአምተረፈ :
 ማዕድከ²¹ ። (B. fol. 104b.) ወትትዓሠይ²² : ዕ
 ሜተ : በኅበ : እግዚአብሔር²³ ። ወሶበ : ሰ
 ምዓ²⁴ : ቲዎዶስዮስ : ንጉሥ : እንዘ : ይቀ
 ውም²⁵ : ውእቱ : ወያጸምዕ : ዘይቤሎ :
 (A. fol. 119b.) ወውእተ : ጊዜ : ተዘከረ : ንግ
 ደቶ ። ለፍቁር : ወልዱ ። ወበከዩ²⁶ : እንዘ :
 ይብል²⁷ : ለአግብርቲሁ : መኑ : ውእቱ : እ
 ምኔክሙ : ዘይገብር : ሠናዩ : ላዕለዝ²⁸ : ነዳ
 ይ : ወእንግዳ²⁹ : ወያጸንዖ : ወያዘከረኒ³⁰ :
 ሊተ : ለዝንቱ : እንግዳ : ከመ : እፈኑ : ሎ
 ቱ : ሲሳዩ³¹ : እምውስተ : ማዕድዩ : ከመ :
 ይትወክፎ : እግዚአብሔር : ለወልድዩ : በ
 ኅበ : ሀሎ ። ወአግብርቲሁ : አርመሙ : ወ

¹ B. ከመ : ብሔሩ : ይእቲ : ሰገደ : በገጹ : ውስተ : ምድር : ² B. እደሁ :
³ B. ወአንቃዕደወ : ⁴ B. adds ወእባርከከ ። ⁵ B. ቀዱስ : ገባሬ : ⁶ B. omits
 እግዚእዩ : ⁷ B. ሕቡአትዩ : ዘምስሌከ : አመ : ትንሥኦ : ለነፍስዩ : ወአነ : ⁸ B. ዴዴ :
⁹ B. እንሣእ : ¹⁰ B. ማአደ : አቡዩ : ¹¹ B. ዓንጸቀ : ¹² B. ወርእዩ : ¹³ B. እቤቱ :
¹⁴ B. ወይሐልፍ : ቀርቦ : ወሰገደ : ለአቡሁ : ¹⁵ B. ኦሊቅዩ : ¹⁶ B. እንግዳ :
¹⁷ B. omits አነ : ወእንግዳ : ¹⁸ B. ሠናዩ : ¹⁹ B. ወአሕድረኒ : ²⁰ B. ጽላሎት :
 ዴዴከ : ወአፍእመኒ : እምፍርፋሬተ : ²¹ B. ማእደከ ። ²² B. ወትትአሰይ : and omits
 ዕሜተ : ²³ B. እግዚእኒ : ኢየሱስ : ክርስቶስ : ²⁴ B. adds ዘንተ : ²⁵ B. ይቀውም :
 ወያጸምእ : ኅበሁ : ውእተ : ጊዜ : ²⁶ B. በከዩ : ²⁷ B. ወይቤሎሙ : ²⁸ B. ላዕለ :
 ዝንቱ : ²⁹ B. እንግዳ : ³⁰ B. ወያዘከረኒ : ከሎ : ጊዜ : ከመ : እፈኑ : ³¹ B. ሲሳ
 ዮ : ነግሀ : ወሰርከ : እምውስተ : ማእድዩ :

ኢያውሥኢዎ፡ ደገመ¹፡ ወይቤ፡ ንጉሥ፡
እሙንዩ፡ እብለከሙ፡ ዘአጽንዓ²፡ ለዝን
ቱ፡ ነዳይ፡ እንግዳ³፡ ወዘከሮ፡ ሊተ፡ አነ፡
እሬስዮ⁴፡ አግዓዜ፡ ወእሁቦ፡ ንዋዩ፡ ዘዩ
አክሎ፡ እስከ፡ አመ⁵፡ ይመውት፡ ወይቤ
ሎ፡ ጀእምአግብርተ⁶፡ ንጉሥ፡ ነዋ፡ ንሕነ፡
ንገብር፡ ፈቃደክ፡ ኣሊቅ⁷፡ ወናጸንዖ፡ ለ
ዝ⁸፡ እንግዳ፡ በከ (A. fol. 120 a.) መ፡ ትቤ፡
ወአውሥኢ⁹፡ ብእሴ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ወ
ይቤ፡ አዝዝ፡ ኣሊቅ¹⁰፡ ይግበሩ፡ ሊተ፡ ን
ስቲተ፡ ማኅደረ፡ ኅበ¹¹፡ ቅድመ፡ ውሣጤ¹²፡
አንቀጸ፡ ሙጻእክ፡ ከመ፡ ትርአዩኒ፡ እንዝ¹³፡
ትወጽእ፡ ወትበውእ፡ ወ (B. fol. 105 a.) ከመ፡
ኢትርስዓኒ¹⁴፡ በእንተ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ወአዘዘ¹⁵፡
ንጉ[ሥ]፡ ከመ¹⁶፡ ይግበሩ፡ ህዩ፡ ንስቲተ፡
ማኅደረ፡ ወበእ፡ ብእሴ¹⁷፡ እግዚአብሔር፡
ውስተ¹⁸፡ ማኅደሩ፡ ዘገብሩ¹⁹፡ ሎቱ፡ ወማ
ኅደሩኒ፡ ከመ፡ እንተ፡ ዳኅስ፡ ይእቲ፡ ወነ
በረ፡ እንዝ፡ ይጼሊ²⁰፡ መዓልተ፡ ወሌሊተ፡

ወኢያጥዕም²¹፡ እክለ²²፡ ዘእንበለ፡ ከሰንበ
ታት፡ ወሲሳዩ፡ ዘወሀብም²³፡ ይትሜጠው፡
ወይመስል²⁴፡ ከመ፡ ዘይበልዕ፡ ወይሁብ፡
ለነዳያን፡ በኅቡእ²⁵፡ ወኢያጸርዕ፡ ሰዓታተ፡
መዓልተ፡ ወሌሊተ፡ ወይተግህ፡ ነፋ፡ ሌ
ሊተ²⁶፡ ወይ (A. fol. 120 b.) ጼሊ²⁷፡ ቀዊሞ፡
እስከ፡ ነግህ²⁸፡ = = =

(A. fol. 122 b.) ለአግብርተ²⁹፡ ንጉሥስ፡ እ
ኅዘመ³⁰፡ ቅንዓት³¹፡ በእንተ፡ ጀ³²፡ አግብ
ርት፡ እለ፡ አዕቀበመ³³፡ ንጉሥ፡ ከመ፡ ይ
ትለአክዎ³⁴፡ ለብእሴ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ወ
ሐለዩ፡ እንዝ፡ ይብሉ³⁵፡ እመ፡ ነበረ፡ ዝነ
ዳይ³⁶፡ ውስተ፡ ይዴ፡ ሊቅነ፡ ይሁበመ፡ ን
ዋዩ³⁷፡ ለእሉ፡ አግብርት፡ ወያዕዕዘመ³⁸፡
እምግብርናት፡ ወይከውኑ፡ እሙንቱ³⁹፡ ክ
ቡራነ፡ ወይኤይሱ⁴⁰፡ እምኒነ፡ ወይሰመዩ⁴¹፡
አግዓዝያነ፡ ወንሕነስ፡ ንተርፍ፡ አግብር
ተ፡ እመሰ⁴² (B. fol. 105 b.) ሐረ፡ ዝነዳይ⁴³፡
እምዴዴ፡ ሊቅነ፡ ይተርፉ⁴⁴፡ ከማነ፡ ወይ

¹ B. ወደገመ፡ ² B. ለዘአጽንዖ፡ ³ B. omits this word. ⁴ B. እሴሰ
ዮ፡ ወአነ፡ እሁቦ፡ ንዋዩ፡ ⁵ B. omits አመ፡ ⁶ B. ጀአግብርተሁ፡ ለንጉሥ፡
⁷ B. ሊቅዩ፡ ⁸ B. ለዝንቱ፡ ⁹ B. ወአውስኦ፡ ¹⁰ B. ለተ፡
¹¹ B. omits ኅበ፡ ¹² B. ውስጠ፡ ¹³ B. አንተ፡ እንዝ፡ ትበውእ፡ ወትወጽእ፡
ከመ፡ ¹⁴ B. ኢትርስአኒ፡ ¹⁵ B. ወዘአዘዘ፡ ¹⁶ B. omits ከመ፡ ይግበሩ፡ ሎቱ፡
¹⁷ B. ወብእሴ፡ ¹⁸ B. ቦእ፡ ውስተ፡ ¹⁹ B. ዘአግበረ፡ ሎቱ፡ ንጉሥ፡ ወማሕደሩስ፡ ሎ
ቱ፡ እምሳለ፡ ደሰ፡ ይእቲ፡ ²⁰ B. ይጸውም፡ ²¹ B. ወኢያጥኦም፡ ²² B. omits
እክለ፡ ²³ B. ሲሳይ፡ ዘይሁብም፡ ይትመጠ፡ ²⁴ B. omits this word. ²⁵ B. በሕቡዕ፡
²⁶ B. ሎቱ፡ ነፋ፡ ሌሊተ፡ ²⁷ B. ወይጸልይ፡ እንዝ፡ ይቀውም፡ ²⁸ B. ይነግህ፡
²⁹ B. ወለአግብርት፡ ³⁰ B. አሐዘመ፡ ³¹ B. ቅንአተ፡ ³² B. omits ጀ፡ ³³ B. አቀ
በመ፡ ³⁴ B. ይትለአክዎመ፡ ³⁵ B. ወይቤሉ፡ ³⁶ B. ዝንቱ፡ ነዳይ፡ ኅበ፡ ³⁷ B. ን
ጉሥ፡ ንዋዩ፡ ለዕሉ፡ ³⁸ B. ጀወያዕዕዘመ፡ ³⁹ B. omits this word. ⁴⁰ B. ወይ
ሔይሱ፡ ⁴¹ B. ወይከውኑ፡ ⁴² B. ወእመሰ፡ ⁴³ B. ዝንቱ፡ ነዳይ፡ ⁴⁴ B. adds አግብርት፡

ቤ : ጃእምአግብርት : እፎ : ንክል : አርኅቆ
ቆ : ለዝንቱ : ነዳይ : እንግዳ : እምዴዴ : ሊ
ቅነ¹ : ወይቤሉ : እሙንቱ² : አግብርት :
ንዑ : ናሕምጥ : በእኩይ³ : ወናኅስም : ላ
ዕሌሁ : ለዝ : ነዳይ : ወየሐውር⁴ : እምዴ
ዴ : ሊቅነ : ወኅብ (A. fol. 123a.) ሩ⁵ : ነሎ
ሙ : አግብርት : ንጉሥ : በዝ : እኩይ : ም
ክር : ላዕለዝ : ነዳይ : ወእምዴእቲ : ሰዓት :
አኅዙ⁶ : ያኅሥሙ : ላዕሌሁ : ለብእሌ : እ
ግዚአብሔር : በእምኔሆሙ⁷ : ዘይጸፍዖ :
ገጸ : ወዐ : ዘይኩርዖ⁸ : ርእሶ : [ወዐ : ዘይ
መልጥ : ጽሕጥ : ወዐ : ዘይስሕዐ : ባሥዕር
ተ : ርእሱ :]⁹ ወዐ : ዘየዓርጉ : ላዕለ : ማኅ
ደሩ : ወይሰይኑ : ስንቶሙ¹⁰ : ወዐ : ዘየሐፅ
ብ¹¹ : ሃሕለ : ወጽዋዓ¹² : ወይክዑ : ላዕሌሁ :
ወዐ : ዘይተፍዕ : ምራቆ¹³ : ወዐ : ዘይነሥ
እ¹⁴ : እምኔሆሙ : አዕፅምተ¹⁵ : ወትራፋት :
ሥጋ : እምውስተ¹⁶ : ማዕዱ : ለንጉሥ : ወ

ይዌግሩ¹⁷ : ላዕሌሁ : ወይትናሰኩ : አክል
ብት : ላዕሌሁ¹⁸ : (B. fol. 106a.) ውእቱሰ¹⁹ :
ቅዱስ : ብእሌ : እግዚአብሔር : ተዓገሠ²⁰ :
ዘየተ : ነሎ : እኪተ : ወተወክፈ : ከመ²¹ :
ሠናይ : በፍቅር : ፍጹም : በፍሥሐ : ወበ
(A. fol. 123b.) ኃሢት : ወተዘኪሮ : ዘላዕለ :
ማኅደረ : ኅበ : አልዐ : ሞት : ወኅዘን²² : እ
ስመ : አእመረ : ከመ²³ : እምፀብዓ²⁴ : ሰይ
ጣን : ውእቱ : ወበእንተ : ዝንቱኬ : ተዓገ
ሠ²⁵ : ዘንተ : ነሎ : ሃማ²⁶ : ወምንዳቤ²⁷ :
ወሞኦ : ለሰይጣን : በእንተ : ክርስቶስ²⁸ : ወ
ነበረ : በሃማ : ወሕማም : ወምንዳቤ : ውስ
ተ²⁹ : ዴዴ : አቡሁ : ኒወጅዓመት : እንዝ :
ይትጫገሥ : ወያፈደፍድ : ገቢረ : ሠናይ :
ወአግብርት : አቡሁ³⁰ : እንዝ : ይዌስኩ :
ነሎ : እከያተ : ወነኅይያተ : ላዕሌሁ³¹ :
ወዓዲ : አንስት³² : ወአዋልድ : ወአእማተ³³ :
አቡሁ : ወእሙ : እንዝ : ይወጽኡ : ወይበ

¹ B. ጃእምአለ : መካሩ : ላዕሌሁ : በእፎ : ንዕእል : አርሕቆቶ : እምዴዴ : ሊቅነ :
² B. omits this word. ³ B. ናሕስም : ላዕሌሁ : ለእኩይ : ግብር : ላዕለዝ : ⁴ B. እንግዳ :
ይሐር : ⁵ B. ወሐብሩ : ላዕሌሁ : እሙንቱ : አግብርት : በዝ : እኩይ : ግብር : ወምክር : ወእም
ዴእቲ : ⁶ B. አሐዙ : ያሕስሙ : ⁷ B. ወበእምኔሆሙ : ⁸ B. ዘይኩርዕ : ⁹ B. omits
the words in brackets. ¹⁰ B. adds ላዕሌሁ : ¹¹ B. ዘየሐጸብ : ጸሕለ : ¹² B. omits
this word. ¹³ B. adds ላዕሌሁ : ¹⁴ B. እምኔሆሙ : ዘይነሥእ : ¹⁵ B. አዕጸምተ :
¹⁶ B. ዘእምውስተ : ማእደ : ንጉሥ : ¹⁷ B. ወይወግራ : ¹⁸ B. በላዕሌሁ : and adds
ወበጊዜ : ወይወግራ : ላዕሌሁ : ወይመጽኡ : ነሎሙ : ከለባት : ዘንጉሥ : ወይበዝቱ : ሥጋሁ :
እስከ : ይትራኣይ : ንዋየ : ውስጡ : ¹⁹ B. ወውእቱሰ : ብእሌ : ²⁰ B. ተዓገሠ :
²¹ B. ነሎ : በእንተ : እግዚአብሔር : ከመ : ሠናይ : በፍቅር : ፍጹም : በፍሥሐ : ወበሐሴት :
ተዘኪሮ : ²² B. ወሐዘን : ²³ B. omits ከመ : ²⁴ B. እምፀብእ : ²⁵ B. ወው
እቱሰ : ተአገሰ : ዘንተ : ²⁶ B. ጸማ : ²⁷ B. omits this word. ²⁸ B. ፍቅረ : ክር
ስቶስ : ²⁹ B. ወነበረ : ምስለ : ዝንተ : ነሎ : ጸማ : ውስተ : ³⁰ B. አቡሁ : ³¹ B. ይዌ
ስኩ : ላዕሌሁ : እኪተ : ወያፈደፍዱ : ³² B. አንስተ : ³³ B. አእማተ :



ውኡ¹ : ይጸርፉ² : ላዕሌሁ : ብዙኃተ³ :
 ጽርፈታተ⁴ :: ወይቤሉ : አሰስሉ : ለነ : ዘን
 ተ : ነዳዩ : ዕዩዳ : ከመ⁵ : ኢያሳሠመን : ዪ
 ና : ዒንቱ : ለዝ : ግዩር : ወምስኪን : ግዱ
 ፍ : ወምኑን ፤ (A. fol. 124 a.) እምሰብእ :: ብእ
 ሴ : እግዚአብሔርሰ : ቅዱስ : ወዕጉሥ : ወ
 ኃያል :: ሰአለ : ወይቤ : እግዚእዩ : ወአምላ
 ኪዩ : ኢየሱስ : ክርስቶስ : ወልደ : እግዚአ
 ብሔር : ሕያው : ከመ : ኢደት (B. fol. 106 b.)
 ዓቀፉ : ላዕሌዩ⁶ : እለ : ሀለዉ⁷ : ውስተ :
 ቤተ : አቡዩ :: ወኢይኩኖሙ : ኃጢአተ :
 በእንቲአዩ⁸ :: ወአንሰ : እፈቅድ : ትንሥኡ :
 ለነፍስዩ : ኃጥእት : ወትሕት : እምኩሉ :
 ሰብእ⁹ :: ወአንሰ : እመጽእ¹⁰ : ጎቤስ : ጎብ :
 ኢትጸልእ : ወኢትሚንን :: = :: = ::
 (A. fol. 126 a.) ወእምዝ : መጽኡ : እግዚእነ :
 ኢየሱስ : ክርስቶስ : ወመድኅኒን : ወም¹¹
 ስሌሁ : ሚካኤል : ወገብርኤል : ሩፋኤል :
 ወሱርያል : ሰዳክያል¹² : ወሰራትያል : ወአ

ናንያል : [ጂሊቃን : መላእክት : ቅዱስአፈ :
 አእላፋት : ለዓቢይ : ስብሐት : ዘኢይተረ
 ገ-ም ፤]¹³ ወመጽኡ : ካዕብ : አቡነ¹⁴ : አዳም :
 አቤል : ወሴት¹⁵ : ሄኖክ : ወመላልኤል :
 ልዑል : ብእሴ :: ቃይናን¹⁶ : ወያሬድ :: ወ
 አቡነ : ሄኖክ¹⁷ : ምስለ : መጽሐፉ :: ማቱሳ
 ለ : ወላሚህ¹⁸ :: ወአቡነ : ኖኅ¹⁹ : ወያሬት :
 ወሴም :: ወመጽኡ : እምድኅሬሁ : አብርሃ
 ም : [ዓርክ : እግዚአብሔር]²⁰ :: ወይስሐቅ :
 ንጹሐ : አምሳሉ : ለክርስቶስ²¹ : ወያዕቆብ :
 እስራኤላዊ :: ወእምድኅሬሁ : መጽኡ : ኢ
 ዮብ²² : ተዒጋ : ወሙሴ : ዩዋህ :: ወአርን :
 ካህን ፤ ዘኢይከውን : ነቴ (A. fol. 126 b.) ሉ :
 ዓለም : መጠነ²³ : ፈቃረ : ክህነቱ : ወማዕ
 ከሌሆሙ²⁴ : መልክ : ዴዴቅ : ወልደ : ፋሌ
 ቅ : ካህነ : አምላክ :: ፈንሐስ²⁵ : ወአልዓዛ
 ር :: ወኢያሱ : (B. fol. 107 a.) መስፍን : ፀሐ
 ዩ : ዘዓቀመ : በገባአን²⁶ :: ወካዕብ : መጽኡ :
 ሳሙኤል : ነቢይ²⁷ : ሊቀ : ካህናት :: ወሰሉ

¹ B. ይበወኡ : ወይመጽኡ : ² B. ወጸረፉ : ³ B. ብዙኅ : ⁴ B. omits
 this word. ⁵ B. ዝንቱ : ጽዩእ : ነዳይ : ከመ : ኢያሕስመን : ዜና : ጸኢቱ :: ወብእሴ :
 ወእግዚአብሔርሰ :: ሐለዩ : በልቡ : ወይቤ : እግዚአ : ከመ : ኢይትዐቀፋ : ⁶ B. በ
 ላዕሌዩ : ⁷ B. omits ሀለዉ : ⁸ B. omits በእንቲአዩ : ⁹ B. እምኩ
 ሉ : ሰብእ : ¹⁰ B. ወእምጸእ : ¹¹ B. ወወረደ : ጎቤሁ : እግዚእነ : ኢየሱስ : ክርስቶስ :
 ወምስሌሁ : ¹² B. ሰዳክያል : ¹³ B. omits the words in brackets. ¹⁴ B. omits
 አቡነ : ¹⁵ B. ሴት :: ወሄኖስ : ¹⁶ B. ወቃይናን : ¹⁷ B. ሄኖኅ :: ¹⁸ B. ወማቱሳለ :
 ወላሚሕ : ¹⁹ B. ኖኅ : ሴም : ²⁰ B. omits these words. ²¹ B. ወይስሐቅ : አምሰለ :
 ክርስቶስ :: ²² B. ወያዕቆብ :: ጸዋሬ : ሥላሴ :: ወዮሴፍ : ጸድቅ : ወልደ : ያዕቆብ :: ወእምድ
 ኅሬሁ : መጽኡ : ኢዮብ : ዕጉሥ :: ²³ B. ወአርን : ካህን : መጠነ : ፈቀረ : ነቴ : ዓለም ::
²⁴ B. ወማእከሌሆሙ : ²⁵ B. ወዮሐንስ : ወአልዓዛር : ²⁶ B. ወኢያሱ : አዘል :: ዘአቀመ :
 ፀሐይ : በቀትረ : መዓልት :: ²⁷ B. ንጹሐ :



ሞን፡ጠቢብ¹፡ ወልደ፡ጻዊት፡ ወጋድ፡ ነቢ
ይ፡ዓቢይ²፡ ወኤልያስ፡ ነቢይ፡ ካህኑ፡ ለአደና
ይ፡ ወኤልሳዕ³፡ ረድኡ⁴፡ ወመጽኡ፡ ማ
ኅበረ፡ ነቢያት፡ ከሎሙ፡ ኢሳይያስ⁵፡ ወ
እለ፡ ምስሌሁ፡ ነቢያት፡ ወመጽኡ⁶፡ ናታ
ን፡ ነቢይ፡ ወሲራክ፡ ጠቢብ፡ ወኤርምያስ፡
ነቢይ⁷፡ ዳንኤል፡ ወሕዝቅኤል፡ ወዕዝ
ራ፡ ነቢይ፡ ጸሐፊ፡ ትእዛዙ⁸፡ ለእግዚአ
ብሔር፡ ወባሮክ⁹፡ ካህን፡ ወአቤሚሌክ¹⁰፡
ኢትዮጵያዊ፡ ወመጽኡ፡ ከሎሙ¹¹፡ ደቂ
ቀ¹²፡ ነቢያት፡ (A. fol. 127a.) [ሆሴዕ¹³፡ ወአሞ
ጽ፡ ሐጌ፡ ወሰፎንያስ፡ ናሆሙ፡ ወኢዩኤ
ል፡ ዮናስ፡ ወአብድዩ፡ ዕንባቆም፡ ወሚክ
ያስ፡ ሚልክያስ፡ ወዘክርያስ፡ ወዮሐንስ፡
መጥምቅ፡ ወስምዓን፡ አረጋዊ፡] ወመጽ
ኡ፡ ካዕበ፡ ፲ ወጀሐዋርያት፡ ክቡራን፡ ምስ
ለ፡ ፸ ወጀአርድኦት¹⁴፡ ማርያም¹⁵፡ ድንግ
ል¹⁶፡ ሰአሊተ፡ ምሕረት¹⁷፡ ወመጽኡ፡ ፫፻፲
ወ፳፫ተዓነ፡ ሃይማኖት፡ ወአምድኅረዝ¹⁸፡

መጽኡ፡ ማኅበረ፡ ቅዱሳን፡ አባ፡ ጳውሌ፡ ወ
አባ፡ እንጦንዮስ¹⁹፡ ወአባ፡ መቃርዮስ²⁰፡ ወ
ጀመቃርሳት፡ አባ፡ ሲኖዳ፡ ወአባ፡ አርሳኒ²¹፡
አባ፡ በርሱማ²²፡ ወአባ፡ ዮሐንስ፡ ሐሂር፡
ወዮሐንስ፡ ከማ፡ አባ፡ ብሶይ፡ ወአባ፡ ሲ
ሶይ፡ ወአባ፡ አጋቶን፡ ወመጽኡ፡ ዓዲ፡
አባ፡ ጳኩሚስ፡ ወአባ፡ ታውሚን²³፡ አባ²⁴፡
አሮን፡ ወአባ፡ ከሮስ፡ እኅወ፡ አቡሁ፡ አ
(B. fol. 107b.) ባ፡ ነቢይዱ፡ ወ (A. fol. 127b.) አ
ባ፡ ኤፍሬም፡ አባ፡ መቃቢስ፡ ወስምያን²⁵፡ በ
ዓለ፡ ዓምድ፡ አባ፡ ይስሐቅ፡ ሶርያዊ፡ ወአ
ባ፡ አበከረዙን²⁶፡ አባ፡ ቴዎድሮስ፡ ወአባ፡
አካውህ²⁷፡ አባ፡ ማቴዎስ፡ ወአባ፡ ያዕቆ
ብ፡ አባ²⁸፡ ማርቆስ፡ ዘደብረ፡ ቶርማቅ²⁹፡
ወአባ፡ ናትናኤል፡ አባ፡ ሳሙኤል፡ ወአ
ባ፡ ዳንኤል፡ ወአኖሬዎስ³⁰፡ ንጉሥ፡ ወመ
ጽኡ፡ ካዕበ፡ መክሲሞስ፡ ወዳማቴዎስ³¹፡
ደቂቀ፡ ንጉሥ፡ አባ፡ በኪሞስ፡ ወአባ፡ በ
ብኑዲ³²፡ አባ፡ አቡናፍ³³፡ ወአባ፡ በአው

¹ B. omits ጠቢብ፡ ² B. ዐቢይ፡ ካህኑ፡ ለአደናይ፡ ³ B. ወኤልሳእ፡ ⁴ B. adds ወከሎሙ፡ ነቢያት፡ ⁵ B. ወመጽኡ፡ ኢሳይያስ፡ ⁶ B. ወመጽኡ፡ ⁷ B. omits ነቢይ፡ ⁸ B. ትእዛዝ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ⁹ B. ወባሮክ፡ ¹⁰ B. ወአብደ፡ ሚሌክ፡ ¹¹ B. omits ከሎሙ፡ ¹² B. omits the words in brackets, from ሆሴዕ to አረጋዊ፡ ¹³ B. አርድኦት፡ ሆሙ፡ ¹⁴ B. ወማርያም፡ ¹⁵ B. omits this word. ¹⁶ B. adds ማዕከሌሆሙ፡ ¹⁷ B. ወአምድኅረሆሙ፡ መጽኡ፡ ቅዱሳን፡ ከሎሙ፡ አባ፡ ጳውሌ፡ ¹⁸ B. እንጦንስ፡ ¹⁹ B. መቃርስ፡ ²⁰ B. ወአባ፡ በስንደ፡ ወመጽኡ፡ ²¹ B. ወአባ፡ በርሱማ፡ ወዮሐኒ፡ ወአባ፡ ዮሐንስ፡ ወአባ፡ ዮሐንስ፡ ሐሂር፡ ወአባ፡ ብሶይ፡ ወአባ፡ አጋቶን፡ ²² B. ወአባ፡ አክርዮስ፡ ²³ B. ወአባ፡ አሮን፡ አባ፡ አሞን፡ ወአባ፡ አብድዩ፡ ወመጽኡ፡ ዓዲ፡ ²⁴ B. ወአባ፡ ያጽ፡ ወአባ፡ ያፍ፡ ወአባ፡ ስምዓን፡ ዘዐምድ፡ ²⁵ B. ወአምዝ፡ ካዕበ፡ መጽኡ፡ አባ፡ አበከረዙን፡ ²⁶ B. አካውሕ፡ ²⁷ B. ወመጽኡ፡ ካዕበ፡ አባ፡ ማርቆስ፡ ²⁸ B. ቶርማቅ፡ ²⁹ B. ወአኖርዮስ፡ and omits ንጉሥ፡ ³⁰ B. ወደማቴዎስ፡ ³¹ B. በብኖዳ፡ ወአባ፡ አቡናፍር፡ ³² B. አቡናፍር፡

በበፃታሆሙ ። ወማኅበረ ፡ ሰማዕት ፡ በበዶ
ታሆሙ ። ወማኅበረ ፡ ካህናት ፡ በበሥርዓቶ
ሙ ። (B. fol. 108b.) ወመጽአ¹ ፡ ዳዊት ፡ ንጉ-
ሥ ፡ ም (A. fol. 129a.) ስለ ፡ መሰንቆሁ ፡ እን
ዘ ፡ ይዜምር ፡ በዚማ ፡ ሐዋዝ ፡ ወጥዑም² ።
ዘያጠልል ፡ አዕጽምተ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይቃኒ³ ፡ በ
ቃና ፡ ዘጥዑም ፡ ፈድፋድ ፡ ለሰሚዕ ፡ ወይብ
ል ፡ ሃሌ ፡ ሉያ ፡ ለአብ ፡ ሃሌ ፡ ሉያ ፡ ለወል
ድ ። ሃሌ ፡ ሉያ ፡ ለመንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ። ሰጊ
ድ⁴ ፡ ለአብ ፡ ሰጊድ⁴ ፡ ለወልድ ። ሰጊድ⁴ ፡
ለመንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ። ሥልጣን⁵ ፡ ወመንግ
ሥት ፡ ወምኑናን ፡ ለአብ ፡ ወወልድ ፡ ወ
መንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ። ዕበይ ፡ ወክብር ፡ ሣህል ፡
ወምሕረት ፡ ለአብ ፡ ወወልድ ፡ ወመንፈስ ፡
ቅዱስ ፡ ቅዱስ ፡ ወግናይ ፡ ሰላም ፡ ወአምኃ ።
ለሥሉስ ፡ ቅዱስ ። አብ ፡ ወወልድ ፡ ወመን
ፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ። ጎልየት ፡ ወባርኮት ፡ ወቅዳሴ
ያት ፡ ለአብ ፡ ወወልድ ፡ ወመንፈስ ፡ ቅዱ
ስ ። ወሰገዱ ፡ ነሱሙ ፡ ለማያውያን ፡ ወ

ምድራውያን ። ወይቤሉ ፡ ርቱዕ ፡ ይደሉ⁶ ፡
ለሥ (A. fol. 129b.) ሉስ ፡ ቅዱስ ፡ ለዘያውም
ሮ ፡ ለሰብእ ። ወብእሴ ፡ እግዚአብሔር⁷ ፡
ሶበ ፡ ርእየ ፡ ዘንተ ፡ ነሱሉ ፡ ሰገደ ፡ ለእግዚ
አብሔር ። ወሰብሐ ፡ ምስለ ፡ ነሱሙ ፡ ቅ
ዱሳን ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይብል ፡ ሃሌ ፡ ሉያ ፡ ሃሌ ፡ ሉ
ያ ፡ ሃሌ ፡ ሉያ ፡ አሚን ፡ ለይኩን ፡ ለይኩን ፡
በረከቱ ፡ የሀሉ ፡ ምስለ ፡ ገብሩ ፡ ተክለ ፡
ገይማኖት ፡ ወምስለ ፡ ብእሴቱ ፡ ወለተ ፡
ጽዮን ፡

(A. fol. 131b.) ወእምዝ ፡ ተናገሮ ፡ እግዚእን ፡
ኢየሱስ ፡ ክርስቶስ ፡ ገሃደ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይብል⁸ ፡
ኦብእሴ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ። ናሁ ፡ ሰማዕኩ ፡
ሰእለተክ ፡ ወብዝኃ ፡ ትዕግሥትክ ፡ ወናሁ ፡
አዓርፈክ ፡ እምዝንቱ ፡ ሃማ⁹ ፡ ወምንዳቤ ።
ወተሐውር ፡ ውስተ¹⁰ ፡ ትፍሥሕት ፡ ዘለዓለ
ም ፡ ወፍሥሐ ፡ ዘኢየሱስ ፡ እስመ ፡ መን
ንክ ፡ ዘበምድር¹¹ ፡ ኃላፌ ፡ መንግሥተ ፡ ፍ
ግዓ¹² ፡ ወተድላ ፡ ወናሁ ፡ ይእዚ¹³ ፡ ወሀብኩ

¹ B. ወምስሌሆሙ ፡

² B. በሐዋዝ ፡ መዝሙር ፡ ወያጠልል ፡ ለዘአጽምዶ ፡

³ B. ይቃኒ ፡ ወየሳሊ ፡ ጥዑም ፡ ወይብል ፡ ⁴ B. ስብሐት ፡ ⁵ B. ዕበይ ፡ ለአብ ፡ ዕበይ ፡
ለወልድ ፡ ዕበይ ፡ ለመንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ፡ ምልክት ፡ ለአብ ፡ ምልክት ፡ ለወልድ ፡ ምልክት ፡ ለመን
ፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ። ስፍነት ፡ ለአብ ፡ ስፍነት ፡ ለወልድ ፡ ስፍነት ፡ ለመንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ። ስግደት ፡ ለአብ ፡
ስግደት ፡ ለወልድ ፡ ስግደት ፡ ለመንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ። ሰላም ፡ ለአብ ፡ ሰላም ፡ ለወልድ ፡ ሰላም ፡ ለመ
ንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ። አኩቲት ፡ ለአብ ፡ አኩቲት ፡ ለወልድ ፡ አኩቲት ፡ ለመንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ። ግንየት ፡ ለ
አብ ፡ ግንየት ፡ ለወልድ ፡ ግንየት ፡ ለመንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ። ሕልየት ፡ ለአብ ፡ ሕልየት ፡ ለወ
(B. fol. 109a.) ልድ ፡ ሕልየት ፡ ለመንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ። ባርኮት ፡ ለአብ ፡ ባርኮት ፡ ለወልድ ፡ ባርኮት ፡
ለመንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ። ወድሶት ፡ ለአብ ፡ ወድሶት ፡ ለወልድ ፡ ወድሶት ፡ ለመንፈስ ፡ ቅዱስ ።

⁶ B. ወይደሉ ፡ ⁷ B. እግዚአብሔርስ ፡ ሰብሐ ፡ ምስሌሆሙ ፡ ሃሌ ፡ ሉያ ፡ ⁸ B. ወይቤ
ሎ ፡ ሰማዕኩ ፡ ወርእኩ (sic) ፡ ወሰመርኩ ፡ ጸሎትክ ፡ ወሰእለትክ ፡ ወብዙኃ ፡ ትእግሥትክ ፡ ኦብ
እሴ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ፡ ⁹ B. ጸማ ፡ ¹⁰ B. ውስተ ፡ ዘለዓለም ፡ ፍሥሐ ፡ እስመ ፡ ¹¹ B. ነሱ
ሎ ፡ ዘበምድር ፡ ሐላፊ ፡ ¹² B. omits this word. ¹³ B. ወይእዚኒ ፡

ከ : ሥልጣን : ታውጽእ¹ : አጋንንተ : ወት
 ፈውስ : ድውያን : ወሕሙማን : ዕውራን :
 ወሐንካሳን : ወወረኃውያን : ጽሙማን : ወ
 በሐማን : ይቡሳን : ወመግጥዓን : ወእለ : ለ
 ምጽ : ወዝልጉሳን : ወዘዘዘ (B. fol. 109 b.) አ
 ሁ² : ደዌሆሙ³ : ይሕየዉ : ወይትፈወሱ :
 አፍቁርየ : ወቀላልዒየ⁴ : ወይቤ : ገብረ : ክ
 (A. fol. 132 a.) ርስቶስ : እግዚእየ⁵ : ስምዒኒ :
 ዘእስእለከ : ወግወኒ : ግሥራት⁶ : ወይቤሎ :
 እግዚእነ : ገብርየ : እብለከ : አነ : አፍቁር
 የ : ነሉ : ዘተአመነ : በጸሎትከ : ወጸውዓ :
 ስመከ : ወዘጸሕፈ : መጽሐፈ : ዜናከ⁷ : በ
 እደሁ : ይርፍቅ : ምስሌከ : ውስተ : ዘቀዳ
 ሚ : ምሳሕ : ዘ፲፪ : ግእንተ : ድሉት : ለቅ
 ዱሳን : ወይቤ : ገብረ : ክርስቶስ : ወዘአጽ
 ሐፈ : ተአሚኖ : ወዘሰምዓ : በተአምኖ : ግ
 በር : ከማሁ : ወይቤ : እግዚእ : ይኩ[ን] :

ከማሁ : ወይቤ : ካዕበ : ዘይሁብ : ሥርናየ :
 ወይነሂ⁸ : ወዕጣን : ወፍሕመ : ወቅብዓ : ወ
 ነሉ : ዘይትራዳእ : ለገቢረ : መሥዋዕት :
 በዕለተ : ተዝካርየ : ዘአብልዓሂ : ወዘበልዓ :
 ዘወዶቀ : እምፍርፋራት : አልዒሎ : እምው
 ስተ : ምድር : ውእቱ⁹ : ይኩን : (A. fol. 132 b.)
 ከማሁ : ወይቤ : ገብረ : ክርስቶስ : ወእመ :
 ኢሀሎ : ኅበ : ተገብረ : ተዝካርየ : ወመጽ
 ኦ : ሀየ : ድኅረ : ኅልቀ : ድራር : ወማዕድ :
 ወይቤ : እግዚእ : (B. fol. 110 a.) ግሕለ¹⁰ : ወጽ
 ሞዓ : ይልሐስ¹¹ : በልሳኑ : ውእቱኒ : ይ[ኩ
 ን] : ውስተ : ምሳሕ : ዘ፲፪¹² ምዕት¹³ : ወይቤ
 ገብረ : ክርስቶስ : ለእለ : አዕደዉኒ : ባሕ
 ረ : እንዘ : እገብእ : ዝየ : ባርኮሙ¹⁴ : ወይ
 ቤ : እግዚእ : ይኩን : በሩካነ : ወይቤ : ገብ
 ረ : ክርስቶስ : ዘይትራዳእ : በኅብስት : ወ
 ማይ : ወዲው¹⁵ : በግሕል : ወጽዋዕ : ወበዕ

¹ B. ትፈውስ : ድውያን : ወእውራን : ወሕሙማን : ወሐንካሳን : ወወረኃውያን :
 ወጽሙማን : ወይቡሳን : እለ : ለምጽ : ² B. ወዘዘዘአሁ : ³ B. ዳዌ : በጸሎትከ :
⁴ B. አቀላልዒየ : ወፍቁርየ : ⁵ B. ለእግዚእነ : ⁶ B. አሰራትየ : ⁷ B. እ
 ግዚእነ : በል : አገብርየ : ዘፈቀድከ : ነሉ : ወይቤሎ : ዘተአመነ : በጸሎትየ : ወዘአጸ
 ሐፈ : መጽሐፈ : ዜናየ : ከመ : ይርፍቅ : ምስሌየ : በ፲፪ አመት : ምሳሕ : ቀዳሜት : እ
 ንተ : ለቅዱሳን : ወይቤ : እግዚእ : እው : ይኩን : ከማሁ : ወይቤሎ : ካዕበ : ዘይሁብ : ስርናየ :
⁸ B. ወወይን : ወዕጣን : ወዕፀ : ወማየ : ወፍሕመ : ወሣዕረ : ወነሉ : ዘይገብሩ : ለአሰንየ :
 ለግብረ : ቀርባን : ተዝካርየ : ወይቤሎ : እግዚእ : እው : ይኩን : ከማሁ : ወይቤ : ገብረ : ክርስ
 ቶስ : ዘይሁብ : ኅብስተ : ወጽዋዕ : ወማየ : ቀራር : በስምየ : እንዘ : የአምን : ከያየ : ዘበልዕ
 ሂ : ወዘአብልዓሂ : ዘወድቆ : እምፍርፋራት : አልዒሎ : እምውስተ : ⁹ B. ውእቱሂ : ይ
 ኩን : ውስተ : ፲፪ ምሳሕ : ወእመሰ : ኢሀሎ : ዝየ : ኅበ : ተገብረ : ተዝካርየ : ወመጽኡ : እም
 ድኅረ : አኅለቄ : ¹⁰ B. ያምጽኡ : ጸሕለ : ¹¹ B. ወይልሐሥ : ¹² B. በልሳኑ : ወ
 ይኩን : ውስተ : ፲፪ ምሳሕ : ¹³ B. ወይቤ : ብእሐ : እግዚአብሔር : ባርኮሙ : ላዕለ : አዕዳ
 ውኒ : ውስተ : ሐመር : ዘሀገር : አርማንያ : ወለዕለ : አዕደዉኒ : ባሕረ : ከመ : እግባእ : ዝየ :
 ወይቤ : እግዚእ : ይኩን : ¹⁴ B. ወዴዉ : ወጸሕል :

ፅ፡ ወሣዕር፡ ወመንጸፍ፡ ወዘያጎድር፡ ነግደ፡
 ውስተ፡ ቤተ፡ ወየሐዕብ፡ እግር፡ በዕለተ፡
 ተዝካርዩ² ። ወይቤ፡ እግዚእ፡ ይኩን፡ ከ
 ማሁ³ ። ወይቤ፡ ገብረ፡ ክርስቶስ⁴፡ ባርክ፡
 ለዛቲ፡ ዳስ፡ ማጎደርዩ ። ወለእሉ፡ ጀሕግብ
 ርት፡ እለ፡ ተል (A. fol. 133 a.) እኩኒ⁵ ። ወይ
 ቤ፡ እግዚእ፡ ትኩን፡ ቡርክተ፡ ከመ፡ ደብ
 ረ፡ ሲና⁶፡ ወደብረ፡ ታቦር ። ወኢይትኃጣ
 እ፡ እምውስቲታ⁷፡ ስብሐትዩ፡ ወይትሐነ
 ጽ፡ በውስቲታ⁷፡ መርጦልዩ፡ በስምክ ።
 ወያዕርጉ፡ ውስቲታ፡ ሥጋዩ⁸፡ ወደምዩ፡
 እስክ፡ ዳግም፡ ምጽኣትዩ ። ወእሉኒ፡ ወራ
 ዙ፡ ይኩኑ፡ ቡሩካነ፡ ወያዕር፡ ታሕተ፡
 ጸላሎት (B. fol. 110 a.) ከ ። ወይቤ¹¹፡ ገብረ፡
 ክርስቶስ፡ ባርከሙ፡ ለአቡዩ፡ ወእምዩ፡ ወ
 መርዓትዩ፡ እሉ፡ እለ፡ ከዓጢ፡ ደሞሙ፡ ወእ
 ንብደሙ፡ ውዑዩ፡ በእንተ፡ ንግደትዩ ። ወተ
 መልጠ፡ ቀራንብቲሆሙ፡ ወቄስለ፡ ልቦሙ፡
 በብካይ፡ ወናዕክ¹²፡ ወገዓር ። ወይቤ፡ እግዚ

እ፡ ይኩኑ፡ ቡሩካነ፡ ወትዝንም፡ ላዕሌሆ
 ሙ፡ ምሕረት¹³ ። ኢይርጎቡ¹⁴፡ ወኢይጽም
 ዑ ። ወኢይትፈለ (A. fol. 133 b.) ጡ፡ እምኔ
 ከ¹⁵፡ ወይርፍቁ፡ ምስሌክ፡ ውስተ፡ ምሳሕ¹⁶፡
 ዘገግመት ። ወይቤ¹⁷፡ ገብረ፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ባ
 ርክ፡ አግብርተ፡ ወአእማተ፡ ዘቤተ፡ አቡ
 ዩ፡ ዘገብሩ¹⁸፡ እኩዩ፡ ላዕሌዩ ። ሶበ፡ አጎዘ
 ንክምሙ¹⁹፡ በኃጢአትዩ²⁰ ። ወአኮ²¹፡ በፈ
 ቃዶሙ፡ አላ፡ ቤልሆር፡ ጸላኢ፡ ገብረ፡ ዘ
 ንተ፡ እንዘ²²፡ ይፈቅድ፡ ኪያዩ፡ ያስሕት፡
 ልቦሙ፡ ወደያ፡ ሐፀ፡ ቅንዓት ። አንተሰ፡
 ስረይ፡ አበሳሆሙ ። ወይቤ፡ እግዚእ፡ ስረ
 ይኩ፡ ሎሙ²³ ። ወይቤ፡ ገብረ፡ ክርስቶስ²⁴፡
 አማን፡ ለይኩን፡ ለይኩን ። ወይቤ፡ ገብረ፡
 ክርስቶስ፡ ብእሴ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ባርከ
 ሙ²⁵፡ ለኩሎሙ፡ አኃውዩ፡ ነዳያን፡ ወም
 ስኪናን፡ ለፅኑሳንሂ²⁶፡ ለዕቤራት፡ ወእንለ፡
 ማውታ ። ለእድ፡ ወአንስት፡ ለአዕሩግ፡ ወ
 ሕፃናት ። (B. fol. 111 a.) ላካህናት፡ ወዲያቆና

¹ B. ውእሳት፡ ወሣዕር ። ወዕፀው፡ ወመንጸፈ፡ ዘያሐድር፡ ² B. adds ምንተ፡ ይ
 ኩን፡ ³ B. ወይቤ፡ እግዚእነ፡ ውእቲሂ፡ ይኩን፡ ውስተ፡ ውእቲ፡ ምሳሕ ። ⁴ B. omits
 the name. ⁵ B. ወለዕሉ፡ ጀወራዙት፡ እለ፡ ይትለእኩኒ ። ⁶ B. adds ወከመ፡ ⁷ B. ው
 ስቲታ፡ ⁸ B. በሥጋዩ፡ ⁹ B. ጀወራዙት፡ እለ፡ ተልእኩ፡ ለከ፡ ይኩኑ፡ ¹⁰ B. ወያእርፋ፡
¹¹ B. ወይቤ፡ አቡዩ፡ ወእምዩ፡ ወመርዓት፡ እንተ፡ ወሀብከኒ፡ እለ፡ ከአው፡ አንብኢ፡ ውኡዩ፡
¹² B. ልቦሙ፡ በናእክ ። ¹³ B. ምሕረትዩ፡ ¹⁴ B. ወኢይርኃቡ፡ ወኢይጽምኢ፡
¹⁵ B. adds ወትረ፡ ¹⁶ B. ገገምሰሕ፡ እንተ፡ ለቅዱሳን፡ ¹⁷ B. ወይቤ፡ ሃሌ፡ ሉያ፡
 ወይቤ፡ ካዕበ፡ ባርከሙ፡ ለዕሉ፡ አግብርት፡ ¹⁸ B. እለ፡ ገብሩ፡ ¹⁹ B. አሕዘንክም
 ሙ፡ ²⁰ B. በእንተ፡ ኃጢአትዩ፡ ²¹ B. አኮ፡ ²² B. በፈቃዶሙ፡ ዘገብሩ፡ አላ፡
 ቤልሐር፡ ጸላኢ፡ እንዘ፡ ትፈቅድ፡ ኪያዩ፡ ያሕጉል ። ወደያ፡ ውስተ፡ ልቦሙ፡ ሐፀ፡ ቅንኣት፡
 ስረይ፡ ሎሙ፡ ኃጢአቶሙ፡ ²³ B. omits ሎሙ፡ ²⁴ B. ብእሴ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ አ
 ሜን፡ ሃሌ፡ ሉያ ። ²⁵ B. ወይቤ፡ ካዕበ፡ ባርከሙ፡ ²⁶ B. ፅኑሳን፡ ወእቤራት፡ አእሩግ፡ ወ
 ሕፃናት፡ ወመዘምራን፡ ወአናጉንሰጢስ፡ ወዐፃውያን ። ኃዋኅዋት ። ቀስውስት፡ ወዲያቆናት፡

ት ። ለአናጉንስጢስ፡ ወመዘ (A. fol. 134 a.) ም
 ራን፡ ወዓፀውተ፡ ኃዋኅው ። ወለውኣቱ፡
 ጌር፡ ቀሲስ፡ ዘአስተርአዩቶ፡ እግዝእትን፡
 ማርያም፡ ወለኩሎሙ፡ ነዳያን፡ እለ፡ ዮሳ
 ድሩ፡ ኅበ፡ ዴዴ፡ ቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡ ዘእግ
 ዝእትን፡ ማርያም፡ በሀገረ፡ አርማናያ⁴ ።
 ኦእግዚአ፡ ወለኩሎሙ፡ ኢትርስሶሙ፡⁵
 ወይቤ፡ እግዚእ፡ ምሕረተ፡ አቡዩ፡ ወሣህ
 ልዩ⁶ ። ዘመንፊስ፡ ቅዱስ፡ ትዝክሮሙ፡ ወ
 ዓዲ፡ ይቤ፡ ገብረ፡ ክርስቶስ⁷፡ ባርክ፡ እግ
 ዘአ፡ መንግሥተ፡ ሮምያ፡ ወቀሕንጥንጥን
 ያ⁸ ። መንግሥተ፡ ኢትዮጵያሂ፡ ወአርማን
 ያ⁹ ። ወይቤ፡ እግዚእ፡ ይትባረክ፡ አህጉሪ
 ሆሙ¹⁰ ። ወብሔሮሙ፡ አድባሪሆሙ¹¹፡ ወ
 ማያቲሆሙ ። አፍላጊሆሙ፡ ወተላያቲሆ
 ሙ፡ አስባኒሆሙ፡ ወዕዋቂሆሙ ። ሣ
 ዕሮሙሂ፡ ወገራውሂሆሙ ። አዝርአቲሆ

(A. fol. 134 b.) ሙሂ፡ ወማእረረ፡ እክሎሙ ።
 እንስሳሆሙ፡ ወአባግዲሆሙ፡ ወኩሎ
 ጥሪቶሙ ። ጳጳሳቲሆሙ፡ ወበትረ፡ ያርክ
 ያቲሆሙ፡ ወኤጲስ፡ ቆጶሳቲሆሙ ። ካህናቲ
 ሆሙሂ፡ ወዲያቆናቲሆሙ ። ወዘምራኒሆሙ
 ኒ¹² ። ወላእካኒሆሙ ። ወነገሥቶ (B. fol. 111 b.)
 ሙ፡ ወራዙቶሙሂ፡ ወደናግሊሆሙ ። አዕ
 ሩጊሆሙሂ፡ ወሕፃናቲሆሙ ። ነዳያኒሆሙ
 ኒ፡ ወአብዕልቲሆሙ ። ወአእማቲሆሙ፡
 አዕፃዳቲ፡ ወይኖሙሂ፡ ወአትክልቲሆሙ ።
 አቅማሂሆሙሂ፡ ወኩሎ፡ ዘዚአሆሙ ። ወ
 ይቤ፡ ካዕበ¹³፡ እግዚእ፡ ምሕረት¹⁴፡ ዘእም
 ሥሉስ¹⁵፡ ቅዱስ፡ ትረድ፡ ላዕሌሆሙ፡ ለእ
 ለ፡ ዩአምኑ፡ ብዩ ። ወይቤ፡ ብእሴ፡ እግዚ
 አብሔር፡ ወኩሎሙ፡ እለ፡ ተጋብአ፡ በዕ
 ለተ፡ ተዝክሮ፡ ተአሚኖሙ¹⁵፡ (A. fol. 135 a.)
 ኪያክ ። ወእለ፡ ይበክዩ፡ አንብዓ፡ ሰሚዖ

¹ B. ወለውኣቱሂ፡ ቀሲስ፡ ዘአስተርአዩቶ፡ ማርያም፡
 ነኮስት፡ እለ፡ ዩሐድሩ፡ ውስተ፡
² B. ወኩሎሙ፡ መ
³ B. omits this word.
⁴ B. በአርማንያ፡ ሀገረ፡
⁵ B. ኢትርስሶሙ፡ ለኩሎሙ፡
⁶ B. omits ወሣህልዩ፡
⁷ B. ብእሴ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡
⁸ B. መመንግሥተ፡ ቀሕጠንጥንያ፡ ወኅገረ፡ አርማንያ፡
⁹ B. ሀገሮሙ፡
¹⁰ B. ወ
 አድባሪሆሙ፡ ወአውግሪሆሙ፡ ወደሰያቲሆሙ፡ ወአብሔርቲሆሙ፡ ወቀለያቲሆሙ፡ ወአፍላ
 ጊሆሙ፡ ወዓላቲሆሙ፡ ወዕፀቂሆሙ፡ ወእበነሆሙ፡ ወሣዕሮሙ፡ ወገራውሂሆሙ፡ ወእንስሳ
 ሆሙ፡ ወጳጳሳቲሆሙ፡ ወበትርያሪሆሙ፡ ወካህናቲሆሙ፡
¹¹ B. ወመዘምራቲሆሙ፡ ወ
 ናጉንስጥያቲሆሙ፡ ወነገሥቶሙ፡ ወመኳንንቲሆሙ፡ ወመገብቶሙ፡ ወመሳፍንቲሆሙ፡ ወ
 ዐበዶቶሙ፡ ወአእሩጊሆሙ፡ ወመነኮሳቲሆሙ፡ ወወራዙቲሆሙ፡ ወአንስቲያሆሙ፡ ወሕ
 ፃናቲሆሙ፡ ወደናግሊሆሙ፡ ወምስኪናቲሆሙ፡ ወነዳያኒሆሙ፡ ወእቤራቲሆሙ፡ ወእንለ
 ማውታሆሙ፡ ወመዓሰበቲሆሙ፡ ወመበለታቲሆሙ፡ ወኩሎ፡ ሕዝብሙ፡ ወቤቶሙ፡ ወነፍ
 ሶሙ፡ ወነፍሳቲሆሙ፡ ወክራማቲሆሙ፡ ወተወኖሙ፡ ወጸዳያቲሆሙ፡ ወመጸዋቲሆሙ፡ ወ
 ዝናማቲሆሙ፡ ወሰብላቲሆሙ፡ ወእካላቲሆሙ፡ ወዐጸደ፡ አቅማታቲሆሙ፡ ወወይኖሙ፡ ወ
 ሮማኖሙ፡ ወኩሎ፡ ዐፀደ፡ ተክሎሙ፡ ወእንስሳሆሙ፡
¹² B. omits ካዕበ፡
¹³ B. ም
 ጎረት፡
¹⁴ B. ዘሥሉስ፡ and omits ቅዱስ፡
¹⁵ B. አሚኖሙ፡ ኪያክ፡ ወይበክዩ፡

ሙ፡ መጽሐፈ፡ ዜናየ፡ እመሂ፡ (B. fol. 112 a.)
በአብያተ፡ ክርስቲያናት፡ ። ወእመሂ፡ በአ
ህጉር፡ ወእመሂ፡ በገዳም፡ ትርክሶሙ፡ ም
ሕረትክ፡ ወይቤ፡ እግዚእ፡ ይኩን፡ ከማሁ፡
ዘትቤ፡ ወኅበ፡ ሀሎ፡ ሥጋክ፤ ወኅበ፡ ተቀ
ብረ፡ አዕጽምቲክ፤ ወኅበ፡ ተገብረ፡ ተዝ
ካርክ፤ ወኅበ፡ ተጸውዓ፡ ስምክ፤ ወኅበ፡
ተነበበ፡ መጽሐፈ፡ ገድልክ፡ ህየ፡ ይኩን፡
ሣህል፡ ወምሕረት፡ ሕይወት፡ ወመድኅኒ
ት፡ ላዕለ፡ ፍቁርክ፡ እስከ፡ ለዓለመ፡ ዓለ
ም፡ አሜን፡ ። ። ። ።

(A. fol. 136 b.) ወሶበ፡ ሰምዓ፡ ብእሴ፡ እግ
ዚአብሔር፡ ዘንተ፡ ቃለ፡ ተፈሥሐ፡ ወጸ
ውዖሙ፡ ለክልኤቱ፡ እለ፡ ይትለክክዎ፡ ።
ወይ (B. fol. 112 b.) ቤሎሙ፡ አኦውየ፡ አ
ሐዱ፡ እምኔክሙ፡ ያምጽእ³፡ ሊተ፡ ክርታ
ስ፡ ወቀለመ፡ ወአሐዱ፡ እምኔክሙ፡ ይሐ

ር፡ ኅበ፡ ቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡ ወያምጽእ⁴፡
ሊተ፡ ዓውሎግያ፡ ቡርክተ፡ ሐሩ፡ ወአፍ
ጠኑ⁶፡ ወአምጽኡ፡ ሎቱ፡ በከመ፡ ይቤሎ
ሙ፡ ወጸሐፈ፡ ዘንተ⁷፡ በእደሁ፡ ዜናሁ⁸፡
እንዘ፡ ያጽሕፎ፡ ለሊሁ፡ መንፈስ፡ ቅዱስ፡
ዘወረደ፡ ኅቤሁ⁹፡ እምሰማያት፡ ወነገሮ፡
ነሉ¹⁰፡ እምጥንቱ፡ እስከ¹¹፡ ዕረፍቱ፡ ወ
ካዕበ፡ ጸሐፈ፡ ትእምርተ፡ አቡሁ¹²፡ ወእሙ፡
ዘከመ፡ ሐጸንዎ፡ ሠናየ፡ ሕዕነተ¹³፡ በፍቅ
ር፡ ወበክብር፡ ወበትፍሥሕት፡ ወዘከመ፡
ምሐርዎ¹⁴፡ መጸምፍተ¹⁵፡ ጥበብ፡ ወተግ
ሣጽ፤ ወጥ (A. fol. 137 a.) በበ፡ ዘበኒጦር፡ ወ
እምድኅረ፡ ፈጸመ፡ ጽሐፈ¹⁶፡ ነሥኡ፡ አ
ውሎግያ፡ ቡርክተ፡ ወተንሥኡ፡ ብእሴ፡
እግዚአብሔር፡ ወጸለየ¹⁷፡ እንዘ፡ ይጸው
ዕ፡ አስማቲሁ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር¹⁸፡ አልፋ፡
አልፋ፡ አሌፍ፤ ብዑዓን፡ እለ፡ ንጹሐን፡

¹ B. በቤት፡ ወእመሂ፡ በቤተ፡ ክርስቲያን፡ ተዘኪሮሙ፡ ምኅረትክ፡ ወይቤ፡ እግዚእ፡
ይኩኑ፡ ከማሁ፡ ወመጽኢ፡ መንፈስ፡ ቅዱስ፡ ኅቤሁ፡ ወነገሮ፡ ነሉ፡ ወይቤሎ፡ ሰማዕኩ፡ ጸሎት
ክ፡ ወሰእለትክ፡ አብእሴ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ወናሁ፡ አዓርፈክ፡ እምዝንቱ፡ ጸማ፡ ወተሐውር፡ ው
ስተ፡ ሕይወተ፡ ዘለዓለም፡ ፍሥሐ፡ እስመ፡ መነንክ፡ መንግሥተ፡ ወተድላ፡ ዘበምድር፡ ወ
ይእዜኒ፡ ወሀብኩክ፡ ሰልጣነ፡ ታውጽእ፡ አጋንንተ፡ ወትፈውሰ፡ ድውያነ፡ ወሕሙማነ፡ ወዕ
ውራነ፡ ወሐንከሣነ፡ ወጽሙማነ፡ ወበሐማነ፡ ወጽውኅነ፡ ወእለ፡ ለምጽ፡ በጸሎትክ፡ ይሕየ
ው፡ ወነሉሙ፡ ይትፈወሱ፡ እምዳዌሆሙ፡ ኅበ፡ ሀሎ፡ ሥጋክ፡ ወተቀብረ፡ አዕጽምቲክ፡
ወኅበ፡ ተጸውዓ፡ ስምክ፡ ወኅበ፡ ተነበ፡ መጽሐፈ፡ ዜናክ፡ ህየ፡ ይኩን፡ ሣህል፡ ወምኅረት፡
ወመድኅኒት፡ እስከ፡ ለዓለመ፡ ዓለም፡ አሜን፡ ። ² B. እግዚአብሔር፡ ጸውዓሙ፡ ለ፪፡
አግብርት፡ ³ B. አምጽኡ፡ ሊተ፡ ፪እምኔክሙ፡ ክርታስ፡ ⁴ B. ያምጽኢ፡ አውሎግ
ያ፡ ቡርክተ፡ ⁵ B. ወሐሩ፡ ⁶ B. omits this word. ⁷ B. omits ዘንተ፡ ⁸ B. ዜና፡
⁹ B. omits ኅቤሁ፡ ¹⁰ B. omits ነሉ፡ ¹¹ B. እስከ፡ ተፍጻሚቱ፡ ወጸሐፈ፡ ¹² B. ለ
አቡሁ፡ ወለእሙ፡ በከመ፡ ሐፀንዎ፡ ¹³ B. ሕጽንየተ፡ ¹⁴ B. መሀሮ፡ ¹⁵ B. መጸ
ሕፍት፡ ነቢያት፡ ወመጠዕዐ፡ ወተግሣጽ፡ ወነሉ፡ ሕገ፡ መንግሥት፡ ወጥበብ፡ በኒጦር፡
¹⁶ B. omits this word. ¹⁷ B. omits ወጸለየ፡ እንዘ፡ ይብል፡ ወይጸውዕ፡ ¹⁸ B. adds ወይቤ፡

አስሐትያ : ወሐቀፋ : በእዴሁ¹ : ወይቤላ :
ንዲ : በሰላም : ፍቅርትየ² : ንጽሕት : ወ
ነተሎሙ³ : (A. fol. 140a.) ማኅበረ : መላእክ
ተ : ማኅበረ : ነቢያት : ወሐቀርያት : ጸድቃ
ን : ወሰማዕት : ወነተሎሙ : ቅዱሳን : መነ
ከሳት : ይቤሉ⁴ : ሃሌ : ሉያ : ወተቀበልዋ :
መላእክት : በፍሠሐ : ወበኃሂት⁵ : ወማኅ
ሌት : እንዘ : ይብሉ : ሃሌ : ሉያ : ሃሌ : ሉ
ያ⁶ : ዘፃመወ⁷ : በዓለም : የሐዩ : ለዝሉ
ፉ : ወአብእዎ : ኢየሩሳሌም : ሰማያዊት :
ወኮነ : ዕረፍቱ : በዕለተ⁸ : ሰንበተ : ክርስ
ቲያን : ጊዜ⁹ : በ : ሰዓት : አመ : ፲ወ፱ :
(B. fol. 113b.) ለወርቃ : ጥቅምት : ባቢ¹⁰ : በአ
ውራቃ : ሮም : ወተሰምዓ : ጽራቃ : መላክ
ት¹¹ : በዓየራት : ወእግዚእ : ነቢሮ : ዲበ :
ሰረገላ : ወነፍስ : ንጽሕት : በእዴሁ¹² : [ወ
አእላፈ¹³ : አእላፋት : ወትእልፈተ : አእላፋ
ት : መላእክት : ይቤሉ : ቅ (A. fol. 140b.) ዱስ :
ቅዱስ : ቅዱስ : ወእለ : ሱርያል : ይነፍሑ :

አቅርንተ : ወጌሊቃናት : ይሴብሑ : ወቅዱ
ሳን : ነቢያት : ወሐቀርያት : ጸድቃን : ወሰ
ማዕት : ይቤሉ : ሃሌ : ሉያ : እስከ : ሶበ : ሰ
ምዓ : ሊቀ : ጳጳሳት : አባ : ቴዎፍሎስ : ጽ
ራቃ : መንፈሳውያን : እንዘ : ይብሉ : ሃሌ :
ሉያ :] ወበይእቲ¹⁴ : ዕለት : እንዘ¹⁵ : ሀሉ :
ሊቀ : ጳጳሳት : አባ : ቴዎፍሎስ¹⁶ : ውስተ :
ቤተ : ክርስቲያን : ከመ : ይሥራዕ¹⁷ : ቀር
ባን : ወሀለው¹⁸ : ህየ : ቀሳውስት : ወዲያቆ
ናት : ወነተሎሙ¹⁹ : ሕዝብ : ቀስጥንጥንያ :
ወሶቤሃ : ሰምዓ : ሊቀ : ጳጳሳት²⁰ : ቃለ : እ
ምሰማይ : እንዘ : ይጸርኅ : ወይብል : ቴዎፍ
ሎስ : ስማዕ : ወግበር : ዘአኤዝዝክ : ወሐ
ር : ቤቶ : ለቴዎድሰዮስ : ንጉሥ : ወአም
(A. fol. 141a.) ጽእ : ዝየ : ሥጋሁ : ለቅዱስ :
ብእሴ : እግዚአብሔር : ከመ : ይትቀደስ :
ቀርባንክ : ወሶበ : ሰምዑ²¹ : ዘንተ²² : ቃለ :
እንዘ : ይጸርኅ : ወይብል : እምሰማይ : አኅ
ዘመ : ፍርሃት : ወረዓድ : ለእለ²³ : ይቀው

¹ B. በእደዊሁ : ቅዱሳት : ወይቤ :

² B. አፍቅርትየ : ነፍስ : ንጽሕት :

³ B. ወነተሎሙ : ጸድቃን : ወሰማዕት : ነቢያት : ወሐቀርያት :

⁴ B. ይብሉ :

⁵ B. ወ

በሐሌት : ወበማሕሌት :

⁶ B. adds ሃሌ : ሉያ :

⁷ B. ዘጸመወ :

⁸ B. omits

በዕለተ :

⁹ B. በጊዜ :

¹⁰ B. በወርሃ : በቤ : ወበግዕዝ : ጥምቀት : ወተሰሞዕ :

በአናቅጽ : አየራት : ጽራኅ :

¹¹ B. መላእክት : ወእግዚእ : ነቢሮ :

¹² B. ወነፍ

ሰ : ንጽሕት : ውስተ : ሕፃኑ :

¹³ B. omits the words in brackets, i. e., from ወአእላ

ፈ : to : ሃሌ : ሉያ :

¹⁴ B. በውእቱ :

¹⁵ B. ወእንዘ :

¹⁶ B. omits the name. ¹⁷ B. ይ

ሰራዕ :

¹⁸ B. ወሀለው : ምስሌሁ :

¹⁹ B. ወነተሉ : ሕዝብ : እለ : ሀለዉ : ብሔረ : ቀስ

ጥንጥንያ : ወሶኡ : ውስተ : ቤተ : ክርስቲያን : ከመ : ይቀረቡ : ቀርባን : እንዘ : ሀለዉ : ነተሎ

ሙ : ይቀውመ : ህየ :

²⁰ B. ወቴዎፍሎስ : ሊቀ : ጳጳሳት : እንዘ : ይቄድስ : ቀርባን : ወሰ

ምዓ : ቃለ : እንዘ : ይብል : ወይጸርኅ : ቴዎፍሎስ : ሊቀ : ጳጳሳት : ሑር : እምጽእ : ዝየ : ሥጋ

ሁ :

²¹ B. ሰምዐ :

²² B. ዘንተ : ነገረ : እሐዘመ : ፍርሃተ :

²³ B. ለዕለ :

ሙ፡ህየ፡ወውእተ፡ጊዜ፡ለአክ፡ሊቀ፡
 ጳጳሳት፡ኅበ፡ቴዎድሮስ፡ንጉሥ፡እስ
 መ፡ነገሮ፡ቃል፡ከመ፡ሀሎ፡ሥጋሁ፡ለ
 ቅዱስ፡ውስተ፡ደዴሁ፡ለንጉሥ፡ወለአ
 ክ፡እንዘ፡ይብል፡ቦኑአ፡ሀሎ፡ውስተ፡
 ድዴክ፡ብእሴ፡እግዚአብሔር፡ዘድልው፡
 ለመንግሥተ፡ሰማያት፡ዘአዕረፈ፡ዮም፡
 አስመ፡ሰማዕን፡(B. fol. 114 a.) ቃለ³፡እምሰ
 ማይ፡ዘበእንቲአሁ፡ወይቤ፡ቴዎድሮስ፡
 ንጉሥ፡አግብርቲሁ፡ቦኑ፡ዘአመርናክ
 ሙ፡ዘሀሎ፡ውስተ፡ደዴ⁶፡ብ(A. fol. 141 b.)
 እሴ፡ዘድልው፡ለመንግሥተ፡ሰማያት፡ዘ
 አዕረፈ፡ዮም⁷፡ወይቤልም⁸፡ኢያእመርነ፡
 አሊቅነ፡ወይቤሎሙ፡ንጉሥ፡ሐሩኬ፡ኅ
 ሠሠ⁹፡ወጠይቁ፡= = =

(A. fol. 143 b.) ወእምዝ፡መጽሐ፡፪ አግብ
 ርት¹⁰፡ወቆሙ፡ቅድመ፡ንጉሥ፡ወይቤል
 ም፡ኣሊቅነ፡ሀሎ፡ኅበነ፡ውእቱ፡ነዳይ¹¹፡
 ዘአዕቀብከነ፡ወንሕነ፡ሰማዕቲ፡ከመ፡ው
 እቱ¹²፡ድልው፡ለመንግሥተ፡ሰማያት፡እ

ስመ፡ይነሥእ¹³፡ሲሳየ፡ዘአንተ፡ፈኖክ፡
 ሎቱ¹⁴፡ከመ፡ዘይበልዕ፡ሰርክ፡ወነግሃ፡ወ
 ይሁብ፡ለነዳያን፡ኅቡእ¹⁵፡ወውእቱኒ¹⁶፡
 ይጸውም፡መግልተ፡ወሌሊተ፡ወዓዲ፡ይ
 ትዔገሥ¹⁷፡እንዘ፡ይጼእልም፡ወይዘብጥ
 ም፡በእኩይ¹⁸፡ግብር፡ከሎሙ፡አግብርቲ
 ክ፡ወአእማቲክ¹⁹፡አንጉሥ፡ወይእዜኒ²⁰፡
 ንሑር፡ንርአየ፡ኪያሁ፡ወይቤሎሙ፡
 ንጉሥ²¹፡ሐሩኬ፡አፍጥኑ፡ርእየቶ፡ወሐ
 ሩ²²፡እሙንቱ፡አግብርት፡ወረከብም²³፡ለ
 ነዳይ፡(B. fol. 114 b.) አዕረፈ፡ብእ(A. fol. 144 a.)
 ሴ፡እግዚአብሔር፡ወነገርም፡ለንጉሥ፡ወ
 ውእተ፡ጊዜ፡ለአክ፡ንጉሥ፡ኅበ፡ሊቀ፡
 ጳጳሳት²⁴፡እንዘ፡ይብል፡ቃል፡ዘዜነወክ፡
 እምሰማይ፡ናሁኬ፡ተረከበአ፡ውስተ፡ደዴ
 ደየአ²⁵፡ወነሥአ፡ሊቀ፡ጳጳሳት፡መጸሕ
 ፍተ፡ወማዕተባተ፡ወመስቀላተ፡ወማዕጠ
 ንታተ²⁶፡በጉልቂ፡ቀሳውስት²⁷፡ወሐሩ፡
 ይትቀበሉ፡ሥጋሁ፡ለቅዱስ²⁸፡እምቤተ፡
 ንጉሥ፡ወአስተዳለው፡ንጉሥ፡መናብርተ፡

¹ B. ለአክ፡ቴዎድሮስ፡ሊቀ፡ጳጳሳት፡² B. ንጉሥ፡እንዘ፡ይብል፡መኑአ፡
 ዘሀሎ፡ውስተ፡ደዴክ፡ብእሴ፡ዘድልው፡ለመንግሥተ፡ሰማያት፡³ B. ቃል፡
 ዘይትናገር፡በእንቲአሁ፡ወይቤሎሙ፡⁴ B. ለአግብርቲሁ፡⁵ B. ዘአእመር
 ክሙ፡⁶ B. ደዴየ፡⁷ B. omits ዘአዕረፈ፡ዮም፡⁸ B. adds አግብርቲሁ፡
⁹ B. ሐቱ፡¹⁰ B. ወመጽኑ፡እሎ፡፪ አግብርት፡ወቆሙ፡¹¹ B. omits ነዳይ፡
¹² B. omits ድልው፡¹³ B. ይነስእ፡ሲሳየ፡ከመ፡ዘይበልዕ፡ዘአንተ፡¹⁴ B. ሎ
 ቱ፡ነግዐ፡ወሰርክ፡¹⁵ B. omits ኅቡእ፡¹⁶ B. ወውእቱሰ፡¹⁷ B. ይትዔገስ፡
¹⁸ B. ወየሓምምም፡ላዕሌሁ፡በእኩይ፡¹⁹ B. omits ወአእማቲክ፡²⁰ B. omits ወይ
 እዜኒ፡²¹ B. omits ንጉሥ፡²² B. ወሕዌርሙ፡²³ B. ረከብም፡በዘአዕረፈ፡ለ
 ቅዱስ፡²⁴ B. adds ቴዎድሮስ፡²⁵ B. ናሁ፡ተረከበ፡በውስተ፡ደዴየ፡²⁶ B. omits
 ወመስቀላተ፡ወማዕጠንታተ፡²⁷ B. adds ወዲያቆናተ፡²⁸ B. ለብእሴ፡እግዚአብሔር



ዘወርቅ፡ ውብሩር፡ ኅበ፡ ይነብሩ፡ ሊቃነ፡ ጳ
 ጳሳት፡ ቀሳውስት፡ ወዲያቆናት፡ ። ወአግበ
 ረ፡ ብዙኃ፡ መኃትው፡ እስከ፡ ሶበ፡ ይከው
 ን፡ ብርሃኑ፡ ከመ፡ እንተ፡ ፀሐይ፡ ወአብ
 ኡ፡ ሥጋሁ፡ ለቅዱስ፡ ውስተ፡ ቤተ፡ መን
 ግሥት፡ ወቦኡ፡ ኅቤሁ፡ ሊቀ፡ ጳጳሳት፡ ን
 ጉሥኒ፡ ወኤ (A. fol. 144b.) ጲስ፡ ቆጶሳት፡ ከ
 መ፡ ይርአዩ፡ ወይሰለሙ፡ ሥጋሁ፡ ለቅዱ
 ስ፡ ወይርአዩ፡ ክርታስ፡ ፀቢጦ፡ ዘሀሎ፡ ው
 ስተ፡ እዴሁ፡ ወፈቀዱ፡ ነሢኦታ²፡ ለክር
 ታስ፡ እምእዴሁ፡ ወኢክህሉ፡ ነሢኦታ፡ ኢ
 ንጉሥ፡ ወኢሊቀ፡ ጳጳሳት³፡ ወይቤ፡ ሊ
 ቀ፡ ጳጳሳት፡ ተንሥኡ፡ ንጸሊ⁴፡ ኅበ፡ እግ
 ዘኢብሔር፡ ኦደቂቅዩ፡ ቅድመ፡ ሥጋሁ፡ ለ
 ቅዱስ፡ ወጸለዩ፡ ጸሎተ⁵፡ (B. fol. 115a.) ወሰ
 አሉ፡ ኅበ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ወይቤሉ⁶፡ እ
 ግዚአ፡ መሐረን፡ ክርስቶስ፡ ርጊዜ⁷፡ ወሶ
 ቤሃ፡ ተፈትሐት፡ እዴሁ፡ ለቅዱስ⁸፡ በፈ
 ቃደ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ወቀርበ፡ ሊቀ፡ ጳጳሳ

ት፡ ወነሥኦ፡ ለይአቲ፡ ክርታስ፡ ወአንበባ፡
 ወበከዩ፡ ብከዩ፡ መሪረ⁹፡ ። ። ።

(A. fol. 146b.) ወእምዝ፡ መጠዎ፡ ለንጉሥ፡

ክርታስ፡ ወአንበባ፡ ወአእመረ፡ ከመ፡ ው
 እቱ፡ ፍቁር፡ ወልዱ፡ ወውእቱ፡ ጊዜ፡ ወ
 ድቀ፡ በገጹ፡ ዲበ፡ ምድር¹⁰፡ ወአንገርገረ፡
 ላዕለ፡ ሐመድ¹¹፡ ወጸፍዓ¹²፡ ገጸ፡ ወበከዩ፡
 ብከዩ፡ መሪረ¹³፡ እንዘ፡ ይኬልሕ፡ ወይብ
 ል፡ ኦወልድዮ¹⁴፡ ወፍቁር፡ ዘእቤለከ፡ ብር
 ሃነ፡ አዕይንትዮ¹⁵፡ ወወራሴ፡ መንግሥትዮ፡
 ወሐፀንኩከ፡ በፍቅር¹⁶፡ ወበክብር፡ ወበትፍ
 ሥሕት፡ ወዘመሐርኩከ¹⁷፡ ጥበበ፡ ወተግ
 ሣጸ፡ ወተፈሣሕኩ፡ ብከ፡ አመ፡ ንዕስከ¹⁸፡
 አኅዘንከኒ፡ አመ፡ ልህቀ¹⁹፡ ወአደምካ፡ ለ
 ልብዩ፡ ወደምሰስካ፡ ለፍሥሐዩ፡ ወአማሰን
 ከ፡ ስነ፡ ለህይዩ፡ ወአንተሰ፡ እንዘ፡ ተአም
 ሮ²⁰፡ ኪያዩ፡ አባከ፡ ተንገሥከ፡ ወአንደድ
 ከ፡ ርእስከ፡ ወኮንከ፡ ግዳፈ፡ ውስተ፡ ይ
 ዴ፡ (A. fol. 147a.) አቡከ፡ ፲ወ፭፡ ዓመተ²¹፡

ር፡ ወበጽሑ፡ ውስተ፡ ይዴሁ፡ ለንጉሥ፡ ወንጉሥኒ፡ አዘዘ፡ ከመ፡ ያብኡ፡ ሥጋሁ፡ ለቅዱስ፡
 ውስተ፡ ቤተ፡ መንግሥቱ፡ ወተዳለው፡ መናብርት፡ ¹ B. adds ከመ፡ ይርአዩ፡ ሥጋሁ፡
 ኤጲስ፡ ቆጶስት፡ ለቅዱስ፡ ወርእዩ፡ እንዘ፡ ክርታስ፡ ውስተ፡ እዴሁ፡ ² B. ይንሥኡ፡ ክርታስ፡
³ B. ንጉሥ፡ ወቀሳውስትኒ፡ ወዲያቆናትኒ፡ ⁴ B. ኦደቂቅዩ፡ ንጸሊ፡ ⁵ B. ጸ
 ሎታተ፡ ⁶ B. ወሰአሉ፡ ወፈጸሞሙ፡ ጸልዮ፡ ወይቤሉ፡ ⁷ B. እስከ፡ ይከውን፡ ፫፻
 ጊዜ፡ ወውእተ፡ ጊዜ፡ ተፈትሐት፡ ⁸ B. ለቅዱስ፡ ወቀርበ፡ ⁹ B. ወአንበባ፡ ከመ፡
 ውእቱ፡ ፍቁር፡ ወልዱ፡ ወውእተ፡ ጊዜ፡ ¹⁰ B. ወስተ፡ ምድር፡ ¹¹ B. omits ላዕለ፡
 ሐመድ፡ ¹² B. ወጸፋኦ፡ ¹³ B. omits መሪረ፡ ¹⁴ B. ወልድዮ፡ ወፍቁርዮ፡ ውብ
 ርሃነ፡ ¹⁵ B. አዕይንትዮ፡ ዘእቤለከ፡ ወረሲ፡ ¹⁶ B. በፍቅርዮ፡ ¹⁷ B. ወበፍሥሐ፡
 ወመሀርኩከ፡ ጠበበ፡ ¹⁸ B. ንእሰከ፡ አሕዘንከኒ፡ ¹⁹ B. ልህቀ፡ ወደምሰስከ፡ ለፍሥ
 ሐዩ፡ ወአንደድከ፡ ለልብዩ፡ ወአማሰንከ፡ ላሕይዩ፡ ²⁰ B. ታእምር፡ ተአገሥከ፡ ወአንደ
 ይከ፡ ርእስከ፡ ወኮንከ፡ ከመ፡ ነዳይ፡ ወነበርከ፡ ²¹ B. አመት፡



እንዘ፡ ይዘብጡክ፡ ወይዲእሉክ፡ አግብርተ፡
 አቡክ ። ወእንዘ፡ ይከዕዉ¹፡ (B. fol. 115b.) ላ
 ዕሴከ፡ ሕፃብ፡ አዕሕልት² ። ወሶበ፡ ሰምዓ
 ት፡ መርኬዛ፡ ንግሥት፡ እሙ፡ መጽአት፡
 እንዘ³፡ ትረውጽ፡ ከመ፡ እንተ፡ ዕቡድ፡
 ወትጠብጥ⁴፡ ርእሳ፡ ወገጸ፡ ወእንግድዓሃ ።
 ወሶአት፡ ጎቤሁ፡ ወአጎዘት⁵፡ ኪያሁ፡ ወ
 ከልሐት፡ እንዘ፡ ትብል ። አወልድዮ⁶፡ ወ
 ፍቁርዮ፡ ወብርሃነ፡ አዕይንትዮ⁷፡ ዘወሀበኒ፡
 እግዚአብሔር፡ ኪያክ፡ ሶበ፡ ሰአልኩ⁸፡ ጎ
 ቤሁ ። ወተፈሣሕኩ፡ ብክ፡ ሶበ፡ አእተው
 ኩ⁹፡ ለክ፡ መርዓተ፡ ወአንተሰ፡ ሜጥካ፡
 ለፍሥሐዮ¹⁰፡ ውስተ፡ ጎዘን¹¹፡ ዘአልባቲ፡ ኑ
 ዛይ ። ወባሕቱ፡ ኢቀበዕኩ¹²፡ አነ፡ እሴፈዎ፡
 ኮንኩ፡ ለእግዚአብሔር፡ ከመ፡ ያርእዮ¹³፡
 ኪያክ ። ወርእዮ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ተስፋዮ¹⁴፡
 ወ (A. fol. 147b.) አግብአክ፡ ጎቤዮ ። ወአንሰ፡
 ተዓወርኩከ¹⁵፡ ወኢያእመርኩከ ። እንዘ፡ ሀ
 ሎክ፡ ግዳፌ¹⁶፡ በደዴ፡ አቡክ፡ ወእምክ፡ ወ

ምኑነ፡ ከመ፡ ነዳይ፡ ወጽሉእ፡ እንዘ፡ አን
 ተ፡ ወልድዮ ። ወነነበርክ፡ ኒወጅዓመተ፡ ም
 ስለ፡ ነተሉ፡ ግማ፡ ወምንዳቤ፡ ወሕማም¹⁷፡
 ወናሁ¹⁸፡ እምይእዜሰ፡ አወልድዮ፡ (B. fol. 116a.)
 አሌ፡ ላ፡ ለከርሥዮ፡ እንተ፡ ፃረተክ፡ ፱አ
 ውፈኃ፡ አሌ፡ ሎን፡ ለአእዳውዮ፡ እለ፡ ሓ
 ቀፋካ፡ ወለአጥባትዮ¹⁹፡ እለ፡ ሐፀናክ ። አ
 ሌ፡ ላ፡ ለልብዮ፡ እንተ፡ ተነደፈት፡ በፍቅ
 ረ፡ ዚእክ ። አሌ፡ ላ፡ ለነፍሰዮ²⁰፡ እስክ፡ ተ
 ፍጻሜተ፡ መዋዕል ። አሌ፡ ሊተ፡ አሌ፡ ሊ
 ተ፡ እስመ፡ ደደቀተኒ፡ ጎዘን²¹፡ እንተ፡ አ
 ልባቲ²²፡ ኑዛይ፡ እስክ፡ ለዓለመ፡ ዓለም ።
 ወመጽአት፡ ካዕበ²³፡ ይእቲ፡ ወመርዓት²⁴፡
 እንዘ ። ትሰጥጥ²⁵፡ አልባሊሃ፡ [ወተሐነርጥ፡
 በአፃብዒሃ²⁶]፡ ወት (A. fol. 148a.) ጸፍዕ፡ ገ
 ጸ፡ እንዘ፡ ትኬልሕ፡ ወትበኪ²⁷፡ አንብዓ፡
 መሪረ ። ወታስቆቁ²⁸፡ እንዘ፡ ትብል፡ ኦእግ
 ዚእዮ፡ ወመፃምርትዮ²⁹፡ ተከለልኩ፡ ምስ
 ሌክ፡ ቅድመ³⁰፡ ታቦት ። ወገደፍከኒ፡ ባሕ

¹ B. ይከእው፡ ላዕሌሁ፡² B. ጸሕል፡³ B. እሙ፡ ሐረት፡ እንዘ፡⁴ B. ወትዛብጥ፡ ርእሳ፡ በዕብን፡ ወገጸ፡ ወእንግድአሃ፡ ወአብዓት፡⁵ B. ወአሃዘት፡⁶ B. ወልድዮ፡⁷ B. አዕይንቲዮ፡ ወወሀበኒ፡⁸ B. ሰአልኩም፡⁹ B. እስክ፡ አመ፡ አዕተውኩ፡¹⁰ B. ፍሥሐዮ፡¹¹ B. ሐዘን፡ እንተ፡ አልባ¹² B. ኢቀበዕኩ፡ እንዘ፡ እጸንሐ፡ ወእሴፈዎ፡¹³ B. ተሥፋዮ፡ ወአግብዓክ፡ ዝ¹⁴ B. ተዐወርኩከ፡¹⁵ B. እንዘ፡ ውስተ፡ እደዴ፡ ሀሎክ፡ ግዳፈ፡ ከመ፡ ነዳይ፡¹⁶ B. ወምኑነ፡ እንዘ፡ አንተ፡ ወልድዮ፡ ወፍቁርዮ፡ ወነነበርክ፡ ዝዮ፡ ኒወጅዓመት፡ ምስለ፡ ጸማ፡¹⁷ B. ወናሁ፡ እምይእዜሰ፡ አሌሊተ፡ አሌሊተ፡ ለእንተ፡ ወለድ¹⁸ B. ወአልላ፡ ለከርስዮ፡ እንተ፡ ጸረተክ ።¹⁹ B. ወአጥባትዮ፡²⁰ B. ለልብዮ፡²¹ B. ደደቀኒ፡ ሐዘን፡²² B. አልባቲ፡ ተፍጻሜት፡²³ B. ወስ፡²⁴ B. መ²⁵ B. ትሰጥጥ፡²⁶ B. omits the words in brackets.²⁷ B. ወእንዘ፡²⁸ B. ወትኬልህ፡ እንዘ፡ ትብል፡²⁹ B. ወመጸምርትዮ፡³⁰ B. በ³¹ B. ቅድስት፡ ታቦት፡



ቲትዮ¹፡ ውስተ፡ ቤተ፡ መርዓ፡ ሄሌ፡ ሊ
ተ፡ ሄሌ፡ ሊተ፡ እንተ፡ ኮንኩ፡ ባሕታዊ
ተ²፡ እስከ፡ ፱ዓመት፡ በእንተ፡ ዘተካየድ
ኩ፡ ምስሌክ፡ ለገቢረ³፡ ሠናይ፡ ሄሌ፡ ሊ
ተ⁴፡ እስመ፡ መልአኒ⁵፡ ኅዘን፡ ወአውዓ
የኒ፡ ከመ፡ እሳት⁶፡ እስመ፡ ዓገተኒ፡ ሞተ፡
መፃምርትዮ፡ አንሰ፡ ሰዓልክዎ፡ ለእግዚአ
ብሔር፡ ከመ፡ ያርአየኒ፡ ኪያክ፡ ወጸናሕክ
ዎ፡ እስከ፡ ፱ዓመት፡ ወሚጣ፡ ለስእለትዮ፡
ውስተ፡ ብካይ፡ ወአንብዕ⁷፡ ወከሠተኒ⁸፡
እንዘ፡ ኅብእት⁹፡ ወትክዝት፡ መርዓት፡ አ
ነ¹⁰፡ ሄሌ፡ ሊተ፡ አሌሊተ፡ እስመ፡ ነዳይ
ት፡ መበለት፡ (A. fol. 116 b.) እነ¹¹፡ እንዘ፡ መ
ርዓት፡ ቡርክ (A. fol. 148 b.) ት¹²፡ ነዓኬ¹³፡ ብ
ክያ፡ ምስሌዮ¹⁴፡ አዋልዶ፡ ሮምያ፡ ወቀሕ
ጥንጥንያ፡ ወማኅዘናትዮ¹⁵፡ ወአነ፡ ነበርኩ፡
እንዘ፡ እሴፊዎ፡ ለእግዚአየ¹⁶፡ ወአጽንሐ፡
ለመፃምርትዮ¹⁷፡ ወናሁ፡ ኅልቀ¹⁸፡ ተስሩዮ፡
ወመጠፍአ¹⁹፡ ጽንሐትዮ፡ እምይእዜሰ፡ አ

ዋልዳ፡ ሮምያ፡ ወቀሕጥንጥንያ፡ አነ²⁰፡ እት
ሚሰል፡ ከመ፡ ያፈ፡ መንጤጥ፡ ሶበ፡ ይመ
ውት፡ ሞታ፡ ተሐነፍጥ፡ ገጸ²¹፡ ወትሴጽ
ር፡ ልሳና፡ ወኢትትወሰብ፡ ኅብ፡ ካልእ²²፡
እምድኅረ፡ ሞተ፡ ምታ፡ አላ፡ ተሐውር፡
ገዳመ²³፡ ኅብ፡ አድባር፡ ወአውግር²⁴፡ ወ
ትነብር፡ ባሕቲታ፡ ወሶበ፡ መጽአ፡ ካልእ²⁵፡
ያፈ፡ መንጤጥ²⁶፡ ኅቤሃ፡ ከመ፡ ያውስባ፡
ትኬልሕ፡ ይእቲ፡ ወሶበ፡ ሰምዓ፡ ድምዐ²⁷፡
ቃላ፡ ውእቲ፡ ያፍ፡ ያአምራ፡ ከመ፡ ምዕ
ስብት፡ ይእቲ፡ ወሥዕርት²⁸፡ ልሳና፡ የኅ
ደጋ²⁹፡ ወየሐውር፡ (A. fol. 149 a.) ወአነሂ³⁰፡
ከማሃ፡ እከውን፡ እስከ፡ እመውት፡

(A. fol. 151 b.) ወመጽኡ፡ እሙንቲ፡ አግ
ብርተ፡ ንጉሥ፡ እለ፡ አኅሠሙ³¹፡ ላዕሌሁ፡
በእኩይ፡ ግብር፡ በከዩ፡ ወከልሑ፡ እንዘ፡
ይብሉ፡ አሌ፡ ለነ፡ አሌ፡ ለነ፡ ኦሊቅነ፡ እ
ስመ፡ እንዘ፡ አግብርቲ (B. fol. 117 a.) ከ፡ ን
ሕነ³²፡ ነበርነ፡ እንዘ፡ ንሚንነከ፡ ወንጼእለ

¹ B. ኪያየ፡ ውስተ፡ ዘመርዓ፡ ቤት፡ ² B. ብሕቲተ፡ ³ B. ኪያነ፡ ለገቢረ፡
⁴ B. አሌሊተ፡ አሌሊተ፡ ⁵ B. መልዓኒ፡ ሐዘን፡ ወአውአየተኒ፡ ⁶ B. ከመ፡ እሳት፡
እስከ፡ ዮም፡ ወጸናሕክዎ፡ ፱ዓመት፡ ⁷ B. ኅብ፡ አንብዕ፡ ⁸ B. ወብካይ፡ ወከሠ
ተኒ፡ ⁹ B. ሕብዕት፡ ¹⁰ B. መርዓት፡ ወሕዝንት፡ ወትክዝት፡ ወናሁ፡ ዓነ፡ ዮም፡ ካንኩ፡
ዮም፡ መበለት፡ ¹¹ B. እንዘ፡ ዓነ፡ ¹² B. ክብርት፡ ¹³ B. ንዕንኬ፡ ¹⁴ B. omits ም
ስሌዮ፡ ¹⁵ B. መሐዝንዮ፡ ወነበርኩ፡ አነ፡ እንዘ፡ ¹⁶ B. ለእግዚአብሔር፡ ¹⁷ B. ለመጸ
ምርትዮ፡ ¹⁸ B. ሐልቀ፡ ¹⁹ B. ወጠፍአ፡ ²⁰ B. omits እነ፡ ²¹ B. እስመ፡ ይእቲ፡
ያፍ፡ ተሐነፍጠ፡ ገጸ፡ በአጽፋሪሃ፡ ትሴጽር፡ ልሳና፡ ወኢትትወሰብ፡ ²² B. ካልዕ፡ ያፍ፡
²³ B. ውስተ፡ ገዳም፡ ²⁴ B. ወበአውግር፡ ²⁵ B. ካልዕ፡ ²⁶ B. መንጤጠ፡ ከመ፡ ያው
ስባ፡ ወትኬልህ፡ ይእቲ፡ ²⁷ B. ድምጸ፡ ²⁸ B. ወሰጽርት፡ ²⁹ B. ወየሐድጋ፡
³⁰ B. ወአነሂ፡ እምዮም፡ እከውን፡ ከማሃ፡ ³¹ B. አሕሶሙ፡ ³² B. ንሕነ፡ እንዘ፡ ን
ሚንነከ፡

ከ :: ወገበርን : እኩየ : ላዕሌከ : አሌ : ለነ :
 አሌ : ሌን : እስመ : አልቦ : እምቅድሜን :
 ዘአበሰ : ከማን : ወሶበ : ሰምዖ : ሰብእ : ለነ
 ገርን : ንከውን² : ጽሉእን : ወምኑናን :: ወ
 ቦ : ዓዲ : ዘገበርን : እኩየ : ላዕሌከ³ : ዘኢገ
 ብር : ሰብእ :: ወአንተሰ : ተዓገሥከን⁴ : እን
 ዘ : ተአምረን : ከመ : አግብርቲከ : ንሕን ::
 ወሶበ : ሰምዖ : ሰብእ⁵ : እለ : ውስተ⁶ : ብ
 ሐረ : ቀላስጥንጥንያ : ከመ : ረከበ : ንጉሥ :
 ወልደ : ወከመ⁷ : ወረደ : ቃል : እምሰማይ :
 በእንቲአሁ :: [ወመጽኡ : ከሎሙ : ሕዝ
 ብ : ኅቤሁ :]⁸ ወኮነ : በይእቲ : ዕለት⁹ :
 ው (A. fol. 152a.) ስተ : ቤተ : ቲዎድስዮስ : ን
 ጉሥ : ብካይ : መሪር : ወከላሕ : [ወብዙኅ :
 አንብዕ ::]¹⁰ በእንተ : ዘነበረ : ግዱፈ : ወል
 ደ : ንጉሥ : ወዋተ : እንዘ : ኢየአምርዎ ::
 ወዓዲ¹¹ : ኮነ : በይእቲ : ዕለት : ውስተ : ቤ
 ቲ : ቲዎድስዮስ¹² : ንጉሥ : ትፍሥሕት :
 ወኃሜት¹³ :: በእንተ : ዘረከቡ : ሥጋሁ : ለ
 ቅዱስ : ዘይከውን : ለመድኅኒት¹⁴ : ወመጽ
 ኡ : በይእቲ¹⁵ : ዕለት : ብዙኃን : ድውያን :

ወሕመማን¹⁶ : ዕውራን : ወኃንካሳን :: ጽ
 መማን : ወጽውሳን :: ይቡሳንሂ : ወበሐማ
 ን :: ወገሰሱ : ወተሳላሙ : ሥጋሁ : ለቅዱ
 ስ :: ወተፈወሱ : ሶቤሃ : ከሎሙ : ወሐ
 ይዉ : እምደዌሆሙ :: ወኮነ : ገዕቅ¹⁷ :
 (B. fol. 117b.) በህየ :: ወፈቀደ : ሊቀ : ጳጳሳ
 ት¹⁸ : ምስለ : ቀሰውስት : ወዲያቆናት : ከ
 መ : ይንሣእ : ሥጋሁ : ለቅዱስ : ወይሰዱ :
 ውስተ¹⁹ : ቤተ : ክርስቲያን :: ወእምብዝኃ :
 ገዕቅ²⁰ : ስእኑ : ወሲደ : በ (A. fol. 152b.) ድኑ :
 ለቅዱስ²¹ :: ወይቤሎ : ሊቀ : ጳጳሳት : ለን
 ጉሥ : አዝዝ²² : ያምጽኡ : እመዘግብቲከ :
 ብዙኃ : ወርቀ : ወብሩረ : ወይዝርውዎ : ው
 ስተ : ቀዳሚይ : አንቀጽ²³ : ከመ : ይሐሩ :
 ወይንሥኡ : እምህየ²⁴ : ወርቀ : ወብሩረ ::
 ወከሎሙ²⁵ : ነዳያን : ወምስኪናን : ወሕ
 ዝብኒ : ሶበ : ሐሩ²⁶ : ይቀልል : ገዕቅ : ወን
 ክል : ወሲደ : በድኑ : ለቅዱስ :: ወአምጽ
 ኡ : ንጉሥ : ሶቤሃ : ብዙኃ : ወብሩረ : ወገ
 ብረ : በከመ²⁷ : ይቤሎ : ሊቀ : ጳጳሳት :: ወ
 አልቦ : ዘተመይጠ : ኅበ : ውእቲ : ወርቅ :

¹ B. አልቦ : ሰብእ : ዘአሰበ : ከማን : እምቅድሜን ::

² B. ንከውን : ምኑናን :

³ B. ላዕሌሁ :

⁴ B. ወውእቲሰ : ተአገሰ : እንዘ : ያአምር :

⁵ B. omits ሰብእ :

⁶ B. omits ውስተ :

⁷ B. ወከመሃ :

⁸ B. omits the words in brackets.

⁹ B. እለት :

¹⁰ B. omits the words in brackets.

¹¹ B. omits ወዓዲ : and reads ወኮነ :

¹² B. omits the name.

¹³ B. ወሀሌተ :

¹⁴ B. መድኅኒት : ከሎ :

¹⁵ B. በይእቲ :

እለ :

¹⁶ B. ወሐንካሳን : ወበማን : ወገሰሱ : ሥጋሁ : ወተሳላሙ : ወተፈወሱ :

¹⁷ B. ጸዕቅ : ብዙኃ : በይእቲ : ዕለት : በህየ :

¹⁸ B. ወፈቀዱ : ጳጳሳት :

¹⁹ B. ኅበ :

²⁰ B. ጸዕቅ :

²¹ B. omits በድኑ : ለቅዱስ ::

²² B. omits እንዘ :

²³ B. ውስተ :

ገዳም : ዐንቀጽ :

²⁴ B. በህየ :

²⁵ B. ከሎሙ :

²⁶ B. ሐረ : እመንቲ : ይብሉ :

²⁷ B. ጸዕቅ :

ወንክል : ወሲደ : በድኑ : ለቅዱስ : ወአምጽኡ : ንጉሥ : ወርቀ : B. በከመ : አሊቀ : ጳጳሳት :

ወበሩር ። እስመ ፡ ረከቡ ፡ ዘይኔይስ¹ ፡ እ
ምወርቅ ፡ ወበሩር ፡ ሥጋሁ ፡ ለቅዱስ ፡ እን
ተ² ፡ ኮነት ፡ ማኅየዊት³ ፡ ወመድኅኒት ፡
ወወሰዱ ፡ ሥጋሁ ፡ ለቅዱስ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ይፀዓ
ቁ⁴ ፡ ወበብዙኅ ፡ ሃዕቅ ፡ ወሃዕቅ ፡ አብጽ
ሕዎ ፡ ወአብእዎ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ቤተ ፡ ክርስ
(A. fol. 153 a.) ቲያን ፡ ወሠርዑ ፡ ቀርባን ፡ ወ
ቀደሰ ፡ ሊቀ ፡ ጳጳሳት ፡ ወአቅረበሙ⁵ ፡ ወ
ፈጸሞ ፡ ቀርባን ፡ ገነዙ⁶ ፡ በድኖ ፡ ለ
(B. fol. 118 a.) ቅዱስ ፡ ብእሴ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ፡
በአልባሰ ፡ አርግዮን⁷ ፡ ወቀባርዎ ፡ በሣፁ

ን ፡ ውስተ ፡ ቤተ ፡ ክርስቲያን ፡ ወወረደ ፡
ብርሃን ፡ ኅበ⁸ ፡ መቃብሩ ፡ ዘያሐዩ ፡ ነሐሴ ፡
ድውያን ፡ ወሕሙማን ፡ ጸሎቱ ፡ ወበረከቱ⁹ ፡
ወሀብተ ፡ ረድኤቱ ፡ ወፍጹም ፡ ትዕግሥቱ ፡
የሀሉ ፡ ምስለ ፡ ፍቁሩ ፡ ተክለ ፡ ሃይማኖት ፡
ወምስለ ፡ ፍቅርቱ ፡ ወለተ ፡ [ጽዮን] ፡ ለዓለ
መ ፡ ዓለም ፡ አሜን ፡ ወአሜን ፡ ለይኩን ፡
ለይኩን ፡ = = =

ዘሰረቆ ፡ ወዘራሐቆ ፡ በሥልጣን ፡ ጴጥሮ
ስ ፡ ወጸውሎስ ፡ ውጉዝ ፡ ለይኩን ፡

¹ B. ዘይሔይስ ፡ ² B. እንዘ ፡ ³ B. ማኅየዊት ፡ ⁴ B. ይጸዓቁ ፡
በብኅ ፡ ጳዕቅ ፡ ወአብጽሕዎ ፡ ኅበ ፡ ቤተ ፡ ⁵ B. ወአቅረበ ፡ ወፈጸሞሙ ፡ ⁶ B. ገነዘዎ ፡
ሥጋሁ ፡ ለቅዱስ ፡ ⁷ B. በልብሰ ፡ አርጌዎን ፡ ⁸ B. ውስተ ፡ ⁹ B. ወበረከቱ ፡
የሀሉ ፡ ምስሉን ፡

A HYMN OF GABRA KRESTÔS.

መዋሥዕት : ዘገብረ : ክርስቶስ ።

(Brit. Mus. Ms. 16, 226, fol. 10a, col. 2ff., and see also Brit. Mus. Ms. 16, 227, fol. 7a, col. 2ff.)

ዘ ፻፳፩ : ተፈሣሕኩ ። ብፁዕ : ወቅዱስ : ገብረ : ክርስቶስ : ዘበምድር : መንግሥተ : አስተኃቀ
ረ : አብዲሮ : ዘበላዕሉ : ሀገረ : ወረከበ : ዘአፈቀረ ። ወበእንተ : ቤተ ።

ዘ ፻፳፪ : ኅቤክ : እግዚ : እንቃዕዶ ። ሰሚዖ : ዘይቤ : እግዚእን : ዘይፈቅድ : ይጸመዩኒ : ያጥብ
ዕ : ወይንሣእ : መስቀለ : ሞቱ : ወይትልወኒ ። ጽዕላተ ። ምልጣ : ያጥብዕ : ወይንሣእ :
መስቀለ : ሞቱ : ወይትልወኒ : ያጥብዕ : ወይንሣእ : መስቀለ : ሞቱ : ወይትልወኒ : ዘ
ይፈቅድ : ይጸመዩኒ : ሰሚዖ : ዘይቤ : እግዚእን ።

ዘ ፻፳፫ : ዕበ : አኮ ። በላዕሌሁ : ተፈጸመ : እግዚእን : (Fol. 10b.) ዘይቤ : በወንጌል : ዘረከባ : ለን
ፍሱ : ለይግድፋ : ወዘገደፋ : ለነፍሱ : በእንተአየ : ይረከበ ። ዘገብረ : ሰማየ ።

ዘ ፻፳፬ : እለ : ተወክሉ ። አማን : ገደፋ : ለነፍሱ : መነነ : አባሁ : ወእሞ : ተንሥኡ : ወነሥኡ :
መስቀሉ : ወተለዎ : ለእግዚኡ : ሰላም : ላዕለ ።

ዘ ፻፳፭ : አመ : ሚጠ ። ለዝንቱ : ብእሲ : ኢያጽሐቆ : ዘበምድር : ምርዕውና : አለ : ተለዎ : ለ
ክርስቶስ : ዘበሰማያት : ፍና ። ወጸሩ ።

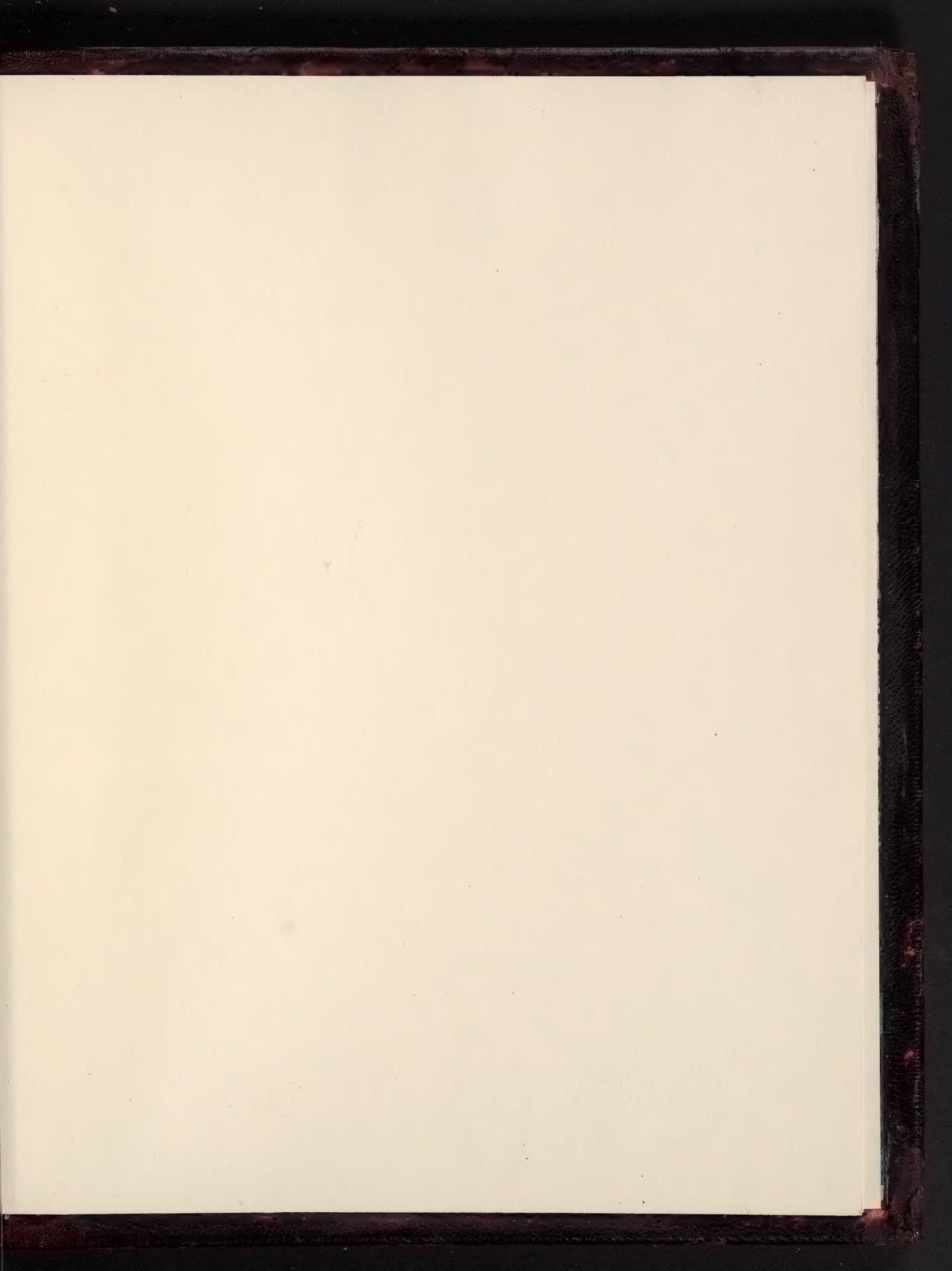
ዘ ፻፳፮ : አመ : እግዚ : ዐክ : በሌሊት : ኅበ : መርዓት : አኃዘ : እደሃ : ወይቤላ : ንዒ : ንትካየ
ድ : ኪዳነ : ወግበሪ : ዘእቤለኪ ። ወኢደትኃፈር ።

ዘ ፻፳፯ : ብፁዓን ። ወተካየደት : ምስሌሁ : ከመ : ትግበር : ዘደቤለ : ተንሥኡ : ኅቡረ : ሰገዱ :
ወጸለዩ : ቅድመ : እግዚአብሔር ። ሰላም ።

ዘ ፻፳፰ : ዘልፈ ። ሖረ : ኅበ : መርዓት : ብእሲ : እግዚአብሔር : ስዓማ : ርእሳ : ወይቤላ : እግዚ
አብሔር : የሀሉ : ምስሌኪ : እምግበረ : ሰይጣን : ያደኅኅኪ : ባረክናከመ ።

ዘ ፻፳፱ : እማዕምቅ ። ውእተ : ጊዜ : በከየት : ወትቤ : እግዚእየ : ወፍቁርየ : አይቲ : ተሐው
ር : ወለመኑ : ተኃድገኒ ። ወውእቲ : ያደኅኅኖ ።

- ዘ ፻፱፱ : እግዚእ ፤ ኢይትዔበ ። ወይቤላ ፡ ቅዱስ ፡ አኃድገኪ ፡ ኅበ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ፡ ንጉሥ ፡
አንሰ ፡ አሐውር ፡ እትልዎ ፡ ለክርስቶስ ። እምይእዜ ።
- ዘ ፻፴፩ : ተዘካር ። አርመመት ፡ በአንብዕ ፡ ሶቤሃ ፡ ተዘካራ ፡ መሐለ ፡ ወኪዳነ ፡ ዘክርስቶስ ፡ ዘተ
ከየደት ፡ ምስሌሁ ። ወቦቱ ፡ ይረሪ ።
- ዘ ፻፴፫ : ናሁ ፡ ይባርክዎ ። ወዕክ ፡ በሌሊት ፡ ወሐ (Fol. 11a.) ረ ፡ ርኑቀ ፡ ብሔረ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይኅሥ
ሥ ፡ ዘዘበለዕሉ ፡ ሀገረ ፡ እንተ ፡ አልባቲ ፡ መምሰለ ፡ ቤተ ፡ ማርያም ፡ በጽሐ ፡ ወነበረ ፡
ወሕይወት ። ሞል ፡ ቤተ ፡ ማርያም ፡ በጽሐ ፡ ወነበረ ፡ ፲ወ፪ ፡ ዓመተ ፡ ቤተ ፡ እንዘ ፡
ኢያጸርዕ ፡ ጸሎተ ፡ ቤ ፡ መዓልተ ፡ ወሌሊተ ፡ ቤ ፡ ወዕክ ፡ በሌሊት ፡ ቤ ፡ ወሐረ ፡ ርኑ
ቀ ፡ ብሔረ ፡ ከመ ፡ ይኅሥሥ ፡ ዘበላዕሉ ፡ ሀገረ ፡ እንተ ፡ አልባቲ ፡ መምሰለ ።
- ዘ ፻፲፩ : ብዕዕ ፡ ብእሲ ፡ ኅቡአትየ ፡ ዘምስሌኪ ፡ ለሰብእ ፡ ኢትክሥቲ ፡ ይቤላ ፡ ለማርያም ፡ ይ
እዜኒ ፡ ሞርሕኒ ፡ ኅበ ፡ ዘይኒይስ ፡ ወይኒኒ ። ወፍኖቶሙስ ።
- ዘ ፯ : እግዚእ ፡ አምላኪየ ፡ በጸማ ፡ ብዙኅ ፡ በጸም ፡ ወበትጋህ ፡ ውስተ ፡ ቤተ ፡ አቡሁ ፡ ፲ወ
፪ዓመተ ፡ እንዘ ፡ ያፈደፍድ ፡ ትዕግሥተ ። ወእዜምር ።
- ዘ ፲ወ፯ : አፈቅረክ ። እንዘ ፡ ይበውኡ ፡ ወይወዕኡ ፡ አግብርተ ፡ አቡሁ ፡ ወእመ ፡ ይጸርፋ ፡ ሎ
ቱ ፡ ወይብሉ ፡ አሰስሉ ፡ ለነ ፡ ዘንተ ፡ ምስኪነ ፡ ጌና ፡ ፃኡቱ ፡ ኢያሕስመነ ። ለጻዊት ፡
ወለዘርኡ ።
- ዘ ፴ : ብፁዕ ፡ ዘይሌቡ ፡ ሶበ ፡ አእመረ ፡ ዘንተ ፡ ብፁዕ ፡ ይቤሎ ፡ ለእግዚአ ፡ አንሰ ፡ እፈቅድ ፡
እምጸእ ፡ ኅበክ ፡ ኅበ ፡ ኢትመንን ፡ ወኢትጸልእ ። እምይእዜ ።
- ዘ ፻፫ : ግነዩ ። ኢይትዓቀፉ ፡ በላዕሌየ ፡ አግብርተ ፡ አቡየ ፡ ኢየሱስ ፡ ክርስቶስ ፡ እግዚእየ ፡
ከመ ፡ ትንሥኡ ፡ ለነፍስየ ። እስመ ፡ ለዓለ ። ሞል ፡ አንሰ ፡ እፈቅድ ፡ ከመ ፡ ትንሥኡ ፡
ለነፍስየ ፡ አንሰ ፡ እፈቅድ ፡ ከመ ፡ ትንሥኡ ፡ ለነፍስየ ፡ ኢየሱስ ፡ ክርስቶስ ፡ እግዚእ
የ ፡ ኢይትዓቀፉ ፡ በላዕሌየ ፡ አግብርተ ፡ አቡ (Fol. 11b.) የ ። ጸሎ ፡ ሐኛ ፡ ይቤሎ ፡ ኢየ
ሱስ ፡ ለብእሴ ፡ እግዚአብሔር ፡ ሰማዕኩ ፡ ጸሎተ ፡ ወስእለትክ ፡ እምብዙኅ ፡ ጸማ ፡ አ
ዓርፈክ ፡ ኅበ ፡ ሀሎ ፡ ፍሥሐ ፡ አነብረክ ። ሞልጣ ፡ ኅበ ፡ ሀሎ ፡ ፍሥሐ ፡ አነብረክ ፡ ሰ
ማዕኩ ፡ ጸሎተክ ፡ ወስእለተክ ፡ እምብዙኅ ፡ ጸማ ፡ አዓርፈክ ። ይባርክ ፡ መዝ ፡ ናሁ ፡
ወሀብኩክ ፡ ሥልጣነ ፡ ታውዕእ ፡ አጋንንተ ፡ ወትፈውስ ፡ ዱያነ ፡ ወሕመማነ ፡ ወሀብ
ኩክ ፡ አነ ፡ ሥልጣነ ። ሞል ፡ ወሀብኩክ ፡ አነ ፡ ሥልጣነ ፡ ታውዕእ ፡ አጋንንተ ፡ ትፈ
ውስ ፡ ዱያነ ፡ ወሕመማነ ፡ ወሀብኩክ ፡ አነ ፡ ሥልጣነ ። ዓፂ ። ወሀብኩክ ፡ አነ ፡ ሥል
ጣነ ፡ ትፈውስ ፡ ዕውራነ ፡ ወስቡራነ ፡ ጽመማነ ፡ ወበሐማነ ፡ ወሀብኩክ ፡ አነ ፡ ሥል
ጣነ ። ዓፂ ፡ ወሀብኩክ ፡ አነ ፡ ሥልጣነ ፡ ትፈውስ ፡ ይቡሳነ ፡ ወመፃጉዓነ ፡ እለ ፡ ለም
ጽኒ ፡ ይኩኑ ፡ ንጹሐነ ፡ ወሀብኩክ ፡ አነ ፡ ሥልጣነ ።





Special 91-B
1736

